"Latvian Grammar" was written to make information about the Latvian language and its grammatical system more easily available not only within Latvia, but also beyond its borders. A modern grammar of Latvian written in English is as important for native speakers of Latvian as for those who have learned Latvian as a second language and is of great value for anyone interested in the culture and history of Latvia or the Latvian language itself. The need for a reference grammar of Latvian written in English is especially important right now due to the existence of a large Latvian diaspora community abroad, particularly in English-speaking countries where children and young people are educated in the language of their home countries rather than in Latvian. A Latvian grammar written in English will also be useful for those who are learning Latvian as a foreign language and wish to learn more about its grammatical system and unique features so that they are able to use Latvian more effectively and speak it more correctly. Likewise, "Latvian Grammar" will be a useful reference and source for examples for teachers of Latvian – both those who teach it to speakers as a school or university subject and those who teach it as a foreign language. Latvian also is a rather unique combination of ancient as well as relatively new features, which are of interest to researchers abroad and are important for the typological, cognitive, pragmatic, functional, and contrastive analysis of language.

Andra Kalnača is Professor of Latvian Linguistics at the University of Latvia, Rīga, Latvia. Her research interests relate to morphology, morphosyntax and morphophonology, functional and cognitive grammar, modality and evidentiality, her core work is focused on Latvian grammar and the theory of grammar.

Ilze Lokmane is Associate Professor of General Linguistics at the University of Latvia, Rīga, Latvia. Her research interests relate to syntax, morphosyntax, pragmatics, functional and cognitive grammar, modality and evidentiality, her core work is focused on Latvian grammar and the theory of pragmatics.
ANDRA KALNAČA, ILZE LOKMANE

LATVIAN GRAMMAR
ANDRA KALNAČA, ILZE LOKMANE

LATVIAN GRAMMAR

University of Latvia Press
Rīga
2021

This monograph was published in accordance with the University of Latvia Council of the Faculty of Humanities Decision No. 26-3/93 of 17.06.2020 and the University of Latvia Council of Humanities Decision No. 10 of 06.07.2020.

This monograph was planned and written as part of the University of Latvia research project “Modern Latvian Grammar (in English)” and the State research program “Letonika – the history, languages, culture, values of Latvia” project No. 3 “Latvian language studies in the context of 21st century science” sub-project “Latvian Grammar”.

Reviewers
Helle Metslang, University of Tartu
Bonifacas Stundžia, Vilnius University
Daiki Horiguchi, Kyoto University

Editor – Uldis Balodis, University of Latvia Livonian Institute
Map of Latvian dialects – Edmundas Trumpa, University of Latvia
Letter-sound correspondence in Standard Latvian – Ilze Auziņa, University of Latvia Institute of Mathematics and Computer Science
Layout – Andra Liepiņa
Cover design – Baiba Lazdiņa

© Andra Kalnača, Ilze Lokmane, 2021
© University of Latvia, 2021

https://doi.org/10.22364/latgram.2021
ISBN 978-9934-18-635-6 (hardback)
Contents

Introduction .......................................................... 8
Acknowledgements ............................................. 14
Abbreviations and symbols ....................................... 16
Map of Latvian dialects ........................................ 19
Letter-sound correspondence in Standard Latvian ........ 20

1. MORPHOPHONOLOGY (Andra Kalnača) ....................... 25
   1.0 Introductory remarks .................................... 25
   1.0.1 Allomorphs, their structure, and functions ........ 25
   1.0.2 Units of morphophonology ......................... 28
   1.1 Adaptation of morphemes ................................ 30
   1.1.1 Phoneme alternation ................................ 31
   1.1.2 Interference of morphs .............................. 36
   1.1.3 Reduction of the word formation/inflectional stem . 44
   1.1.4 Interfixation ...................................... 47
   1.2 The morphophonological functions of vowel alternations . 50
   1.2.1 Apophony ....................................... 50
   1.2.2 Metaphony ..................................... 54

2. MORPHOLOGY (Andra Kalnača) ............................... 59
   2.0 Introductory remarks .................................... 59
   2.0.1 Morphemics ...................................... 59
   2.0.2 Word formation ................................... 63
   2.0.3 Inflection ....................................... 76
   2.0.4 Word classes .................................... 79
   2.1 Nouns ................................................ 83
   2.1.0 Introductory remarks ............................... 83
   2.1.1 Declension ..................................... 84
   2.1.2 Gender ......................................... 96
   2.1.3 Number ......................................... 102
   2.1.4 Case ............................................ 104
   2.1.5 Word formation ................................ 125
   2.2 Adjectives ............................................ 148
   2.2.0 Introductory remarks ............................... 148
   2.2.1 Declension ..................................... 149
   2.2.2 Comparison ..................................... 156
   2.2.3 Definiteness .................................... 160
   2.2.4 Word formation ................................ 165
   2.3 Numerals .............................................. 172
2.4 Pronouns .............................................. 179
  2.4.0 Introductory remarks ................................ 179
  2.4.1 Personal pronouns .................................. 183
  2.4.2 The reflexive pronoun ............................... 189
  2.4.3 Possessive pronouns ................................ 191
  2.4.4 Demonstrative pronouns ............................. 197
  2.4.5 Interrogative pronouns ............................. 203
  2.4.6 Relative pronouns ................................... 205
  2.4.7 Indefinite pronouns .................................. 207
  2.4.8 Definite pronouns ................................... 212
  2.4.9 Negative pronouns ................................... 215

2.5 Verbs ................................. 217
  2.5.0 Introductory remarks ............................... 217
  2.5.1 Conjugation ....................................... 221
  2.5.2 Person ........................................... 226
  2.5.3 Tense ............................................ 230
  2.5.4 Mood ............................................. 240
  2.5.5 Voice ............................................. 259
  2.5.6 Transitivity ........................................ 269
  2.5.7 Reflexive verbs .................................... 272
  2.5.8 Aspect ............................................. 281
  2.5.9 Participles ........................................... 289
  2.5.10 Word formation .................................... 301

2.6 Adverbs ........................................... 316
  2.6.0 Introductory remarks ................................ 316
  2.6.1 Semantic groups .................................... 319
  2.6.2 Comparison ......................................... 322
  2.6.3 Word formation ..................................... 324

2.7 Prepositions ........................................... 330

2.8 Particles .............................................. 355

2.9 Conjunctions ........................................... 366

2.10 Interjections ........................................... 377

3. SYNTAX (Ilze Lokmane) ...................................... 385
  3.0 Introductory remarks .................................. 385
    3.0.1 Syntactic subsystems ............................... 385
    3.0.2 Syntactic relations ................................ 386
  3.1 The simple sentence as a mono-predicative syntactic unit .... 391
    3.1.1 The main features of the simple sentence .......... 391
    3.1.2 Predicativity as the main grammatical feature of the simple sentence .......... 391
  3.2 Formal structure of the simple sentence ..... 394
    3.2.0 Introductory remarks ............................... 394
    3.2.1 Simple sentence patterns ............................. 394
    3.2.2 Basic sentence types ................................ 402
    3.2.3 Verbal sentences ................................... 406
    3.2.4 Nominal sentences ................................... 413
    3.2.5 AdverbiaL sentences ................................ 418
Introduction

“Latvian Grammar” was written to make information about the Latvian language and its grammatical system more easily available not only within Latvia, but also beyond its borders. Language is one of the most important parts of culture, history, and everyday life. Language is used by everyone and as a result many people across all walks of life are deeply interested in it. A modern grammar of Latvian written in English is as important for native speakers of Latvian as for those who have learned Latvian as a second language and also is of great value for anyone interested in the culture and history of Latvia or the Latvian language itself.

The need for a reference grammar of Latvian written in English is especially important right now due to the existence of a large Latvian diaspora community abroad, particularly in English-speaking countries where children and young people are educated in the language of their home countries rather than in Latvian. For that reason, information about Latvia as well as Latvian language, literature, and culture is most often sought out in English or in some other language besides Latvian.

A Latvian grammar written in English will also be useful for those who are learning Latvian as a foreign language and wish to learn more about its grammatical system and unique features so that they are able to use Latvian more effectively and speak it more correctly. Likewise, “Latvian grammar” will be a useful reference and source for examples for teachers of Latvian – both those who teach it to speakers as a school or university subject and those who teach it as a foreign language.

There is also considerable demand among linguists abroad for a systematic and dependable description of Latvian written by native speakers of Latvian. Latvian is a rather unique combination of ancient as well as relatively new features, which are of interest to researchers abroad and are important for the typological, cognitive, pragmatic, functional, and contrastive analysis of language. Examples we can mention here include the debitive mood and verb conjugation system in general; how various aspectual meanings are expressed; constructions involving the dative, genitive, and nominative cases; sound changes in word formation and inflection.

Latvian belongs to the Baltic group of the Indo-European language family. This group also contains Lithuanian and the extinct Old Prussian language. Rudzīte (1993: 4) observes: “Modern-day Latvian...formed as a result of the merger of several languages spoken by Baltic tribes known to us from historical records:
the Latgaliens or Latvians, Selonians, Semigallians as well as the Curonians who had their own language until the 16th century.” Much as in Lithuanian, Latvian also preserves various archaic lexical, phonetic, and grammatical features, which can be traced back to Proto-Indo-European and Proto-Baltic. From a language typology perspective, Latvian has a classic Indo-European (Baltic) system with diverse grammatical inflection and extensive word formation. However, due to areal and historical reasons, Latvian grammar also displays some features more like those found in the Finno-Ugric languages.

Latvian is the official language of the Republic of Latvia. When Latvia joined the European Union in 2004, Latvian also became an official language of the European Union. There are approximately 1.5 million native speakers of Latvian. Of these, 1.38 million live in Latvia, the rest live in the United States, Australia, Canada, the United Kingdom, Germany, Lithuania, Estonia, Sweden, Russia, and other countries. Latvian is spoken as a second language by approximately 500,000 people of other ethnicities. (Latvian population statistics are available from the Latvian Language Agency at: https://valoda.lv/valsts-valoda/).

Latvian is divided into three dialects: The Central dialect (also Middle dialect), Livonic dialect (also Livonian dialect, Livonian influenced dialect, Livonianized dialect), and High Latvian dialect (Vanags 2018: 27, see also “Map of Latvian dialects”). The Central dialect is spoken in central Vidzeme (the Vidzeme Central subdialects), Zemgale (the Semigallic subdialects), and in southern Courland or Kurzeme (the Curonic subdialects). The Standard Latvian developed primarily based on the Vidzeme Central and Semigallic subdialects. The Livonic dialect is spoken in northwestern Vidzeme (the Vidzeme Livonic subdialects) and in northern Courland (the Kurzeme Livonic subdialects or the Tamian subdialects). A part of the Latvians living in these regions are descendants of the Finnic-speaking Livonians who preserved features of the Livonian language as they transitioned to speaking Latvian; as a result, a unique variety of Latvian developed over time – the Livonic dialect. The High Latvian dialect is spoken in eastern Vidzeme, Sēlija (also called Augšzeme in Latvian), and Latgale. It is divided into the Selonic subdialects (spoken in Sēlija and Vidzeme near Ērgļi, Koknese, Pļaviņas, and Madona) and Latgalic subdialects (spoken in Latgale and eastern Vidzeme) (Vanags op. cit.). Standard Latgalian – a historical variety of Latvian – has existed since the 18th century and is based on the subdialects spoken in southern Latgale (Leikuma, Andronovs 2018: 28–30).

The first written texts (primarily of a Christian religious nature – both Lutheran and Catholic) date to the 16th century. The language in these is based on the Latvian spoken in Rīga and their spelling is based on the Middle Low German written tradition. The authors of these texts were ethnic German clergymen (Vanags 2018: 27). In subsequent centuries, the orthography used in Latvian texts continued to be improved and was based on the language varieties of the Central Dialect. Over time, the content of Latvian texts expanded from being exclusively religious and began to include material from other secular genres: dictionaries, grammars, literary and popular scientific works, practical texts, and so on.
The translation of the Bible into Latvian by Johann Ernst Glück (first published 1685–1694, published again in 1739) had a significant role in the development and standardization of the Latvian written language. Beginning in the mid-19th century, the number of texts written by ethnic Latvian authors on a wide variety of topics rapidly increased and this was especially evident in the writing of new works of fiction in Latvian. It should be noted that independent of the subjects they wrote about, all ethnic Latvian authors from this period paid special attention to the cultivation and standardization of written Latvian as well as the orthography they used for writing it. This tradition survives in a majority of genres up to the present day.

The orthography currently used to write Latvian (Latin script supplemented with diacritical marks indicating vowel length, palatalized consonants, and certain sibilants, see also “Letter-sound correspondence in Standard Latvian”) is based on the principles adopted in 1908 by the Orthography Commission of the Rīga Latvian Society’s Knowledge Commission.

The history of Latvian grammars begins in the 17th century. The first Latvian grammar is “Manuductio ad linguam Lettonicam facilis & certa... Riga 1644” by Johann Georg Rehehusen. This grammar is followed by a string of others at the end of the 17th century and throughout the 18th century. The most significant and extensive of these is “Lettische Grammatik” (1783) by Gothard Friedrich Stender. The period defined by grammars written by German authors ends in the 1860s with the publication of “Die Lettische Sprache nach ihren Lauten und Formen erklärend und vergleichend dargestellt” (in two volumes; 1863–1864) by August Bielenstein. This grammar was the first scientific grammar of Latvian and utilized the linguistic analysis of that time. It is still considered one of the most important grammatical descriptions of Latvian ever published (for more on this see Klaviņa 2008). Beginning in the second half of the 19th century and the early 20th century, a number of grammars and other grammatical descriptions of Latvian written by Latvian authors appeared in print. The most important of these include “Latviešu valodas mācība” by Andrejs Stērste (this was the first scientific grammar written in Latvian and was published as 3 volumes in 1879–1880), “Teikums” (1898) by Kārlis Mühlenbachs, and “Latviešu gramatika” and “Latviešu valodas mācība” (both published in 1907) by Jānis Endzelīns and Kārlis Mühlenbachs.

Grammatical descriptions written in other languages during the 20th and 21st centuries are either quite old (e.g., “Lettische Grammatik” (1922) by Jānis Endzelīns) or the authors of these materials are not native Latvian speakers and for a variety of reasons they only include a selection of topics in their descriptions of Latvian. (e.g., “A Short Grammar of Latvian” by Terje Mathiassen (1997), “Latvian” by Nicole Nau (1998), “Lettische Grammatik” by Jan Henrik Holst (2001)). A number of Latvian grammars are intended to be used as learning materials for non-Latvians who do not have much existing knowledge of Latvian language or culture (e.g., “A Grammar of Modern Latvian” by Trevor Fennell, Henry Gelsen (1980), “Complete Latvian” by Terēze Svilane Bartholomew (2011), “Latvian. An Essential Grammar”
Several studies on various aspects of Latvian grammar are written from the perspective of Baltic, theoretical, typological, or areal linguistics (e.g., Holvoet 2001, 2007 as well as the article collections Nau, Ostrowski 2010; Holvoet, Nau 2014b, 2015, 2016; Arkadiev, Holvoet, Wiemer 2015).

The most recent reference grammar of Latvian to be written in Latvian, “Latviešu valodas gramatika” (Rīga: LU Akadēmiskais apgāds), was published in 2013 (republished in 2015) and edited by Daina Nītiņa and Juris Grigorjevs. It is a collection of studies whose authors represent various theoretical perspectives (the authors of the grammar include: Ilze Auziņa, Dace Markus, Juris Grigorjevs, Inese Indričāne, Anna Vulāne, Daina Nītiņa, Gunta Smiltniece, Ieva Brenķe, Baiba Saulīte, Linda Lauze, Andra Kalnača, and Ilze Lokmane). This grammar brings together the research experience of the late 20th and early 21st centuries and serves as a good foundation for further studies focusing on Latvian grammar and phonetics. The morphophonology and verb sections (except for the description of participles) in this grammar were written by Andra Kalnača, the section on simple sentence syntax – by Ilze Lokmane.

The next task was writing a reference grammar of Latvian in English. “Latvian Grammar”, written by Andra Kalnača and Ilze Lokmane, is a scientific study by both authors written in 2014–2018. In addition, this grammar has differences from “Latviešu valodas gramatika” published in 2013:

1) a Latvian grammar in English has a different target audience, which also means that its description of language features and its focus as well as its selected examples differ from those in a grammar written for a Latvian-speaking audience (the examples in a grammar written for English speakers are more oriented towards a precise illustration of the features and other information being described);

2) the description of the Latvian grammatical system has been written using modern grammatical terminology and according to the linguistic traditions of Western Europe and North America (see “Subject index”, which gives the corresponding Latvian grammatical concept in parentheses after each English-language term).

If there exists a difference of opinion in the linguistic literature regarding a particular aspect of Latvian grammar, then in individual cases these differing views are mentioned in “Latvian Grammar”; however, due to the limitations on space in this grammar and, especially, due to its stated aims, these views are not examined in detail. Still, the authors have endeavored to show, which view they adopt in this work and the reasons for their choice. Issues connected with the standardization of grammar are not examined in this volume; however, in individual cases the use of a form or construction in conversational language or where its use deviates from the literary language may be discussed along with the reasons for these uses.

Both authors of this grammar are professors at the University of Latvia Faculty of Humanities and have taught courses on grammar as well as on a wide range of other aspects of linguistics. They also are the authors of studies on Latvian morphology,
morphophonology, syntax, morphosyntax, and other synchronic and general linguistic topics. The scientific research of Andra Kalnača and Ilze Lokmane, as well as work with their students and supervision of their students’ baccalaureate, master’s, and doctoral work, has allowed the authors to accrue knowledge on grammatical systems and their fundamental characteristics as well as gain experience in examining issues relating to grammar.

“Latvian Grammar” is a descriptive and synchronic grammar of Standard Latvian (with a few exceptions in the morphophonology section describing sound changes in Latvian). It is based primarily on the Latvian linguistic traditions for describing the grammatical system of Latvian developed during the 20th and 21st centuries (e.g., Endzelins 1922, 1951; Ahero et al. 1959, 1962; Kārkliņš 1974, 1976; Freimane 1985, 2008; Ceplitis, Rozenbergs, Valdmanis 1989; Gāters 1993; Kalme, Smiltniece 2001; Nītiņa 2001; Paegle 2003; Beitīņa 2009; Soida 2009; Nītiņa, Grigorjevs 2013).

This grammar is divided into three sections: morphophonology, morphology, syntax. To explain various sound changes relating to word formation and inflection, their historical origins are also detailed in the morphophonology section. Word formation is not described in a separate chapter as has been the tradition in other Latvian grammars (see, for example, Ahero et al. 1959; Nītiņa, Grigorjevs 2013). Instead, information on word formation can be found in special sections at the end of the noun, adjective, verb, and other word class descriptions in the morphology section. The introductory portion of the morphology section (Section 2.0.2) includes not only a description of morphemics, inflectional principles, and word types, but also provides general information regarding word formation methods, means, and types. In the syntax section, attention is primarily given to a structural and partially a functional description of the simple sentence. The composite sentence is mainly seen as a combination of several predicative units (clauses) into a single communicative whole, therefore, attention is given to the unique structural features of the units (clauses) as well as their semantic relations.

The examples used in the grammar are also primarily synchronic. Sources used include examples from “Līdzsvarotais mūsdienu latviešu valodas tekstu korpuss 2018” (The Balanced Corpus of Modern Latvian 2018; available at http://www.korpuss.lv/id/LVK2018; examples marked with C) as well as from various mass media sources (print as well as online media), online discussion groups, Latvian literature (generally from the 1970s), and individual folklore and other examples. In some cases, the internet search engine google.lv was used as well as data from the “Latvian Web Corpus (lvTenTen) (Ten Ten Corpus Family)”, available at https://www.sketchengine.eu/lvtenten-latvian-corpus/; examples marked with CW). Due to limitations on space and also to avoid including information which does not pertain to the particular features of Latvian being illustrated, examples are shortened or adapted as necessary (this is not noted in the body of the text in any particular way, with the exception of the section on the composite sentence where the omission of one or several units (clauses) is shown in the Latvian text with a double dot (..)). The analysis of these examples is not based on a frequency analysis of the features.
they illustrate. Each feature being described is usually given in bold face; if additional emphasis is necessary then underlining is also used.

Glossing within examples is done according to “The Leipzig Glossing Rules” (available at: https://www.eva.mpg.de/lingua/resources/glossing-rules.php). However, due to limitations on space it was not possible to follow these principles fully for all parts of examples. In the Morphology section, if the example includes component sentences or several simple sentences, only the sentence or the part of the sentence containing the feature being described is glossed. In the composite sentence section, individual grammatical forms, lexemes, and predicative units (clauses) are glossed, as necessary. In noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, and declinable participle glosses, only the plural is marked, while the singular is generally left unmarked – except in the pronouns tu ‘2SG’ and jūs ‘2PL’. Gender is also marked for the word classes, as in Latvian it is associated with agreement between different parts of the sentence. When glossing prepositions, particles, conjunctions, and interjections, it was not always possible to find a word from the corresponding word class in English to use as a gloss. Therefore, some words from these word classes are glossed using a general gloss referring to that word class (e.g., PREP – preposition, PTCL – particle, Q – interrogative particle, CONJ – conjunction, INT – interjection; see also “Abbreviations and Symbols”).

In the Morphophonology section, primarily in Section 1.2.2, “The International Phonetic Alphabet” (available at: https://www.internationalphoneticassociation.org/content/full-ipa-chart) is used in the description of the link between the pronunciation of the vowel e, ē with word formation and inflection. The Latvian tonemes or syllable accents (stretched, falling, and broken) are not marked in the examples, as these are not directly related to the pronunciation of e, ē.

American English spelling conventions are used throughout this book.
Acknowledgements

“Latvian Grammar” came about as a result of financing from two different projects. These are (1) the State research program “Letonika – Latvijas vēsture, valodas, kultūra, vērtības” (Letonika – the history, languages, culture, values of Latvia) project No. 3 “Latviešu valodas pētījumi 21. gadsimta zinātnes kontekstā” (Latvian language studies in the context of 21\textsuperscript{st} century science) sub-project “Latviešu gramatika” (Latvian Grammar) during 2014–2018 and (2) the University of Latvia research project “Mūsdienu latviešu gramatika (angļu valodā)” (Modern Latvian Grammar (in English)) in 2014, 2016, 2017. Andra Kalnača was the director of both projects and work for both was carried out at the University of Latvia Faculty of Humanities Department of Latvian and Baltic Studies. In addition to the authors of the grammar, Andra Kalnača and Ilze Lokmane, the translators involved in this project were Tatjana Pakalne (morphology), Zigrīda Vinčela (morphophonology with the exception of “The morphophonological functions of vowel alternations”), Vita Kalnbērziņa (the syntax of simple sentences with the exception of “The communicative structure of a simple sentence” and “Word order in simple sentences”), Dens Dimiņš (“The communicative structure of a simple sentence” and “Word order in simple sentences” as well as the syntax of composite sentences), and Uldis Balodis (the introduction, acknowledgements, and the morphophonology sub-section “The morphophonological functions of vowel alternations”). Anita Butāne (morphology) and Agita Kazakeviča (syntax) assisted Andra Kalnača and Ilze Lokmane in the selection of examples, while Lauma Šime, Karina Avakjanca, and Zane Mūrniece glossed the examples in the morphology and syntax sections. During both projects, Ilze Rūmniece provided a number of valuable insights into various grammatical issues and their connection to the traditions of grammatical descriptions of Latin and Greek. Uldis Balodis edited and examined the entire text and offered a number of very valuable ideas and advice including developing new terms for Latvian dialects and subdialects used in this grammar. Our greatest thanks to all the project participants involved in the creation of this grammar! With joy and fondness, we recall the regular grammar project participant meetings every few months in 2014–2017 during which we would discuss the terms and concepts to be used in the grammar as well as the sections of the grammar that had already been written, their structure, the features of Latvian discussed in them and the examples used to illustrate them, and glossing principles.
We also wish to give a special thanks to Juris Grigorjevs who provided valuable suggestions with respect to the phonetic transcription used in the morphophonology section and to Ilze Auziņa who prepared “Letter-sound correspondence in Standard Latvian” as well as to Edmundas Trumpa who prepared the map of Latvian dialects.

We also wish to the thank Helle Metslang, Bonifacas Stundžia, and Daiki Horiguchi whose insightful suggestions and adjustments were especially significant in the final stages of the writing of this grammar. Thank you also to all our colleagues at the University of Latvia who have supported the publication of this grammar!

For its care in preparing the “Latvian Grammar” manuscript for publication we wish to thank the University of Latvia Press and its director Aija Rozenšteine.

However, the greatest amount of thanks goes to the families of both authors – especially their spouses – for their support, understanding, and patience during the research and writing of this grammar.

Riga – Garciems – Lubāna
July 2020
### Abbreviations and symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amer.</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANIM</td>
<td>animate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>beneficiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br.</td>
<td>British</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td><em>Līdzsvarovais mūsdienu latviešu valodas tekstu korpus 2018</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMP</td>
<td>comparative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COND</td>
<td>conditional mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONJ</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COP</td>
<td>copula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CW</td>
<td><em>Latvian Web 2014 (lvTenTen14)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEB</td>
<td>debitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECL</td>
<td>declinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>definite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dial.</td>
<td>dialectal item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>experiencer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPH</td>
<td>emphatic (particle, pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIN</td>
<td>finite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDECL</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMP</td>
<td>imperative mood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IND</td>
<td>indicative mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPV</td>
<td>imperfective verb / aspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTRANS</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iter.</td>
<td>iterative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNT</td>
<td><em>Latvijas Neatkarīgā Televīzija</em> (TV channel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD</td>
<td>modal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFIN</td>
<td>non-finite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NREFL</td>
<td>non-reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUM</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBL</td>
<td>oblique mood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFV</td>
<td>perfective verb / aspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POS</td>
<td>possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POST</td>
<td>postposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRED</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREF</td>
<td>prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREP</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRF</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRON</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTCL</td>
<td>particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTCP</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>interrogative particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUANT</td>
<td>quantitative meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>recipient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFL</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM.DECL</td>
<td>semi-declinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smb.</td>
<td>somebody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smth.</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPL</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>subordinator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANS</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>1st, 2nd, 3rd person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>reconstructed item (morphophonology) / unacceptable construction (syntax)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→</td>
<td>derivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{}</td>
<td>morphophoneme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( )</td>
<td>interfix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>becomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>derives from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ø</td>
<td>zero morpheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>morpheme boundary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Map of Latvian dialects
(created by Edmundas Trumpa 2021)
**Letter-sound correspondence in Standard Latvian** (adapted from Auziņa 2013a: 25–26)

The Latvian alphabet contains the following letters: A, a, Ā, ā, B, b, C, c, Č, č, D, d, E, e, Ė, Ė, F, f, G, g, Ģ, ģ, H, h, I, i, Ī, ī, J, j, K, k, Ķ, ķ, L, l, Ļ, ļ, M, m, N, n, Ļ, ņ, O, o, P, p, R, r, S, s, Š, š, T, t, U, u, Ū, ū, V, v, Z, z, Ž, ž

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letters</th>
<th>IPA</th>
<th>Orthography</th>
<th>IPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vowels and diphthongs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ɑ</td>
<td>sals ‘frost’</td>
<td>sals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ɑː</td>
<td>sāls ‘salt’</td>
<td>sāls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ezis ‘hedgehog’</td>
<td>ezis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>æ</td>
<td>ezers ‘lake’</td>
<td>æzærš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>eː</td>
<td>tētis ‘dad’</td>
<td>tētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æː</td>
<td>æː</td>
<td>zēns ‘boy’</td>
<td>zǣːns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>divi ‘two’</td>
<td>divi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ī</td>
<td>iː</td>
<td>viːns ‘wine’</td>
<td>viːns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ɔ</td>
<td>omārs ‘lobster’</td>
<td>ɔmārš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>opera ‘opera’</td>
<td>ɔːpera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>uguns ‘fire’</td>
<td>uguns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū</td>
<td>uː</td>
<td>kuːka ‘cake’</td>
<td>kuːka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iu (iv)</td>
<td>iu</td>
<td>pliukškēt ‘to flap’</td>
<td>pliukškēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di Jordainsmit ‘twelve’</td>
<td>di Jordainsmit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie</td>
<td>ie</td>
<td>iela ‘street’</td>
<td>iela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>laiks ‘time’</td>
<td>laiks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>au</td>
<td>augs ‘plant’</td>
<td>augs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei (ej)</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>meīta ‘daughter’</td>
<td>meīta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zvejnieks ‘fisherman’</td>
<td>zvejnieks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letters</td>
<td>IPA</td>
<td>Orthography</td>
<td>IPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ui (uj)</td>
<td>ui</td>
<td><em>puika</em> ‘boy’</td>
<td><em>puika</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>šuimašina</em> ‘sewing machine’</td>
<td><em>šuimašina</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eu (ev)</td>
<td>eu</td>
<td><em>sev</em> ‘to oneself’</td>
<td><em>seu</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ou</td>
<td>øu</td>
<td><em>džouls</em> ‘joule’</td>
<td><em>džouls</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oi</td>
<td>øi</td>
<td><em>boikots</em> ‘boycott’</td>
<td><em>boikɔts</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>IPA</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>IPA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td><em>bērns</em> ‘child’</td>
<td><em>bæːrns</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td><em>cits</em> ‘other’</td>
<td><em>tsɪts</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>č</td>
<td>tʃ</td>
<td><em>četri</em> ‘four’</td>
<td><em>tʃɛtri</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td><em>daba</em> ‘nature’</td>
<td><em>daba</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dz</td>
<td>dɛ</td>
<td><em>dziesma</em> ‘song’</td>
<td><em>dɛjɛsma</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dž</td>
<td>dʒ</td>
<td><em>džems</em> ‘jam’</td>
<td><em>dʒɛms</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td><em>filma</em> ‘movie’</td>
<td><em>filma</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td><em>gals</em> ‘end’</td>
<td><em>gals</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ģ</td>
<td>ɟ</td>
<td><em>ģitāra</em> ‘guitar’</td>
<td><em>ɟitɑːra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>x</td>
<td><em>halva</em> ‘halva’</td>
<td><em>xalva</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>j</td>
<td><em>jūra</em> ‘sea’</td>
<td><em>juːra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td><em>kāja</em> ‘leg’</td>
<td><em>kaːja</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kš</td>
<td>c</td>
<td><em>kert</em> ‘to catch’</td>
<td><em>cert</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td><em>egle</em> ‘fir tree’</td>
<td><em>eɡle</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lļ</td>
<td>ł</td>
<td><em>ļoti</em> ‘very’</td>
<td><em>ʎuːti</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td><em>mans</em> ‘my’</td>
<td><em>mans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td><em>nauda</em> ‘money’</td>
<td><em>nauda</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ņ</td>
<td>ň</td>
<td><em>bungas</em> ‘drums’</td>
<td><em>bʊŋɡas</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ų</td>
<td>ų</td>
<td><em>nemt</em> ‘to take’</td>
<td><em>nemt</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>p</td>
<td><em>puse</em> ‘half’</td>
<td><em>puse</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td><em>Rīga</em></td>
<td><em>riːɡa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td><em>sens</em> ‘ancient’</td>
<td><em>sɛns</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>š</td>
<td>ʃ</td>
<td><em>šalle</em> ‘scarf’</td>
<td><em>ʃalːe</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td><em>tur</em> ‘there’</td>
<td><em>tur</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>v</td>
<td><em>valsts</em> ‘country’</td>
<td><em>valsts</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>z</td>
<td><em>ziema</em> ‘winter’</td>
<td><em>ziema</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ž</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td><em>žagata</em> ‘magpie’</td>
<td><em>ʒagata</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of tables

Table 1.1  Examples of palatalization in noun and verb forms  ............ 37
Table 1.2  The plural declension paradigm of lācis ‘bear’ ................. 38
Table 1.3  The declension paradigm of the pronouns pats ‘self (M),
pati ‘self (F)’ ........................................................................ 39
Table 1.4  Present tense paradigm of the verb laust ‘to break’ .......... 39
Table 1.5  Present tense paradigm of the verb gulēt ‘to lie’ ............... 39
Table 1.6  Suffix allomorphs of declension 2 and 5 nouns ............... 40
Table 1.7  Declension paradigm of the past passive participle
singular forms (indefinite ending) ............................................. 41
Table 1.8  The present tense forms of the verb pētīt ‘to study’ .......... 46
Table 1.9  The present tense forms of the verb mēģināt ‘to try’ ......... 46
Table 1.10 The verb vērot ‘to watch’ person forms in the simple present
and past .................................................................................. 49
Table 1.11 The verb pētīt ‘to study’ person forms in the past .......... 49
Table 1.12 The present and past tense forms of the verb nest ‘to carry’ . 57
Table 1.13 The present tense forms of the verb cerēt ‘to hope’ ........ 57
Table 2.1  Singular case endings .............................................. 84
Table 2.2  Plural case endings .................................................. 85
Table 2.3  Noun declension ...................................................... 86
Table 2.4  Case forms of declension 3 surnames in masculine
and feminine ........................................................................... 87
Table 2.5  Case forms of reflexive nouns ..................................... 92
Table 2.6  Main noun formation types in Latvian: suffixation ........... 137
Table 2.7  Main noun formation types in Latvian: endings ............... 140
Table 2.8  Derivation of nouns by prefixation ............................... 142
Table 2.9  Main compound noun formation types in Latvian .......... 147
Table 2.10 Declension of indefinite adjectives in Latvian ............... 149
Table 2.11 Declension of definite adjectives in Latvian .................. 149
Table 2.12 Declension of adjectives containing the suffix -ēj- .......... 152
Table 2.13 Main adjective formation types in Latvian: suffixation .... 169
Table 2.14 Main adjective formation types in Latvian: prefixes ...... 170
Table 2.15  Main compound adjective formation types in Latvian ........  171
Table 2.16  Declension of the numeral trīs ‘three’ ..........................  177
Table 2.17  Declension of the personal pronouns es, tu, mēs, jūs ..........  184
Table 2.18  Declension of the pronoun sevis ...................................  190
Table 2.19  Declension of the demonstrative pronouns šis, šī, tas, tā ......  202
Table 2.20  Declension of the pronoun kas ......................................  205
Table 2.21  Declension of the pronouns pats, pati, paši, pašas ............  215
Table 2.22  The infinitive, present, past, and future stems of verbs .......  219
Table 2.23  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 1 verbs ..........................................................  222
Table 2.24  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 2 verbs ..........................................................  223
Table 2.25  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 3 verbs ..........................................................  224
Table 2.26  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 2 verbs ..........  224
Table 2.27  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 3 subclass 1 verbs ..........................................................  225
Table 2.28  The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 3 subclass 2 verbs ..........................................................  225
Table 2.29  The present and past indefinite forms of the verbs būt ‘to be’ and nebūt ‘not to be’ ............................................  226
Table 2.30  The present and past indefinite forms of the verb iet ‘to walk, go’ ..........................................................  226
Table 2.31  The present and past indefinite forms of the verb dot ‘to give’ ..........................................................  226
Table 2.32  The person endings of the singular non-reflexive paradigm ........  228
Table 2.33  The person endings of the plural non-reflexive paradigm ......  228
Table 2.34  The person endings of the singular reflexive paradigm ..........  228
Table 2.35  The person endings of the plural reflexive paradigm ............  229
Table 2.36  The past indefinite forms of conjugation class 2 and 3 verbs ........  230
Table 2.37  The past indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 verbs ...........  231
Table 2.38  The future indefinite forms of all conjugation classes ............  232
Table 2.39  The paradigm of perfect tense forms (the indicative mood) ......  232
Table 2.40  Past perfect indicative with the auxiliary verb tikt ‘to get’ ......  233
Table 2.41  The paradigm of oblique forms .......................................  242
Table 2.42  The paradigm of conditional forms ..................................  245
Table 2.43  The paradigm of debitive forms ......................................  249
Table 2.44  The paradigm of oblique debitive forms ............................  250
Table 2.45  The paradigm of conditional debitive forms .....................  250
Table 2.46  The paradigm of imperative forms ..................................  255
Table 2.47  Passive voice, indefinite tenses, indicative mood  ................. 260
Table 2.48  Passive voice, perfect tenses, indicative mood  ................. 260
Table 2.49  Passive voice, oblique mood  ........................................ 263
Table 2.50  Passive voice, conditional mood  .............................. 264
Table 2.51  Passive voice, debitive mood  ......................................... 264
Table 2.52  Passive voice, debitive mood, oblique subtype .................. 265
Table 2.53  Passive voice, debitive mood, conditional subtype ............. 266
Table 2.54  Passive voice, imperative mood  ..................................... 266
Table 2.55  Inflection of the declinable present active participle, in the masculine ........................................ 292
Table 2.56  Inflection of the declinable present active participle, in the feminine ......................................................... 293
Table 2.57  Inflection of reflexive declinable present active participles ... 293
Table 2.58  Inflection of the declinable present passive participle, in the masculine .......................................................... 293
Table 2.59  Inflection of the declinable present passive participle, in the feminine ............................................................... 294
Table 2.60  Inflection of the declinable past active participle, in the masculine ................................................................. 295
Table 2.61  Inflection of the declinable past active participle, in the feminine ................................................................. 296
Table 2.62  Inflection of reflexive declinable past active participles ...... 296
Table 2.63  Inflection of the declinable past passive participle, in the masculine ................................................................. 296
Table 2.64  Inflection of the declinable past passive participle, in the feminine ................................................................. 297
Table 2.65  Main verb formation types: suffixation  ................................. 307
Table 2.66  Main verb formation types: prefixation  ................................. 313
Table 2.67  Main verb formation types: circumfixation  ............................ 316
1. MORPHOPHONOLOGY

1.0 Introductory remarks

Morphophonology in Latvian describes historical and positional sound changes that manifest themselves in particular morphemes due to word formation and inflection. Word formation and inflection in Latvian is also connected with such suprasegmental phenomena as tonemes (or syllable accents) and word stress; however, due to its limited scope, these are not more closely examined in this volume (for further discussion see Kalnača 2004: 102–108; 2013b: 183–189).

1.0.1 Allomorphs, their structure, and functions

The notion of an allomorph is vital in morphophonology (and in morphemics). Allomorphs are the variant forms of a given morpheme that originate when morphemes are combined because of word formation or inflection. Thus, allomorphs predominantly are side-effects of affixation (Spencer 2000: 118). All allomorphs of a morpheme have similar phonetic features, and these are related to the source morpheme, which also is an invariant, e.g., the allomorphs of the root ēd- ‘eat’ in Latvian are as follows:

(1.1) **invariant**

ēd- [æ:d] ēd-u PRS ‘(I) eat’

**allomorphs**

ēs- ēs-t ‘to eat’
ē- ē-šan-a ‘eating’
ēd- [eːd] ēd-u PST ‘(I) ate’

Most morphophonological phenomena in Latvian relate to the combination of morphemes and their mutual adaptation in word formation and inflection (see Sections 1.1, 1.2). However, there are also allomorphs in Latvian that are conditioned
by phonetic processes within the boundaries of a morpheme or suprasegmental units (see in detail Kalnača 2013b: 183–189). Root allomorphs are an example of these:

(1.2) škel-t ‘to split’, škēl-‘slice’, škil-a ‘chip’

and

skal-s ‘kindling’, skal-d-i-t ‘to split’

Allomorphs beginning with šk- originated under the influence of front vowels, i.e., due to the adaptation of phonemes within a morpheme.

Root as well as affix morphemes can have allomorphs:

(1.3) the root rok- and its allomorphs

rok-a – roc-iņ-a, rok-eli-e ‘hand – hand (DIM)’

(1.4) suffixes and their allomorphs

a. inflection

NOM SG – GEN SG

-īt/ -iš- sun-īt-is – sun-iš-a ‘dog (DIM)’

-ul/ -uļ- mil-ul-is – mil-uļ-a ‘darling’

b. word formation

diminutives

-iņ/ -tiņ- māj-iņ-a ‘house’, ziv-tiņ-a ‘fish’

c. word formation

deverbal nouns

-on/ -oņ- darb-on-is ‘activist’, rib-oņ-a ‘rumble’

(1.5) allomorphs of endings (inflection)

NOM SG M (declension 1)

-s/ -š tēv-s ‘father’, cel-š ‘way’

Allomorphs can differ from the invariant morpheme in two ways:

1. Phonomically, but without any changes in the structure of a morpheme:

These are cases of, e.g., apophony (example (1.6a)) and metaphony (example (1.6b)), fronting (of velar consonants) (1.6c), and consonant t and d alternation (1.6d).

These are also examples of the alternation of the consonant n (1.6e) and cases of palatalization resulting from allomorphs containing the fusion of two morphemes (root and suffix) (1.6f).

(1.6) a. apophony

zelt – zaļš – zāle – zils ‘to become green – green – grass – blue’

b. metaphony

nesu [næsːŭ] PRS 1SG – nesu [nesːû] PST 1SG ‘(I) carry – (I) carried’

c. fronting (of velar consonants)

jak-a – jačiņa, jaķele ‘cardigan – cardigan (DIM)’

zirg-s – zirdziņš, zirģelis ‘horse – horse (DIM)’

d. alternation of the consonants t and d

sit-u – sis-t ‘(I) beat – to beat’
ēd-u – ēs-t ‘(I) eat – to eat’
sit-u – siz-dams ‘(I) beat – beating’
ēd-u – ēz-dams ‘(I) eat – eating’
e. vowel change determined by the following consonant n
INF – PRS
lip-t – lip-u < *linp-u ‘to stick – (I) stick’
klup-t – klūp-u < *klunp-u ‘to stumble – (I) stumble’
plak-t – plok-u [plo֧okū] < *plank-u ‘to collapse – (I) collapse’
f. palatalization
NOM SG – GEN SG
zirn-is – zirņ-a ‘pea’
las-is – laš-a ‘salmon’

2. Structurally:

a) an allomorph is smaller than a morpheme
Such allomorphs have originated in Latvian due to the deletion of the consonants s, z, t, d (in detail see Section 1.1.3) and these are smaller than the invariant morpheme; e.g., the root lūz- allomorphs in word formation and inflection:

(1.7) lūz-t – lū-šan-a ‘to break – breaking (N)’
lūz-t – lū-st ‘to break – it breaks’

b) an allomorph is larger than a morpheme
Such allomorphs can be the consequence of the merging of two or more morphemes (Urbutis 2009: 256–259). The cause of merging often is syncope (vowel reduction) in one of the morphemes, but it usually results in a borderline shift for the morphemes. This is not the case for fusion, because the elements of each initial morpheme are preserved. For example, there is no fusion in the case of the palatalization caused by j if a root ends in p, b, m, v, because it is possible to trace each initial morpheme. As in the synchronic analysis of the language, j is not viewed as an inflectional suffix in either the formation of nouns or the verbs of conjugation class 1 (e.g., Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 104, 213; Paegle 2003: 48, 109; Kalnača 2013c: 545–548); however, it should be noted that allomorphs with extended roots occur in particular grammatical forms, for example, in the nouns of declension 2.

(1.8) invariant morph allomorph
NOM SG GEN SG
krup-is krupj-a ‘toad’
gulb-is gulbj-a ‘swan’
kurm-is kurmj-a ‘mole’
šķiv-is šķivj-a ‘plate’
1.0.2 Units of morphophonology

Morphophonological units are viewed as morphophonemes, i.e., phonetically changing parts of a morph that regularly alternate within morphemes in word formation and inflection (Matthews 1997: 233; Crystal 2000: 250; Kalnača 2004: 48–51; Skujiņa 2007: 243), for example, the allomorphs of the consonant t alternation with morphophonemes.

(1.9) PRS 1SG – INF
   {T}–{S} met-u – mes-t ‘(I) throw – to throw’
   {D}–{S} ved-u – ves-t ‘(I) take – to take’

Morphophonemes are formed from sequences of phonemes that change under the influence of each other within the boundaries of a given morpheme (Kalnača 2013b: 154–155), e.g.:

(1.10) {I}–{E} vilk-t – velk-u ‘to pull – (I) pull’
   {L}–{L} smel-t – smel-u ‘to ladle – (I) ladle’
   {G}–{DZ} aug-t – audz-e ‘to grow – growth’

However, it must be noted that the alternating morphophonemes themselves do not provide grammatical or lexical meaning to a word or a word form; it can be deduced from the allomorph as a whole; in addition, a morphophoneme often is the consequence of morpheme adaptation. Morphophonemes do not occur in all allomorphs; they are found only in those allomorphs that phonetically differ from the source morpheme, which are as follows for Latvian:

1) allomorphs with relevant morphophonemes

(1.11) PRS – INF
   {T}–{S} sit-u – sis-t ‘(I) beat – to beat’
   {D}–{S} ēd-u – ēs-t ‘(I) eat – to eat’

2) allomorphs of the d alternation with relevant morphophonemes

(1.12) PST – PTCP
   {T}–{Z} sit-u – siz-dam-s ‘(I) beat – beating’
   {D}–{Z} ēd-u – ēz-dam-s ‘(I) eat – eating’

3) allomorphs of the palatalization caused by the front vowels (fronting of velar consonants) with relevant morphophonemes

(1.13) {K}–{C}–{Ķ} mak-s – mak-in-š, mak-el-is ‘purse – purse (DIM)’
   {G}–{DZ}–{G} lug-a – lugz-in-a, lug-el-e ‘play – play (DIM)’

Morphophonemes also occur in the allomorphs that are formed due to the fusion of two morphemes. These are as follows:

1) palatalization allomorphs

(1.14) a. NOM SG – GEN SG
   {L}–{L} brāl-is – brāl-a ‘brother’
   {N}–{N} zirn-is – zirn-a, ‘pea’
The allomorphs of Latvian word roots can display the alternation of several morphophonemes; in these cases, word roots and their morphophonological variants can display not only three but also four morphophoneme series. For example, note the consonant morphophonemes in the allomorphs of the following verb roots:
(1.18) a. series of three morphophonemes
   \{T\}–\{S\}–\{Z\} sit-u, sis-t, siz-dam-s ‘(I) beat, to beat, beating’
   \{D\}–\{S\}–\{Z\} ēd-u, ēs-t, ēz-dam-s ‘(I) eat, to eat, eating’

b. series of four morphophonemes
   \{T\}–\{S\}–\{Š\}–\{Z\} pūt-u, pūs-t, pūš-u, pūz-dam-s
   ‘I blew, to blow, I blow, blowing’
   \{D\}–\{S\}–\{Ž\}–\{Z\} grūd-u, grūs-t, grūž-u, grūz-dam-s
   ‘(I) pushed, to push, (I) push, pushing’

In Latvian, the allomorphs of root morphemes also have been conditioned by apophony, which can exhibit morphophonemes. In contrast to the cases of consonant alternation, vowel alternation exhibits a wide range of morphophoneme series within words or word forms of the same root, even if not all of the possible examples are found in modern Latvian:

(1.19) a. e-series
   \{E\}–\{Ē\}–\{A\}–\{Ā\}–\{UO\}–\{I\}–\{U\}
   ber-u, bēr-t, bar-s, bār-(st)-i-t, bir-t ‘(I) strew, to strew, crowd, to strew, to fall’
   vilk-t, velk-u, valk-ā-t ‘to put on, (I) put on, to wear’
   dzēr-t, dzēr-u, dzir-(d)-inā-t ‘to drink, (I) drank, to give to drink’
   smelk-n-e, smalk-s, smil(k)-t-s ‘ladle, exquisite, sand’

b. i-series
   \{EI\}–\{IE\}–\{EJ\}–\{AI\}–\{AJ\}–\{Ī\}–\{IJ\}
   lie-t, lej-u, lai-(st)-i-t, lēj-u, lī-t, lij-a
   ‘to pour, (I) pour, to water, (I) poured, to fall, it rained’
   steig-t, staig-ā-t, stīg-a ‘to hurry, to walk, trail’

c. u-series
   \{JAU\}–\{AU\}–\{AV\}–\{ĀV\}–\{UO\}–\{U\}–\{Ū\}–\{UV\}
   grau-t, grav-a, grāv-a, grū-t, gruv-a ‘to destroy, ravine, it destroyed, to collapse, it collapsed’
   jauk-t, jav-a, juk-t ‘to mix, cement, to fall to pieces’

1.1 Adaptation of morphemes

Adaptation of morphemes conditioned by the phonetic and phonological rules of a language is indispensable in word formation and inflection occurring in any language. Such phonetic processes as assimilation, dissimilation, and phoneme elision at the junctions of morphemes create allomorphs, i.e., various morphs that represent one morpheme (e.g., Matthews 1997: 14; Spencer 2000: 6), e.g., allomorphs mez-t ‘to throw’, mez-dam-s ‘throwing’, me-šan-a ‘throwing (N)’ of the morpheme met-.

Adaptation of morphemes can be caused by positional as well as historical phoneme changes. Even if both types of changes are common in Latvian (in detail see Auziņa 2013b), historical changes are more significant within the grammatical
system of Latvian, as they relate to the processes of word formation and inflection, both of which are the main causes for the origin of allomorphs.

Adaptation of morphemes, and hence allomorphism, occurs in the following combinations in Latvian (Kalnača 2004: 67; 2013b: 157):

1) root + ending

(1.20) audz-e < *aug-e ‘growth’
   plūs-t < *plūd-t ‘to flow’
   zaļ-š < *zaļ-s ‘green’

2) root + suffix

(1.21) roc-īn-a < *rok-īn-a ‘hand (DIM)’
   ve-šan-a < *ved-šan-a ‘taking (N)’

3) root + interfix

(1.22) kos-t – ko-(šļ)-ā-t < *kod-(šļ)-ā-t ‘to bite – to chew’
   grūs-t – grū-(st)-ī-t < *grūd-(st)-ī-t ‘to push – to jostle’

4) root + infix

(1.23) kris-t – krīt-u < *kri-n-t-u ‘to fall – (I) fall’

5) suffix + suffix

(1.24) dzied-niec-isk-s < *dzied-niek-isk-s ‘healing (adj)’
   brāl-īt-is NOM SG – brāl-īš-a < *brāl-īt-j-a GEN SG ‘brother (DIM)’

6) suffix + ending

(1.25) dārz-niec-e < *dārz-niek-e ‘gardener (F)’
   cel-īn-š < *cel-īn-s ‘footpath’

Four types of morph adaptation are distinguished in Latvian (Kalnača 2004: 67; 2013b: 158). These are as follows:

1) **phoneme alternation** – the end of a morph has phonetically adapted to the beginning of the following morph or vice versa, i.e., a morph has adapted to the end of the preceding morph;

2) **interference of morphs** – two morphs have merged into one;

3) **reduction of the word formation/inflection stem** during the processes of word formation and inflection;

4) **interfixation** – an interfix, a semantically empty element, has been inserted between two morphs at the junction of morphemes to avoid an inconvenient vowel or consonant cluster.

### 1.1.1 Phoneme alternation

Phoneme alternation is conditioned by grammatical positions, i.e., the combining of morphemes due to word formation or inflection. In Latvian, phoneme alternation caused by morphophonological processes at morpheme junctions relates to
the adaptation of a root and an affix (a suffix and an ending) and less frequently also with the adaptation of two affixes (a suffix and an ending). Such alternations of phonemes are not typical at the junction of a prefix and a root.

The following alternations of phonemes occur at morpheme junctions in Latvian:
1) fronting (of velar consonants): \( k, g \rightarrow c, dz / ŷ, ģ \) (regressive assimilation);
2) alternation of the consonant \( t \): \( t, d \rightarrow s \) (regressive assimilation);
3) alternation of the consonant \( d \): \( t, d \rightarrow z \) (regressive assimilation);
4) assimilation of the consonant \( s \) to the preceding palatal consonant, \( s \rightarrow š \) (progressive assimilation).

Fronting of \( k, g \rightarrow c, dz / ŷ, ģ \) occurs if one morpheme ends in \( k, g \), but the next starts with a front monophthong or diphthong. This alternation occurs in word formation as well as inflection.

Word formation

Root + suffix (root ends in \( k, g \))

Fronting at the end of a root in the formation of nouns is caused by the suffixes -el- (1.26a), -ien- (1.26b), -en- (1.26c), -ēn- (1.26d), -in- (1.26e), -iniek-/eniek- (1.26f), etc.

(1.26) a. rok-a – rok-el-e ‘hand – hand (DIM)’
   \[ \text{tirg-us} \rightarrow \text{tirģ-el-is} \text{ ‘market – market (DIM)’} \]
   b. teik-t – teic-ien-s ‘to say – saying (N)’
   \[ \text{spieg-t} \rightarrow \text{spiedz-ien-s} \text{ ‘to scream – scream’} \]
   c. vilk-s – vilc-en-e ‘wolf – she-wolf’
   \[ \text{seg-a} \rightarrow \text{seg-ēn-e} \text{ ‘blanket – wrap’} \]
   d. vilk-s – vilc-ēn-s ‘wolf – wolf cub’
   \[ \text{Piebalg-a} \rightarrow \text{piebaldz-ēn-s} \text{ ‘Piebalga – inhabitant of Piebalga’} \]
   e. tak-a – tac-in-a ‘footpath – footpath (DIM)’
   \[ \text{rag-s} \rightarrow \text{radz-in-š} \text{ ‘horn – horn (DIM)’} \]
   f. Rīg-a – rīdz-iniek-s ‘Rīga – inhabitant of Rīga’
   \[ \text{Bausk-a} \rightarrow \text{baušķ-eniek-s} \text{ ‘Bauska – inhabitant of Bauska’} \]

Fronting in the formation of adjectives occurs if the following suffixes are used to form words: -īg- (1.27a), -isk- (1.27b):

(1.27) a. jok-s – joc-īg-s ‘joke – funny’
   \[ \text{deg-t} \rightarrow \text{dedz-īg-s} \text{ ‘to burn – eager’} \]
   b. puik-a – puic-isk-s ‘boy – boyish’
   \[ \text{zirg-s} \rightarrow \text{zirdz-isk-s} \text{ ‘horse – horsy’} \]

Alternation of phonemes in the formation of verbs relates to the use of the suffixes -i- (1.28a), -ē- (1.28b), -inā- (1.28c):

(1.28) a. brauk-t – brauc-i-t ‘to go – to rub’
   b. plauk-t – plauč-ē-t ‘to bud – to make flowers blossom’
   \[ \text{aug-t} \rightarrow \text{audz-ē-t} \text{ ‘to grow – to grow (iter.)’} \]
c. kauk-t – kauc-inā-t ‘to howl – to make howl’
    aug-t – audz-inā-t ‘to grow – to raise’

Suffix + suffix (the first suffix ends in k, g)
Fronting occurs if two suffixes are combined in the formation of a noun and adjective
if the suffix -niek- (1.29a) or the suffix -uk- (1.29b) is followed by the suffixes -iņ-
(1.29a), -īt- (1.29b), -el- (1.29c), -isk- (1.29d), -īb- (1.29e):

(1.29) a. dzej-niek-s – dzej-niec-iņ-š ‘poet – poet (DIM)’
    b. saim-niec-e – saim-niec-it-e ‘housekeeper (F) – housekeeper (F) (DIM)’
    c. meit-uk-s – meit-uc-īt-is ‘girl (DIM) – girl (DIM)’
    d. dzej-niek-s – dzej-nieķ-el-is ‘poet – poet (DIM)’
    e. tēl-niek-s – tēl-niec-isk-s ‘sculptor – sculpturelike’
    f. strād-niek-s – strād-niec-īb-a ‘worker – working class’

Root + ending (root ends in k, g)
Fronting of the final consonant of a root/stem in noun formation is caused by
the endings -e, -is:

(1.30) atsauk-t – atsauc-e ‘to recall – reference’
    sprāg-t – sprādz-e ‘to explode – clip’
    sarg-s – sardz-e ‘watchman – guard’
    pelēk-s – pelēc-is ‘grey – grey animal’
    pusau-g-u – pusaudz-is ‘teenage – teenager’

Consonant cluster alternation occurs if the root of a word ends in two consonants, i.e.,
sequenced double regressive assimilation. The fronting refers to the last consonant
of a root k, ģ, and then consequently these assimilate the preceding consonant (Laua
1997: 94–95; Auziņa 2013b: 95), for example, see the formation of the following
nouns:

(1.31) nk → ņķ slink-s – slink-is ‘lazy – lazy person’
    ng → ņģ rung-a – runģ-el-e ‘club – club (DIM)’
    lk → ļķ vilk-t – vilķ-is ‘drag – corkscrew’

Suffix + ending (suffix ends in k, g)
Fronting of the final consonant of a suffix is conditioned by the endings -e, -is used
in noun formation.

(1.32) gudr-s – gudr-ik-is ‘clever – clever clog’
    skol-niek-s – skol-niec-e ‘schoolboy – schoolgirl’

Inflection
Root + ending (root ends in k, g)
Fronting occurs in the following forms of a verb:
1) the second person singular present tense form that possesses or has possessed
the ending -i

(1.33) INF – PRS 2SG

brauk-t – brauc < *brauc-i ‘to go – (you) go’
klieg-t – kliedz-i < *kliedz-i ‘to shout – (you) shout’

2) the second person singular past tense form

(1.34) INF – PST 2SG

sauk-t – sauc-i ‘to call – (you) called’
lūg-t – lūdz-i ‘to ask – (you) asked’

3) the second person plural imperative mood form

(1.35) INF – IMP 2PL

brauk-t– brauc-iet ‘to go – (you) go’
klieg-t – kliedz-iet ‘to shout – (you) shout’

4) the active voice past participle masculine gender singular nominative case
form

(1.36) INF – PST – PTCP NOM M SG

pirk-t – pirk-u – pirc-is ‘to buy – (I) bought – bought’
aug-t – aug-u – audz-is ‘to grow – (I) grew – grown’

Consonant t alternation

This alternation occurs only in the inflection of the infinitive of the simple verbs
(without a prefix or a suffix) the stem of which ends in t, d. Alternation is caused by
the infinitive endings -t and -ties as well as the conditional mood suffixes -tu and -tos.

Root + ending (root ends in t, d)

(1.37) INF

sis-t < *sit-t ‘to beat’
ves-t < *ved-t ‘to bring’
kris-ties < *krit-ties ‘to drop (REFL)’
mos-ties < *mod-ties ‘to wake (REFL)’

(1.38) COND

sis-tu < *sit-tu ‘would beat’
ves-tu < *ved-tu ‘would bring’
kris-tos < *krit-tos ‘would drop (REFL)’
mos-tos < *mod-tos ‘would wake (REFL)’

The same alternation occurs in past passive participle forms of verbs with roots
ending in t, d in combination with the inflectional suffix -t-:
**Root + suffix** (root ends in \( t, d \))

(1.39) PTCP

\[
\text{sis-}t-s < *\text{sit-}t-s \text{ ‘beaten’} \\
\text{ves-}t-s < *\text{ved-}t-s \text{ ‘brought’}
\]

**Consonant \( d \) alternation**

This alternation is observable only in inflection. It occurs at the junction of the root of conjugation 1 verbs (without a prefix or a suffix) and the suffix \(-\text{dam-}\) of the semi-declinable participle; the root of these verbs ends in \( t, d \):

**Root + suffix** (root ends in \( t, d \))

(1.40) PTCP

\[
\text{siz-}\text{dam-}s < *\text{sit-}\text{dam-}s \text{ ‘beating’} \\
\text{vez-}\text{dam-}s < *\text{ved-}\text{dam-}s \text{ ‘bringing’}
\]

**Consonant \( s \) assimilation of the preceding palatal consonant**

In this case, it is hardly possible to distinguish word formation and inflection because the ending \(-s\) relates to word formation, whereas assimilation occurs only in the masculine singular nominative form. Thus, the ending \(-s\) possesses the allomorph \(-\text{s}\) in Standard Latvian, which is a morphological and morphophonological indicator of declension 1 nouns (see Table 2.3) in the nominative case (and of adjectives and pronouns declined according to this pattern).

**Root + ending** (root ends in \( j, ņ, ļ, (ŗ) \))

The root should end in the palatal consonants \( j, ņ, ļ \)

(1.41) \( vēj-\text{s} < *vēj-\text{s} \text{ ‘wind’} \\
\text{skal-}\text{s} < *\text{skal-}\text{s} \text{ ‘noisy’} \\
\text{viņ-}\text{s} < *\text{viņ-}\text{s} \text{ ‘he’}
\]

This group also contains the words in Standard Latvian with the ending \(-\text{s}\) indicating the earlier palatalization of the final consonant of the root \( r \) (Rudzīte 1993: 325–326), e.g.:

(1.42) \( \text{varš} < \text{var-}\text{s} < *\text{var-}\text{s} \text{ ‘copper’} \\
\text{see also } \text{karš ‘war’, garš ‘tall, long’, kurš ‘who, which’}
\]

**Suffix + ending** (suffix ends in \( ņ \)):

This combination of morphemes occurs only in the masculine gender nouns (1.43a) and adjectives (1.43b) with the suffix \(-\text{in-}\)

(1.43) a. \( \text{dēl-}\text{in-}\text{s} < *\text{dēl-}\text{in-}\text{s} \text{ ‘son (DIM)’} \\
b. \text{maz-}\text{in-}\text{s} < *\text{maz-}\text{in-}\text{s} \text{ ‘small (DIM)’}\)
1.1.2 Interference of morphs

Morph interference is one of the morpheme adaptation types or morphophonological processes that result in the merging of morphs into one indivisible whole. The consequence of the process is the shift of morpheme boundaries and/or phonetic transformation of a morpheme, i.e., allomorphs. This results in the simplification of the morphemic structure of a word / word form (Kalnača 2004: 70). Linguists have termed this phenomenon fusion (or coalescence) (Matthews 1997: 140; Plungian 2000: 53–67, see also Skujiņa 2007: 341). Due to fusion, the borderline between particular phonemes disappears and a new morphological unit is formed (Anttila 1975: 18; Lessau 1994: 366). Thus, interference of morphs is connected with various cases of neighboring morphs merging.

There are three types of morph interference in Latvian:

1) the end of a morph merges with the beginning of the following morph or with the whole morph, e.g., the consonant j causing palatalization

(1.44) NOM SG – GEN SG
brāl-is – brāļ-a <*brāl-j-a ‘brother’

2) morphs merge within the borderlines of a morpheme, e.g., the consonant n alternation

(1.45) INF – PRS
kris-t – krit-u <*kri-n-t-u ‘to fall – (I) fall’

3) the beginning of a morph merges with the end of the preceding morph or with the whole morph

(1.46) a. V – N
apvīt – apīnis <*apvīnis ‘to wind around – hop’

b. V – ADJ
apvelt – apaļš <*apvaļš ‘to roll around – round’

Interference of a root and a suffix / two suffixes

The most frequently observable example of morph interference in Latvian is the palatalization that occurs only in inflection and is connected with the marking of the SG or PL genitive forms, plural paradigm, indirect cases, and the present tense of a verb. This j has historically been a nominal and verb inflection suffix (Endzelins 1981: 416–431, 488–494). Due to phoneme assimilation, the original suffix has merged with the end of a root morph and has caused consonant palatalization within the forms of declension 2 (M), 5, and 6 (both F) nouns as well as within the present tense forms of conjugation 1 and 3 verbs, see Table 1.1 (in detail see Sections 2.1.1 and 2.5.1):
Table 1.1  Examples of palatalization in noun and verb forms

Thus, the two morphs are inseparable because they have merged into one morph creating allomorphs of root or suffix morphemes.

(1.47) a. NOM SG – GEN SG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Palatalization</th>
<th>Nouns (declension)</th>
<th>Verbs (conjugation)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nj &gt; ņ</td>
<td>zirnis (2) ‘pea’</td>
<td>zirņa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>svaine (5) ‘sister-in-law’</td>
<td>zirņu svaiņu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lj &gt; ř</td>
<td>cellis (2) ‘knee’</td>
<td>cela</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mēle (5) ‘tongue’</td>
<td>celu mēļu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pilš (6) ‘castle’</td>
<td>pilšu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sj &gt; š</td>
<td>trusis (2) ‘rabbit’</td>
<td>trūša</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lāse (5) ‘drop’</td>
<td>trūšu lāšu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tāss (6) ‘birch-bark’</td>
<td>trāšu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zj &gt; ž</td>
<td>nazis (2) ‘knife’</td>
<td>naža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vāze (5) ‘vase’</td>
<td>nažu vāžu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cj &gt; č</td>
<td>runcis (2) ‘tomcat’</td>
<td>runča</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prece (5) ‘product’</td>
<td>runču preču</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzj &gt; dz</td>
<td>vadzis (2) ‘peg’</td>
<td>vadža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palodze (5) ‘windowsill’</td>
<td>palodžu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tj &gt; š</td>
<td>zutis (2) ‘eel’</td>
<td>zuša</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>māte (5) ‘mother’</td>
<td>zušu māšu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nots (6) ‘note’</td>
<td>nošu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dj &gt; ž</td>
<td>brīdis (2) ‘moment’</td>
<td>briža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>piegāde (5) ‘delivery’</td>
<td>piegāžu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sirds (6) ‘heart’</td>
<td>siržu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kj &gt; c</td>
<td></td>
<td>saukt (1) ‘to call’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gi &gt; dz</td>
<td></td>
<td>lūgt (1) ‘to ask’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Palatalization has also influenced the neighboring sounds within a word. The progressive assimilation of consonants (celš ‘way’, maziņš ‘small (DIM)’) has been previously analyzed (see Section 1.1.1). The regressive assimilation of consonants and morph interference have originated the allomorphs containing two morphophonemes that differ from the basic morpheme:

(1.48) kausl-is – kaušl-a < *kausl-j-a ‘bully’
This is the palatalization of consonant clusters (ln – lŋ, sn – šŋ, sl – šļ, zl – žļ, zn – žņ, ll – lļ, nn – ņņ, st – š) in the grammatical forms of the nouns of declensions 2, 5, and 6 (Laua 1997: 94–95), e.g.:

(1.49) a. NOM SG – GEN SG (M)
   cīlnis – cīļņa ‘relief’
   zibsnis – zībšņa ‘flash’
   pūslis – pūšļa ‘bladder’
   zizlis – zīšļa ‘wand’

b. NOM SG – GEN PL (F)
   zvaigzne – zvaigžņu ‘star’
   balle – baļļu ‘ball’
   pīne – pīņņu ‘blackhead’
   pāksts – pāķšu ‘pod’

Inflection
Root + suffix (root ends in l, n, s, z, c, dz, t, d)
Palatalization occurs in the following nouns as well as in some pronouns (for palatalization exceptions see Section 2.1.1):

   1) singular genitive of declension 2 (examples see Table 1.1);
   2) plural genitive of declension 5 (examples see Table 1.1);
   3) plural genitive of declension 6 (the root of which ends in t, d, l) (examples see Table 1.1);
   4) all plural cases of declension 2 (see also noun declension Table 2.3, Section 2.1.1);

(1.50) lāc-is ‘bear’ (M)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>lāč-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>lāč-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>lāč-iem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>lāč-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) lāč-iem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>lāč-ös</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>lāč-ī!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.2 The plural declension paradigm of lācis ‘bear’

5) for a portion of declension 1 and 4 nouns (also adjectives and pronouns declined according to these patterns) palatalization functions throughout the declension paradigm as a morphophonological indicator for this declension subtype; its distinctive feature is a final palatal soft stem consonant (see Section 2.1.1):
(1.51) a. declension 1 (M)  
   *ceļ-š* ‘way’  
   *mež-s* ‘forest’  
   *zaļ-š* ‘green’  

b. declension 4 (F)  
   *daļ-a* ‘part’  
   *viņ-a* ‘she’  
   *zaļ-a* ‘green’  

6) palatalization in the pronoun *pats* ‘self’ (declined according to the declension 1 pattern), *pati* ‘self (F)’ (declined according to the declension 4 pattern) marks only indirect case forms, whereas there is no alternation in the nominative (see Section 2.4.8):  

(1.52) *pats* ‘self (M)’, *pati* ‘self (F)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td><em>paš-s, paš-i</em></td>
<td><em>paš-i, paš-as</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td><em>paš-a, paš-as</em></td>
<td><em>paš-u</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td><em>paš-am, paš-ai</em></td>
<td><em>paš-īem, paš-ām</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td><em>paš-u</em></td>
<td><em>paš-us, paš-as</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td><em>(ar) paš-u</em></td>
<td><em>(ar) paš-īem, (ar) paš-ām</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td><em>paš-ā</em></td>
<td><em>paš-os, paš-ās</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.3 The declension paradigm of the pronouns *pats* ‘self (M)’, *pati* ‘self (F)’

Palatalization occurs in verbs of conjugation 1 subclass 2 (Table 1.4) as well as conjugation 3 subclass 2 (Table 1.5) forms of the simple present tense (with the exception of the second person singular form) (see Section 2.5.1).

(1.53) *lauz-t* ‘to break’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS SG</th>
<th>PRS PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>lauž-u</em></td>
<td><em>lauž-am</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>lauž-at</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>lauž</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.4 Present tense paradigm of the verb *lauzt* ‘to break’

(1.54) *gul-ē-t* ‘to lie’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS SG</th>
<th>PRS PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>gul-u</em></td>
<td><em>gul-ām</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>gul-at</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>gul</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.5 Present tense paradigm of the verb *gulēt* ‘to lie’
The verbs of conjugation 1 subclass 2, the root of which ends in \( k \), \( g \), show fronting in the second person singular, as in the verb saukt 'call' (see Section 2.5.1):

\[(1.55) \, tu \, sauc \, \text{‘you call (SG)’}\]

**Suffix + suffix** (suffix ends in \( l \), \( n \), \( t \), \( d \), \( s \), \( z \), \( k \), \( g \))

Morph interference occurs in the following derived words:

1) nouns of declension 2 (M) with the suffixes -iet-, -īt-, -ait-, -ul-, -el-, -ekl/-okl-, -on-, etc. masculine nouns that are in the genitive singular and in the plural of all cases (Table 1.6, see also Table 2.3);

2) nouns of declension 5 (F) with the previously mentioned suffixes have allomorphs in the genitive plural (Table 1.6, see also Table 2.3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Declension 2</th>
<th>Declension 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOM SG</td>
<td>GEN SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iet-</td>
<td>vīr-iet-is</td>
<td>vīr-ieš-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īt-</td>
<td>lāc-īt-is</td>
<td>lāc-īš-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ait-</td>
<td>vīrs-aɪt-is</td>
<td>vīrs-aiš-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ain-</td>
<td>dūr-ain-is</td>
<td>dūr-ain-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-el-</td>
<td>nam-el-is</td>
<td>nam-ēl-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ekl-</td>
<td>kar-ekl-is</td>
<td>kar-ekļ-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-okl-</td>
<td>dziv-okl-is</td>
<td>dziv-okl-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-otn-</td>
<td></td>
<td>lap-otn-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ien-</td>
<td></td>
<td>lāc-ien-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ul-</td>
<td>mil-ul-is</td>
<td>mil-ul-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on-</td>
<td>māk-on-is</td>
<td>māk-on-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-es-</td>
<td>mēn-es-is</td>
<td>mēn-es-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ez-</td>
<td>gliem-ez-is</td>
<td>gliem-ež-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 1.6** Suffix allomorphs of declension 2 and 5 nouns
3) interference of suffix morphs occurs also in the forms of the past active participle; if masculine gender participles have the indefinite ending -is, then palatalization marks the indirect case forms (Table 1.7, see also Table 2.60):

(1.56) kāp-t (INF) – kāp-is (PTCP PST NOM M) ‘climb’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>kāp-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>kāp-uš-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>kāp-uš-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>kāp-uš-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) kāp-uš-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>kāp-uš-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 1.7** Declension paradigm of the past active participle singular forms (indefinite ending)

4) the nominative and indirect case forms (which show palatalization) of the feminine past active participle can take both definite (1.57a) and indefinite (1.57b) endings (full paradigm see in section 2.5.9, Table 2.61):

(1.57) a. indefinite ending
- NOM SG F
  - aug-us-i
- GEN SG
  - aug-uš-as
- DAT SG
  - aug-uš-ai, etc.

b. definite ending
- NOM SG F
  - aug-us-i
- GEN SG
  - aug-uš-ās
- DAT SG
  - aug-uš-ajai, etc.

5) morph interference (palatalization) is also observable in the forms of the present active participle by merging the participle suffix and the former suffix -j- (in detail see Endzelīns 1981: 521–522, see also Section 2.5.9, Tables 2.55 and 2.56), e.g.:

(1.58) a. NOM SG M
  - aug-oš-s ‘growing’

b. NOM SG F
  - aug-oš-a ‘growing’
Morph interference, however, is not observable in all examples of palatalization. If the root of declension 2, 5, and 6 nouns (1.59a) or conjugation 1 verbs (1.59b) ends in \(m, v, p, b\), interference of morphs or fusion does not occur (see also Section 2.1.1):

(1.59) a. NOM SG – GEN SG (declension 2 (M))
   - kurmis – kurmja ‘mole’
   - Raivis – Raivja ‘male’s name’
   - skapis – skapja ‘wardrobe’
   - gulbis – gulbja ‘swan’
   - NOM SG – GEN PL (declensions 5, 6 (F))
   - kalme – kalmju ‘sweet flag’
   - padeve – padevju ‘feeding’
   - atkāpe – atkāpju ‘indention’
   - piekabe – piekabju ‘trailer’
   - zivs – zivju ‘fish’

b. INF – PRS 1SG
   - lemt – lemju ‘to decide – (I) decide’
   - kāpt – kāpju ‘to climb – (I) climb’
   - glābt – glābju ‘to rescue – (I) rescue’

In this case there is neither complete consonant assimilation nor a phonetic allomorph. The result, however, is a different type of allomorphism: the expansion of a morph. This means that labials do not change under the influence of palatalization and that \(j\) is added to them. Even if \(j\) is historically a suffix, it is viewed as the expansion of a root morph in the synchronic description of Latvian (Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 18), i.e., the allomorph of the morpheme \(kurm\)- is \(kurm\)- including the submorph \(j\).

**Word formation**

Palatalization is not widespread in word formation. Normally, it can be seen in those derivatives in which the word formation stem is a word form containing palatalization caused by \(j\). For example, adjectives with the suffix -ain- are formed from the stem of a noun in the plural genitive (Soida 1970: 89; see also Table 2.6):

(1.60) NOM SG – GEN PL – ADJ
   - smīl-s – smīš-u – smīš-ain-s ‘sand – sandy’
   - akmen-s – akmen-u – akmen-ain-s ‘stone – stony’
   - pērl-e – pērl-u – pērl-ain-s ‘pearl – pearly’
   - alksn-is– alksņ-u – alksņ-ain-s ‘alder – area covered with alder trees’

**Root + suffix** (root ends in \(l, n, t, d, s, z\))

Interference of morphs occurs in the previously mentioned words, example (1.51) (see Endzelins 1981: 389–390); these are viewed as simple words in Standard Latvian, e.g.:
(1.61) cel-š <*cel-j-s ‘way’
gal-a <*gal-j-a ‘meat’
viņ-a <*vin-j-a ‘she’
mež-s <*med-j-s ‘forest’
plauš-a <*plaut-j-a ‘lung’
snauz-a <*snaud-j-a ‘drowsy head’

Suffix + suffix (the first suffix ends in l, n, t, d, s, z)
Interference of morphs occurs in the nouns and adjectives that are derived with the help of the suffixes -oņ-, -iņ-, -aļ-, -už-, etc., see also Table 2.6:

(1.62) kauk-t – kauk-on-a <*kauk-on-j-a ‘to howl – howl’
jaun-s – jaun-in-š <*jaun-in-j-s ‘young – young (DIM)’
gald-s – gald-in-š ‘table – table (DIM)’
snaus-t – snaud-al-a <*snaud-al-j-a ‘to doze – drowsy head’
mig-t – mig-už-a <*mig-uz-j-a ‘to fall asleep – drowsy head’

Root and suffix interference involve inflection as well as word formation because the suffix -j- performs both functions simultaneously. The suffix -j- is a word formation tool, but, at the same time, all words are also marked as particular morphological paradigms that are the representatives of nominals and pronouns.

The interference of a root and an infix
An infix is a morpheme that is inserted within a root morpheme (Skujiņa 2007: 156; Kalnača 2004: 25; 2013b: 165), e.g., in Latvian:

(1.63) lip-t – līp-u <*li-n-p-u ‘to stick – (I) stick’
klup-t – klūp-u <*klu-n-p-u ‘to stumble – (I) stumble’
ras-t – [ruodũ] rod-u <*ra-n-d-u ‘to find – (I) find’

Infixes are not viewed as independent morphemes in modern Latvian.

Inflection
Root + infix
Joining of morphs within the boundary of a morpheme, i.e., the interference of a root and infix -n- referred to in Latvian linguistics as the consonant n alternation (Laua 1997: 75–76), is observed to occur only in present tense verb forms (see also Section 2.5.1 and 2.5.3). The verbs formed by the infix -n- display the alternation of a root vowel i – ī, u – ū, a – o [uo] in the present tense and this alternation marks the present tense form of a verb in contrast to the infinitive and other forms, e.g.:

(1.64) kris-t – krit-u <*kri-n-t-u ‘to fall – (I) fall’
zus-t – zūd-u <*zu-n-d-u ‘to disappear – (I) disappear’
plak-t – plok-u [pluokũ] <*plank-u ‘to collapse – (I) collapse’

This change is the result of the fusion of a root and an infix because the infix -n-, due to its tautosyllabic position, has merged with the morph of a root. This invariant of
the morph of a root is in infinitive and past tense forms, whereas the allomorph is in present tense forms.

**Interference of a prefix and a root**

**Word formation**

**Prefix + root**

There are only a few of such cases in Latvian because normally there occur positional phoneme alternations or positional allomorphs at the junction of a prefix and a root. However, morph interference is observable, for example, in such words as *apinis* ‘hop (a plant)’, *apaļš* ‘round’, which are the result of a prefix and root merging:

(1.65)  
\[\text{ap-vi-t} - \text{apin-is} < \text{*ap-vi-n-is} \text{ ‘to wind around – hop’}\]
\[\text{ap-vel-t} - \text{apaļ-š} < \text{*ap-val-š} \text{ ‘to roll around – round’}\]

This process has resulted in the creation of the roots *apin-*, *apaļ-* that function as independent morphemes and serve as source morphemes for other derivatives (Soida 1970: 81–82; see also Kalnača 2004: 76), e.g.:

(1.66)  
\[\text{apaļ-š} \text{ ‘round’} - \text{apaļ-īg-s, apaļ-um-s ‘roundness’}\]
\[\text{apiņ-i} \text{ ‘hops’} - \text{apiņ-ain-s ‘covered with hops’}\]

Similar interference of morphs can be seen in some verbs where the root has merged with the apocopated reduction *s-* , which initially had been the prepositional reflexive element *si-*(in dialects also *sa-, za-*) (Endzelīns 1981: 517; Endzelīns 1982: 454; Metuzāle-Kangere 1985: XXXIII–XXXIV; Rudzīte 1993: 357), e.g.:

(1.67)  
\[\text{izsalkt} < \text{iz-s-alk-t} < \text{*iz-si-alk-t} \text{ ‘to get hungry’}\]
\[\text{pieskarties} < \text{pie-s-kar-ties} < \text{*pie-si-kar-ties} \text{ ‘to touch’}\]
\[\text{noskaisties} < \text{no-s-kais-ties} < \text{*no-si-kais-ties} \text{ ‘to get angry’}\]

New words have been abstracted from the verbs *salkt* ‘to get hungry’, *skart* ‘to touch’, *skaisties* ‘to chafe’ viz. the root morphemes *salk-*, *skar-*, *skais-* that are allomorphs of the morphemes *alk-*, *kar-*, *kais-* (Kalnača 2004: 76).

### 1.1.3 Reduction of the word formation/inflectional stem

Reduction of the word formation/inflectional stem is normally connected with affixation in word formation or inflectional processes. This is one of the morph adaptation types and it is opposite of interfixation (Kalnača 2004: 76). Stem reduction or apocope occurs so to avoid the violation of phonetic rules.

The goal of this reduction is:

1) the avoidance of consonant clusters at morpheme junctions, i.e., the historical deletion of the consonants *t, d, s, z* (Laua 1997: 96);
2) the avoidance of vowel clusters at morpheme junctions.
Avoidance of consonant clusters
The historical deletion of consonants affects the consonants t, d, s, z, if they precede the consonants s, z in word forms or derivatives (in detail see Rudzīte 1993: 351–352; Auziņa 2013b: 94).

Word formation
Formation of nouns with the help of the suffix -šan- from (usually conjugation class 1) verbs, the root of which end in t, d, s, z, resulting in the loss of the final phoneme of the root morph (see also Table 2.6):

(1.68) kris-t < *krit-t – kri-šan-a < *krit-šan-a ‘to fall – falling’
plūs-t < *plūd-t – plū-šan-a < *plūd-šan-a ‘to flow – flowing’
aus-t – au-šan-a < *aus-šan-a ‘to rise – rising’
lauz-t – lau-šan-a < *lauz-šan-a ‘to break – breaking’

The word formation stem of the following verbs is reduced, which includes derivatives with the suffixes -sm- (1.69a), -sl- (1.69b), -m- (1.69c) (Rudzīte 1993: 351–352), e.g.:

(1.69) a. plūs-t < *plūd-t – plū-sm-a < *plūd-sm-a ‘to flow – flow’
jaus-t < *jaut-t – jau-sm-a < *jaut-sm-a ‘to feel – presentiment’
b. pūs-t < *pūt-t – pū-sl-is < *pūt-sl-is ‘to blow – bladder’
mēz-t – mē-sl-i < *mēz-sl-i ‘to sweep – dung’
c. lais-t < *laid-t – lai-m-e < *laid-m-e ‘to let – happiness’

Root + interfix (root ends in t, d, s, z)
If the root of a verb ends in the consonants t, d, s, z, then the interfixes -šļ-, -šņ-, -st-, -žļ-, -žņ- of these derived verbs cause the reduction of a root morph. (in detail see Kalnača 2002: 474–478 and 2004: 77, as well as Section 1.1.4), e.g.:

(1.70) kos-t – ko-(šļ)-ā-t < *kod-(šļ)-ā-t ‘to bite – to chew’
kas-t – ka-(šņ)-ā-t < *kas-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to scratch’
grūs-t – grū-(st)-i-t < *grūd-(st)-i-t ‘to push – to jostle’
zīs-t – zī-(žļ)-ā-t < *zīd-(žļ)-ā-t ‘to suck’
līs-t – lī-(žņ)-ā-t < *līd-(žņ)-ā-t ‘to crawl’

Inflection
Conjugation 1 verbs lose the final phoneme of their root morph if the root ends in t, d, s, z and the simple present tense is formed with the help of the suffix -st- (Rudzīte 1993: 351–352; Kalnača 2013c: 548, see also Table 2.25):

(1.71) kals-t – kal-st-u < *kalt-st-u ‘to dry – (I) dry’
plūs-t – plū-st-u < *plūd-st-u ‘to flow – (I) flow’
aus-t – au-st-u < *aus-st-u ‘to rise – (I) rise’
lūz-t – lū-st-u < *lūz-st-u ‘to break – (I) break’
Avoidance of vowel clusters

Word formation

**Suffix + ending** (suffix ends in a long vowel or diphthong)

Forming nouns from verbs of conjugation 2 and 3 by linking the derivational endings -e, -is to the word formation stem, would result in a vowel cluster at the junction of morphemes. Such a cluster occurs because the infinitive stem of a verb has a vocalic suffix (-ī-, -ē-, -ā-, -o-) or a suffix that ends in a vowel (-inā-). To avoid this vowel cluster, the suffix of the infinitive stem or its part, is reduced (Soida 1977: 112; Kalnača 2013b: 166–167), e.g.:

(1.72) ap-skat-ī-t – ap-skat-e < *ap-skat-ī-e ‘to view – examination’  
ie-cer-ē-t – ie-cer-e < *ie-cer-ē-e ‘to intend – intention’  
pār-zin-ā-t – pār-zin-is < *pār-zin-ā-is ‘to know – manager’  
ap-kalp-o-t – ap-kalp-e < *ap-kalp-o-e ‘to serve – crew’

Inflection

**Suffix + ending** (suffix ends in a long vowel)

In Latvian, avoidance of vowel clusters at the junction of morphemes through the reduction of a word stem occurs in the formation of present tense conjugation 3 verbs. Such inflection-caused stem reduction functions as a marker contrasting present tense and past tense forms (see also Soida 2009: 168). With this, conjugation 3 verbs in the simple present tense morphophonologically differ from the verbs of conjugation 2, as there are no differences between their forms in the infinitive or the past tense (see Section 2.5.1). The root of these verbs ends in a consonant with the word formation suffix being a long vowel or the suffix ending in a long vowel (-ī-, -ē-, -ā-, -inā-). Therefore, the creation of present tense forms by adding the relevant personal endings would result in a vowel cluster, which, however, is avoided by dropping the infinitive suffix or the final vowel of this suffix, as in the verbs pētīt ‘to study’ (Table 1.8) and mēģināt ‘to try’ (Table 1.9).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS SG</th>
<th>PRS PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pēt-u &lt; *pēt-ī-u</td>
<td>pēt-ām &lt; *pēt-ī-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pēt-i &lt; *pēt-ī-i</td>
<td>pēt-āt &lt; *pēt-ī-āt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pēt-a &lt; *pēt-ī-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.8 The present tense forms of the verb pētīt ‘to study’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS SG</th>
<th>PRS PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mēģ-in-u &lt; *mēģ-inā-u</td>
<td>mēģ-in-ām &lt; *mēģ-inā-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mēģ-in-i &lt; *mēģ-inā-i</td>
<td>mēģ-in-āt &lt; *mēģ-inā-āt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>mēģ-in-a &lt; *mēģ-inā-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.9 The present tense forms of the verb mēģināt ‘to try’
1.1.4 Interfixation

Interfixation is one of the methods of morpheme adaptation in Latvian. However, in contrast to the word formation/inflection described in the previous section 1.1.3, stem reduction and vowel or consonant fusion at the junction of morphemes are avoided with the help of a specific affix – an interfix (Kalnača 2004: 78; Skujiņa 2007: 160; Kalnača 2013b: 167).

Avoidance of vowel clusters

**Word formation**

**Root + suffix** (root ends in a monophthong or diphthong; suffixes are vocalic)

In causative verbs and derived iterative verbs, the roots of which end in a monophthong or diphthong, the interfixes -d-, -st-, -ņ- are documented (Soida 2009: 192–203). The function of an interfix is to prevent vowel fusion in derivatives that would occur if a vocalic word formation suffix (-ā-, -ē-, -ī-, -o-, -inā-) were added to the root of a verb (see Skujiņa 2007: 160; see also section 2.0.1), e.g.:

(1.73) lie-t – lie-(d)-ē-t ‘to pour – to leave in the rain’  
šū-t – šū-(d)-inā-t ‘to sew – to have a garment made’  
lie-t – lai-(st)-i-t ‘to pour – to water’  
mī-t – mī-(ņ)-ā-t ‘to tread – to trample’

One verb can have two kinds of interfixed derivatives, e.g.:

(1.74) mī-t – mī-(d)-ī-t, mī-(ņ)-ā-t ‘to tread – to trample’  
tī-t – tī-(st)-i-t, tī-(ņ)-ā-t ‘to wrap – to wrap up’

Some interfixes in Latvian are inserted at the morpheme junction due to analogy, even if they are not required there. Apart from the previously mentioned interfixes, the following interfixes also can occur in this position -šņ-, -šļ-, -žņ-, -žļ-:

(1.75) gul-t – gul-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to lie – to lie around’  
kos-t < *kod-t – ko-(šļ)-ā-t < *kod-(šļ)-ā-t ‘to bite – to chew’  
lis-t < *lid-t – li-(žņ)-ā-t < *lid-(žņ)-ā-t ‘to crawl – to creep’  
zis-t < *zid-t – ūš-(žļ)-ā-t < *zid-(žļ)-ā-t ‘to suck – to suck’

If the root of a verb ends in a consonant, then an interfix is used due to analogy in such derived verbs. Perhaps this is to strengthen the causative / iterative meaning of the derivative in contrast to the source verb, e.g.:

(1.76) dīl-t – del-(d)-ē-t ‘to wear out – to wear out (through use)’  
bēr-t – bār-(st)-i-t ‘to strew – to scatter’  
grim-t – grem-(d)-ē-t ‘to sink – to cause to sink’

There can occur two kinds of iterative derivatives of one verb – one of them with and the other without an interfix.

(1.77) rak-t – rak-(ņ)-ā-t, rak-ā-t ‘to dig – to dig around’  
gul-t – gul-(šņ)-ā-t, gul-ē-t ‘to lie – to lie around’
In this case it is also relevant to consider the morphophonological function of an interfix.

In such cases the type of word formation can be determined by the quality of the final consonant of the root, i.e., either it is a sonorant or an obstruent. If a verb root ends in a sonorant, the derivative possesses either only an interfix (1.78a) or an interfix and apophony (1.78b).

(1.78) a. interfix
   gul-t – gul-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to lie – to lie around’

b. interfix + apophony
   grim-t – grem-(d)-ē-t ‘to sink – to cause to sink’
   vel-t – val-(st)-i-t ‘to roll – to roll back and forth’
   dzer-t – dzir-(d)-inā-t ‘to drink – to give to drink’

If the root ends in the consonants d, t, s, z, then the interfixes -šļ-, -šņ-, -st-, -žļ-, -žņ cause the shortening of the root morph, i.e., the shortening of the derivational stem in the derived verbs:

(1.79) os-t – o-(šņ)-ā-t < *od-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to smell – to sniff’
   kas-t – ka-(šņ)-āt < *kas-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to scratch – to scratch (iter.)’
   grūs-t – grū-(st)-i-t < *grūd-(st)-i-t ‘to push – to jostle’

See also examples (1.75) with the verbs košļāt ‘to chew’, ližņāt ‘to crawl’, zižļāt ‘to suck’.

Opinions differ regarding interfixes in such derived verbs as well as their division into morphemes. For example, Soida (2009: 193) considers that in verbs such as košļāt ‘to chew’, ošņāt ‘to sniff’, zižļāt ‘to suck’, ližņāt ‘to crawl’, etc. there are interfixes -ļ-, -ņ- that have caused the alternation of the final consonant of the source verb stem. Vulāne (1997: 291) is of a similar opinion about, for example, the division of the verb košļāt ‘to chew’ into morphemes: koš-ļ-ā-t. Metuzāle-Kangere (1985: 132) also proposes a similar division for the verb košļāt ‘to chew’ into morphemes, koš-ļ-ā-t, but, she considers -ļ- to be a causative suffix. However, in relation to these derived verbs the historical deletion of the consonants t, d, s, z has been underestimated if, in grammatical forms or during word formation processes, they occur in front of the morphemes that start with s, š (Endzelins 1981: 373–374; Rudzite 1993: 350–352; Laua 1997: 96). In theory, the same alternation might occur in front of morphs starting with z, ž. Therefore, in relation to such verbs, it would be more relevant to consider the interfixes -šļ-, -šņ-, -žļ-, -žņ- and the shortening of word formation/inflectional stems (Kalnača 2004: 79; Kalnača 2013b: 166, 168).

If a verb stem ends in a consonant, then two morphophonological processes occur in the derived word that both relate to the phonetic structure of the end of the verb stem:

1) if the stem of a verb ends in a sonorant, then the morphophonological process during word formation involves either only an interfix or the vocalic alternation of the stem together with an interfix (see examples (1.78));
2) if the stem of a verb ends in an obstruent, then the morphophonological process during word formation involves the loss of the final consonant of the stem together with an interfix (see examples (1.79)).

**Inflection**

**Suffix + ending** (the suffix is a long vowel or diphthong; the ending starts with a vowel)

The interfix *-j-* is used in the formation of the person forms in the simple present and past of conjugation 2 verbs in order to avoid vowel clusters at the junction of the suffix and ending (Table 1.10; see also Section 2.5.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS SG</th>
<th>PRS PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>vēr-o-(j)-u &lt; *vēr-o-u</td>
<td>vēr-o-(j)-am &lt; *vēr-o-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>vēr-o-ø-ø &lt; *vēr-o-(j)-i &lt; *vēr-o-i</td>
<td>vēr-o-(j)-at &lt; *vēr-o-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>vēr-o-ø-ø &lt; *vēr-o-(j)-a &lt; *vēr-o-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.10  The verb vērot ‘to watch’ person forms in the present and past

The interfix *-j-* occurs in the past tense forms of conjugation 3 verbs: see the verb pētīt ‘to study’ (Table 1.11; see also Section 2.5.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PST SG</th>
<th>PST PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pēt-i-(j)-u &lt; *pēt-i-u</td>
<td>pēt-i-(j)-ām &lt; *pēt-i-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pēt-i-(j)-i &lt; *pēt-i-i</td>
<td>pēt-i-(j)-āt &lt; *pēt-i-āt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pēt-i-(j)-a &lt; *pēt-i-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.11  The verb pētīt ‘to study’ person forms in the past

The description of the linguistic feature *-j-* is approached differently in Latvian linguistics. In Latvian synchronic morphology, *-j-* is described as a suffix and is also viewed as such in the present grammar book (Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 214; Paegle 2003: 98–99; Kalnača 2014: 79).

**Avoidance of consonant clusters** with the help of an interfix occurs only in inflection in Latvian.

**Root + suffix** (root ends in consonants s, z, t, d)

Verbs (conjugation 1), the stems of which end in s, z, t, d, have the interfix *-i-* in their future tense form. It is inserted at the junction of morphemes to avoid the formation of a consonant cluster (Paegle 2003: 100; Kalnača 2013b: 169, see also Section 2.5.3):
1.2 The morphophonological functions of vowel alternations

In Latvian, the morphophonological functions of vowel alternations are associated with two different processes:

1) apophony (or ablaut) (1.81a);
2) metaphony (or umlaut) involving the vowels e, ē (1.81b)

(1.81) a. vilkt – velku ‘to pull – (I) pull’
    b. nesu [næsːû] – nesu [nesːû] ‘(I) carry – (I) carried’

These alternations occur at morpheme boundaries and are not to be associated with phenomena resulting from morphological junction: phoneme alternation at a morph boundary, interference of morphs, interfixation, or reduction of the stem.

Though the umlaut involving e, ē is positionally conditioned, the way in which it manifests in Latvian has a direct connection with the morphophonological functions seen in word formation and inflection (Kalnača 2004: 82). The umlaut involving the vowels e, ē is an example of regressive assimilation at a distance.

Consonant n alternation can also be analyzed as a morphophonological vowel alternation. In modern Latvian, this alternation appears in verbs as i – ī, u – ū, a – o [uo]:

(1.82) krist – krītu ‘to fall – (I) fall’
    just – jūtu ‘to feel – (I) feel’
    rak-t – [ruokû] roku ‘to dig – (I) dig’

As the source of this alternation is morph interference, i.e., the merger of a root and infix, it is discussed in Section 1.1.2.

1.2.1 Apophony

Apophony (also ablaut) is a morphophonological vowel alternation inherited from Proto-Indo-European, which manifests itself in word formation and inflection (e.g., Matthews 1997: 2; Crystal 2000: 173; Skujiņa 2007: 226).

In Latvian, apophony can be divided into two categories according to the way in which it manifests and its function:

1) quantitative apophony;
2) qualitative apophony.

In Latvian, apophony is typically a segmental phenomenon. Therefore, all morphemes where apophony is possible are allomorphs. Apophony occurs most often
in root morphemes, less often in suffixes. This grammar examines apophony in root morphemes, as examples of apophony in suffixes are found more often in dialects rather than in Standard Latvian (for more see Kalnača 2004: 83).

There are situations where apophony in a root morpheme is supplemented with metatony (example (1.83)); however, due to the limitations in the scope of this grammar, these situations are not discussed here (for more see Kalnača 2004: 104, 2013b: 179).

(1.83) smiet [smiēˀt] – smaidīt [smɑ̃ːdiːt] ‘to laugh – to smile’

**Word formation** (qualitative as well as quantitative apophony)

V–N

(1.84) **e-series**

svēr-t – svar-s, svir-a ‘to weigh – weight, lever’
cel-t – kal-n-s, cil-n-is ‘to build – hill, small rise’
vel-t – val-n-is, vil-n-is, vāl-s ‘to roll – dam, wave, (fog) bank’
zel-t – zāl-e ‘to flourish – grass’
šķel-t – skal-s, šķil-a ‘to split – splinter, chip’

(1.85) **i-series**

mīg-t – mieg-s ‘to fall asleep – sleep’
snīg-t – snieg-s ‘to snow – snow’

(1.86) **u-series**

grau-t – grav-a ‘to erode, destroy – ravine’
krau-t – krav-a ‘to load – load’
jau-t – jav-a ‘to make dough – plaster’

V–ADJ

(1.87) **e-series**

zel-t – zaļ-š, zil-s ‘to flourish – green, blue’

(1.88) **i-series**

lip-t – laip-n-s ‘to stick to – friendly’
stig-t – staig-n-s ‘to sink in – swampy’
mīg-t – maig-s ‘to fall asleep – gentle’

(1.89) **u-series**

juk-t – jauk-s ‘to become muddled – nice’

V–V

**Intransitive verb – transitive verb**

The only means for word formation is apophony:

(1.90) **e-series**

bir-t – bēr-t ‘to fall – to pour’
mirk-t – mērk-t ‘to become wet – to soak’
šķil-t – šķel-t ‘to spark – to split’
i-series
\begin{align*}
\text{iī-t} & \quad \text{lie-t} \quad \text{‘to flow – to pour’} \\
\text{lik-t} & \quad \text{liek-t} \quad \text{‘to bend – to (cause to) bend’} \\
\text{šēkt} & \quad \text{šēkset} \quad \text{‘to dissolve – to squander’}
\end{align*}

u-series
\begin{align*}
\text{žū-t} & \quad \text{žau-t} \quad \text{‘to dry – to (cause to) dry’} \\
\text{grū-t} & \quad \text{grau-t} \quad \text{‘to collapse – to erode, destroy’} \\
\text{juk-t} & \quad \text{jauk-t} \quad \text{‘to become muddled – to muddle’} \\
\text{ruk-t} & \quad \text{rauk-t} \quad \text{‘to shrink, dwindle – to reduce meshes (when knitting)’}
\end{align*}

Non-causative verb – causative verb
The means for word formation are apophony and suffixation:

1.93 e-series
\begin{align*}
\text{dil-t} & \quad \text{del-(d)-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to wear out – to wear out (through use)’}
\end{align*}

1.94 i-series
\begin{align*}
\text{dīg-t} & \quad \text{diedz-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to sprout – to (cause to) sprout’} \\
\text{dzī-t} & \quad \text{dzie-(d)-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to heal – to (cause to) heal, cure’}
\end{align*}

1.95 u-series
\begin{align*}
\text{kus-t} & \quad \text{kaus-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to melt – to (cause to) melt’} \\
\text{pluk-t} & \quad \text{plauc-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to hurt from scalding – to scald’}
\end{align*}

Semelfactive verb – iterative verb
The means for word-formation to express the contrast between non-frequentative and frequentative verbs are:

1) apophony and suffixation:

1.96 e-series
\begin{align*}
\text{nes-t} & \quad \text{nēs-ā-t} \quad \text{‘to carry – to carry around’} \\
\text{vilk-t} & \quad \text{valk-ā-t} \quad \text{‘to put on – to wear’}
\end{align*}

1.97 i-series
\begin{align*}
\text{steig-t} & \quad \text{staig-ā-t} \quad \text{‘to rush – to walk’} \\
\text{kliet} & \quad \text{klaig-ā-t} \quad \text{‘to shout – to clamor’}
\end{align*}

1.98 u-series
\begin{align*}
\text{žau-t} & \quad \text{žāv-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to dry – to dry, smoke (e.g., fish)’} \\
\text{rau-t} & \quad \text{rauv-ē-t} \quad \text{‘to yank – to weed’}
\end{align*}

2) apophony, suffixation together with interfixation:

1.99 e-series
\begin{align*}
\text{vel-t} & \quad \text{val-(st)-i-t} \quad \text{‘to roll – to roll back and forth’} \\
\text{šēk-l-t} & \quad \text{skal-(d)-i-t} \quad \text{‘to split – to chop (e.g., firewood)’}
\end{align*}

1.100 i-series
\begin{align*}
\text{lie-t} & \quad \text{lai-(st)-i-t} \quad \text{‘to pour – to water (e.g., a garden)’} \\
\text{smie-t} & \quad \text{smai-(d)-i-t} \quad \text{‘to laugh – to smile’}
\end{align*}
ADJ–N

(1.101) e-series

\textit{smalk-s – smelk-n-e} ‘fine – fine-textured material’
\textit{dzil-š – dzil-e, dzel-m-e} ‘deep – depths, abyss’

In Latvian, apophony is only found in verb inflection. It does not occur in noun or adjective paradigms.

\textbf{Verb forms}

Qualitative as well as quantitative apophony are found in the tense forms of conjugation 1 verbs.

\textbf{Qualitative apophony in present tense forms}

\textbf{INF – PRS}

(1.102) e-series for a portion of conjugation 1 subclass 2 verbs

\textit{vilk-t – velk-u} ‘to pull – (I) pull’
\textit{krims-t – kremt-u} ‘to gnaw – (I) gnaw’
\textit{pirk-t – pērk-u < *perk-u} ‘to buy – (I) buy’
\textit{cirs-t – cērt-u < *cert-u} ‘to chop – (I) chop’

(1.103) i-series

\textit{lik-t – liek-u} ‘to put – (I) put’
\textit{stig-t – stieg-u} ‘to get stuck – (I) get stuck’

\textbf{Quantitative apophony in past tense forms}

\textbf{INF – PST}

(1.104) e-series

\textit{cel-t – cēl-ām} ‘to build – (we) built’
\textit{dzer-t – dzēr-ām} ‘to drink – (we) drank’
\textit{lem-t – lēm-ām} ‘to decide – (we) decided’
\textit{šķir-t – šķīr-ām} ‘to separate – (we) separated’
\textit{vil-t – vīl-ām} ‘to deceive – (we) deceived’

(1.105) i-series

\textit{lie-t – lēj-ām} ‘to pour – (we) poured’
\textit{smie-t – smēj-ām} ‘to laugh – (we) laughed’
\textit{riet-t – rēj-ām} ‘to bark – (we) barked’

(1.106) u-series

\textit{stum-t – stūm-ām} ‘to push – (we) pushed’
\textit{krau-t – krāv-ām} ‘to load – (we) loaded’
\textit{žau-t – žāv-ām} ‘to dry – (we) dried’
1.2.2 Metaphony

Metaphony refers to progressive or regressive vowel assimilation within a word or word form (Skujiņa 2007: 230). In Latvian, metaphony can be seen in the umlaut which occurs for the vowels e, ē – an example of regressive vowel assimilation.

The quality – open [æ], [æː] or close [e], [eː] – of e, ē, which is conditioned by their position, creates allomorphs because of word formation and inflection. Modern Latvian also has several exceptions for which position is no longer important; these are the so-called historical rules for the pronunciation of e, ē. These rules also reflect the connection between the pronunciation of e, ē and morphological paradigms. In general, it can be said that the quality of e, ē in Latvian depends on morphophonological principles – adjustments in the pronunciation of e, ē are conditioned by morpheme combination during word formation and inflection (Kalnača 2004: 85).

The pronunciation of e, ē in Latvian is associated with the following types of morpheme combination:

1) root + suffix;
2) root (also stem) + ending;
3) suffix + suffix;
4) suffix + ending;
5) root + root (also stem + stem).

In the case of metaphony, morphemes in Latvian have allomorphs containing morphophonemes (Kalnača 2004: 85):

(1.107) a. {Æ}–{E} meln-s – meln-is ‘black – black horse’
   b. {Æː}–{Eː} lēn-s – lēn-īg-s ‘slow – gentle’
   c. {E}–{Æ} cep-t – cep-um-s ‘to bake – biscuit’
   d. {Eː}–{Æː} ēs-t – ēd-āj-s ‘to eat – eater’

Word formation

Root + suffix

If the root of the base word contains [æ], [æː], but the suffix contains a front vowel or diphthong, then the root allomorph contains [e], [eː]:

   c. vēl-s [væːls] – vēl-īn-s [veːliːns] ‘late – belated’
   d. meln-s [mælns] – meln-ē-t [melnet] ‘black – to show black’
   e. lepn-s [læpns] – lepn-īg-s [lepniks] ‘proud – arrogant’

If the root of the base word contains [e], [eː], but the suffix contains a velar vowel or diphthong, then the root allomorph contains [Æ], [Æː]:

   c. cep-t [sept] – cep-um-s [cæpˑums] ‘to bake – biscuit’
d. ves-t [vest] – ved-um-s [vædums] ‘to transport – transportation’
e. džer-t [dċert] – dzēr-āj-s [dæːraːjs] ‘to drink – drunkard’
f. ņem-t [ņemt] – nēm-āj-s [næːmaːjs] ‘to take – taker, holder’
g. brēk-t [brekt] – brēk-ā-t [braːkɑːt] ‘to cry – to clamor repeatedly’
h. lēk-t [lekt] – lēk-ā-t [læːkɑːt] ‘to jump – to jump about’
i. redz-ē-t [redzɛt] – redz-okl-is [rædzʊoklɪs] ‘to see – pupil (of the eye)’

As noted by Laua (1997: 124), in Standard Latvian two different pronunciations are possible for e, ē – [e], [eː] or [æ], [æː] – in forms derived with the suffixes -ain-, -āj-, -ēn-, see examples (1.109a-b).

**Root (i.e., stem) + ending**

If the root/stem of the base word contains [æ], [æː], but the ending of the derived form contains a front vowel (i.e., the endings -is, -e), then the root allomorph contains [e], [eː]:

(1.110) vec-s [væʦs] – vec-is [vetsːĭs] ‘old – old man’
    meln-s [mælns] – meln-is [melnĭs] ‘black – black horse’

If the root/stem of the base word contains [e], [eː], but the ending of the derived form is -s <*-as, -a, then the root allomorph contains [æ], [æː]:

(1.111) brēk-t [brekt] – brēk-a [braːkɑ̆] ‘to cry – clamor’
   iet-tec-ē-t [iɛtɛʦeːt] – iet-tek-a [iɛtɛkɑ̆] ‘to flow into – mouth of a river’
   redz-ē-t [redzɛt] – rēg-s [ræːks] ‘to see – phantom’

**Suffix + suffix**

If the suffix of the base word contains [e], [eː], but the suffix of the derived form contains a velar vowel or diphthong, then the allomorph of the suffix of the base word contains [æ], [æː]:

   mell-en-e [mɛlːenɛ]– mell-en-āj-s [mælænæːjs]/[mælənæːjs] ‘bilberry – bilberry bush’

If the suffix of the base word contains [æ], [æː], but the subsequent suffix contains a palatal vowel or diphthong, then the allomorph of the suffix of the base word contains [e], [eː]:

(1.113) putn-ēn-s [putnæːns] – putn-ēn-iņ-š [putniņiɲʃ] ‘fledgling – fledgling (DIM)’
   var-en-s [varæːns]– var-en-ib-a [varenaibɑ̆] ‘mighty – might’
Suffix + ending
The form that allomorphs of nominal suffixes take in Latvian depends on
the subsequent ending, for example, the variants of the suffix -en- [æn] and [en], i.e.,
-en- + -s <*-as, -a and -en- + -is, -e:

(1.114) adjectives
  var-en-s [vɑræns] ‘mighty’
  gar-en-a [gɑɾænɑ̆] ‘longish’

(1.115) nouns
  tīt-en-īs [tītēnis] ‘twining plant’
  lāc-en-e [lɑːʦeːnɛ] ‘cloudberry’

contain [e], as earlier the nominative ending may have been *-is following the example

Inflection
Root (i.e., stem) + ending
Nouns
The pronunciation of e, ē also distinguishes declensions 1 and 6. The difference in
the pronunciation of e, ē occurs in the nominative singular: [æ], [æː] for declension
1 nouns, [e], [eː] for declension 6 nouns, these pronunciations are maintained across
the entire paradigm. Earlier, each declension had a unique nominative ending whose
vowel also determined the pronunciation of e, ē in the root: -s <*-as for declension 1,
-s <*-is for declension 6. The difference in the pronunciation of e, ē is the only
formal characteristic distinguishing these declensions, as otherwise the nominative
is pronounced the same for both declensions, though every group of roots does have
its own unique system of endings in the rest of the paradigm.

The quality (open or close) of e, ē in suffixes is also a distinctive feature
distinguishing declension 1 and 2:

(1.116) declension 1 (NOM -s <*-as)
  zob-en-s [zu̯obæns] ‘sword’
  spilv-en-s [spilvæns] ‘pillow’
  dib-en-s [dibæns] ‘backside, posterior’

(1.117) declension 2 (NOM -s <*-is, GEN -s <*-es <*-ēs, i.e., [eːs])
  ūd-en-s [uːdens] ‘water’
  rud-en-s [rudens] ‘autumn’
  zib-en-s [zibens] ‘lightning’

Some declension 6 nouns containing an open e, ē in the root (i.e., stem) have a marked
plural genitive, which differs from the rest of the paradigm and contains a close e, ē
(e.g., Laua 1997: 122–123; Markus 2013: 128):
(1.118) \( \text{Cēs-is} \) [ʦeːsĭs] – \( \text{Cēs-u} \) [ʦæːsŭ] ‘Cēsis (city in Latvia) – Cēsis GEN PL’
\( \text{debes-is} \) [debesĭs] – \( \text{debes-u} \) [dæbæsŭ] ‘sky – sky GEN PL’

In Standard Latvian, the following pronunciations are also possible for the plural genitive forms of these words: [ʦeːsŭ], [debesŭ] (Laua ibid.; Markus ibid.).

Metaphony in verbs has the following functions:

1) distinguishing present and past tense stems for conjugation 1 subclass 1 verbs – open \( e \) has been generalized for the present tense, close \( e \) for the past tense (Table 1.12):

(1.119) \( \text{nes-t} \) ‘to carry’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \text{nes-u} ) [næsːŭ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \text{nes} ) [næs]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>( \text{nes} ) [næs]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.12 The present and past tense forms of the verb \( \text{nest} \) ‘to carry’

2) marking the second person singular present tense form for conjugation 1 subclass 1 verbs such as \( \text{nest} \) ‘to carry’, \( \text{vest} \) ‘to transport’, \( \text{mest} \) ‘to throw’, \( \text{ēst} \) ‘to eat’, and others; open \( e \) is used across the entire paradigm with the exception of the second person singular form (see Table 1.12); much the same is the case for conjugation 3 subclass 2 verbs such as \( \text{cerēt} \) ‘to hope’, \( \text{derēt} \) ‘to fit’, \( \text{peldēt} \) ‘to swim’, \( \text{vēlēt} \) ‘to wish’, \( \text{pētīt} \) ‘to study’, \( \text{mērīt} \) ‘to measure’, and so on (Table 1.13):

(1.120) \( \text{cer-ē-t} \) ‘to hope’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>( \text{cer-u} ) [ʦærŭ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \text{cer-i} ) [ʦerɪ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>( \text{cer} ) [ʦær]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.13 The present tense forms of the verb \( \text{cerēt} \) ‘to hope’

\(^1\) \( \text{Cēsis} \) and \( \text{debesis} \) are pluralia tantum nouns in Latvian. Therefore, the only genitive form used for these nouns is the plural form.
3) marking the second person plural imperative mood form with close e, ē in conjugation 1 and 3 verbs distinguishing these from the second person plural indicative mood forms containing open e, ē:

(1.121) INF – IND 2PL – IMP 2PL
   a. *nes-t* ‘to carry’ – *nes-at* [næsːɑ̆t] – *nes-iet* [nesiɛt]
   b. *redz-ē-t* ‘to see’ – *redz-at* [rædzkɑ̆t] – *redz-iet* [redzɪɛt]
   c. *pēt-i-t* ‘to study’ – *pēt-āt* [pæːtɑːt] – *pēt-iet* [pɛtɪɛt]

4) distinguishing the conditional mood with open e, ē in the root (i.e., stem) for verbs in all conjugations in contrast to the close e, ē in the infinitive, though both conditional mood forms are derived from the infinitive root:

(1.122) INF – COND
   a. *nes-t* ‘to carry’ [nest] – *nes-tu* [næstʊ]
   b. *bēr-t* ‘to pour’ [beːrt] – *bēr-tu* [bæːrtʊ]
   c. *redz-ē-t* ‘to see’ [redzɛːt] – *redz-ē-tu* [rædzæːtʊ]
   d. *mīl-ē-t* ‘to love’ [miːleːt] – *mīl-ē-tu* [miːlæːtʊ]
2. MORPHOLOGY

2.0 Introductory remarks

The chapter on Morphology consists of eleven sections: Introductory remarks with subsections on morphemics, principles of word formation, inflection and word class (part-of-speech) classification, are followed by ten individual sections on word classes (one for each word class). Each opens with a definition of the word class followed by an overview of typical syntactic functions, semantics and, where possible, a summary of the main models of word formation. Sections dealing with declinable (inflected) word classes (nouns, adjectives, numerals, pronouns, and verbs) also contain detailed descriptions of grammatical categories and grammatical forms.

In this grammar, the term ‘grammatical (i.e., morphological) category’ refers to a system of grammatical elements mutually contrasted in terms of one and the same feature and expressed by similar means (see Paulauskienė 1994: 24; Ambrazas 1997: 91). The term ‘grammatical (i.e., morphological) paradigm’ refers to a set of grammatical forms used to express certain grammatical meanings (Matthews 1997: 263; Skujiņa 2007: 241; Trask 2007: 202–203).

2.0.1 Morphemics

A morpheme is the smallest segmentable meaningful unit of a language (Kalnača 2004: 9; 2013a: 45, see also Haspelmath, Sims 2010: 14; Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 2). Morphemes cannot be further divided into parts without loss of meaning; other than that, they function as syntactic objects or units (Embick 2015: 1) in the language system, combining with other morphemes in the processes of inflection and word formation. Morphemes are traditionally classified into lexical morphemes, i.e., roots, and grammatical morphemes, i.e., affixes.

Latvian has both monomorphemic (2.0.1) and polymorphemic (2.0.2) words and word forms.
(2.0.1) a. te ‘here’, uz ‘to’, tikai ‘just’, bet ‘but’
   b. māt ‘mother!’ (VOC SG F), tēv ‘father!’ (VOC SG M), nāc ‘come’
      (PRS 2SG), dzied ‘sings / sing’ (PRS 3)

(2.0.2) a. saul-e ‘sun’, dien-in-a ‘day’, at-nāk-t ‘to come’, māj-dzīv-niek-s ‘house pet’
   b. up-ē ‘river’ (LOC SG F), liel-āk-s ‘larger’ (CMP NOM SG M), dzied-ā-š-u ‘will sing’ (FUT 1 SG), iz-las-ī-j-us-i ‘read’ (PTCP PST ACT NOM SG F)

Depending on their position relative to the root and other morphemes, affixes are divided into subcategories:

1) **prefixes** are affixes attached before a root

(2.0.3) ie-zal-š ‘slightly green’, uz-kāp-t ‘to climb’

2) **postfixes** are affixes placed after a root;

3) **interfixes** are affixes occurring either between two roots or between a root and a suffix, i.e., in between two morphemes; unlike other affixes, interfixes do not have semantic value and are only used as linking elements (see, for example, Soida 1970; Matthews 1997: 182; Spencer 2001: 226–227; Kalnača 2004: 20–23), e.g., internal inflection in compounds (2.0.4a), elements preventing unpronounceable sound clusters in verbal derivation (2.0.4b) and inflection (2.0.4c) (see Section 1.1.4).

(2.0.4) a. liel-(s)-kung-s ‘lord’
   liet-(us)-sarg-s ‘umbrella’
   galv-(as)-seg-a ‘headgear’
   b. kau-t ‘to slaughter’ – kau-(st)-i-t ‘to hit a few times’
   li-t ‘to rain’ – li-(ņ)-ā-t ‘to drizzle (of rain)’
   mi-t ‘to tread’ – mi-(d)-i-t ‘to stamp, trample’
   c. grauz-t ‘to nibble’ – grauz-(i)-š-u (FUT 1SG)
   plēs-t ‘to rip, tear’ – plēs-(i)-š-u (FUT 1SG)

Latvian has two kinds of postfixes:

1) **suffixes**, occurring after a root, sometimes in sequences

(2.0.5) a. gar-en-s ‘elongated’
   kur-tuv-e ‘furnace’
   og-ul-āj-s ‘berry bush, berry field’
   b. lab-āk-s ‘better’
   sie-š-u ‘will tie’ (FUT 1SG)
   cel-t-s ‘built’ (PTCP PST PASS NOM SG M)

2) **endings** – word-final affixes, occurring after a root or other suffixes

(2.0.6) a. dien-a ‘day’
   nam-s ‘house’
   klep-us ‘cough’
   pried-it-e ‘little pine tree’
In Latvian morphology, a word (2.0.7a) or a word form (2.0.7b) minus the ending is called a stem:

(2.0.7) a. **dien-a** ‘day’
   - **vērt-ig-s** ‘valuable’
   - **ie-zil-gan-s** ‘slightly bluish, with a bluish tint’

b. **lab-ajam** ‘good’ (ADJ DEF DAT SG M)
   - **gudr-āk-s** ‘cleverer’
   - **pār-baud-ī-s-im** ‘will check’ (FUT 1PL)

Depending on the morphemic composition of a word (2.0.8a) or a word form (2.0.8b), stems may be

1) simple – identical to the root

(2.0.8) a. **saul-e** ‘sun’
   - **zaļ-š** ‘green’
   - **aug-t** ‘to grow’

b. **nam-ā** ‘house’ (LOC SG)
   - **lab-ajai** ‘good’ (ADJ DEF DAT SG F)
   - **nāk-am** ‘come’ (PRS 1PL)

2) derivative – comprising a root and any number of inflectional or derivational affixes other than endings

(2.0.9) a. **aiz-kar-s** ‘curtain’
   - **mier-ig-s** ‘calm’
   - **pa-dzied-ā-t** ‘to sing a little’

b. **lab-āk-s** ‘better’
   - **vis-lab-āk-ais** ‘best’
   - **pār-dom-ā-š-u** ‘will think it over, will change my mind’ (FUT 1SG)

3) compound – in words (2.0.10a) or word forms (2.0.10b) containing at least two roots

(2.0.10) a. **dien-nakt-s** ‘twenty-four-hour period’
   - **ait-kop-is** ‘sheep-farmer’
   - **zil-zaļ-š** ‘blue-green’

b. **jāņ-og-ās** ‘currants’ (LOC PL)
   - **mier-piln-ajai** ‘peaceful’ (ADJ DEF DAT SG F)
   - **zaļ-gan-pel-ēk-ajā** ‘greenish grey’ (ADJ DEF LOC SG)

In addition, Latvian also has **circumfixes** – affixes made up of two separate parts enclosing the root without affecting its integrity (see, e.g., Malkiel 1978: 145; Kalnača 2004: 23–25; Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 3–4; Bauer 2017: 127). The first part of
a circumfix usually attaches before the root or stem of a word, while the second part is placed at the end of a word or word form. Both elements act together to realize a certain grammatical or lexical meaning neither can have in isolation. For example, circumfixes consisting of a prefix and a reflexive ending are used to derive verbs referring to sudden, unexpected actions (2.0.11a) or actions done to excess (2.0.11b) (see Section 2.5.10):

(2.0.11) a. sāp-ē-t – ie-sāp-ē-ties ‘to ache – to ache suddenly and briefly’
    klieg-t – ie-klieg-ties ‘to scream – to cry out’
    niez-ē-t – ie-niez-ē-ties ‘to itch – to begin to itch’
    b. ēs-t – pār-ēs-ties ‘to eat – to overeat’
    brīs-t – no-brīs-ties ‘to wander – to wander to exhaustion’
    gul-ē-t – aiz-gul-ē-ties ‘to sleep – to oversleep’

Circumfixes also occur in noun derivation where they are made up of a prefix and a declension-altering ending (Kalnača 2004: 23–25; see also Section 2.1.5 on preposition and noun compounding).

(2.0.12) a. gald-s – pa-gald-e ‘table – space under a table’
    b. durv-is – aiz-durv-e ‘door – space behind a door’
    c. vakar-s – no-vakar-e ‘evening – late afternoon’
    d. krest-s – pie-krest-e ‘coast – coastal area’

Inflectional circumfixes are used in constructing the superlative forms of adjectives (Kalnača 2004: 25). In Latvian, adjective gradation is sequential (see Section 2.2.2 for details) – the comparative degree is formed by attaching the suffix -āk- to the positive stem, while the superlative degree is derived by adding the prefix vis- and the definite ending, i.e., a circumfix, to the comparative stem:

(2.0.13) āтр-s – āтр-āk-s – vis-āтр-āk-ais ‘quick – quicker – quickest’

Finally, Latvian has inflectional zero-morphs – missing elements in inflectional paradigms or, in other words, missing overt markers of certain grammatical forms (Matthews 1997: 409). Depending on the type of inflectional elements that are missing, these are:

1) zero-endings – the most common type of zero-morphs in Latvian, occurring, e.g., in the present-tense second-person singular (2.0.14a) and third-person singular and plural (2.0.14b) of verbs (see Sections 2.5.1, 2.5.3 on the present-tense forms of verbs), as well as in the vocative case form of declension 1, 4, and 5 nouns (2.0.14c) (see Section 2.1.1 on the vocative case forms of nouns)

(2.0.14) a. PRS 2SG sit-Ø ‘hit’, ar-Ø ‘plough’, lej-Ø ‘pour’
    b. PRS 3 sit-Ø ‘hits / hit’, ar-Ø ‘ploughs / plough’, lej-Ø ‘pours / pour’
    c. VOC SG tēv-Ø ‘father!’, mās-Ø ‘sister!’, māt-Ø ‘mother!’

2) zero-suffixes; e.g., in the second-person singular and third-person singular and plural of conjugation 2 verbs where the present-tense
marking suffix \(-j\)- and the ending \(-i\) (PRS 2SG) and \(-a\) (PRS 3) are substituted by zero-morphs

(2.0.15) a. PRS 2SG \(dej-o-o-o\) ‘dance’
       b. PRS 3 \(dej-o-o-o\) ‘dances / dance’

Another useful distinction is based on the functions of affixes in the language system:

1) derivational affixes are used to derive new words

(2.0.16) a. prefixes
       vec-s – \(pa-vec-s\) ‘old – oldish’
       li-t – \(sa-li-t\) ‘to rain – to get wet in the rain’

b. suffixes
       nes-t – nes-\(\dot{e}j\)-s ‘to carry – carrier’
       zil-s– zil-\(\dot{g}an\)-s ‘blue – bluish’
       brauk-t – brauk-\(\dot{a}\)-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive – to go (in a vehicle),
       drive continuously, regularly; to drive around’

c. endings
       aug-t – aug-s ‘to grow – plant (N)’
       rag-s – radz-e ‘horn – spike’
       meln-s – meln-\(\dot{i}s\) ‘black – black horse’

2) inflectional affixes are used for grammatical forms of existing lexemes

(2.0.17) a. endings
       māj-a ‘house’ – māj-\(ai\) (DAT SG), māj-\(ā\) (LOC SG), māj-\(ām\) (DAT PL)

b. suffixes
       lab-s – lab-\(āk\)-s ‘good – better’
       skrie-t – skrie-\(n\)-u ‘to run – (I) run’
       nāk-t ‘to come’ – nāk-\(dam\)-s (semi-declinable PTCP NOM SG M)

c. prefixes
       lab-s – lab-\(āk\)-s – vis-\(lab\)-\(āk\)-ais ‘good – better – best’

Both root and affix morphemes can have allomorphs – phonetically or structurally conditioned variants of morphemes (see Section 1.0.1 for a detailed discussion).

2.0.2 Word formation

Word formation is a process whereby new words are formed from existing words and stems, using the means, methods, and models of word formation available in a language (see, e.g., Skujiņa 2007: 429; Veisbergs 2013: 5).

The principal means of word formation in Latvian are affixes – prefixes, suffixes, and endings (2.0.18). In some cases, affixation is accompanied by apophony (2.0.19) (see also Section 1.2.1).

(2.0.18) a. sārt-s – \(ie-sārt\)-s ‘rosy – slightly rosy’
       \(ie-t\) – \(ie-ie-t\) ‘to go – to go in’
b. nam-s – nam-īn-š ‘house – house (DIM)’
   aug-t – audz-ē-t ‘to grow (no object) – to grow (transitive)’ cultivate’
   skrie-t – skrie-šan-a ‘to run – running (action noun)’

(2.0.19) vēr-t – vār-t-i ‘to open – gate’
   klieg-t – klaig-ā-t ‘to shout – to clamor’
   dzīl-š – dzel-m-e ‘deep – abyss’

(2.0.20) a. lietus sargs – lietussargs ‘rain guard – umbrella’
   b. dzeramais ūdens – dzeramais ‘drinking water – something to drink, a drink’

The methods and means of word formation are interdependent. There are three methods of word formation in Latvian (Skujiņa 2007: 432–433; Kalnača 2013a: 47–49):

1) morphological;
2) syntactic;
3) semantic.

Morphological descriptions of Latvian traditionally focus on the morphological and syntactic methods of word formation, as both are extensively represented in the language. The semantic method, which involves adding new meanings (polysemy) and contexts of usage to existing words (Skujiņa 2007: 350), is, as a rule, excluded from grammatical descriptions; the same approach is adopted here (but see, e.g., Veisbergs 2013: 70–94).

The morphological method of word formation, which includes affixation, sometimes occurring simultaneously with apophony (see examples (2.0.19)), and clipping, is prevalent in Latvian.

As a rule, prefixation does not change the word class (part of speech) of the base word:

(2.0.21) a. ADJ – ADJ (see Table 2.14)
   zem-s – pa-zem-s ‘low – fairly low’
   zaļ-š – ie-zaļ-š ‘green – slightly green’
   piln-s – pār-piln-s ‘full – overfilled’

b. V – V (see Table 2.66)
   nāk-t – at-nāk-t ‘to come – to come (perfective)’
   dzied-ā-t – no-dzied-ā-t ‘to sing – to sing (perfective)’
   las-ī-t – pār-las-ī-t ‘to read – to re-read’
Suffixation, on the other hand, may be equally well used to derive words of the same or a different word class (see Tables 2.6, 2.13, 2.65):

1) non-word-class-changing suffixation

(2.0.22) a. N – N

\[\text{up-e} \rightarrow \text{up-\textit{it}-e} \text{ ‘river – small river’}\]
\[\text{kač-is} \rightarrow \text{kač-\textit{ēn}-s} \text{ ‘cat – kitten’}\]
\[\text{pried-e} \rightarrow \text{pried-\textit{āj}-s} \text{ ‘pine tree – pine forest, pine grove’}\]
b. ADJ – ADJ

\[\text{maz-s} \rightarrow \text{maz-\textit{in}-š} \text{ ‘small, little – tiny’}\]
\[\text{sald-s} \rightarrow \text{sald-\textit{en}-s} \text{ ‘sweet – sweetish’}\]
\[\text{agr-s} \rightarrow \text{agr-\textit{in}-s} \text{ ‘early – early (also, ahead of the usual time), ripened early’}\]
c. V – V

\[\text{brauk-t} \rightarrow \text{brauk-\textit{ā}-t} \text{ ‘to go (in a vehicle), drive – to go (in a vehicle), drive continuously, regularly; to drive around’}\]
\[\text{stiep-t} \rightarrow \text{staip-\textit{ī}-t} \text{ ‘to drag, stretch – to drag, stretch continuously’}\]
\[\text{žau-t} \rightarrow \text{žāv-\textit{ē}-t} \text{ ‘to hang out (to dry) – to dry; to cure, smoke’}\]
\[\text{aug-t} \rightarrow \text{audz-\textit{inā}-t} \text{ ‘to grow (no object) – to bring up, to raise’}\]

2) word-class-changing suffixation

(2.0.23) a. N – V

\[\text{klep-us} \rightarrow \text{klep-o-t} \text{ ‘cough – to cough’}\]
\[\text{dom-a} \rightarrow \text{dom-\textit{ā}-t} \text{ ‘thought – to think’}\]
\[\text{zvan-s} \rightarrow \text{zvan-\textit{i}-t} \text{ ‘bell, bell-ringing – to ring’}\]
b. N – ADJ

\[\text{māj-a} \rightarrow \text{māj-\textit{ig}-s} \text{ ‘house, home – homey’}\]
\[\text{māt-e} \rightarrow \text{māt-\textit{išķ}-s} \text{ ‘mother – motherly’}\]
\[\text{saul-e} \rightarrow \text{saul-\textit{ain}-s} \text{ ‘sun – sunny’}\]
c. ADJ – V

\[\text{tīr-s} \rightarrow \text{tīr-\textit{i}-t} \text{ ‘clean – to clean’}\]
\[\text{ciet-s} \rightarrow \text{ciet-\textit{ē}-t} \text{ ‘hard, solid – to harden, solidify’}\]
\[\text{zal-š} \rightarrow \text{zal-o-t} \text{ ‘green – to grow (of green plants), to flourish’}\]
d. ADJ – N

\[\text{lab-s} \rightarrow \text{lab-\textit{um}-s} \text{ ‘good – goodness, benefit’}\]
\[\text{tīr-s} \rightarrow \text{tīr-\textit{ib}-a} \text{ ‘clean – cleanliness’}\]
\[\text{maz-s} \rightarrow \text{maz-\textit{ul}-is} \text{ ‘small, little – baby’}\]
e. V – N

\[\text{brauk-t} \rightarrow \text{brauk-\textit{šan}-a} \text{ ‘to go, drive – going, driving (action noun)’}\]
\[\text{sauk-t} \rightarrow \text{sauk-ien-s} \text{ ‘to call – call’}\]
\[\text{zag-t} \rightarrow \text{zag-\textit{l}-is} \text{ ‘to thieve, steal – thief’}\]
f. V – ADJ

\[\text{sal-t} \rightarrow \text{sal-\textit{ig}-s} \text{ ‘to feel cold – sensitive to cold’}\]
\[\text{main-\textit{i}-t} \rightarrow \text{main-\textit{ig}-s} \text{ ‘to change – changing, variable’}\]
\[\text{run-ā-t} \rightarrow \text{run-\textit{ig}-s} \text{ ‘to talk – talkative’}\]
The same is true of derivation by means of **endings** (see Table 2.7):

1) derivatives are of the same word class as the base word

(2.0.24) **N – N**

sargs – *sardz-e* ‘guard, guardsman – guard (a body of soldiers, guards)’
draug*s* – *draudz-e* ‘friend – congregation’
rag*s* – *radz-e* ‘horn – spike’

2) derivatives are of a different word class

(2.0.25) **V – N**

teik*t* – *teik-a* ‘to tell – tale, legend’
tērp*t* – *tērp-s* ‘to clothe – clothes’
gais*t* – *gais-s* ‘to evaporate, dwindle – air’

ADJ – N

ciet*s* – *ciet-e* ‘hard, solid – starch’
skumj*š* – *skumj-as* ‘sad – sadness’
tāl*s* – *tāl-e* ‘distant – distance’

As far as word formation is concerned, **sound alternation** in contemporary Latvian is almost always linked to affixation, namely, derivational uses of suffixes and endings, e.g., apophony (see Section 1.2.1):

(2.0.26) **stiep-t – staip-i-t** ‘to drag, stretch – to drag, stretch continuously’

*ves-t* – *vad-ā-t* ‘to carry smth / smb somewhere – to carry, drive smth / smb around’

*vēr-t* – *vār-t-i* ‘to open – gate’

*mig*t* – *mieg-s* ‘to open / smth – gate’

*dzer-t* – *dzir-a* ‘to drink – beverage, alcohol’

Some conjugation 1 verbs containing no means of word formation other than apophony are a notable exception, e.g.:

(2.0.27) **INTRANS verb – TRANS verb**

bir*t* – *bēr-t* ‘to pour (of dry substances) (no object) – to pour smth’
mirk*t* – *mērk-t* ‘to soak (no object) – to soak smth’
li*t* – *lie-t* ‘to flow, to pour (of liquids) (no object) – to pour smth’
lik*t* – *liek-t* ‘to bend (no object) – to bend smth’
lūz*t* – *laus-t* ‘to break (no object) – to break smth’

juk*t* – *jauk-t* ‘to get mixed up – to mix smth’

Consonant alternation in derivatives is, in many cases, triggered by the combination of morphemes in the process of word formation (see Sections 1.1.1 and 1.1.2 for a detailed discussion), e.g.:

(2.0.28) *rok-a* – *rocin-a, rok-el-e* ‘hand, arm – hand, arm (DIM)’

Sometimes, however, consonant alternation is part of the base, e.g., palatalization in the GEN PL form of some nouns (see Table 2.13):

(2.0.29) **N – ADJ**

smilt*s* – *smilš-u* (GEN PL) – *smilš-ain-s* ‘sand – sandy’

akmen*s* – *akmen-u* (GEN PL) – *akmen-ain-s* ‘stone – stony’
Word formation usually proceeds by adding one affix (other than an ending) to the base at a time.

(2.0.30) skrie-t – aiz-skrie-t ‘to run – to run (perfective)’
  griez-t – griez-n-es ‘to cut – scissors’
  klieg-t – klieg-šan-a ‘to scream – screaming (action noun)’

There are three kinds of bases (or derivational stems):

1) simple

(2.0.31) māj-a – māj-īg-s ‘house, home – homey’
  aukl-e – aukl-ē-t ‘nanny – to take care of a small child’
  zaļ-š – ie-zaļ-š ‘green – slightly green’

2) derivative

(2.0.32) māj-īg-s – māj-īg-um-s ‘homey – hominess’
  aukl-ē-t – aukl-ē-šan-a ‘to take care of a small child – taking care of a small child (action noun)’
  zaļ-gan-s – ie-zaļ-gan-s ‘greenish – slightly greenish’

3) compound

(2.0.33) pil-sēt-a – pil-sēt-īn-a ‘city, town – a small town (DIM)’
  div-stāv-u – div-stāv-īg-s ‘two-storey (GEN) – two-storey (ADJ)’
  caur-skat-ī-t – caur-skat-ī-šan-a ‘to peruse – perusal (action noun)’

Adding multiple affixes at a time, e.g., a derivational prefix and a suffix, is comparatively rare, though possible (see Table 2.67):

(2.0.34) akmen-s – pār-akmen-ō-ties ‘stone – to turn into stone, to fossilize’
  kaul-s – at-kaul-o-t ‘bone – to debone’
  sav-s – pie-sav-īnā-ties ‘own – to appropriate, misappropriate’

Finally, morphological word formation in Latvian also includes clipping, i.e., creating derivatives by shortening existing words. Backslipping is used in regular word-formation models (e.g., Veisbergs 2013: 24–25; also see back-formation Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 122–123). For example, certain types of nouns are derived from conjugation 2 and 3 verbs by removing the infinitive suffix and attaching a derivational ending directly to the verbal root:

(2.0.35) V – N
  ap-kalp-o-t – ap-kalp-e ‘to attend, to serve – crew’
  at-las-ī-t – at-las-e ‘to select – selection’
  ie-tec-ē-t – ie-tek-a ‘to flow into (of a river) – mouth (of a river)’
  iz-klaid-ē-t ‘to entertain’ – iz-klaid-e ‘entertainment’
  no-run-ā-t – no-run-a ‘to arrange, make an appointment – arrangement, appointment’
  pār-zin-ā-t – pār-zin-is ‘to manage, oversee – manager’
  pie-gād-ā-t – pie-gād-e ‘to supply – supply’
  sa-slauk-ī-t – sa-slauk-as ‘to sweep up, to wipe up – sweepings’
  uz-lād-ē-t – uz-lād-e ‘to charge – charging’
The **syntactic method** of word formation is based on syntactic relations between words in phrases, coordinate structures, and sentences (Skujiņa 2007: 358). Syntactic relations are of direct relevance to word formation in two cases:

1) compounding;
2) conversion.

A **compound** is a word formed by joining two or more words or stems together that functions as a single lexical unit (Matthews 1997: 66; Skujiņa 2007: 338; Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 261; for other opinions see, e.g., Lieber, Štekauer 2009; Veisbergs 2013: 30–31). In Latvian, compounds are usually written as one word and pronounced with stress on the first syllable. Compounds are found in all word classes.

(2.0.36) 

| a. N     | up-mala ‘riverside’ |
| b. ADJ   | sil-zalš ‘blue-green’ |
| c. ADV    | šo-dien ‘today’ |
| d. NUM    | div-desmit ‘twenty’ |
| e. PRON   | jeb-kas ‘anything’ |
| f. V      | caur-skatit ‘to peruse, to look through’ |
| g. PTCL   | tā-tad ‘so, then’ |
| h. CONJ   | ne-vis ‘not, rather than’ |
| i. PREP   | augš-pus ‘atop, above’ |
| j. INT    | lab-dien! ‘good afternoon!’ |

In Latvian, all compounds based on content (lexical) words originate from phrases (such as noun phrases, verb phrases, etc.) or coordinate structures. It is, therefore, more accurate to say that they are formed by adjoining word forms rather than words. Spaced combinations of words are not recognized as compounds even if they express a single concept (see, e.g., Veisbergs 2013: 31–35).

(2.0.37) 

| a. PRON | dažš labs ‘some, a certain party’ |
| b. NUM  | viens otrs ‘some, one or the other person/thing’ |
| b. NUM  | kaut kāds ‘some kind of’ |

| a. PRON | simt divi ‘one hundred two’ |
| b. NUM  | piecdesmit astoņi ‘fifty-eight’ |
Depending on the underlying syntactic structure, Latvian compounds are divided into two classes: determinative and copulative compounds.

Determinative compounds are based on phrases (Skujiņa 2007: 86, see also Matthews 1997: 95), mostly, nominal, adjectival (2.0.38)-(2.0.40) or verbal (2.0.41) (see also Tables 2.9, 2.15, and Section 2.6.3), e.g.:

(2.0.38) a. \( N_{\text{gen}} + N - N \)
\[ \text{tējas kanna} - \text{tēj-kann-a} \] ‘a pot of tea – teapot’

b. \( N_{\text{ins}} + N_{\text{ins}} - N \)
\[ \text{melniem matiem} - \text{meln-mat-is} \] (M), -e (F) ‘with black hair – a dark-haired person’

c. \( \text{ADJ} + N - N \)
\[ \text{liel ceļš} - \text{liel-ceļ-š} \] ‘large way – motorway’

(2.0.39) a. \( N_{\text{gen}} + \text{ADJ} - \text{ADJ} \)
\[ \text{aveņu sarkans} - \text{aveņ-sarkan} - \text{s} \] ‘the red of raspberries – raspberry-red’

b. \( \text{ADV} + \text{ADJ} - \text{ADJ} \)
\[ \text{zaļgani brūns} - \text{zaļgan-brūn} - \text{s} \] ‘greenish brown – greenish-brown’

(2.0.40) a. \( \text{ADJ} + N - \text{ADV} \)
\[ \text{galveno kārtu} - \text{galveno-kārt} \] ‘the main way – mainly’

b. \( \text{PRON} + N - \text{ADV} \)
\[ \text{šo dienu} - \text{šo-dien} \] ‘this day – today’

c. \( \text{PTCP} + N - \text{ADV} \)
\[ \text{nākošo gadu} - \text{nākoš-gad} \] ‘next year – next year’

(2.0.41) a. \( V + N_{\text{acc}} - N \) (according to modern Latvian word order)
\[ \text{kalt zeltu} - \text{zelt-kal-is} \] ‘to smith gold – goldsmith’

b. \( N + V_{\text{inf}} - N \)
\[ \text{pries lasīt} - \text{lasīt-priek-s} \] ‘pleasure to read – reading pleasure’

In Latvian, determinative compounds are usually right-headed regardless of the headedness of the source phrase, e.g.:

(2.0.42) source phrase – right-headed, compound – right-headed
a. \( N_{\text{gen}} + N - N \)
\[ \text{jūras mala} - \text{jūr-mal-a} \] ‘sea side – seaside’
b. N<sub>ins</sub> + N<sub>ins</sub> – N
   *sirmu galvu* – *sirm-galv*-is (M), -e (F) ‘with white hair – a white-haired (elderly) person’

c. ADJ + N – N
   *liels ceļš* – *liel-ceļ*-š ‘large way – motorway’

d. NUM + N – N
   *pieci gadi* – *piec-gad*-e ‘five years – five-year period’

(2.0.43) source phrase – left-headed, compound – right-headed (according to modern Latvian word order)
a. V + N<sub>acc</sub> / ADJ<sub>acc</sub> – N
   *kalt akmeņus* – *akmeņ-kal*-is ‘to cut stones – stonemounter’
b. V + ADV – V
   *skatīt cauri* – *caur-skatī* t ‘to look through – to look through, to peruse’
c. N + V<sub>inf</sub> – N
   *griba dziedāt* – *dziedāt-griba* ‘will to sing – will to sing’
d. NUM + N<sub>gen</sub> – N
   *sinit gadu* – *gad-simt*-s ‘hundred years – century’

Left-headed determinative compounds are possible, but scarce. Some of them probably originate from partitive noun phrases where a head noun specifying quantity (a share, part of a whole) is followed by a noun in the genitive case naming the object to which it applies (see Table 2.9):

(2.0.44) N + N<sub>gen</sub>
   *puse dienas* – *pus-dien*-a ‘half of a day – noon’
   *puse mājas* – *pus-māj*-a ‘half of a house – half a house’
   *puse gada* – *pus-gad*-s ‘half of a year – half a year, half-year’
   *desmit gadu* – *desmit-gad*-e ‘ten years – decade’
   *sinit gadu* – *simt-gad*-e ‘hundred years – century’
   *tūkstoš gadu* – *tūkstoš-gad*-e ‘thousand years – millennium’

Copulative compounds (also *dvandva* compounds, *co-compounds*) are based on coordinate structures (Wählhi 2009: 1; Skujiņa 2007: 195, see also Matthews 1997: 77), i.e., the coordinated parts of a sentence. It is possible to say that there are as many semantic heads as there are components in a copulative compound (in Latvian, usually two, sometimes three). Copulative compounds are relatively rare in Latvian (see Tables 2.9 and 2.15).

(2.0.45) a. N, N – N
   *diena, nakts* – *dien-nakt*-s ‘day, night – twenty-four-hour period’
   *sāls, maīze* – *sāls-maiz*-e ‘salt, bread – bread and salt’
   *tēvs, māmiņa* – *tēvs-māmiņ*-a ‘father, mummy – parents (in folklore)’

b. ADJ, ADJ – ADJ
   *melnš, bals* – *meln-balt*-s ‘black, white – black-and-white’
   *sarkans, balts, sarkans* – *sarkan-balt-sarkan*-s ‘red, white, red – red-white-red (a reference to the colors of the Latvian flag)’
Finally, there are compounds originating from prepositional phrases (namely, combinations of a noun (2.0.46), (2.0.47a) (see Table 2.9), an adjective (also a numeral) (2.0.47b), or a pronoun (2.0.47c) with a preposition), as well as from adverb–particle combinations (2.0.48) (see Section 2.6.3), e.g.:

(2.0.46) a. \[ \text{PREP} + \text{N} \]
\[ \text{aiz krāns} – \text{aiz-krāsn-e} \] ‘behind the stove – space behind the stove (in a house)’
\[ \text{uz gala} – \text{uz-gal-is} \] ‘at the tip – tip, capping’
b. \[ \text{PREP} + \text{N} \]
\[ \text{ap roku} – \text{ap-roc-e} \] ‘around the arm – bracelet’
\[ \text{pār Gauju} – \text{Pār-gauj-a} \] ‘over the Gauja River – area on the other side of the Gauja River’

(2.0.47) a. \[ \text{PREP} + \text{N} \]
\[ \text{aiz vakara} – \text{aiz-vakar} \] ‘after, beyond yesterday – the day before yesterday’
\[ \text{bez gala} – \text{bez-gala} \] ‘without end – endlessly’
b. \[ \text{PREP} + \text{ADJ} \]
\[ \text{pa retam} – \text{pa-retam} \] ‘in rare (instances) – occasionally’
c. \[ \text{PRON} + \text{PREP} \]
\[ \text{kā pēc} – \text{kā-pēc} \] ‘for what – why’
\[ \text{tā pēc} – \text{tā-pēc} \] ‘for that – therefore’
\[ \text{kā dēļ} – \text{kā-dēļ} \] ‘due to what – why’
\[ \text{tā dēļ} – \text{tā-dēļ} \] ‘due to that – therefore’

(2.0.48) a. \[ \text{PTCL} + \text{ADV} \]
\[ \text{jeb-kad} \] ‘ever’
\[ \text{jeb-kur} \] ‘anywhere’
\[ \text{jeb-kā} \] ‘in whatever way’
\[ \text{ne-kad} \] ‘never’
\[ \text{ne-kur} \] ‘nowhere’
\[ \text{ne-kā} \] ‘in no way’
b. \[ \text{ADV} + \text{PTCL} \]
\[ \text{tur-pat} \] ‘right there’
\[ \text{te-pat, še-pat} \] ‘right here’
\[ \text{tā-pat} \] ‘in the same way’

Another classification is based on the semantic relationship between compounds and their constituents and includes two classes: endocentric and exocentric compounds (e.g., Booij 2005; Aikhenvald 2007; Bauer 2009; Benczes 2015). Endocentric compounds (also tatpurusha compounds) are hyponymous to their head constituent, while the non-head constituent is subordinate to, or modifies, the head (see, e.g., Matthews 1997: 114, also Wälhli 2009: 91):
Exocentric compounds (sometimes also called bahuvrihi compounds, possessive compounds), in contrast, are not hyponymous to either of their constituents. Instead, the constituents of an exocentric compound state some feature of the entity (often a living being, an object, etc.) denoted by the compound (see, e.g., Matthews 1997: 122):

(2.0.50) a. siklapis ‘a small-leaved plant’ (from sīkām lapām ‘having small leaves’)
   b. staltražis ‘red deer’ (from staltiem ragiem ‘having tall antlers’)
   c. brūnacis ‘a brown-eyed person or animal’ (from brūnām acīm ‘having brown eyes’)

(2.0.51) a. debeszīls ‘sky-blue’ (from debesu zīls ‘blue like the sky’), e.g., debeszīls audums ‘sky-blue fabric’
   b. aveņsārts ‘raspberry-red’ (from aveņu sārts ‘red like raspberries’), e.g., aveņsārts tērps ‘raspberry-red garment’
   c. citrondzeltenīs ‘lemon-yellow’ (from citrona dzeltens ‘yellow like a lemon’),
      e.g., citrondzeltenī ziedi ‘lemon-yellow flowers’

In Latvian, the endocentric vs. exocentric semantic criterion works best for nominal and adjectival compounds.

Although for classificatory purposes, blending – the formation of new words from parts of two or more other words (e.g., Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 119–120; Veisbergs 2013: 46) – may be subsumed under compounding; strictly speaking, it is a borderline type between morphological and syntactic word formation. While blends exist and are, from time to time, formed in Latvian, they do not constitute regular word-formation types. For example, some interjections (2.0.52) and particles (2.0.53) are blends of words originally used in speech in (imperative) sentences:

(2.0.52) paldies ‘thank you’ < Palidzi, Dies! ‘Help, God!’
   āreče (an interjection used to draw smb’s attention to smth) < Ā, redzi še!
   ‘A-ha, you see, here!’

(2.0.53) kazi (a particle used to express uncertainty, indeterminateness) < Kas zina!
   ‘Who knows!’
   dies (a particle used to express uncertainty, indeterminateness) < Dies zina! ‘God knows!’
**Conversion** is a word-formation process whereby a new word is created by changing the word class of an existing word or word form in syntactic usage without overt derivational markers (Skujiņa 2007: 194; Haspelmath, Sims 2010: 39; Olsen 2017: 43–45; Valera 2017: 154–159).

(2.0.54) a. declinable participle to noun

\[
\text{Mēs} \quad \text{gājām} \quad \text{ieksā} \quad \text{veikalā},
\]
we.NOM go.PST.1PL into store.LOC.M

\[
\text{jo} \quad \text{bijā} \quad \text{jānopērk} \quad \text{ēdāmais}.
\]
because be.AUX.PST.3 DEB.buy eat.PTCP.NOM.M.DEF

‘We went into the store because we had to buy something to eat.’
(www.maminuklubs.lv)

b. indeclinable participle to adverb

\[
\text{Vasara} \quad \text{beidzot} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{klāt} –
\]
summer.NOM.F end.PTCP.IDECL be.PRS.3 here

\[
\text{šonedēl} \quad \text{gaidāms} \quad \text{sauss} \quad \text{un}
\]
this_week expect.PTCP.NOM.M dry.NOM.M and

\[
\text{saulains} \quad \text{laiks}.
\]
sunny.NOM.M weather.NOM.M

‘Summer is finally here – dry and sunny weather expected throughout the week.’
(www.tvnet.lv)

The most common types of conversion in Latvian include nominalization (an adjective or a declinable participle used as a noun) (example 2.0.55a-b), adverbialization (a case form of a noun or an adjective, and an indeclinable participle used as an adverb) (2.0.55c), and creation of interjections by conversion (a grammatical form of a word, a word combination or even a sentence used as an interjection) (2.0.55d). Adjectivization (a declinable participle used as an adjective) is less frequent and is, admittedly, controversial, since it is impossible to draw a distinction between the functions of a participial and an adjectival agreeing attribute (2.0.55e). Verbification does not occur in Latvian.

(2.0.55) a. vecāki ‘parents’, nabags ‘pauper’

b. ēdamais ‘something to eat, food’, bijušais ‘an ex’

c. beidzot ‘finally’, laukā ‘out, outside’

d. lūdzu! ‘please!’, sasodīts! ‘damn!’, sveiks! ‘hello!’

e. apdāvināts ‘gifted’, raфинēts ‘refined’

In Latvian, conversion does not entail paradigmatic change. For example, all word classes participating in nominalization and adjectivization have partially coinciding paradigms – nouns, indefinite forms of adjectives, and declinable participles. Definite forms of adjectives and declinable participles, which retain the definite-ending paradigm after nominalization, are an exception. Since adverbs and interjections are indeclinable, paradigmatic change is not relevant to either adverbialization or creation of interjections by conversion.
Derivational sequences, derivational families, and word-formation types

In terms of morphemic composition, words may be

1) primitive, or primary – containing only a root (2.0.56a) or a root and an ending (2.0.56b):

(2.0.56) a. aiz ‘behind’, ne ‘not’, te ‘here’
   b. dien-a ‘day’, lab-s ‘good’, ves-t ‘to carry’

2) derived, or secondary – containing a root and one (2.0.57a) or more suffixes and/or prefixes (2.0.57b)):

(2.0.57) a. dien-in-a ‘day (DIM)’
   ne-lab-s ‘bad’
   aiz-ves-t ‘to take smb or smth somewhere’
   b. vad-i-taj-s ‘head, leader, driver’
   pa-mac-ib-a ‘(user) guide’
   ap-zelt-i-j-um-s ‘gilding’

3) compound – containing two or more stems:

(2.0.58) jur-mal-a ‘seaside’
   sald-skab-maiz-e ‘sourdough rye bread’
   zil-gan-balt-s ‘bluish-white’

Primary words are semantically primitive, i.e., non-derived, while all secondary words stand in a derivational relationship to their base word, which means that they are semantically derived from, or motivated by, its meaning.

(2.0.59) derivative – base word
   jurnieks – jur ‘seaman – sea’
   iezaļš – zaļš ‘slightly green – green’
   aizskriet – skriet ‘to run (perfective) – to run’
   audzinat – augt ‘to bring up, to raise – to grow’

All derivatives are constructed from a base (i.e., a derivational stem) and means of word formation.

(2.0.60) derivative – base + means of word formation
   jurnieks ‘seaman’ – jur- ‘sea’ + -niek-s
   iezaļš ‘slightly green’ – ie- + zaļ-š ‘green’
   aizskriet ‘to run (perfective)’ – aiz- + skrie-t ‘run’
   audzinat ‘to bring up, to raise’ – augt, i.e., audz- ‘grow’ + -inā-t

Derivatives sharing a common root usually form derivational sequences, or series, based on sequential derivational relationships (sometimes also called derivational chains).

(2.0.61) a. art → arajš → arajinš ‘to plough – ploughman – ploughman (DIM)’
   b. zaļš → zalgans → iezałgans → iezałganigs ‘green – greenish – slightly greenish – with just a hint of greenishness’
   c. labs → labot → labojums ‘good – to correct – correction’
All derivational sequences built from a common root word are members of the same **derivational family** (also called **word family**), e.g., a fragment of the derivational family of the verb *saukt* ‘to call’:

(2.0.62)

**saukt** ‘to call’ → *saukšana* (action, process noun)
  → *saucešs* (agent noun) → *saucešiņš* (agent noun, DIM)
  → *sauciens* (action, event noun)
  → *sauklis* ‘slogan’
  → *sasaukt* ‘to call together’ → *sasaukšana* (action, process noun)
    → *sasaukums* (result, object noun)
    → *sasaukties* ‘to call to each other, to resonate with’
    → *sasauksme* ‘calling to one another’
  → *uzsaukt* ‘call out, call on’ → *uzsaukšana* (action, process noun)
    → *uzsaukums* (result noun)
    → *uzsauciens* (action, event noun)
  → *iesaukt* ‘to call in, to nickname’ → *iesaukšana* (action, process noun)
    → *iesaukums* (result, object noun)
    → *iesauka* ‘nickname’
  → *izsaukt* ‘to call (invite), to cause’ → *izsaukšana* (action, process noun)
    → *izsaukums* (result noun)
    → *izsauciens* (action, event noun; exclamation)
  → *saukties* ‘to go by the name’ → *saukšanās* (action, process noun)

Another important concept in Latvian word formation is that of a word-formation type, which is defined by the word class (part of speech) of the base word, the method and means of word formation and a derivational meaning shared by all derivatives (Skujiņa 2007: 433). For example, nouns in (2.0.63) are *nomina agentis* derived from verbs by the morphological method, using the suffix -tāj- (see also Table 2.6).

(2.0.63)  
*diedāt* – *dziedātājs* ‘to sing – singer’
*spēlēt* – *spēlētājs* ‘to play – player’
*lasīt* – *lasītājs* ‘to read – reader’
*ogot* – *ogotājs* ‘to pick berry – berry-picker’

Word-formation types are characterized by formal and semantic regularity, as well as by productivity. For example, deverbal nouns derived by means of the suffixes -šan- and -um- belong to productive word-formation types. The suffix -šan- can be attached to the infinitive stem (2.0.64a), and the suffix -um- to the past stem (2.0.64b) of any verb (see also Table 2.6).

(2.0.64) a.  
*V* _INF_ – N
  *ie-t* – *ie-šan-a* ‘to go, to walk – going, walking’
  *kāp-t* – *kāp-šan-a* ‘to climb – climbing’
  *las-i-t* – *las-i-šan-a* ‘to read – reading’
b. $V_{\text{PST}} - N$

$gā-j-u – gā-j-um-s$ ‘(I) went – course’

$kāp-u – kāp-um-s$ ‘(I) climbed – rise, increase’

$las-i-j-u – las-i-j-um-s$ ‘(I) read – reading’

Derivatives with the suffix -šan- express actions as processes, while derivatives with the suffix -um- are, roughly, result nominals. In contrast, deverbal nouns derived by means of the suffix -v- belong to a much less productive word-formation model and are limited in number. The range of possible meanings includes the agent (2.0.65a), place (2.0.65b), and instrument (2.0.65c) of an action (see also Table 2.6).

(2.0.65) $V_{\text{INF}} - N$

a. $kal-t – kal-v-is$ ‘to forge, smith – smith’

$bur-t – bur-v-is$ ‘to do magic – magician’

b. $kal-t – kal-v-e$ ‘to forge, smith – a forge, smithy’

c. $cirs-t – cir-v-is$ ‘to cut, chop – axe’

The description of Latvian word formation in this grammar is based on word-formation types and models and includes sections on noun (Section 2.1.5), adjective (Section 2.2.4), verb (Section 2.5.10), and adverb formation (Section 2.6.3). For the other word classes, which make limited use of word formation (or even none, e.g., numerals), a summary, rather than a dedicated section, is provided at the end of each subchapter. The productivity of word-formation types is not accounted for in this description, since the primary focus is on showing how the Latvian lexicon is structured from the point of view of derivational morphology. Furthermore, due to space limitations, some word-formation types involving affixation and compounding as well as hybrid (combining Latvian and Latin, Greek, etc. word parts) and neoclassical words, abbreviations, toponyms, etc. have been left out. Derivational synonymy, i.e., parallelism, is not addressed directly (i.e., as a separate issue) in this grammar.


### 2.0.3 Inflection

In language, words function as word forms, i.e., grammatical forms. Therefore, the study of the rules, methods and means by which grammatical forms are built, i.e., inflection (Skujinā 2007: 120–121, see also, among others, Aronoff, Fudeman 2011: 47), is as important in morphology as the study of the structure of words as lexical units, i.e., word formation. While word formation produces new lexical units, inflection creates their grammatical forms.
Inflectional devices, or means of inflection, are specific linguistic elements used for constructing grammatical forms (Skujiņa 2007: 122). In Latvian, these include:

1) affixes – endings, suffixes and prefixes
2) stem-internal vowel (2.0.66) and consonant (2.0.67) alternation (see Morphophonology, Sections 1.1 and 1.2.1, as well as Sections 2.1 and 2.5 on verbal and nominal inflection)

(2.0.66) a. INF – PRS
   *vilkt – velku* ‘to pull, to draw, to tow – (I) pull, draw, tow’
   *pirkt – pērku* ‘to buy – (I) buy’

   b. INF – PST
   *dzert – dzēru* ‘to drink – (I) drank’
   *liet – lēju* ‘to pour (with object) (of liquids) – (I) poured’

(2.0.67) a. INF – PRS
   *kalt – kaļu* ‘to forge, smith – (I) forge, smith’
   *lauzt – laužu* ‘to break – (I) break’

   b. NOM – GEN SG/PL
   *brālis – brāļa* ‘brother – brother (SG)’
   *egle – egļu* ‘fir tree – fir tree (PL)’

3) auxiliary verbs in verbal inflection (2.0.68a-c) (see Sections 2.5.3, 2.5.4, 2.5.5), and the preposition *ar* ‘with’ for marking the instrumental case of nouns (2.0.68d) (see Section 2.1.1)

(2.0.68) a. present perfect, active voice
   *esmu dziedājis* ‘I have sung’

   b. present perfect, passive voice
   *ir dziedāts* ‘has been sung’

   c. present indefinite, debitive mood
   *ir jādzied* ‘must sing’

   d. *griezt maizi ar nazi* ‘to slice bread with a knife’

4) suppletion

(2.0.69) a. tenses of the verb *iet* ‘to go’ PRS – PST
   *iet – eju – gāju* ‘to go – (I) go – (I) went’

   b. forms of the pronoun *es* ‘I’
   *es ‘I’ – manis (GEN), man (DAT), mani (ACC), etc.

Affixation is the most widely used inflectional device in Latvian. Endings mark the grammatical forms of nouns, adjectives, numerals and pronouns as well as the person forms of verbs (see Sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5.2), while suffixes play an important role in constructing the tense forms (2.0.70a-c) and participial forms (2.0.70d-f) of verbs (Section 2.5).

(2.0.70) a. INF – PRS
   *skrie-t – skrie-n-u* ‘to run – (I) run’
b. INF – PST
   \textit{las-\textit{i}-t} – \textit{las-\textit{i}-\textit{j}-u} ‘to read – (I) read’

c. INF – FUT
   \textit{skrie-\textit{t}} – \textit{skrie-\textit{\textsc{\textsc{x}}}-u} ‘to run – (I) will run’

d. present active participle
   \textit{aug-t} – \textit{aug-O\textsc{x}-s} ‘to grow (no object) – growing (NOM SG M)’

e. past active participle
   \textit{augt} – \textit{augu} – \textit{aug-us-i} ‘to grow (no object) – (I) grew – grown (NOM SG F)’

f. semi-declinable participle
   \textit{augt} – \textit{aug-dam-s} ‘to grow (no object) – growing (NOM SG M)

Prefixes are responsible for deriving the debitive form of verbs (2.0.71a) (see Section 2.5.4) and the superlative form of adjectives (2.0.71b) (see Section 2.2.2).

(2.0.71) a. \textit{likt} – \textit{ir jā-liek} ‘to put – must put’
   b. \textit{labs} – \textit{lab-āk-s} – \textit{vis-lab-āk-ais} ‘good – better – best’

Finally, the future-tense forms of some conjugation 1 verbs require the interfix -\textit{i}-(see Section 1.1.4 on interfixes, Section 2.5.3 on future-tense forms of verbs).

(2.0.72) \textit{nest} – \textit{nes-(\textsc{i})-s-u} ‘to carry – (I) will carry’
   \textit{vest} – \textit{ved-(\textsc{i})-s-u} ‘to carry (in a vehicle) – (I) will carry’
   \textit{mest} – \textit{met-(\textsc{i})-s-u} ‘to throw – (I) will throw’
   \textit{lūzt} – \textit{lūz-(\textsc{i})-s-u} ‘to break (no object) – (I) will break’

The methods and means of inflection are interconnected. There are three methods of inflection in Latvian (Skujina 2007: 122; Kalnača 2013a: 51):

1) morphological, which corresponds to synthetic forms;
2) syntactic, which corresponds to analytical forms;
3) semantic, which corresponds to suppletive forms.

The \textbf{morphological method} of inflection involves the use of morphemes, more specifically, affixes (endings, suffixes, and prefixes) to construct grammatical forms, which are called \textit{synthetic}, because all grammatical meanings are fused into a single word form. Affixation is sometimes accompanied by sound alternation (see examples (2.0.66)–(2.0.67), (2.0.70)) or interfixation (see examples (1.80) and (2.0.72)).

The \textbf{syntactic method} makes use of auxiliary words – the preposition \textit{ar} ‘with’ for the instrumental case form of nouns and auxiliary verbs for the perfect tense, passive voice, and debitive forms of verbs (see examples (2.0.68)). Such grammatical forms consist of more than one word carrying grammatical meanings and are, therefore, called \textit{analytical}.

The \textbf{semantic method} involves the use of two or more distinct roots for different grammatical forms in one paradigm (see examples (2.0.69)). In contemporary Latvian, the semantic method only occurs in isolated cases – in the case forms of the personal pronouns \textit{es ‘I’, tu ‘you (SG), mēs ‘we, jūs ‘you (PL)’ (see Section 2.4.1) and the forms of the verbs \textit{būt ‘to be’ and \textit{i}et ‘to go, walk’ (see Section 2.5.1). Forms based on
the semantic method are called suppletive, because differences in grammatical meanings are represented by different roots.

**Inflectional sequences**, i.e., sequences of consecutively derived (and motivated) grammatical forms, bear some similarity to derivational sequences. For example, the comparative degree form of adjectives is derived from the stem of the positive degree (lab- ‘good’), the comparative stem (labāk-) is then used to form the superlative degree (see Section 2.2.2).

(2.0.73) \( \text{lab-s} \rightarrow \text{lab-āk-s} \rightarrow \text{vis-lab-āk-ais} \) ‘good – better – best’

All grammatical forms have an **inflectional base** (Haspelmath, Sims 2010: 20). The inflectional base of nominal case forms is usually the NOM SG stem, the inflectional base of verbal tense forms is usually the infinitive stem (on base forms in Latvian see Paegle 2003: 13; Kalnača 2013c: 458–459; for a general discussion see Haspelmath, Sims 2010: 172–174). The systems of participial inflectional bases and the inflectional bases of verbal moods are slightly more complicated (see Sections 2.5.4, 2.5.9).

### 2.0.4 Word classes

Word classes are lexico-grammatical subsets of the vocabulary of a language defined in terms of the following properties shared by the members of each subset:

1) the semantic property, i.e., a shared generalized lexical meaning;
2) the morphological property, which includes the grammatical categories, the system of grammatical forms and word formational generalizations characteristic of a word class;
3) the syntactic property, i.e., syntactic distribution, viz. syntactic functions, typical of the members of a word class (Skujīņa 2007: 437; Trask 2008: 206–208).

In Latvian, all words are classified as being in one of the following ten word classes: nouns (see examples 2.0.74a), adjectives (2.0.74b), numerals (2.0.74c), pronouns (2.0.74d), verbs (2.0.74e), adverbs (2.0.74f), prepositions (2.0.74g), conjunctions (2.0.74h), particles (2.0.74i), and interjections (2.0.74j):

(2.0.74) a. *saule* ‘sun’, *dziesma* ‘song’, *celojums* ‘trip’
b. *skaists* ‘beautiful’, *priecīgs* ‘cheerful’, *vējains* ‘windy’
c. *pieci* ‘five’, *vienpadsmit* ‘eleven’, *otrains* ‘second’
d. *es* ‘I’, *tu* ‘you’, *kurš* ‘who, which’
e. *būt* ‘to be’, *braukt* ‘to go in a vehicle’, *runāt* ‘to talk’
f. *tur* ‘there’, *skalī* ‘loudly’, *tālu* ‘far away’
g. *aiz* ‘behind, beyond, after’, *ap ‘around, about’, *gar ‘along, by’
h. *bet* ‘but’, *lai ‘in order, so as’, *ka ‘that’
i. *it kā ‘as if, ne ‘not’, pat ‘even’
j. *au ‘ouch!, re ‘look!, there!, blikš ‘bang!‘
Depending on the nature of their lexical meaning and their role in syntax, words are also categorized into three larger groups. Content (lexical) words, such as nouns, adjectives, numerals, pronouns, verbs, and adverbs, have syntactic functions, i.e., they function as parts of sentences (e.g., subject, predicate, object, attribute, apposition, adverbial modifier). Function (grammatical) words, such as prepositions, conjunctions, and particles, on the contrary, do not carry such syntactic functions and primarily serve to link content words and larger parts of sentences or even texts together or give the contents of a sentence some sort of evaluation (e.g., positive or negative attitude, uncertainty). Finally, interjections are neither content words nor function words in that they do not combine with other words in a sentence or text but rather stand apart as special textual units.

According to their inflectional properties words are classed as either declinable or indeclinable. Only content words are declinable and, depending on the grammatical features for which they inflect, they can be subject to declension, i.e., inflect for or exhibit markers of gender, number, and case (nouns, adjectives, numerals, pronouns) or conjugation, i.e., inflect for person, tense, mood, and voice (verbs). Adverbs (which are content words), prepositions, conjunctions, particles (which are function words), and interjections are indeclinable.

There is, however, a small number of borrowed nouns (2.0.75a) and adjectives (2.0.75b) in modern Latvian that do not inflect; likewise, certain types of numerals are indeclinable (2.0.75c) (see Section 2.1.1, 2.2.1, and 2.3 for a detailed discussion):

(2.0.75) a. eiro ‘euro’, kino ‘cinema, cinematography’, radio ‘radio’
    b. rozā ‘pink’, lilā ‘lilac’
    c. desmit ‘ten’, simt ‘hundred’, tūkstoš ‘thousand’

It should be noted that the word classes are not completely watertight and there are borderline cases between them both from the point of view of semantics and syntactic function. For example, some content words may operate as function words, while retaining their word class membership:

1) pronouns and adverbs may function as subordinating conjunctions that introduce subordinate clauses (see also Sections 2.6 and 3.5.2):
   a) pronouns kas ‘what, which’, kurš ‘who, which’, kāds ‘what kind’

(2.0.76) a. Mēs gribam saprast,
       we.NOM want.PRS.1PL understand.INF
    kas tagad darāms.
    what.NOM now do.PTCP.NOM.M
‘We want to understand what is to be done now.’

   b. Operas izrāde, kuru redzēju svētdien,
      opera.GEN.F production.NOM.F which.ACC.F see.PST.1SG Sunday
    bija lieliska.
    be.COP.PST.3 excellent.NOM.F
‘The opera production, which I saw on Sunday, was excellent.’
c. Vai tu zini,
   Q you.NOM.SG know.PRS.2SG
   kāds laiks būs rīt?
   what.NOM.M weather.NOM.M be.FUT.3 tomorrow
   ‘Do you know what the weather will be like tomorrow?’

b) adverbs kad ‘when’, kur ‘where’, kā ‘how’

(2.0.77) a. Es gaidu, kad beigs snigt.
   I.NOM wait.PRS.1SG when stop.FUT.3 snow.INF
   ‘I am waiting for it to stop snowing.’

b. Upes krastā, kur tagad iekārtots
   river.GEN.F bank.LOC.M where now locate.PTCP.NOM.M
   parks, senāk bija pilsētas ganības.
   park.NOM.M formerly be.PST.3 town.GEN.F pasture.NOM.PL.F
   ‘The bank of the river, where the park is now located, was formerly used as the town’s pastureland.’

c. Mēs ilgi domājām, kā šķērsot pārplūdušu ielu.
   we.NOM long think.PST.1PL how cross.INF
   flow.PTCP.ACC.M street.ACC.F
   ‘It took us a while to figure out how to cross the flooded street.’

2) adverbs pāri ‘above’, pretī ‘across, in front of’, cauri ‘through’, garām ‘past, over’, virsū ‘on top, on, above’, etc. may function as prepositions (see Section 2.7):

(2.0.78) a. Nenovietojiet automašīnu pretī vārtiem!
   not_park.IMP.2PL car.ACC.F across gate.DAT.PL.M
   ‘Don’t park your car in front of the gate!’

b. Baloni pacēlās pāri mūsu galvām.
   balloon.NOM.PL.M rise.PST.3 above we.GEN head.DAT.PL.F
   ‘The balloons rose above our heads.’

Sometimes, although, admittedly, less often, the direction is reversed and an interjection or a function word assumes the function of a content word in a sentence, for example, in (2.0.79a-b) the interjection plunkš ‘splash!’ and the particle jā ‘yes’ function as nouns:

(2.0.79) a. Un tad atskanēja ipaši skalš plunkš,
   and then sound.PST.3 exceptionally loud.NOM.M splash
   un iestājās klusums.
   and begin.PST.3 silence.NOM.M
   ‘And then there was an exceptionally loud splash, and then silence.’
   (Diena)

b. Vienmēr saki jā un esi laimīgs!
   always say.IMP.2SG yes and be.COP.IMP.2SG happy.NOM.M
   ‘Always say yes and be happy!’ (Diena)
The word class membership of some indeclinable words (adverbs, particles, conjunctions, interjections) cannot be identified reliably outside of context. It is only their syntactic behavior in a sentence that makes it possible to analyze them as belonging to a particular word class (Paegle 2003: 229):

(2.0.80) *ak* ‘oh, ah’

a. particle

*Ak* tā gan!

oh so really

‘Oh, I see.’

b. interjection

*Ak, cik karsts šogad bija jūlijs!*

oh how hot.NOM.M this_year be.COP.PST.3 July.NOM.M

‘Oh, July was so hot this year!’

(2.0.81) *tik* ‘so, as’

a. particle

*Nāc tik iekšā!*

come.IMP.2SG so in

‘Come on in.’

b. adverb

*Es esmu izdarījusi tik, cik varējusi.*

I.NOM be.AUX.PRS.1SG do.PTCP.NOM.F so how can.PTCP.NOM.F

‘I have done as much as I could.’

(2.0.82) *kaut* ‘although, I wish’

a. conjunction

*Kaut šorit cēlos agri,*

although this_morning get_up.PST.1SG early

tomēr nepaspēju visu izdarīt.

still not_manage.PST.1SG everything.ACC.M do.INF

‘Although I got up early this morning, there still wasn’t enough time to get everything done.’

b. particle

*Kaut ātrāk būtu vasara!*

if_only soon be.COP.COND summer.NOM.F

‘If only summer would come already.’
2.1 NOUNS

2.1.0 Introductory remarks

The noun is a word class which comprises words expressing objectness and employing the categories of gender, number, and case. Syntactically, a noun can function as the subject of a clause (2.1.1a), an object (2.1.1b), an attribute (2.1.1c), a nominal predicate, or an apposition (both 2.1.1d) (Skujiņa 2007: 217).

(2.1.1) a. *Vakar pūta stiprs vējš.*
yesterday blow.PST.3 strong.NOM.M wind.NOM.M
‘A strong wind blew yesterday.’
b. *Es rīt satikšu savu brāli.*
I.NOM tomorrow meet.FUT.1SG own.ACC.M brother.ACC.M
‘Tomorrow I will meet my brother.’
c. *Neviens negaidīja tik agru ziema sākumu.*
nobody.NOM.M not_expect.PST.3 such early.ACC.M winter.GEN.F onset.ACC.M
‘Nobody expected such an early onset of winter.’
d. *Tā ir mana māsa Liga.*
that.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 my.NOM.F sister.NOM.F Liga.NOM.F
‘That is my sister Liga.’

Based on their meaning, nouns are usually classified as (also see Section 2.1.5):

1) **Common nouns** denoting any of a class of objects (examples 2.1.2) and **proper nouns** denoting particular objects out of all the objects of the same class such as personal names, names of animals, geographical names, names of institutions and organizations, etc. (2.1.3):


(2.1.3) *Līga ‘Līga (a female name)’ Valdis ‘Valdis (a male name)’ Eiropa ‘Europe’ Latvija ‘Latvia’ Latvijas Nacionālā bibliotēka ‘The National Library of Latvia’*

2) **Concrete (2.1.4a) and abstract (2.1.4b) nouns, collective nouns (2.1.4c), names of substances (2.1.4d), etc.**

2.1.1 Declension

Latvian nouns are customarily divided into six declensions. The distinct endings that nouns take relative to the paradigms of case, number, and gender play a major role in differentiating nouns into declensions (Paegle 2003: 45; Nau 2011; Smiltniece 2013: 357–366; Kalnača 2014: 4–5).

Declensions 1–3 mostly contain masculine nouns, while declensions 4–6 mostly contain feminine nouns. However, declension 4 also includes the masculine noun puika ‘boy’, declension 6 contains the masculine plural-only noun laudis ‘people’, declension 3 contains some feminine surnames, and declensions 4 and 5 contain common gender nouns (see Section 2.1.2 for a detailed discussion).

The words asmens ‘blade’, akmens ‘stone’, rudens ‘autumn’, ūdens ‘water’, zibens ‘lightning’, mēness ‘moon’, suns ‘dog’ (all M), which have formed a separate declension (that of consonantal stem nouns) in the past, are nowadays referred to as declension 2 exceptions.

It is thus possible to propose the following system of case and number endings for nouns. Note that the endings preceded by palatalization have been displayed as separate exponents (see also Haspelmath 2002: 242; Nau 2011; Kalnača 2014: 7–9):

Singular
Declension 2 subdivides into two further groups: consonantal stem nouns (2b) and all other nouns (2a). Note that for declensions 4 and 5 the masculine dative singular endings -am and -em are listed along with the feminine endings (see examples (2.1.5)–(2.1.7)):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>-s, -š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>-ø, -s, -š, -u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.1 Singular case endings (adapted from Kalnača 2014: 8)
Plural

Here, declension 3 subdivides into two further groups: masculine nouns (3a) and feminine nouns (3b).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>3a</th>
<th>3b</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>-'u</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-'u, -u</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>-'us</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>-'iem</td>
<td>-iem</td>
<td>-ūm</td>
<td>-ām</td>
<td>-ēm</td>
<td>-īm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>-'os</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.2  Plural case endings (adapted from Kalnača 2014: 8)


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1 (M)</th>
<th>2 (M)</th>
<th>3 (M)</th>
<th>4 (F)</th>
<th>5 (F)</th>
<th>6 (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>tēv-s, ceļ-š</td>
<td>brāl-is, akmen-s</td>
<td>liet-us</td>
<td>mās-a, puik-a (M)</td>
<td>māt-e</td>
<td>ziv-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>tēv-a, ceļ-a</td>
<td>brāl-a, akmen-s</td>
<td>liet-us</td>
<td>mās-as, puik-as</td>
<td>māt-es</td>
<td>ziv-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>tēv-am; ceļ-am</td>
<td>brāl-im, akmen-im</td>
<td>liet-um</td>
<td>mās-ai, puik-am</td>
<td>māt-ei</td>
<td>ziv-īj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>tēv-u, ceļ-u</td>
<td>brāl-i, akmen-i</td>
<td>liet-u</td>
<td>mās-u, puik-u</td>
<td>māt-i</td>
<td>ziv-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) tēv-u, (ar) ceļ-u</td>
<td>(ar) brāl-i, (ar) akmen-i</td>
<td>(ar) liet-u</td>
<td>(ar) mās-u, (ar) puik-u</td>
<td>(ar) māt-i</td>
<td>(ar) ziv-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>tēv-ā, ceļ-ā</td>
<td>brāl-i, akmen-i</td>
<td>liet-ā</td>
<td>mās-ā, puik-ā</td>
<td>māt-ē</td>
<td>ziv-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1 (M)</th>
<th>2 (M)</th>
<th>3 (M)</th>
<th>4 (F)</th>
<th>5 (F)</th>
<th>6 (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>tēv-i, ceļ-i</td>
<td>brāl-i, akmen-i</td>
<td>liet-i</td>
<td>mās-as, puik-as</td>
<td>māt-es</td>
<td>ziv-is, laud-is (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>tēv-u, ceļ-u</td>
<td>brāl-u, akmen-u</td>
<td>liet-u</td>
<td>mās-u, puik-u</td>
<td>māš-u</td>
<td>zivj-u, lauž-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>tēv-iem, ceļ-iem</td>
<td>brāl-iem, akmen-iem</td>
<td>liet-iem</td>
<td>mās-ām, puik-ām</td>
<td>māt-ēm</td>
<td>ziv-īm, laūd-īm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As has already been pointed out, the declension 4 masculine noun puīka ‘boy’ takes the masculine ending -am in DAT SG, cf. māsa ‘sister’ (F), also see Table 2.3:

(2.1.5) NOM SG

mās-a ‘sister’(F), puik-a ‘boy’(M)

DAT SG

mās-ai ‘for (a/the) sister’(F), puik-am ‘for (a/the) boy’(M)

Apart from feminine nouns, declensions 4 and 5 also include common gender nouns (examples (2.1.6), see Section 2.4.2 for a detailed discussion) and some surnames (examples (2.1.7)), which in Standard Latvian are overtly marked for gender in DAT SG (Paegle 2003: 32, 50):

(2.1.6) common gender nouns
a. declension 4
   auš-a ‘feather brain’
   auš-ai (F)
   auš-am (M)
b. declension 5
   bend-e ‘executioner’
   bend-ei (F)
   bend-em (M)

(2.1.7) proper names (surnames)
a. declension 4
   NOM SG
   Liep-a, Klav-a, Jūr-a (F, M)
   DAT SG
   Liep-ai, Klav-ai, Jūr-ai (F)
   Liep-am, Klav-am, Jūr-am (M)
b. declension 5
   NOM SG
   Egl-e, Pried-e, Niedr-e (F, M)
   DAT SG
   Egl-ei, Pried-ei, Niedr-ei (F)
   Egl-em, Pried-em, Niedr-em (M)
Although declension 3 feminine common nouns are now obsolete, some surnames such as Dejus, Čapus, Didžus, Markus, Bikšus, Balčus, Statkus, Snitkus, Ķerus are still in use in Standard Latvian and inflect for both genders according to two distinct paradigms, see Table 2.4:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>Jānis Dej-us</td>
<td>Ilze Dej-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>Jāņa Dej-us</td>
<td>Ilzes Dej-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>Jānim Dej-um</td>
<td>Ilzei Dej-ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>Jāni Dej-u</td>
<td>Ilzi Dej-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) Jāni Dej-u</td>
<td>(ar) Ilai Dej-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>Jāni Dej-ū</td>
<td>Ilzē Dej-ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>Jāni Dej-u!</td>
<td>Ilze Dej-u!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.4  Case forms of declension 3 surnames in masculine and feminine (adapted from Smiltniece 2013: 362)

In colloquial Latvian, common nouns denoting persons and personal names of declensions 1, 2, 4 and 5 exhibit several variants of the vocative singular (Table 2.1) (see also Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 102, 105, 108–110).

For feminine personal names of declensions 4 and 5, the vocative function is usually performed by nominative case forms, although, in colloquial speech, vocative case forms are also possible (mostly, with trisyllabic (NOM) personal names) (2.1.8a–b).

Personal names and common nouns signifying kinship, as well as different kinds of diminutives and some other nouns of declension 2, are quite frequently used without an ending -i in the vocative (note that personal names are often trisyllabic in the nominative) (Smiltniece 2013: 360) (2.1.8b–c)–(2.1.10).

(2.1.8)  a. VOC SG

- declension 4
  - Aij-al!, Rit-al!, Katrīn-al!, Līvij-al! (female names)
  - and
  - Aij-øl!, Katrīn-øl!, Līvij-ø! (colloquial)

- declension 5
  - Ilz-øl!, Lien-øl!, Renāt-øl!, Kristīn-øl! (female names)
  - and
  - Ilz-øl!, Lien-øl!, Renāt-øl!, Kristīn-øl! (colloquial)

b. NOM SG

- brāl-is ‘brother’, puis-is ‘boy’, tēt-is ‘father’
- Pēter-is, Visvald-is, Laimon-is (male names)
- diminutives Kārlīt-is, vecit-is, engēlīt-is (derived from the words Kārlis, vecis ‘old man’, engēlis ‘angel’)
d. **VOC SG**

*brāl-ø!, puis-ø!, tēt-ø!* (Standard Latvian: *brāl-i!, puis-i!, tēt-i!*)

*Pēter-ø!, Visvald-ø!, Laimon-ø!* (Standard Latvian: *Pēter-i!, Visvald-i!, Laimon-i!*)

*Kārlīt-ø!, vecīt-ø!, ēņgelīt-ø!* (Standard Latvian: *Kārlīt-i!, vecīt-i!, ēņgelīt-i!*)

(2.1.9) a. **Viss** vēl mainīsies,

*everything.NOM.M PTCL change.FUT.3*

*tu* redzēsi, **brāl!**

*you.NOM.SG see.FUT.2sg brother.VOC.M*

‘Everything will change one day, you’ll see, brother!’ (C)

b. **Puis!**

*chap.VOC.M*

‘Chap!’ (C)

c. **Pēter,** pasmaidi!

*Pēteris.VOC.M* smile.IMP.2SG

‘Pēteris, do smile!’ (C)

d. **Tu,** **Kārl-īt** esi izklaidīgs.

*you.NOM.SG Kārlis-DIM.VOC.M be.COP.PRS.2SG quite absent_minded.NOM.M*

‘You, Kārlītis, are quite absent-minded.’ (C)

(2.1.10) a. **Miļo** ēņgel-īt, parupējies

*dear.ACC.M angel-DIM.VOC.M take_care.IMP.2SG*

*par* manu draugu,

*about my.ACC.M friend.ACC.M*

*kuram* šodien ir vārda diena!

*who.DAT.M today be.COP.PRS.3 name.ACC.M day.NOM.F*

‘Dear angel, please look after my friend whose name day is today!’

(www.draugiem.lv)

b. **Miļais** Ziemassvētku vec-īt, lūdzu

*dear.NOM.M Christmas.GEN.PL.M old_man-DIM.VOC.M please*

*paskubini @latvijas_pasts darbinieces,*

*urge.IMP.2SG @latvijas_pasts employee.ACC.PL.F*

*lai* strādā raitāk.

*that work.PRS.3 more_quickly*

‘Dear Santa, please urge the employees at @latvijas_pasts to hurry up with their work.’ (www.twitter.com)

In colloquial speech, declension 1 and 4 personal names often take the ending -u in the vocative; usually, however, these forms do not find their way into grammar books. It should be kept in mind that declension 1 personal names are mostly monosyllabic, sometimes disyllabic, while declension 4 personal names are predominantly disyllabic in the nominative (examples (partly) from Kalnača 2014: 26):
(2.1.11) a. **declension 1**

NOM SG

Ojār-s, Klāv-s, Ainar-s (male names)

VOC SG

Ojār-u!, Klāv-u!, Ainar-u!

b. **declension 4**

NOM SG

Aij-a, Iev-a, Laum-a (female names)

VOC SG

Aij-u!, Ievu!, Laum-u!

c. and very often

NOM SG

mamm-a (‘mummy’ in colloquial speech)

VOC SG

mamm-u!

*Mammu, vai vēl ilgi?*

mum.VOC.F Q still long_time

‘Mum, how much longer now?’ (CW)

*Mammu, kur mums stāv putekļsūcējs?*

mum.VOC.F where we.DAT stand.PRS.3 vacuum_cleaner.NOM.M

‘Mum, where do we keep the vacuum cleaner?’ (Ieva)

**Palatalization**

As has been noted in Section 1.1.2, palatalization in Latvian is normally involved in, firstly, marking the genitive case of declension 2 (GEN SG) and declension 5, 6 (GEN PL) nouns, secondly, marking the plural of declension 2 nouns (see Table 2.3). There are certain exceptions, however, that do not demonstrate this shift:

1) disyllabic personal names in *-tis, -dis* (declension 2)

(2.1.12) NOM SG – GEN SG

*Atis* – *Ata*

*Guntis* – *Gunta*

*Valdis* – *Valda*

*Aldis* – *Alda* (male names)

2) common nouns in *-ris* (declension 2)

(2.1.13) NOM SG – GEN SG

*pavasaris* – *pavasara* ‘spring’

tosteris – tostera ‘toaster’

3) the word *viesis* (declension 2)

(2.1.14) *viesis* – *viesa* ‘guest’
4) some nouns in -ste, -te, -se (declension 5)

(2.1.15) NOM SG – GEN PL
   kaste – kastu ‘box’
   aste – astu ‘tail’
   karaliste – karalistu ‘kingdom’
   mute – mutu ‘mouth’
   kase – kasu ‘cash desk, box office’
   pase – pasu ‘passport’

5) nouns in -re (declension 5)

(2.1.16) NOM SG – GEN PL
   cepure – cepuru ‘hat’
   vāvere – vāveru ‘squirrel’
   sēre – sēru ‘sandbank’

6) the following declension 6 nouns:

(2.1.17) common nouns
   NOM SG – GEN PL
   acs – acu ‘eye’
   uzacs – uzacu ‘brow’
   auss – ausu ‘ear’
   balss – balsu ‘voice’
   debess – debesu ‘sky, heaven’
   valsts – valstu ‘country’
   vēsts – vēstu ‘tidings, news’

(2.1.18) the proper noun Cēsis – Cēsu (a town name)

Reflexive nouns

Standing apart from the six declensions discussed above is another group of nouns, which is quite interesting in many respects: reflexive deverbal nouns formed by derivation from reflexive verbs. The most common type are feminine reflexive nouns with -šanās (suffix -šan- + reflexive ending -ās):

(2.1.19) mazgā-ties – mazgā-šanās ‘to wash (oneself) – washing (oneself)’
   cel-ties – cel-šanās ‘to get up, to stand up – getting up, standing up’
   smie-ties – smie-šanās ‘to laugh – laughing’

Reflexive nouns in -šanās can be derived from all reflexive verbs, borrowings included:

(2.1.20) oksidē-ties – oksidē-šanās ‘to oxidize (no object) – oxidizing, oxidization’
   kondensē-ties – kondensē-šanās ‘to condense (no object) – condensing’
   praktizē-ties – praktizē-šanās ‘to practice (no object) – practicing’
Other types of reflexive deverbal nouns such as masculine reflexive nouns ending in
-umies (vēlējumies ‘wish’, cēlumies ‘getting up, standing up’), masculine and feminine
reflexive nouns ending in -tājies (M) (mazgātājies ‘one who washes (himself)’),
tājās (F) (peldētājās ‘one who bathes, goes swimming’), -ējies (M) (smējējies ‘one who
laughs’), -ējās (F) (smējējās) are found mainly in literary texts and are otherwise very
rare in modern Latvian. Instead of reflexive verbs, their non-reflexive counterparts
are now more commonly used as bases for the respective derivatives, e.g., vēlējums,
cēlums, mazgātājs, -a, peldētājs, -a, smējējs, -a.

As regards meaning, reflexive deverbal nouns denote objectified actions as
processes that generally exhibit the same kinds of meaning as reflexive verbs (see
also Section 2.5.7):

1) actions where the agent is also the patient

(2.1.21) mazgāties – mazgāšanās ‘to wash (oneself) – washing (oneself)’
   ģērbties – ģērbšanās ‘to dress (no object) – dressing’
   slaucīties – slaucišanās ‘to wipe (oneself) – wiping (oneself)’

2) reciprocal actions

(2.1.22) vienoties – vienošanās ‘to agree – agreement, also coming to an agreement’
   sarunāties – sarunāšanās ‘to converse – conversing’
   tikties – tikšanās ‘to meet – meeting’

3) actions occurring in and of themselves, without any active participation on
the part of the possible agent

(2.1.23) sārtoties – sārtošanās ‘to grow red – growing red’
   glabāties – glabāšanās ‘to be stored – being stored’
   rādīties – rādišanās ‘to appear, to seem – appearing, seeming’

4) sudden, unexpected or excessive actions

(2.1.24) iesmieties – iesmiešanās ‘to give a laugh – giving a laugh’
   sakustēties – sakustēšanās ‘to make a (sudden) move – making a (sudden) move’
   aizrunāties – aizrunāšanās ‘to talk for too long, to keep on about – talking
   for too long’
   pārcepties – pārcepšanās ‘to get overbaked, overroasted – getting overbaked,
   overroasted’

Reflexive nouns are characterized by incomplete (defective) declension paradigms,
having no dative or locative forms in either number and no instrumental plural.
Moreover, as there are only two endings, -ās and -os, in the whole paradigm, the forms
they are supposed to stand for are only determinable from the context (see Table 2.5
and examples (2.1.25)–(2.1.26)):
(2.1.25) **mazgāšanās** ‘washing (oneself)’ SG

a. **Pie kā noved bieža mazgāšanās?**
   to what_GEN lead_PRS.3 frequent_NOM.F washing_NOM.F
   ‘What does frequent washing lead to?’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. **Loti maigs mazgāšanās lidzeklis sausai**
   very gentle_NOM.M washing_GEN.F tool_NOM.M dry_DAT.F
   skin_DAT.F
   ‘A very gentle cleanser for dry skin.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

c. **Mazgāšanos vannā vajadzētu noslēgt ar vēsu washing_ACC.F bath_LOC.F should_COND finish_INF with cool_INS.F**
   shower_INS.F
   ‘One should take a cool shower after having a bath.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

d. **Ar mazgāšanos nepārspīlējiet!**
   with washing_INS.F not_overdo_IMP.2PL
   ‘Don’t overdo it with the washing!’ (www.apollo.lv)

(2.1.26) **tikšanās** ‘meeting’ PL

a. **Notiek regulāras tikšanās ar**
   happen_PRS.3 regular_NOM.PL.F meeting_NOM.PL.F with
   bankas vadibu.
   bank_GEN.F management_INS.F
   ‘Regular meetings with the bank’s management take place.’ (C)

b. **Šie jautājumi apspriesti arī abu**
   this_NOM.PL.M issue_NOM.PL.M discuss_PTCP.NOM.M also both_GEN.F
   valstu valdibu vadītāju
   country_GEN.PL.F government_GEN.PL.F head_GEN.PL.M
   ‘These issues have also been discussed at bilateral summits between
   the two countries.’ (C)
Some reflexive nouns can be considered defective also in terms of number in that they are predominantly used in the singular, e.g., aizsapņošanās ‘daydreaming’, mazgāšanās ‘washing (oneself)’, pielāgošanās ‘conforming (no object)’, sakustēšanās ‘making a (sudden) move’. For this reason, Paegle (2003: 53), for example, provides only the singular form paradigm of reflexive nouns indicating that such nouns are not normally used in the plural. However, many reflexive nouns actually occur in both numbers:

(2.1.27) SG
viena vēlēšanās ‘one wish’
viena tikšanās ‘one meeting’
viena vienošanās ‘one agreement’

PL
trīs vēlēšanās ‘three wishes’
desmit tikšanos ‘ten meetings’
vairākas vienošanās ‘several agreements’

Therefore, on the whole, reflexive nouns should not be classified as singular-only.

Indeclinable nouns
Still another group of nouns found in Latvian are indeclinable nouns. All indeclinable nouns are borrowed words, for example:

(2.1.28) common nouns

(2.1.29) proper nouns – geographical names (2.1.29a), personal names (2.1.29b), etc.

The gender, number, and case of such nouns are only determinable in context where they are often signaled by the form of a concordant attribute (2.1.30) or a nominal predicate (2.1.31):

(2.1.30) a. Grāmata maksā piecus eiro.
book.NOM.F cost.PRS.3 five.ACC.M euro
‘The book costs five euros.’

b. Mūs Nepālā pārsteidza neparastā Katmandu.
we.ACC Nepal.LOC.F amaze.PST.3 unusual.PTCP.NOM.F Kathmandu
‘When in Nepal we were amazed by unusual Kathmandu.’
(2.1.31) a.  *Oslo ir salīdzinoši neliela, bet ļoti patīkama.*
   *Oslo be.COP.PRS.3 relatively small.NOM.F but very pleasant.PTCP.NOM.F*
   ‘Oslo is relatively small but very pleasant.’

b.  *Kokto ir ievērojams rakstnieks.*
   *Cocteau be.COP.PRS.3 noteworthy.PTCP.M writer.NOM.M*
   ‘Cocteau is a noteworthy writer.’

In colloquial speech, indeclinable nouns are often made declinable by adding endings and sometimes also diminutive suffixes -īt-, -iņ-, -uk- (examples (2.1.32) from Kalnača 2014: 13):

(2.1.32)  
   - *eiro → eir-is, eir-īt-is ‘euro’*
   - *kino → ķin-is, ķin-īt-is ‘cinema’*
   - *radio → rādž-iņ-š, rādž-uk-s ‘radio’*

In Standard Latvian, a number of indeclinable nouns have recently become declinable through the addition of endings (Kalme & Smītniece 2001: 113), examples (2.1.33)–(2.1.34) from Kalnača 2014: 13); however, this is not a regular or predictable process.

(2.1.33)  
   - *baroko, čello, pianino, mannā, sodā → baroks ‘baroque’, čells ‘cello’, pianīns ‘piano’ (all M), manna ‘manna’, soda ‘soda’ (both F)*

(2.1.34)  
   - *želē, filē, dražē, Tokio → želeja ‘jelly, gel’, fileja ‘fillet’, dražeja ‘dragée’, Tokija ‘Tokyo’ (all F)*

**Compound genitives (genitive-only compound nouns)**

The group of indeclinable nouns also, in a sense, includes compound genitives (also *genitivelings* – see Nau 1998: 26; Berg-Olsen 2007). Compound genitives are a special group of Latvian compound nouns that have only one case form, the genitive, either in the singular (2.1.35) or, perhaps more commonly, in the plural (2.1.36). Syntactically, they usually function as non-agreeing attributes (Soida 1976; Kušķis 1976; Berg-Olsen 2007; Skujiņa 2007: 136):

(2.1.35)  
   a.  *vien-zilb-es vārd-s*
      *monosyllabic-gen.f word-nom.m*
      ‘monosyllabic word’
   b.  *bez-maks-as pakalpojum-s*
      *without-charge-gen.f service-nom.m*
      ‘free service’
   c.  *pirms-plān-a dokument-s*
      *pre-plan-gen.m document-nom.m*
      ‘preplanning document’
Compound genitives can also, although less commonly, function as nominal predicates (Kalnača, Lokmane 2016):

(2.1.37) a. Šis pakalpojums būs bezmaksas.
   this.service nom be.cop.fut 3 without_charge
   'This service will be free.' (www.kursors.lv)

b. Rakstā minēts, ka divstāvu.
   article mention that two_story
   be.cop.prs 3 'The article mentions that this is a two-story house.' (www.tvnet.lv)

Based on the word classes of their components, compound genitives can be grouped as follows (Ahero et al. 1959: 207–209, Soida 1976: 149; Kalnača, Lokmane 2016):

1) N<sub>GEN</sub> + N (2.1.38a), ADJ + N (2.1.38b), NUM + N (2.1.38c), PRON + N (2.1.38d), ADV + N (2.1.38e)

(2.1.38) a. zelt-spārn-u
gold-wing-genPLM
   'golden-winged'

b. zem-papēž-u
low-heel-genPLM
   'low-heeled'

c. div-istab-u
two-room-genPLF
   'two-room'
d. šā-gad-a
this-year-genM
   'this year's'
e. daudz-gad-u
many-year-genPLM
   'multiyear'

The gender of compound genitives depends on the declension and gender of the head.
2) PREP + N

(2.1.39) a. *pirms-križ-es*
   before-crisis-GEN.PL.F
   ‘pre-crisis’

b. *bez-vad-u*
   without-wire-GEN.PL.M
   ‘wireless’

c. *starp-zvaigžņ-u*
   between-star-GEN.PL.F
   ‘interstellar’

All compound genitives in Latvian originate from noun phrases (in detail see Section 2.1.5, Table 2.9).

Synonymous noun phrases and compound genitives can function in parallel, e.g.:

(2.1.40) a. *Pasākumā, kas notiek brīvā dabā,*
   event.LOC.M which.NOM take_place.PRS.3 free.LOC.F
   augstu papēžu kurpes
   high.GEN.PL.M heel.GEN.PL.M shoe.NOM.PL.F
   nebūs piemērotas.
   not_be.FUT.3 appropriate.PTCP.NOM.PL.F
   ‘High-heeled shoes will not be appropriate for an outdoor event.’
   (www.mia.lv)

b. *Kā augstpapēžu kurpes*
   how high-heel.GEN.PL.M shoe.NOM.PL.F
   ietekmē veselību?
   affect.PRS.3 health.ACC.F
   ‘How do high-heeled shoes affect one’s health?’ (www.delfi.lv)

In Latvian, compound genitives can be used as base words for forming new nouns and adjectives (see Section 2.1.5, Tables 2.7 and 2.9, and Section 2.2.4, Table 2.13).

2.1.2 Gender

The category of noun gender captures the ways in which objects are differentiated based on their sex or animacy, or else reflects the formal arrangement of objects into genders manifested in noun endings (Skujiņa 2007: 100). Gender is thus a lexicogrammatical category, being at least to some degree tied to real-world denotations, i.e., to the animacy and sex of the objects denoted (Corbett 2005). Latvian has two genders – masculine and feminine – with separate inflectional (case and number) paradigms (see Table 2.3).

1) roots in terms denoting kinship

(2.1.41) M

F

2) endings in terms denoting professions and persons in general

(2.1.42) dejotāj-s (M), dejotāj-a (F) ‘dancer’
- kontrolier-is (M), kontrolier-e (F) ‘inspector’

3) the words mother, father, lady, he, or she for ladies of the house, mothers, farmers, owners, fathers, and male as well as female animals and birds:

(2.1.43) Novadnieku māte (F) ‘proprietress of Novadnieki, lady of Novadnieki’
- Novadnieku tēvs (M) ‘owner of Novadnieki, farmer from Novadnieki’
- vilku māte (F) ‘she-wolf’
- aļņu mātīte (F) ‘cow (female moose)’
- pīļ tēviņš (M) ‘drake’

Sex (and animacy) can also be encoded derivationally:

1) noun suffixes denoting wives, progenitresses, proprietresses

(2.1.44) kalējs – kalēj-ien-e/kalēj-en-e ‘blacksmith – blacksmith’s wife’
- Oļiņš – Oļiņ-iet-e (a personal name)
- lācis – lāc-ien-e/lāc-en-e ‘bear – she-bear’
- kaķis – kaķ-en-e ‘tomcat – queen (female cat)’
- stārķis – stārķ-ien-e/stārķ-en-e ‘stork – female stork’

2) noun suffixes used to refer to living things in the masculine regardless of their actual sex

(2.1.45) brāl-ēn-s ‘male cousin’, tel-ēn-s ‘calf’, pel-ēn-s ‘little mouse, young mouse’,
- sun-uk-s ‘little dog’, lāč-uk-s ‘bear (DIM)’, meit-uk-s ‘daughter (DIM)’,
- māš-uk-s ‘sister (DIM)’

3) noun suffixes + endings used to refer to living things in both genders

(2.1.46) veikal-niec-e (F), veikal-niek-s (M) ‘shopkeeper’
- alūksn-iet-e, alūksn-iet-is ‘inhabitant of the town of Alūksne’
- gāj-ēj-a, gāj-ēj-s ‘pedestrian’
- runā-tāj-a, runā-tāj-s ‘speaker’
- gudr-ik-e, gudr-ik-is ‘smart person’

4) common gender noun suffixes in words that may be equally well used of males and females

(2.1.47) snaud-aj-a ‘sleepyhead’, gul-av-a ‘(keen) sleeper’, dazs-on-a ‘rowdy person’

On the other hand, there are many nouns representing inanimate entities and many types of animals, birds, and insects whose grammatical gender is a formal feature. In
such cases, the gender-specific ending or suffix only serves to specify the declension type (Kalnača 2000: 179–180; Kalnača 2008: 29), for example:

(2.1.48) M
med-\textit{us} ‘honey’, liel-\textit{um-s} ‘size’, zvirbul-\textit{is} ‘sparrow’, zut-\textit{is} ‘eel’,
dundur-\textit{s} ‘gadfly’
F
saul-\textit{e} ‘sun’, vēlm-\textit{e} ‘desire’, gudrīb-\textit{a} ‘wisdom’, caun-\textit{a} ‘marten’,
karūs-\textit{a} ‘crucian carp’, blakt-\textit{s} ‘bug (entom.)’

Unlike the nouns in examples (2.1.41)–(2.1.46), these kinds of nouns lack natural gender, which perhaps explains why their grammatical gender, although standardized in Standard Latvian, may fluctuate in speech. For example, while the nouns \textit{seja} ‘face’, \textit{kļava} ‘maple’ are feminine in Standard Latvian, they sometimes occur in the masculine in colloquial speech and subdialects (\textit{sejs}, \textit{kļavs}). The gender of the word \textit{sāls} ‘salt’ in the sense of ‘kitchen salt’ is problematic even in Standard Latvian. The current norm, which has existed since the mid 1980s, classes it as a masculine declension 2 noun (example (2.1.49a)) after the word \textit{akmens} ‘stone’ and the like. Nevertheless, the formerly traditional feminine declension 6 paradigm is still widely applied instead (example (2.1.49b)):

(2.1.49) a. M
vārāmais sāls ‘kitchen salt’, smalkais sāls ‘fine salt’, rupjais sāls ‘coarse salt’
b. F
vārāmā sāls, smalkā sāls, rupjā sāls

Paegle (2003: 33) states that the word \textit{sāls} ‘salt’ in the sense of ‘kitchen salt’ can be used in either gender. It should be noted that in colloquial speech and subdialects, a similar gender variation is also possible for other declension 6 words. For example, the following nouns are sometimes inflected as masculine in the plural:

(2.1.50) \textit{ači} ‘eyes’, \textit{usahaan} ‘brows’, \textit{uguni} ‘lights’, \textit{dzelši} ‘hardware’

(Standard Latvian all F PL – \textit{acis}, \textit{uzacis}, \textit{ugunis}, \textit{dzelzi})

Another case in point are several widely-used feminine nouns denoting females which function with masculine endings alongside the feminine forms in colloquial Latvian (Ahero et al. 1959: 380; Smiltniece 2002: 39–40):

(2.1.51) \textit{sieviet-e} ‘woman’, \textit{meiten-e} ‘girl’, \textit{skuč-e} ‘girl’ (all with F endings)
and
\textit{sieviet-is}, \textit{meiten-is}, \textit{skuč-is} (all with M endings)

The words \textit{sievišķ-is} ‘woman’ and \textit{meitiet-is} ‘girl’, which only occur with the masculine ending in modern Latvian, can be added to this group of transposed gender nouns. As Wierzbicka (1996: 398) notes, the replacement of basic natural gender signals the speaker’s expressive attitude. Usually, nouns of the sort mentioned above are used by male speakers to indicate a negative or pejorative attitude. However, there are examples in classical Latvian literature of words like \textit{sievietis} ‘woman’, \textit{meitenis} ‘girl’, \textit{skučis} ‘girl’ being used by speakers of both sexes to convey a positive or neutral attitude.
Also quite common in colloquial Latvian are diminutives which denote females but have masculine endings, being derived from feminine nouns by means of the diminutive suffixes -uk- and -ēn-, which normally require masculine endings: -uk-s / -uc-is, -ēn-s (see Section 2.1.5, Table 2.7). Unlike the words just mentioned, these diminutives always communicate a positive and friendly attitude, for example:

(2.1.52) meita ‘daughter’ – meit-uk-s, meit-uc-is, meit-ēn-s
mamma ‘mummy’ – mamm-uk-s, mamm-uc-is
Ieva (a female name) – lev-uk-s, lev-uc-is, lev-ēn-s
Ilze (a female name) – Ilž-uk-s, Ilz-ēn-s

In Standard Latvian, a verbal distinction is consistently made between males and females in nouns indicating jobs, professions, and occupations, which means that all such words can be used in either gender depending on the sex of the person involved, for example (examples (2.1.53) from Kalnača 2013a):

(2.1.53) skolotāj-a (F), skolotāj-s (M) ‘teacher’
tulkotāj-a (F), tulkotāj-s (M) ‘translator’
viesmīl-e (F), viesmīl-is (M) ‘waitress, waiter’
šofer-e (F), šofer-is (M) ‘driver’
advokāt-e (F), advokāt-s (M) ‘lawyer’
notār-e (F), notār-s (M) ‘notary’
ārst-e (F), ārst-s (M) ‘doctor’
stomatoloģ-e (F), stomatolog-s (M) ‘dentist’
kardioloģ-e (F), kardiolog-s (M) ‘cardiologist’
bibliotekār-e (F), bibliotekār-s (M) ‘librarian’
balletmeistar-e (F), balletmeistar-s (M) ‘ballet master’
profesor-e (F), profesor-s (M) ‘professor’
president-e (F), president-s (M) ‘president’

When referring to women, names of professions, occupations, etc. are always feminine, e.g.:

(2.1.54) zvērināt-a notār-e Ilga Kociņa (F) ‘notary public Ilga Kociņa’
dzejniec-e (F) Liene Paeglīte (F) ‘poetess Liene Paeglīte’

The same holds true for surnames, which must be concordant with the sex of the referent:

(2.1.55) lev-a Straut-a (F) (≠ Strauts)
Jān-is Straut-s (M)
Ilz-e Vilk-a (F) (≠ Vilks)
Ivar-s Vilk-s (M)
Aij-a Lāc-e (F) (≠ Lācis)
Ojār-s Lāc-is (M)

Indeclinable common nouns are normally masculine in Latvian:

(2.1.56) auto ‘automobile’, neto ‘net (value etc.)’, veto ‘veto’, protēžē ‘protégé’
The gender of indeclinable proper nouns, on the contrary, depends on the gender attributed to the object denoted and is determinable from context; rivers, cities, countries, islands are, therefore, feminine (2.1.57), while lakes, mountains and Villages are masculine (2.1.58):

(2.1.57) F

*Taho (upe) ‘Tajo (river)’, Toledo (pilsēta) ‘Toledo (city)’, Kongo (valsts) ‘Congo (country)’, Kihnu (sala) ‘Kihnu (island)’

(2.1.58) M

Ā (ezers) ‘Aasee (lake)’, Kilimandžāro (kalns) ‘Kilimanjaro (mountain)’, Sanildefonso (ciems) ‘San Ildefonso (town)’

The gender of indeclinable personal names depends on the sex of the person referred to and is usually made clear by a declinable name in case of indeclinable surnames (2.1.59) or vice versa (2.1.60):

(2.1.59) Aino Kalniņ-a (F) (indeclinable name, declinable surname)

Ivo Liepiņ-š (M)

(2.1.60) Lien-e Megi (F) (declinable name, indeclinable surname)

Kārl-is Megi (M)

Nouns of common gender (substantiva communia), while having feminine endings, can be applied to females and males alike and are usually used to point to certain qualities or perceived actions of the persons involved (Smiltniece 2013: 333–335), for example:


More often than not common gender nouns express a greater or lesser degree of disdain, some even qualify as swear words (examples (2.1.62a)) and only a few are neutral (examples (2.1.62b)):

(2.1.62) a. muldoņa ‘twaddler’, plikadīda ‘pauper’, aitasgalva ‘blockhead’, salasņa ‘ragtag’


The gender of common gender nouns thus depends on the sex of the person denoted and is determinable from context, which serves as the actual marker of gender in such cases instead of noun endings:

(2.1.63) M

a. Mans divus mēnešus vecais

Mans two.acc.pl.m month.acc.pl.m old.nom.m

mazulis ir liels guļava.

baby.nom.m be.cop.prs.3 big.nom.m sleeper.nom.m

‘My two months old baby is a keen sleeper.’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)
b. **Mans** labs **paziņa** nesen
my.NOM.M good.NOM.M acquaintance.NOM.M recently
dabūja darbu.
get.PST.3 job.ACC.M
‘A close acquaintance of mine just got a job.’ (Ir)

(2.1.64) F

a. Es esmu **lielākā** guļava
I.NOM be.COP.PRS.1 big.CMP.NOM.F sleeper.NOM.F
mūsu mājās.
our.GEN.PL.F home.LOC.PL.F
‘I am the keenest sleeper in our home.’ (www.veseliba.lv)

b. **Draudzene** (dričāk **laba** paziņa)
friend.NOM.F (rather good.NOM.F acquaintance.NOM.F)
strādā veikalā.
work.PRS.3 shop.LOC.M
‘A friend (or rather a close acquaintance) of mine works at a shop.’
(www.delfi.lv)

There is another group of nouns in Latvian, the so-called false common gender nouns, which can be classed with common gender nouns proper. These words are feminine in their neutral primary meaning and denote natural phenomena, animals, objects, etc.:

(2.1.65) a. **saule** ‘sun’, **zvaigze** ‘star’, **galva** ‘head’

b. **lupata** ‘rag’, **cūka** ‘pig, swine’, **maita** ‘bastard’

When applied to a person, however, they function as common gender nouns, which can be neutral (example (2.1.66)), colloquial, or even vulgar (examples (2.1.67)):

(2.1.66) **zvaigze** ‘star’

a. M

Futbola **zvaigze**, Madrides “Atletico” pussargs
football.GEN.M star.NOM.M Madrid.GEN.F Atlético midfielder.NOM.M
dusmās met tiesnesim ar zābaku.
anger.LOC.PL.F throw.PRS.3 referee.DAT.M with boot.INS.M
‘A soccer star, Atlético Madrid’s midfielder, throws his boot at the referee in anger.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. F

Sportistus trenē vācu kamaniņu
athlete.ACC.PL.M coach.PRS.3 German.GEN.PL.M luge.GEN.PL.F
sporta **zvaigze** un vairākkārtējā pasaules
sport.GEN.M star.NOM.F and repeat.NOM.F world.GEN.F
čempione.
champion.NOM.F
‘The athletes are coached by a German luge star and repeat world champion.’ (www.delfi.lv)
(2.1.67)  
cūka ‘pig, swine’, maita ‘bastard’  
a. M  
\[ \text{Tavs draugs ir liels cūka!} \]

‘Your friend is a real swine!’ (www.draugiem.lv)  
b. F  
\[ \text{Kolēģes ir maitas un vādītāja pamatīga cūka!} \]

‘My colleagues are bastards and the manager is a total swine!’ (CW)  

Hence, gender markers and their functions in language are in part a formal feature and in part directly depend on the animacy and the social position of the respective male or female. This duality of gender is described amply in grammar books, as it holds for the majority of languages (for example, Ahero et al. 1959: 379–381; Paegle 2003: 31–33; Corbett 2005).

### 2.1.3 Number

The category of number as applied to nouns is a lexico-grammatical category which expresses count or quantity distinctions between objects or else reflects a formal arrangement of objects manifested in noun endings. In modern Latvian, the category of number comprises two forms – the singular and the plural (Skujins 2007: 362), with separate paradigms for case and gender. Isolated examples of the dual can still be found in subdialects and imaginative literature (e.g., abi roki ‘both arms’).

The category of number is thus based on the opposition between one and many. Since the concept of many subsumes the concept of two in modern Latvian, a number of former dual-only nouns that denote bipartite objects have become plural-only (pluralia tantum), e.g.:

(2.1.68)  

Although the category of number is closely linked with real-world denotations, the link is more abstract than in case of gender. Many objects are not readily classifiable based on the one vs. many criterion:

1) uncountable nouns which have forms corresponding to both numbers

(2.1.69)  
asins – asinis ‘blood’  
debess – debesis ‘sky’  
māls – māli ‘clay’  
smilts – smiltis ‘sand’
2) nouns whose singular and plural forms in certain contexts may represent different lexemes:

(2.1.70) 
- **svars** – **svari** ‘weight – scale’
- **gods** – **godi** ‘honor – feast’
- **laiks** – **laiki** ‘time – age, times’
- **zāle** – **zāles** ‘grass – medicine’

Nouns ending in **-ums** often denote a generalized quality in the singular and a concretized object in the plural:

(2.1.71) a. **saldums** (medus saldums) – **saldumi**
   ‘sweetness (the sweetness of honey) – sweets’

b. **zaļums** (zāles zaļums) – **zaļumi**
   ‘greenness (the greenness of grass) – herbs and leaf vegetables (dill, spring onions, parsley, celery, etc.)’

3) The grammatical number of nouns which are normally used in just one of the numbers, provided that count and quantity are irrelevant to their lexical meaning, is determined as follows:

a) singular-only nouns

(2.1.72) a. **names of substances**
   - **ledus** ‘ice’, **stikls** ‘glass’, **žults** ‘bile’, **skābeklis** ‘oxygen’, **ūdeņradis** ‘hydrogen’, **cukurs** ‘sugar’, **piens** ‘milk’, **krējums** ‘(sour, double, etc.) cream’, **malka** ‘firewood’

b. **abstract concepts** (derivatives formed by means of various suffixes or endings)
   - **-īb-a** (sirsnība ‘cordiality’, veselība ‘health’, noteiktība ‘definiteness, certainty’, dzivība ‘life’)
   - **-um-s** (lepnums ‘pride’, skaistums ‘beauty’, nogurums ‘tiredness, fatigue’)
   - **-šan-a** (gaidīšana ‘waiting’, raudāšana ‘crying’, veikšana ‘carrying out, fulfilling’)
   - **-on-a** (dunoņa ‘droning’, riboņa ‘rumble’, kaukoņa ‘howling’)
   - **-an-e, -otn-e, -tn-e** (jaunatne ‘youth’, mazotne ‘infancy’, pagātne ‘past’)
   - **-a** (griba ‘will’, cieņa ‘respect’, sēja ‘sowing’)
   - **-e** (laime ‘happiness’, smeldze ‘slight pain, yearning’, kvēle ‘glow, fervor’)

c. **aggregates of objects, phenomena, and beings**
   - **cilvēce** ‘mankind’, **kūla** ‘last year’s grass’, **zelmenis** ‘stand of grass’, **āboliņš** ‘clover’, **kukurūza** ‘corn’, **nauda** ‘money’

d. **proper nouns** (including **personal names**)
   - **Ieva, Ilze** (female names), **Viesturs, Kaspars** (male names)
e. natural phenomena, celestial bodies

b) plural-only nouns

(2.1.73) a. old bipartites
b. objects, substances consisting of particles
c. plants growing in tufts, shrubs, or bushes, grain
d. aggregates of persons
ļaudis ‘people’, vecāki ‘parents’, piederīgie ‘relatives, members of an organization’, tuvinieki ‘close ones’, jaunlaulātie ‘newlyweds’
e. abstract concepts
f. meals and festivals
g. diseases and physiological processes
h. names of geographical locations
Cēsis, Talsi, Ainaži (towns), Pireneji ‘Pyrenees’, Helsinki ‘Helsinki’

2.1.4 Case

Case is a grammatical category of nouns which expresses relations between objects, processes, and features (Skujina 2007: 222). Case forms reflect the semantic and syntactic functions that nouns perform in phrases and sentences. In Latvian, case is usually encoded by means of endings.

All Latvian cases, with the exception of the vocative case, can carry different meanings depending on context, the category of case is therefore a morphosyntactic phenomenon. The basic functions of the cases are listed below.
NOMINATIVE

1) semantic subject – the role of agent (2.1.74) or experiencer (2.1.75) aligned with the syntactic function of subject; statements of fact in nominal predicates (2.1.76)

(2.1.74) a. *Es rakstu vēstuli.*
   I.NOM write.PRS.1SG letter.ACT
   ‘I am writing a letter.’

b. *Suns rej.*
   dog.NOM.M bark.PRS.3
   ‘The dog is barking.’

c. *Es esmu noguris.*
   I.NOM be.AUX.PRS.1SG tired.ACT nom.M
   ‘I am tired.’

(2.1.75) a. *Bērns ir aizmīdzis.*
   child.NOM.M be.AUX.PRS.3 asleep.ACT nom.M
   ‘The child is asleep.’

b. *Es esmu skolotājs.*
   I.NOM be.COP.PRS.1SG teacher.ACT nom.M
   ‘I am a teacher.’

(2.1.76) a. *Tas ir mans divritenis.*
   that.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 my.ACT nom.M bicycle.ACT nom.M
   ‘That is my bicycle.’

b. *Lieldienas ir pavasara svētki.*
   Easter.ACT nom.M be.COP.PRS.3 spring.ACT nom.M festival.ACT nom.M
   ‘Easter is a spring festival.’

2) semantic object – a patient or undergoer of an action (2.1.77)

(2.1.77) a. *Sienas tiek krāsotas.*
   wall.ACT nom.M get.AUX.PRS.3 paint.ACT nom.M
   ‘The walls are being painted.’

b. *Sienas ir krāsotas.*
   wall.ACT nom.M be.AUX.PRS.3 paint.ACT nom.M
   ‘The walls are painted.’

c. *Man ir jākrāso sienas.*
   I.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.paint walls.ACT nom.M
   ‘I have to paint the walls.’

d. *Man niez roka.*
   I.DAT itch.PRS.3 arm.ACT nom.
   ‘My arm is itching.’

3) vocative function – when a noun in the nominative case is used as a vocative (some declension 1, 4 and 5 nouns in the singular (2.1.78a–c) and nouns of all declensions in the plural (2.1.78d–f))
(2.1.78) a. *Nebaidies, bērns!*
   "Don’t be afraid, child!" (CW)
b. *Anda, lūdzu, izbeidz!*
   "Anda, please, stop!" (CW)
c. *Meitene, ak, meitene!*
   "Girl, oh, girl!" (C)
d. *Nāciet šurp, bērniņi!*
   "Come here, kids!" (C)
e. *Miļās māmiņas! Jūs tiekat*
   "Dear mummies! You are cordially invited to the Mother’s Day concert!"
   (www.draugiem.lv)
f. *Miļās māmulītes, jūsu bērns vēl ir mazs!*
   "Dear mummies, your child is still small!" (www.delfi.lv)

**GENITIVE**

1. Syntactically dependent on a noun or adjective
   1) possession, attribution

(2.1.79) a. *ēkas jumts*
   "the roof of a building’
b. *brāla istaba*
   "brother’s room’
c. *priežu zari*
   "pine branches’
d. *pērkona lietus*
   "thunder shower’"
2) quality, feature

(2.1.80) a. prāta cīlveks
   brain.gen.m man.nom.m
   ‘a man of reason’

b. rudens āboli
   autumn.gen.m apple.nom.pl.m
   ‘autumn apples’

c. maza auguma meitene
   small.gen.m height.gen.m girl.nom.f
   ‘a girl small in height’

d. smalka vērpuma dzija
   fine.gen.m spin.gen.m yarn.nom.f
   ‘finely spun yarn’

e. naudas kārs
   money.gen.f hungry.nom.m
   ‘hungry for money’

f. laimes pilns
   happiness.gen.f full.nom.m
   ‘full of happiness’

g. medus salds
   honey.gen.m sweet.nom.m
   ‘honey-sweet’

3) substance

(2.1.81) a. māla svečturis
   clay.gen.m candlestick.nom.m
   ‘earthenware candlestick’

b. rudzu milti
   rye.gen.pl.m flour.nom.pl.m
   ‘rye flour’

c. koka mēbeles
   wood.gen.m furniture.nom.pl.f
   ‘wooden furniture’

d. zelta gredzens
   gold.gen.m ring.nom.m
   ‘gold ring’

4) application, purpose or contents

(2.1.82) a. auglu trauks
   fruit.gen.pl.m bowl.nom.m
   ‘fruit bowl’

b. tējas krūze
   tea.gen.pl.f mug.nom.f
   ‘tea mug’
c. **volejbola**  **bumba**  
volleyball.gen.m  ball.nom.f  
‘volleyball (count.)’

5) subject genitive

(2.1.83) a. **lietus**  **šalkoņa**  
rain.gen.m  patter.nom.f  
‘the patter of rain’
b. **putnu**  **klaigas**  
bird.gen.pl.m  cry.nom.pl.f  
‘cries of birds’
c. **mātes**  **laimē**  
mother.gen.f  happiness.nom.f  
‘mother’s happiness’

6) object genitive

(2.1.84) a. **grāmatas**  **lasīšana**  
book.gen.f  reading.nom.f  
‘book reading’
b. **zemēs**  **rakšana**  
earth.gen.f  digging.nom.f  
‘earth digging’
c. **dārza**  **laistītājs**  
garden.gen.m  sprinkler.nom.m  
‘garden sprinkler’

7) appositive genitive

(2.1.85) a. **Novadnieku**  **gimene**  
Novadnieki.gen.pl.m  family.nom.f  
‘a family from Novadnieki’
b. **Ratnieku**  **mājas**  
Ratnieki.gen.pl.m  house.nom.pl.f  
‘Ratnieki house’
c. **Mieriņa**  **kungs**  
Mieriņš.gen.m  gentleman.nom.m  
‘Mr. Mieriņš’
d. **Mieriņas**  **kundze**  
Mieriņš.gen.f  lady.nom.f  
‘Mrs. Mieriņa’
e. **Kronvalda**  **Atis**  
Kronvalds.gen.m  Atis.nom.m  
‘Atis Kronvalds (a male name)’
f. **Baumanu**  **Kārlis**  
Baumanis.gen.m  Kārlis.nom.m  
‘Kārlis Baumanis (a male name)’
8) partitive genitive, which can be syntactically dependent not only on nouns (2.1.86), but also on numerals (desmit ‘ten’, simt ‘hundred’, tūkstoš ‘thousand’, and other numerals denoting tens, hundreds, and thousands) (2.1.87) and adverbs (daudz ‘much, a lot’, maz ‘few, little’, vairāk ‘more’, mazliet ‘a little’, nedaudz ‘some’, drusku ‘a bit of’, etc.) (2.1.88):

(2.1.86) a. glāze sulas
glass.NOM.F juice.GEN.F
‘a glass of juice’
b. kaste ābolu
box.NOM.F apple.GEN.PL.M
‘a box of apples’
c. kilograms kartupeļu
kilogram.NOM.M potato.GEN.PL.M
‘a kilogram of potatoes’

(2.1.87) a. desmit dienu
ten day.GEN.PL.F
‘ten days’
b. simt gadu
hundred year.GEN.PL.M
‘a hundred years’
c. tūkstoš laužu
thousand people.GEN.PL.M
‘a thousand people’

(2.1.88) a. daudz sniega
much snow.GEN.M
‘a lot of snow’
b. maz naudas
little money.GEN.F
‘little money’
c. žēl vasaras
pity summer.GEN.F
‘expressing unwillingness to let the summer slip away or being sorry
that the summer has ended’
d. gana labumu
enough benefit.GEN.PL.M
‘enough benefits’
e. vairāk līdzekļu
more fund.GEN.PL.M
‘more resources, funds’

Apart from the partitive genitive, it is unusual in Latvian for attributes to appear in
the post-head position, i.e., following a head noun (more on this see Section 3.4 in
Syntax). Thus, there are both semantic and syntactic differences between the genitive of content (2.1.89) and partitive genitive (2.1.90) in Latvian:

(2.1.89) a. kafijas tase
   ‘coffee cup’

b. sulas glāze
   juice.Gen.F glass Nom.F
   ‘juice glass’ (i.e., tableware used for certain types of liquid)

c. kartupeļu maiss
   ‘potato sack’ (a special type of sack made of a coarse fabric and used for storing potatoes)

(2.1.90) a. tase kafijas
   ‘cup of coffee’

b. glāze sulas
   glass Nom.F juice.Gen.F
   ‘glass of juice’

c. maiss kartupeļu
   ‘sack of potatoes’ (i.e., a specific amount)

2. Syntactically dependent on a verb (see also Sections 3.2.6 and 3.2.7)
   1) negative subject of a sentence

(2.1.91) a. nav laika
   not_be.Prs.3 time.Gen.M
   ‘(there is) no time’

b. nav sniega
   not_be.Prs.3 snow.Gen.M
   ‘(there is) no snow’

c. nav vēlēšanās
   not_be.Prs.3 wish.Gen.F
   ‘(one has) no wish’

Also with certain verbs such as trūkt ‘to lack’, pietikt ‘to suffice, have/be enough’, nepietikt ‘to be short of’:

(2.1.92) a. trūkst laika
   lack.Prs.3 time.Gen.M
   ‘(one) lacks time’

b. pietiek mēbeļu
   be_enough.Prs.3 furniture.Gen.Pl.F
   ‘(there is) enough furniture’

c. nepietiek naudas
   not_be_enough.Prs.3 money.Gen.F
   ‘(one is) short of money’

110
2) direct object in verbal negation (2.1.93), although accusatives are more common in such cases in modern Latvian (2.1.94):

(2.1.93) a. nepazīt cilvēka
   not_know.INF person.GEN.M
   ‘not to know the person’
 b. neraksīt vēstuļu
   not_write.INF letter.GEN.PL.F
   ‘not to write letters’
 c. nesināt vārda
   not_know.INF word.GEN.M
   ‘not to know the word / name’

(2.1.94) a. nepazīt cilvēku
   not_know.INF person.ACC.M
 b. neraksīt vēstules
   not_write.INF letter.ACC.PL.F
 c. nesināt vārdus
   not_know.INF word.ACC.M
   ‘not to know the word / name’

3) goal or objective with verbs like lūgt ‘to ask’, alkt ‘to desire’, kārot ‘to crave’, ilgoties ‘to long, yearn’, vajadzēt ‘to need’, etc. (2.1.95), although prepositional phrases with pēc ‘after, for’ (2.1.96) and accusatives (2.1.97) are more common in modern Latvian:

(2.1.95) a. kārot svaigu zivju
   crave.INF fresh.GEN.PL.F fish.GEN.PL.F
   ‘to crave fresh fish’
 b. lūgt padoma
   ask.INF advice.GEN.M
   ‘to ask for advice’
 c. ilgoties vasaras
   long.INF summer.GEN.F
   ‘to long for summer’
 d. vajadzēt naudas
   need.INF money.GEN.F
   ‘to need money’

(2.1.96) a. kārot pēc svaigu zivim
   crave.INF for fresh.DAT.PL.F fish.DAT.PL.F
   ‘to crave fresh fish’
 b. lūgt pēc padoma
   ask.INF for advice.GEN.M
   ‘to ask for advice’
 c. ilgoties pēc vasaras
   long.INF for summer.GEN.F
   ‘to long for summer’
4) ablative meaning, i.e., the meaning of moving away from something, with certain verbs such as bēgt ‘to shun, flee’, bīties ‘to dread, try to avoid’, baidīties ‘to fear’, sargāties ‘to beware, watch out’, etc. (2.1.98); however, prepositional phrases with no ‘from, of’ are more common (2.1.99):

(2.1.98) a. sargies vilciena!
  beware.imp.sg.2 train.gen.m
  ‘beware of the train!’

b. bēgt laimes
  shun.inf happiness.gen.f
  ‘to shun happiness’

c. bīties soda
  dread.inf punishment.gen.m
  ‘to dread punishment’

(2.1.99) a. sargies no vilciena!
  beware.imp.sg.2 of train.gen.m
  ‘beware of the train!’

b. bēgt no laimes
  shun.inf from happiness.gen.f
  ‘to shun happiness’

c. bīties no soda
  dread.inf of punishment.gen.m
  ‘to dread punishment’

5) partitive meaning, i.e., indicating a certain part of the whole, with a number of verbs such as gribēt ‘to want’, dzert ‘to drink’, ēst ‘to eat’, etc. (2.1.100); however, accusatives (2.1.101) and also genitives preceded by adverbs of degree denoting small quantities, e.g., mazliet ‘a little’, nedaudz ‘some’, drusku ‘a bit of’ (2.1.102) are more common in modern Latvian.

(2.1.100) a. gribēt maizes
  want.inf bread.gen.f
  ‘to want some bread’ (a little, a certain amount)

b. dzert piena
  drink.inf milk.gen.m
  ‘to drink some milk’ (a certain amount)
c. ēst  gaļas
   eat.INF  meat.GEN.F
   ‘to eat some meat’ (a certain amount)

(2.1.101) a. gribēt  maizi
    want.INF  bread.ACC.F
    ‘to want some bread’ (a little, a certain amount)

b. dzer t pienu
   drink.INF  milk.ACC.M
   ‘to drink some milk’ (a certain amount)

c. ēst  gaļu
   eat.INF  meat.ACC.F
   ‘to eat some meat’ (a certain amount)

(2.1.102) a. gribēt  mazliet maizes
    want.INF  little bread GEN.F
    ‘to want a little bread’

b. dzērt  nedaudz piena
   drink.INF  little milk.GEN.M
   ‘to drink a little milk’

c. ēst  drusku gaļas
   eat.INF  little meat.GEN.F
   ‘to eat a bit of meat’

**DATIVE** (syntactically dependent on a verb)

1) semantic object – the recipient of an action (2.1.103); the goal or purpose of an action (2.1.104); the indirect object relative to a direct object in the accusative (2.1.105);

(2.1.103) a. jaunāt  tēvam
    ask.INF  father.DAT.M
    ‘to ask father’

b. palīdzēt kaimiņiem
   help.INF  neighbor.DAT.PL.M
   ‘to help the neighbors’

(2.1.104) a. kalpot dzimtenei
    serve.INF  fatherland.DAT.F
    ‘to serve one’s country’

b. kaitēt zobiem
   be_bad.INF  tooth.DAT.PL.M
   ‘to be bad for one’s teeth’

(2.1.105) a. dot  grāmatu mātei
    give.INF  book.ACC.F  mother.DAT.F
    ‘to give mother a book’
b. *pirkt pārtiku pusdienām*
   buy.**INF** food.**ACC.F** lunch.**DAT.F**
   ‘to buy food for lunch’

2) semantic subject – usually in the debitive mood

(2.1.106) a. *tev ir jāpērk jauns rakstāmgalds*
   you.**DAT** be.**AUX.PRS.3** DEB.buy new desk.**NOM.M**
   ‘you have to buy a new desk’

b. *mums ir jāiet uz operu*
   we.**DAT** be.**AUX.PRS.3** DEB.go to opera.**ACC.F**
   ‘we have to go to the opera’

3) possessor, owner of something

(2.1.107) a. *mums ir laiks*
   we.**DAT** be.**PRS.3** time.**NOM.M**
   ‘we have time’

b. *mums nav laika*
   we.**DAT** not_be.**PRS.3** time.**GEN.M**
   ‘we do not have (the) time’

c. *maniem radiniekiem ir māja*
   my.**DAT.PL.M** relative.**DAT.PL.M** be.**PRS.3** house.**NOM.F**
   ‘my relatives have a house’

4) experiencer

(2.1.108) a. *man ir karsti*
   I.**DAT** be.**COP.PRS.3** hot
   ‘I feel hot’

b. *man salst*
   I.**DAT** freeze.**PRS.3**
   ‘I am cold’

c. *man smeldz zobi*
   I.**DAT** ache.**PRS.3** tooth.**NOM.PL.M**
   ‘my teeth are aching’

**Adnominal dative:**

1) next to an adjective

(2.1.109) a. *līdzīgs tēvam*
   resembling.**NOM.M** father.**DAT.M**
   ‘resembling (one’s) father’

b. *lojāls bankai*
   loyal.**NOM.M** bank.**DAT.F**
   ‘loyal to the bank’

2) next to a noun (usually a denominal (2.1.110a-b) or deverbal (2.1.110c-d) one)
(2.1.110) a. *lidzība tēvam*
   resemblance.NOM.F father.DAT.M
   ‘resemblance to (one’s) father’
b. *lojalitāte bankai*
   loyalty.NOM.F bank.DAT.F
   ‘loyalty towards the bank’
c. *jautājums ikvienam*
   question.NOM.M everyone.DAT.M
   ‘a question for everyone’
d. *palīdzība jaunajām ģimenēm*
   help.NOM.F young.DAT.PL.F family.DAT.PL.F
   ‘help for young families’

**ACCUSATIVE** (syntactically dependent on a verb)

1) semantic object – direct object next to a verb

(2.1.111) a. *gatavot brokastis*
   prepare.INF breakfast.ACC.PL.F
   ‘to prepare breakfast’
b. *ravēt dārzu*
   weed.INF garden.ACC.M
   ‘to weed the garden’
c. *krāsot sienu*
   paint.INF wall.ACC.F
   ‘to paint a wall’

2) time

(2.1.112) a. *gaidīt divus mēnešus*
   wait.INF two.ACC.PL.M month.ACC.PL.M
   ‘to wait for two months’
b. *negulēt nakti*
   not_sleep.INF night.ACC.F
   ‘to have a sleepless night’
c. *strādāt visu dienu*
   work.INF all.ACC.F day.ACC.F
   ‘to work all day long’

3) location (direction)

(2.1.113) a. *nākt tālu ceļu*
   come.INF long.ACC.M way.ACC.M
   ‘to come a long way’
b. *staigāt senas takas*
   walk.INF ancient.ACC.PL.F path.ACC.PL.F
   ‘to walk ancient paths’
Adnominal accusative

(2.1.114) a. metru garš lasis
meter.acc.m long.nom.m salmon.nom.m
’a meter-long salmon’
b. nedēļu vecs kaķēns
week.acc.f old.nom.m kitten.nom.m
’a one-week old kitten’
c. pusgadu ilgs atvaļinājums
half-year.acc.m long.nom.m holidays.nom.m
‘half-year long holidays’

Nouns in the accusative case can serve as terms of address when used in vocative function (declension 1 and 4 nouns in the singular, mainly in colloquial speech – examples (2.1.115)) and also appear in phrases of address and different kinds of exclamations (examples (2.1.116)–(2.1.117)):

(2.1.115) a. Klāvu! (a male name), Aiju! (a female name), mammu! ‘mum!’
b. Mammu, kur mums stāv
mother.acc.f where we.dat stand.prs.3
putekļšūcējs?
vacuum_cleaner.nom.m
‘Mum, where do we keep the vacuum cleaner?’ (Leva)
c. Mammu, vai vēl ilgi?
mother.acc.f Q still long
‘Mum, how much longer now?’ (CW)

(2.1.116) a. Tavu brīnumu!
your.acc.m miracle.acc.m
‘What a miracle!’
b. Tavu gudru cilvēku!
your.acc.m smart.acc.m person.acc.m
‘There’s a smart person!’
c. Tavu laimi!
your.acc.m luck.nom.f
‘Such luck!’

(2.1.117) a. Vai manu dieniņu, vai manu mūžīnu!
oh my.acc.f day.acc.f oh my.acc.f life.acc.f
‘Dear me!’ (J. Janševskis)
b. Tavu miegu, kāds tam cilvēкам!
your.acc.m sleep.acc.m what_kind this.dat.m man.dat.m
‘That’s some sleep that this man has!’ (J. Janševskis)
c. Tavu stulbu cilvēku!
your.acc.m silly.acc.m person.acc.m
‘What a silly person!’ (G. Janovskis)
INSTRUMENTAL (syntactically dependent on a verb)

In modern Latvian, the instrumental case often occurs in conjunction with the preposition ar ‘with’ (see examples (2.1.121c–e), (2.1.122c), (2.1.123b–c), (2.1.126)), especially when expressing means by or with which something is accomplished or when used with a comitative meaning.

The older synthetic form without the preposition is, however, also widespread:

(2.1.118) a. iet cepuri galvā, mētelī uz rokas
   go.inf hat.ins.f head.loc.f coat.ins.m on arm.gen.f
   ‘to walk with a hat on one’s head, a coat over one’s arm’

b. iet kājām
   go.inf foot.ins.pl.f
   ‘to go on foot’

c. zēns gaišiem matiem
   boy.nom.m light.ins.pl.m hair.ins.pl.m
   ‘a fair-haired boy’

eglēm apaudzis pagalms
fir.tree.ins.pl.f be_overgrown.ptcp.nom.m yard.nom.m
‘a yard overgrown with fir trees’

Here are some recent examples from news media and contemporary literary texts:

(2.1.119) INS SG

a. Mans pirmais [boksa] treneris bija
   my.nom.m first.nom.m [boxing] coach.nom.m be.cop.pst.3
azerbaidžānis, tāds iekarsīgu raksturu.
   Azerbaijani.nom.m such hot_tempered.ins.m character.ins.m
   ‘My first [boxing] coach was an Azerbaijani, somewhat hot-tempered.’
   (Latvijas Avīze)

b. Rudzu lauka malā sastapu pļāvējus, kas bija sasēduši ieturēt pusdienu.
   Tur bija pavecāks vīrs sirmu
   there be.cop.pst.3 elderly.nom.m man.nom.m grey.ins.m
   bārzdzu un tris sievietes.
   beard.ins.m and three.nom.f woman.nom.pl.f
   ‘At the edge of the rye field I met some reapers, seated and having lunch. There was an elderly man with a grey beard and three women there.’ (P. Bankovskis)

(2.1.120) INS PL

a. Gājējiem dienām ilgi jābradā
   pedestrian.dat.pl.m day.ins.pl.f long_time deb. walk
   pa sasīstiem stikliem.
   through broken.ptcp.dat.pl.m glass.dat.pl.m
   ‘Pedestrians are made to walk through broken glass for days.’ (Diena)
b. *Purvains, krūmiem aizaudzis*
bogg.NOM.M shrub.INS.PL.M be_overgrown.PTCP.NOM.M
klajums tagad pārvērsts bērnu
field.NOM.M now turn.into.PTCP.NOM.M child.GEN.PL.M
rotāļu laukumā.
play.GEN.PL.F ground.LOC.M
‘A boggy field overgrown with shrubs has been turned into a children’s playground.’ (Ir)
c. *Visi dēli bija prātīgi, strādīgi, gaišām galvām.*
all.NOM.PL.M son.NOM.PL.M be.cop.pst.3 sensible.NOM.PL.M
hard_working.NOM.PL.M light.ins.pl.f head.ins.pl.f
‘All of the sons were sensible, hard-working, clear-headed.’ (I. Ābele)

The preposition *ar* ‘with’ helps to distinguish between the instrumental and accusative singular and the instrumental and dative plural – forms that have, in the course of the historical development of Latvian, become homonymous (see Kalnača 2014: 18–25).

1) means or accompaniment (comitative meaning)

(2.1.121) a. *iet mugursomu plecos*
walk.INF backpack.INS.F shoulder.LOC.PL.M
‘to walk with a backpack on one’s shoulders’
b. *staigāt basām kājām*
walk.INF bare.INS.PL.F foot.INS.PL.F
‘to walk barefoot’
c. *gatavot salātus ar olīveļļu*
prepare.INF salad.ACC.PL.M with olive_oil.INS.F
‘to prepare a salad with olive oil’
d. *mazgāt augļus ar aukstu ādeni*
wash.INF fruit.ACC.PL.M with cold.INS.M water.INS.M
‘to wash fruit with cold water’
e. *sazvanīties ar vecākiem*
call.INF with parent.INS.PL.M
‘to call one’s parents on the phone’

2) time

(2.1.122) a. *remonts dzīvokli iet nedēlām*
refurbishment.NOM.M apartment.LOC.M go.prs.3 week.INS.PL.F
‘the refurbishment of the apartment has been going on for weeks’
b. *mēnešiem ilgi tika labota ietve*
month.INS.PL.M long get.aux.pst.3 pavement.NOM.F
‘the pavement was repaired for months’
c. ar gadiem mēs labāk saprotam
with year.ins.pl.m we.nom better understand.prs.1pl savus own.acc.pl.m parent.acc.pl.m
‘as the years go by we begin to understand our parents better’

3) manner
(2.1.123) a. skatīties pārsteigtām acīm
look.inf surprise.ptcp.ins.pl.f eye.ins.pl.f
‘to look at with surprise (surprised eyes)’
b. ar skumjām sagaidīt rudeni
with sadness.ins.pl.f anticipate.inf autumn.acc.m
‘to anticipate the autumn with sadness’
c. ar spēku aizcirst durvis
with force.ins.m slam.inf door.nom.pl.f
‘to forcefully slam the door’

4) measure
(2.1.124) a. ēst ābolus kilogramiem
eat.inf apple.acc.pl.m kilo.ins.pl.m
‘to eat apples by the kilo’
b. pirkt maisiem kartupeļu
buy.inf sack.ins.pl.m potato.gen.pl.m
‘to buy potatoes by the sack’
c. lasīt groziem sēņu
gather.inf basket.ins.pl.m mushroom.gen.pl.f
‘to gather mushrooms by the basket’

The adnominal instrumental is used to describe the qualities or features of something:

(2.1.125) next to a noun
a. meitene gariem matiem
girl.nom.f long.ins.pl.m hair.ins.pl.m
‘a girl with long hair’
b. trusis sarkanām acīm
rabbit.nom.m red.ins.pl.f eye.ins.pl.f
‘a rabbit with red eyes’
c. glāzes zelta malu
tumbler.nom.pl.f gold.gen.m rim.ins.f
‘tumblers with a golden rim’

(2.1.126) next to an adjective
a. slavens ar labu virtuvi
famous.nom.m with fine.ins.f cuisine.ins.f
‘famous for fine cuisine’
b. uzmanīgs ar uguni
cautious.NOM.M with fire.INS.F
‘cautious with fire’
c. neredzīgs ar vienu aci
blind.NOM.M with one.INS.F eye.INS.F
‘blind in one eye’

LOCATIVE (syntactically dependent on a verb)

1) location
(2.1.127) a. veikalā daudz pircēju
shop.LOC.M many customer.GEN.PL.M
‘there are many customers in the shop’
b. pludmalē maz peldētāju
beach.LOC.F few swimmer.GEN.PL.M
‘there are few swimmers on the beach’
c. mājās nav sveču
home.LOC.PL.F not_be.PRS.3 candle.GEN.PL.F
‘there are no candles at home’

2) time
(2.1.128) a. šai ziemā maz snieg
this.LOC.F winter.LOC.F little snow.PRS.3
‘it snows little this winter’
b. pēcpusdienā būs migla
afternoon.LOC.F be.FUT.3 fog.NOM.F
‘there will be fog in the afternoon’

3) manner
(2.1.129) a. viss atvaļinājums pagāja ceļojumā
whole.NOM.M holiday.NOM.M go.PST.3 travel.LOC.M
‘(we) spent the whole holiday travelling’,
b. ielas apavos nestāgāt
outdoor.GEN.F footwear.LOC.PL.M not_walk.INF
‘no outdoor footwear’

4) purpose, intent
(2.1.130) a. iet viesos
go.INF visitor.LOC.PL.M
‘to pay a visit’
b. iet raudzībās
go.INF visit_to_see_a_new_baby.LOC.PL.F
‘to visit to see the new baby’
Adnominal locative (next to a noun)

(2.1.131) a. dienas vidus karstumā
day.GEN.F middle.GEN.M heat.LOC.M
‘in the heat of the noon’
b. visā mājas garumā
whole.LOC.M house.GEN.F length.LOC.M
‘along the whole house’
c. upes seklumā
river.GEN.F shallows.LOC.SG.M
‘in the shallows of the river’

VOCATIVE

The vocative case is used for direct address – tēv! ‘father!’, brālī! ‘brother!’, māt! ‘mother!’.

Vocative forms proper are historically inherited and only exist in the singular, being manifested as follows: no ending for declension 1, 4 and 5 nouns, the ending -i for declension 2 nouns, and the ending -u for declension 3 nouns (see Tables 2.1–2.4). In addition, the nominative singular forms of certain declension 1, 4, and 5 nouns and, in colloquial speech, the accusative singular forms of declension 1 and 4 nouns are also used as vocatives. In the plural, nominative forms are used in vocative function for all declensions (Table 2.3).

Vocative forms are used to name persons and other living things such as pets and domestic animals being addressed (2.1.132). Vocatives can also, in principle, be applied to all kinds of inanimate objects for the sake of personification (2.1.133). Typologically, Latvian vocative forms do not differ much from the forms found in other languages (see, for example, Parrot 2010).

(2.1.132) a. Sveiks, mans milāis dēliņ.
hello my.NOM.M dear.NOM.M son.DIM.VOC.M
‘Hello, my dear son.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
b. Cienījamais kolēģi!
esteem.PTCP.NOM.M colleague.VOC.M
‘(My) esteemed colleague!’ (C)
c. Papu, celies augšā!
dad.VOC.M rise.IMP.2SG up
‘Dad, get up!’ (CW)
d. Saprotiet, Marij, man nav
understand.IMP.2PL Marija.VOC.F I.DAT not_be.AUX.PRS.3
bijis savu māju.
be.PTCP.PST.NOM.M own.GEN.PL.F home.GEN.PL.F
‘You see, Marija, I have never had a home of my own.’ (C)
e. Saimniec, trīs naglas padodiet meistariem!
mistress.VOC.F three.ACC.F nail.ACC.PL.F hand.IMP.2PL worker.DAT.PL.M
‘Mistress, hand three nails to the workers!’ (C)
(2.1.133) a. **Partijas elektorāt!**

Kā Jūs spējat arvien ticēt politiķim, kas pat sīkumos melo tik bezdiveigvi?

‘Supporters of the party! How can you still trust a politician, who lies so extremely even about small things?’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. **Atā, atā, mīlais Zirga gad!**

‘So long, so long, dear Year of the Horse!’ (Ieva)

c. **“Sveiks, draugs Kurmiti!”/ Sacīja Lapsa**

‘Hello, my friend, Mole!’/ the Fox said’ (C)

d. **Klepu, ej prom!**

‘Go away, cough!’ (www.twitter.com)

e. **Grāmatin, stāsti, kas jauns!**

‘Tell me what’s the news, book!’ (www.ilukste.lv)

f. **Paliec sveika, saulīt!**

‘Farewell, sun!’ (Delfi)

**Case alternation**

A notable feature of the Latvian case system is case alternation where one syntactic function can be realized by two different cases with no discernible difference in meaning (see Kalnača 2014: 51–66 for a detailed discussion). This phenomenon probably has several causes, the polyfunctionality of the cases, especially the genitive case, and the resultant grammatical synonymy being the most obvious one. To some extent, case alternation may have also been facilitated by case syncretism.

The most typical occurrences of case alternation in Latvian are:

1) **VOC–NOM** in the function of address

(2.1.134) a. tēv! // tēvs!

‘Father!’

b. māt! // māte!

‘Mother!’

c. Kristīn! // Kristīne!

‘Christine!’

2) **NOM–ACC** in debitive constructions (see also Section 2.5.4; Lokmane, Kalnača 2014)

(2.1.135) a. Tev ir jātira māja // māju.

‘You must clean the house.’
b. Man ir jūsā laisit
I.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.start read.INF
grāmata // grāmatu.
book.NOM.F // ACC.F
‘I have to start reading the book.’

3) GEN–NOM
(2.1.136) a. when negating the subject
Mājās nav piena // piens.
house.LOC.PL.F not_be.PRS.3 milk.GEN.M // NOM.M
‘There is no milk in the house.’
b. for partitive meanings with indeclinable numerals
Manai māsai ir divdesmit
my.DAT.F sister.DAT.F be.PRS.3 twenty
y whole // whole
year.GEN.PL.M // NOM.PL.M
‘My sister is twenty years old.’
c. for adverbs of measure
Šoziem sniega // sniegs bija ļoti maz.
this_winter snow.GEN.M // NOM.M be.PST.3 very little
‘There was very little snow this winter.’

4) GEN–DAT for meanings indicating purpose (2.1.137a) or content (2.1.137b)
(2.1.137) a. sporta apavi // apavi sportam
sport.GEN.M shoe.NOM.PL.M // shoe.NOM.PL.M sport.DAT.M
‘sports shoes // shoes for sports’
b. augļu trauks // trauks augļiem
fruit.GEN.PL.M bowl.NOM.M // bowl.NOM.M fruit.DAT.PL.M
‘fruit bowl // bowl for fruit’

5) GEN–ACC as a direct object
(2.1.138) a. in negation
Neteikšu neviena vārda
not_say.FUT.1SG no_one.GEN.M word.GEN.M
// nevienu vārdu.
// no_one.ACC.M word.ACC.M
‘I won’t say a word’
b. for partitive meanings
Bērns grib maizes // maizi.
child.NOM.M want.PRS.3 bread.GEN.F // ACC.F
‘The child wants bread.’
c. indicating purpose
Iesim melleņu // mellenes lasit!
go.IMP.1PL bilberry.GEN.PL.F // ACC.PL.F pick.INF
‘Let’s go blueberry picking!’

123
6) GEN–LOC when expressing attributive meanings

\[(2.1.139)\]  
\[
\text{Eiropas} \quad \text{basketbola} \quad \text{čempionāts} \\
\text{Europe.gen.f} \quad \text{basketball.gen.m} \quad \text{championship.nom.m} \\
// \quad \text{Eiropas} \quad \text{čempionāts} \quad \text{basketbolā} \\
// \quad \text{Europe.gen.f} \quad \text{championship.nom.m} \quad \text{basketball.loc.m} \\
‘European Basketball Championship’

The above mentioned examples suggest that the alternation of case forms and the development of their polysemy and synonymic systems are closely associated with the transformation of the polyfunctionality of the genitive and nominative, which declines as some of the primary meanings of the genitive are substituted or come to function in parallel with other cases. The adnominal genitive continues to function as an attribute, whereas the adverbial genitive is gradually replaced by the accusative in the function of an object and by the nominative in the function of a subject.

Although to a lesser extent, the polyfunctionality of the nominative seems to be changing as well: while the nominative has partly overtaken the functions of the vocative (2.1.134), it is facing competition from the accusative in debitive constructions (2.1.135).

From the point of view of language standardization, some instances of case alternation have been found less desirable than others. For example, the alternation of the accusative and the genitive is generally treated as acceptable (Ahero et al. 1959: 394, 398–399; Paegle 2003: 41), while the alternation of the nominative and the genitive in subject negation or the alternation of the nominative and the accusative in debitive constructions are considered a divergence from the norm in Standard Latvian (Ahero et al. 1959: 393–395, 482; Skujiņa 1999: 43; Paegle 2003: 40).

Case form alternation is not a new phenomenon in Latvian: it had already been attested in Latvian folklore texts, especially in the dainas (Gāters 1993). Endzelīns and Mīlenbahs had discussed this topic in 1907a and 1907b. Alternation of the genitive and other cases and its possible causes have been analyzed in Kalnača (2001, 2002a, 2002b, 2007, 2014), as well as Novikova (2009). The functions of the dative and the genitive and their alternation with other cases have been described by Berg-Olsen (2005) and Holvoet (2011a), alternation of the dative and other cases (including the genitive) has been discussed by Lokmane (2014). The morphostylistic aspect of case alternation is studied in Rozenbergs (1983: 20–22) and Kalnača (2011a: 60–71). On balance, one has to conclude that case form alternation is neither the norm nor deviance in Standard Latvian – it is a continuous process of semantic and syntactic evolution.
2.1.5  Word formation

Suffixation

Derivation of nouns by means of suffixes is very widely represented in Latvian: there are nouns derived from all lexical (content) word classes – nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and adverbs. However, regular word-formation types producing the greatest number of derivatives mainly involve base words of just three word classes – nouns, adjectives, and verbs (see Table 2.6). While suffixes are carriers of derivative meanings, endings have an important function of their own: marking declension, as well as indicating animacy and gender options in nouns denoting persons and animals (see Section 2.1.1 on noun declension). Therefore, each derivational suffix in Table 2.6 is followed by a corresponding ending (or endings). For derivatives that can be used in both genders the masculine ending is indicated first, unless the feminine ending is more common.

Although, due to limited space, derivation of deverbal nouns by suffixation in Table 2.6 is mostly illustrated by non-prefixed base verbs, regular nouns with the suffixes -šan-, -um-, -tāj-, etc. can also be derived from all kinds of prefixed verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N–N</td>
<td>-ain- + -e (F)</td>
<td>places abundant in or largely covered with plants of a certain kind or other things</td>
<td>egl-e ‘fir tree’ – egl-ain-e ‘fir forest’ krūm-i ‘bushes, shrubs’ – krūm-ain-e ‘bushes, shrubbery’ pried-e ‘pine’ – pried-ain-e ‘pine forest’ smilt-s ‘sand’ – smilt-ain-e ‘sands’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āj- + -s (M)</td>
<td>places abundant in or largely covered with plants of a certain kind or other things</td>
<td>aven-e ‘raspberry’ – aven-āj-s ‘raspberry field’ zāl-e ‘grass’ – zāl-āj-s ‘lawn, grassland’ pried-e ‘pine’ – pried-āj-s ‘pine forest’ niedr-e ‘reed’ – niedr-āj-s ‘reed bank’ kāln-s ‘mountain’ – kāln-āj-s ‘mountain range’ led-us ‘ice’ – led-āj-s ‘glacier’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ekl-/-ukl- + -is (M)</td>
<td>names of animals, body parts, places, chemical elements, etc.</td>
<td>zirn-is ‘pea’ – zirn-ekl-is ‘spider’ vid-us ‘middle’ – vid-ukl-is ‘waist’ sūn-a ‘moss’ – sūn-ekl-is ‘place covered in moss’ slān-is ‘layer’ – slān-ekl-is ‘shale’ ogl-e ‘coal’ – ogl-ekl-is ‘carbon’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-el-/ -tel- + -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>DIM (sometimes pejorative)</td>
<td>putn-s ‘bird’ – putn-el-is (DIM) kāj-a ‘leg’ – kāj-el-e (DIM) degun-s ‘nose’ – degun-tel-is (DIM) ačs ‘eye’ – ač-tel-e (DIM)</td>
<td>things ziem-a ‘winter’ – ziem-el-is ‘northern wind’ šķēp-s ‘spear’ – šķēp-el-e ‘splinter, shard’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>scientific, technical terms</td>
<td>mēl-e ‘tongue’ – mēl-en-is ‘lingual consonant’ nās-s ‘nostril’ – nās-en-is ‘nasal consonant’ gliem-is ‘mollusc’ – gliem-en-e ‘bivalve mollusc, shellfish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wives, proprietresses</td>
<td>kalēj-s ‘blacksmith’ – kalēj-en-e ‘blacksmith’s wife’ Pēteris (personal name, M) – Pētēr-en-e (Pēteris’s wife) Krūms (surname, M) – Krūm-en-e (Krūms’s wife) Upīt-ēs (house name) – Upīt-en-e (proprietress of Upītes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ēn-/tēn-/lēn-</strong></td>
<td>+ -s (M)</td>
<td>DIM of young animals</td>
<td>kak-ŋ ‘cat’ – kak-ēn-s ‘kitten’ lāc-is ‘bear’ – lāc-ēn-s ‘bear cub’ piļ-e ‘duck’ – piļ-ēn-s ‘duckling’ zos-s ‘goose’ – zos-lēn-s ‘gosling’ lidak-a ‘pike’ – lidac-ēn-s ‘young pike’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DIM of kinship terms and other nouns denoting persons</td>
<td>dēl-s ‘son’ – dēl-ēns (DIM) puis-is ‘boy’ – puis-ēns (DIM) meit-a ‘daughter, girl’ – meit-ēn-s ‘girl (DIM)’ skuk-is ‘girl’ – skuk-ēns (DIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DIM of personal names</td>
<td>Kārl-is (M) – Kārl-ēns (DIM) Jur-is (M) – Jur-ēns (DIM) lev-a (F) – lev-ēns (DIM) Ausm-a (F) – Ausm-ēns (DIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kinship terms, occupations, natives or inhabitants of a place</td>
<td>brāl-is ‘brother’ – brāl-ēn-s ‘cousin’ Piebalgs (name of a region) – piebalds-ēn-s ‘inhabitant or native of Piebalga’ skol-a ‘school’ – skol-ēns ‘pupil’ (PL is used to refer to pupils of both sexes collectively)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DIM of things</td>
<td>baļk-is ‘log’ – baļk-ēns (DIM) ābol-s ‘apple’ – ābol-tēns (DIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things (incl. scientific, technical terms)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lok-s ‘bow’ – loc-iņ-š ‘violin bow’ rat-s ‘wheel’ – rat-iņ-š ‘spinning wheel’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-īb- + -a, -as (F)</strong></td>
<td>properties, qualities of human beings, sometimes also of animals</td>
<td>draug-s ‘friend’ – draudz-īb-a ‘friendship’ mūjk-is ‘fool’ – mūjk-īb-a ‘foolishness’ glēv-ul-is ‘coward’ – glēv-ul-īb-a ‘cowardice’ lab-dar-is ‘benefactor’ – lab-dar-īb-a ‘charity’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collective nouns, also social, public, economic, etc. relationships or groups</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>brāl-is ‘brother’ – brāl-īb-a ‘brotherhood’ lop-kop-is ‘livestock breeder’ – lop-kop-īb-a ‘livestock breeding’ liet-ved-is ‘clerk’ – liet-ved-īb-a ‘clerical work, record-keeping’ priekš-niek-s ‘senior officer, manager, etc.’ – priekš-niec-īb-a ‘the management’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherent, intrinsic features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aug-l-is ‘fruit, fetus’ – aug-l-īb-a ‘fruitfulness, fertility’ māj-a ‘home’ – māj-īb-a ‘homeness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-it- + -is (M), -e (F)</strong></td>
<td>DIM of declension 2, 5 nouns</td>
<td>brāl-is ‘brother’ – brāl-it-is (DIM) Jān-is (personal name, M) – Jān-it-is (DIM) egl-e ‘fir tree’ – egl-it-e (DIM) Ilz-e (personal name, F) – Ilz-it-e (DIM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things, names of plants (incl. scientific, technical terms)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kumelš ‘young horse’ – kumel-īt-e ‘camomile’ smail-e ‘peak, point’ – smail-īt-e ‘canoe’ spol-e ‘reel, spool’ – spol-īt-e ‘spool (in yarn spinning)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ien- + -a, -e (F), -is (M)</strong></td>
<td>a place with a large amount of something (parallel variants include ien-a 4 F, -ien-e 5 F, -ien-s 1 M)</td>
<td>skaid-a ‘chip’ – skaid-ien-a, -s ‘place for chopping, sawing wood on a farm, etc.’ mēsl-i ‘manure’ – mēsl-ien-a, -s ‘a site for rubbish, a dump’ egl-e ‘fir tree’ – egl-ien-a, -e, -s ‘fir forest, fir grove’ kārkl-s ‘osier’ – kārkl-ien-a’, -e, -s ‘osier-bed’ kaln-s ‘mountain’ – kaln-ien-a, -e ‘highland’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N–N</strong></td>
<td>-ien- + -a, -e (F), -is (M)</td>
<td>a place referred to by specifying its geographical properties (usually, -ien-e)</td>
<td>mal-a ‘edge, border’ – mal-ien-e ‘borderland’ vid-us ‘middle’ – vid-ien-e ‘central region, upcountry’ pal- i ‘high water, flood’ – pal-ien-e ‘flooded land by a river’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-iet-</strong> + is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Valmier-a (town) – valmier-iet-is, -e ‘native or inhabitant of Valmiera’ Rēzekn-e (town) – rēzekn-iet-is, -e ‘native or inhabitant of Rēzekne’ Pāris-e ‘Paris’ – parīz-iet-is, -e ‘Parisian’ Madrid-e ‘Madrid’ – madrid-iet-is, -e ‘Madrilenian’ Nujork-a ‘New York’ – nujork-iet-is, -e ‘New Yorker’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethnic groups (nationalities), political nations, inhabitants of different parts of the world</td>
<td>Eirop-a ‘Europe’ – eirop-iet-is, -e ‘European’ Australij-a ‘Australia’ – austral-iet-is, -e ‘Australian’ Indij-a ‘India’ – ind-iet-is, -e ‘Indian’ Ķīn-a ‘China’ – ķīn-iet-is, -e ‘Chinese’ Vjetnam-a ‘Vietnam’ – vietnam-iet-is, -e ‘Vietnamese’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethnic groups (nationalities), political nations, inhabitants of different parts of the world in the feminine</td>
<td>igauin-is ‘Estonian, M’ – igauin-iet-e (F) zviedr-s ‘Swede, M’ – zviedr-iet-e (F) īr-s ‘Irishman’ – īr-iet-e ‘Irishwoman’ spān-is ‘Spaniard’ – spān-iet-e (F) amerikān-is ‘American’ – amerikān-iet-e (F)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivative meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N–N</td>
<td>-iet- + is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>nouns denoting persons according to their sex</td>
<td>vír-s ‘man, husband’ – vír-iet-is ‘man’ siev-a ‘woman, wife’ – siev-iet-e ‘woman’ dēl-s ‘son’ – dēl-iet-is ‘young man’ meit-a ‘daughter, maid’ – meit-iet-is ‘woman, girl’ puis-is ‘boy’ – puis-iet-is ‘man, boy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-nic- + -a (F)</td>
<td>places</td>
<td>maiz-e ‘bread’ – maiz-nic-a ‘bakery’ vies-is ‘guest’ – vies-nic-a ‘hotel’ grāmat-a ‘book’ – grāmat-nic-a ‘bookshop’ darb-s ‘work’ – darb-nic-a ‘workshop’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-niek/-ineik/-eniek- + -s (M), -e, i.e., -ce (F)</td>
<td>natives or inhabitants of a particular place in Latvia (usually, in Kurzeme, Zemgale, also Vidzeme)</td>
<td>Liepāj-a (town) – liepāj-niek-s, -ce ‘native or inhabitant of Liepāja’ Tals-i (town) – tals-eniek-s, -ce ‘native or inhabitant of Talsi’ Dobel-e (town) – dobel-niek-s, -ce ‘native or inhabitant of Dobele’ Ķēs-is (town) – Ķēs-iniek-s, -ce ‘native or inhabitant of Ķēsis’ Rīg-a ‘Rīga’ – rīdz-iniek-s, -ce ‘native or inhabitant of Rīga’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>persons by social standing</td>
<td>saim-e ‘community, family’ – saim-niek-s, -ce ‘owner, proprietor, master’ mutē-a ‘estate, manor’ – mutē-niek-s, -ce ‘landlord, squire’ bez darba ‘without employment’ – bez-darb-niek-s, -ce ‘unemployed (N)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>persons by occupation, job, profession, membership in a certain group, etc.</td>
<td>past-s ‘post’ – past-niek-s, -ce ‘postman’ sēt-a ‘yard, fence’ – sēt-niek-s, -ce ‘caretaker, janitor’ vēstur-e ‘history’ – vēstur-niek-s, -ce ‘historian’ kāz-as ‘wedding’ – kāz-iniek-s, -ce ‘wedding guest’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on- [i.e., [uo]]</td>
<td>+ -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>nouns referring in a negative way to persons, animals</td>
<td>mež-s ‘forest’ – mež-on-is, -e ‘savage’ tumsa ‘darkness’ – tums-on-is, -e ‘uneducated person opposing progress’ šausm-as ‘horror’ – šausm-on-is, -e ‘monster’ briesm-as ‘danger, peril’ – briesm-on-is, -e ‘monster’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-otn- [i.e., [uo]]</td>
<td>+ -e (F)</td>
<td>parts of plants, places</td>
<td>gal-s ‘end’ – gal-otn-e ‘top, tip, ending’ sēkl-a ‘seed’ – sēkl-otn-e ‘ovary (Botany)’ lap-a ‘leaf’ – lap-otn-e ‘leafage, crown’ virs-a ‘top, surface’ – virs-otn-e ‘top, peak, summit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-uk-</td>
<td>+ -s (M)</td>
<td>DIM (markedly positive connotation; sometimes with unmotivated palatalization (consonant j alternation)); usually, informal</td>
<td>sun-s ‘dog’ – sun-uk-s (DIM) lāc-is ‘bear’ – lāc-uk-s (DIM) pel-e ‘mouse’ – pel-uk-s (DIM) brāl-is ‘brother’ – brāl-uk-s (DIM) mās-a ‘sister’ – mās-uk-s (DIM) meit-a ‘daughter’ – meit-uk-s (DIM) Ār-is (personal name, M) – Ār-uk-s (DIM) lev-a (personal name, F) – lev-uk-s (DIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N–N</td>
<td>-ul- + -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>ez-is ‘hedgehog’ – ez-ul-is (DIM) čūšk-a ‘snake’ – čūšk-ul-is (DIM) Ann-a (personal name, F) – Ann-ul-e, -is (DIM) lev-a (personal name, F) – lev-ul-e, -is (DIM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ–N</td>
<td>-atn/-otn- [i.e., [uo]] + -e (F)</td>
<td>abstract concepts concerned with aggregates and stages</td>
<td>jaun-s ‘young’ – jaun-atn-e ‘youth’ sen-s ‘old, ancient’ – sen-atn-e ‘ancient times, antiquity’ maz-s ‘little’ – maz-otn-e ‘early age, infancy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-av- + -a (F)</td>
<td>persons (F) possessing a certain quality</td>
<td>jaun-s ‘young’ – jaun-av-a ‘virgin’ daif-š ‘beautiful’ – daif-av-a ‘a beauty’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ekl- + -is (M)</td>
<td>persons, chemical elements, etc.</td>
<td>jaun-s ‘young’ – jaun-ekl-is ‘young man, younger’ skāb-s ‘sour’ – skāb-ekl-is ‘oxygen’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-el- + -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>persons possessing a certain quality (sometimes pejorative)</td>
<td>gudr-s ‘smart’ – gudr-el-is, -e ‘smarty’ ne-krietn-s ‘dishonest’ – ne-krietn-el-is, -e ‘scoundrel’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>persons, scientific names of animals, also meals</td>
<td>stubl-s ‘stupid, foolish’ – stubl-en-is, -e ‘fool’ vec-s ‘old’ – vec-en-e ‘hag (of a woman)’ raib-s ‘speckled, spotted’ – raib-en-is ‘Nymphalidae (family of butterflies)’ balt-s ‘white’ – balt-en-is ‘Pieridae (family of butterflies)’ biez-s ‘thick, dense’ – biez-en-is ‘puree, mash’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-m- + -e, -a (F)</td>
<td>natural phenomena, abstract concepts</td>
<td>valg-s ‘dewy, moist’ – valg-m-e ‘moisture’ vēs-s ‘cool’ – vēs-m-a ‘breeze, rush of wind’ spož-s ‘brilliant’ – spož-m-e ‘brilliance, splendor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-n- + -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>things, aggregates</td>
<td>slip-s ‘inclined’ – slip-n-is ‘inclined separator’ lik-s ‘curved’ – lik-n-e ‘curve’ smalk-s ‘fine’ – smalk-n-e ‘fines’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ADJ–N</strong></td>
<td>-niek/-niek/-eniek/-eniek- + -s (M), i.e. -ce (F)</td>
<td>persons</td>
<td>bagāt-s ‘rich’ – bagāt-niek-s, -ce ‘rich person’ tuv-s ‘near’ – tuv-iniek-s, -ce ‘relation’ tukš-s ‘empty’ – tukš-iniek-s, -ce ‘poor’ gudr-s ‘smart’ – gudr-iniek-s, -ce ‘smart person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ul- + -is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>persons, also names of animals</td>
<td>skaist-s ‘pretty’ – skaist-ul-is, -e ‘pretty person’ skop-s ‘miserly’ – skop-ul-is, -e ‘miser’ vārg-s ‘weak’ – vārg-ul-is, -e ‘weakling’ maz-s ‘little’ – maz-ul-is, -e ‘baby’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-um- + -s (M)</td>
<td>abstract concepts</td>
<td>lab-s ‘good’ – lab-um-s ‘good (N), benefit, good things’ vec-s ‘old’ – vec-um-s ‘age’ smarž-īg-s ‘fragrant’ – smarž-īg-um-s ‘fragrance, aroma’ krok-ain-s ‘crinkly’ – krok-ain-um-s ‘crinkliness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>concrete concepts</td>
<td>balts-s ‘white’ – (olas) balts-um-s ‘egg-white’ caur-s ‘having holes’ – caur-um-s ‘hole’ mikst-s ‘soft’ – (maizes) mikst-um-s ‘the soft part of a loaf of bread’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NUM–N</strong></td>
<td>-atn/-otn-[i.e., [uo]] + -e (F)</td>
<td>number of living beings or their (organizational) mode of being</td>
<td>vien-s ‘one’ – vien-atn-e ‘one, solo, on one’s own,’ div-i ‘two’ – div-otn-e ‘two (a set of two people, etc.), duo, duet’ trīs ‘three’ – trīj-otn-e ‘three (a set of three)’ četr-i ‘four’ – četr-otn-e ‘four (a set of four)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-niek/-niek/-eniek/-eniek- + -s (M)</td>
<td>number of beings or things, banknote denominations, evaluation on a scale</td>
<td>vien-s ‘one’ – vien-iniek-s ‘one (number), a single person, a person acting alone’ div-i ‘two’ – div-niek-s ‘two (number), a set of two, dyad, duo’ trīs ‘three’ – trīj-niek-s ‘three (number), a set of three, triad, trio’ desmit-s ‘ten’ – desmit-niek-s ‘ten (number), a set of ten, a tenner’ simt-s ‘one hundred’ – simt-niek-s ‘one hundred (number), a set of one hundred people or things’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–N</strong></td>
<td>-āj- + -s (M), -a (F); usually derived from the PST stem of conjugation 1 and irregular verbs</td>
<td>agents (<em>nomen agentis</em>) habitually and actively engaging in an activity; in modern Latvian, the semantic difference between the suffixes -āj- and -ēj- has largely disappeared</td>
<td>dzēr-t ‘to drink’ – dzēr-āj-s, -a ‘drunkard’ ēs-t ‘to eat’ – ēd-a PST 3 – ēd-ēj-s, -a ‘eater’ pār-cēl-t ‘to convey’ – pār-cēl-āj-s, -a ‘ferryman’ ar-t ‘to plough’ – ar-āj-s, -a ‘ploughman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nomina actionis – tools, devices</td>
<td>pa-cēl-t ‘to lift’ – pa-cēl-āj-s, -a ‘lift, elevator’ uz-ķēr-t ‘to catch’ – uz-ķēr-āj-s, -a ‘(grease) extractor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| V–N                             | -ēj- + -s (M), -a (F); usually derived from the PST stem of conjugation 1 and irregular verbs | agents (nomen agentis) performing an activity for a certain time period or at a particular moment; in modern Latvian, the semantic difference between the suffixes -āj- and -ēj- has largely disappeared | dzer-t ‘to drink’ – dzēr-a PST 3 – dzēr-ēj-s, -a ‘one who drinks’
|                                 |                      |                      | ēs-t ‘to eat’ – ēd-a PST 3 – ēd-ēj-s, -a ‘eater’
|                                 |                      |                      | ves-t ‘to carry’ – ved-a PST 3 – ved-ēj-s, -a ‘carrier’
|                                 |                      |                      | ie-t ‘to go, walk’ – gāj-a PST 3 – gāj-ēj-s, -a ‘walker’
|                                 |                      |                      | aiz-do-t ‘to lend’ – aiz-dev-a PST 3 – aiz-dev-ēj-s, -a ‘lender, creditor’ |
| nomina agentis – job titles, professions | kal-t ‘to forge, smith’ – kal-a PST 3 – kal-ēj-s ‘smith, blacksmith’
|                                 | šū-t ‘to sew’ – šuv-a PST 3 – šuv-ēj-s, -a ‘sewer, seamstress’
|                                 | pār-do-t ‘to sell’ – pār-dev-a PST 3 – pār-dev-ēj-s, -a ‘seller, shop assistant’ |
| nomina actionis – devices, machines | dāz-t ‘to drive, to propel’ – dzin-a PST 3 – dzin-ēj-s ‘engine’
|                                 | sūk-t ‘to suck’ – sūc-a PST 3 – (putekļu) sūc-ēj-s ‘vacuum cleaner’
|                                 | plāv-t ‘to mow’ – plāv-u PST 1 – (zāles) plāv-ēj-s ‘lawn mower’ |
| nomina actionis – diseases, symptoms | aug-t ‘to grow’ – audz-ēj-s ‘tumor, growth’
|                                 | dur-t ‘to pierce’ – dūr-a PST 3 – dūr-ēj-s ‘piercing pain’
|                                 | spies-t ‘to squeeze’ – spied-a PST 3 – spied-ēj-s ‘squeezer’ |
| -īb- + -a, -as (F) | nomina actionis – abstract or concrete concepts, places, processes; usually derived from the root of secondary verbs | cer-ē-t ‘to hope’ – cer-īb-a ‘hope’
|                                 | tic-ē-t ‘to believe’ – tic-īb-a ‘faith, belief’
|                                 | māc-ī-t ‘to teach’ – māc-īb-a ‘lesson, teaching’
|                                 | bar-o-t ‘to feed’ – bar-īb-a ‘food, nourishment’
|                                 | ap-lic-īnā-t ‘to attest’ – ap-lic-īb-a ‘certificate’
|                                 | gan-ī-t ‘to pasture’ – gan-īb-a ‘pasture’
|                                 | med-ī-t ‘to hunt’ – med-īb-a ‘hunt, chase’ |
| nomina actionis – abstracted features, lasting states, ability to participate in an activity; derived from the PRS PASS participle stem | dal-ī-t ‘to divide’ – dal-ām-s ‘divisible’ – dalām-īb-a ‘divisibility’
|                                 | vad-ī-t ‘to steer, control’ – vad-ām-s ‘steerable, controllable’ – vad-ām-īb-a ‘steerability, controllability’
|                                 | ie-spē-ē-t ‘to be able to’ – ie-spēj-īm-s ‘possible’ – ie-spējam-īb-a ‘possibility’
|                                 | tic-ē-t ‘to believe’ – tic-īm-s ‘believable, credible’ – ticam-īb-a ‘credibility’
<p>|                                 | dzird-ē-t ‘to hear’ – dzird-ām-s ‘audible’ – dzird-ām-īb-a ‘audibility’ |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V–N</td>
<td>-ib-</td>
<td>nomina actionis – abstracted features, results of actions, states; derived from the PST PASS participle stem</td>
<td>vien-o-t ‘to unite’ – vieno-t-s ‘united’ – vieno-t-ib-a ‘unity’ sa-skan-o-t ‘to coordinate’ – sa-skano-t-s ‘coordinated’ – sa-skano-t-ib-a ‘coordination (the state of being coordinated)’ at-klā-t ‘to open’ – at-klā-t-s ‘open’ – at-klā-t-ib-a ‘openness’ no-māk-t ‘to deject’ – no-māk-t-s ‘dejected’ – no-māk-t-ib-a ‘dejection’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ -a, -as (F)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nomina actionis (pluralia tantum) – celebrations, ceremonies, and other festive events; derived from the PST stem of conjugation 1 verbs and the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ -s (M); usually derived from the PST stem of conjugation 1 and irregular verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nomina actionis – single actions lasting for some time</td>
<td>nāk-t ‘to come’ – nāc-a PST 3 – nāc-ien-s ‘coming’ brauk-t ‘to go, to drive’ – brauc-a PST 3 – brauc-ien-s ‘trip, journey, drive’ ie-t ‘to go, to walk’ – gāj-a PST 3 – gāj-ien-s ‘procession, walk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tools, devices, etc.</td>
<td>ar-t ‘to plough’ – ar-kl-s ‘plough’ tī-t ‘to reel, to wind, to wrap’ – tī-kl-s ‘net’ dur-t ‘to stab’ – dur-kl-is ‘bayonet’ grāb-t ‘to rake up’ – grāb-ekl-is ‘rake’ vad-i-t ‘to guide’ – vad-i-kl-a ‘guide, control’ tēm-ē-t ‘to aim’ – tēm-ē-kl-is ‘gnsight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>things</td>
<td>ad-i-t ‘to knit’ – ad-i-kl-is ‘knitting (material in the process of being knitted)’ aus-t ‘to weave’ – aus-ekl-s ‘woven fabric, usually linen, also canvas’ sēd-ē-t ‘to sit’ – sēd-ekl-is ‘seat’ vīst-i-t ‘to wrap’ – vīst-okl-is ‘wrapped package’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–N</strong></td>
<td>abstract concepts</td>
<td>kavē-t ‘to hinder’ – kavē-kl-is ‘hindrance’</td>
<td>V–N -kl-/ -ekl- [i.e., [uo]] + -s, -is (M), -a, -e (F); usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1, 2 verbs or the root of conjugation 3 verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>places</td>
<td>dzīv-o-t ‘to live’ – dzīv-o-kl-is ‘apartment’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>body parts, also parts of plants</td>
<td>rī-t ‘to swallow’ – rī-kl-e ‘throat’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina patientis – persons, also names of animals</td>
<td>ri-t ‘to swallow’ – ri-kl-e ‘throat’</td>
<td>māc-i-t ‘to teach, train’ – māc-ekl-is, -is ‘apprentice, trainee’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina agentis – persons engaging in undesirable activities</td>
<td>bēg-t ‘to run away’ – bēg-l-is, -is ‘fugitive, refugee’</td>
<td>nomina actionis – concrete and abstract activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina actionis – concrete and abstract activities</td>
<td>brāz-t ‘to rush’ – brāz-m-a ‘rush, gust (of wind)’</td>
<td>brāz-t ‘to rush’ – brāz-m-a ‘rush, gust (of wind)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things (incl. tools and devices)</td>
<td>slēp-t ‘to hide, to conceal’ – slēp-n-is ‘a concealed position, ambush’</td>
<td>lauz-t ‘to break’ – lauz-n-is ‘crowbar’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina actionis – some derivatives are based on the PST stem</td>
<td>pa-ie-t ‘to pass’ – pa-gā-j-u PST 1</td>
<td>lauz-t ‘to break’ – lauz-n-is ‘crowbar’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

134
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–N</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-niek- [M], - e i.e., - ce (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina agentis – persons by occupation, job, profession, mutual relationships, lifestyle, etc.</td>
<td>rakst-ī-t ‘to write’ – rakst-niek-s, - ce ‘writer’ mēr-ī-t ‘to measure’ – mēr-niek-s, - ce ‘surveyor’ strād-ā-t ‘to work’ – strād-niek-s, - ce ‘worker’ vald-ī-t ‘to rule’ – vald-niek-s, - ce ‘ruler’ krāp-t ‘to swindle’ – krāp-niek-s, - ce ‘swindler, fraud’</td>
<td>strīd-ē-ties ‘to quarrel’ – strīd-niek-s, - ce ‘quarreller’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on-  [i.e., [uo]] + -is (M), - e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina agentis – names describing, characterizing persons and animals</td>
<td>dzied-ā-t ‘to sing’ – dzied-on-is, - e ‘singer, songbird’ var-ē-t ‘to be able’ – var-on-is, - e ‘hero’ cens-īties ‘to strive’ – cens-on-is, - e ‘striver’ dauz-i-t ‘to beat, to batter’ – dauz-on-is, - e ‘brawler’ lid-o-t ‘to fly’ – lid-on-is, - e ‘a person or animal who flies’ plēs-t ‘to rip, to tear’ – plēs-on-is, - e ‘predator’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina actionis – diseases, symptoms</td>
<td></td>
<td>dzil-t ‘to wear out, to dwindle’ – dil-on-is ‘pulmonary tuberculosis, consumption’ aug-t ‘to grow’ – aug-on-is ‘boil, abscess’ reib-t ‘to feel dizzy’ – reib-on-is ‘dizziness’ ģīb-t ‘to faint’ – ģīb-on-is ‘fainting fit’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina actionis – natural phenomena</td>
<td></td>
<td>dzied-ē-t ‘to bloom’ – dzied-on-is ‘springtime, one’s prime’ māk-īties ‘to get cloudy’ – māk-on-is ‘cloud’ šķis-t ‘to melt, to dissolve’ – šķid-on-is ‘slush’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on-  [i.e., [uo]] + -a (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina actionis – continuous, intensive activities or processes</td>
<td>rūk-t ‘to roar’ – rūk-on-a ‘roaring’ šņāk-t ‘to hiss’ – šņāk-on-a ‘hissing’ dun-ē-t ‘to drone’ – dun-on-a ‘droning’ gaud-o-t ‘to howl’ – gaud-on-a ‘howling’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomina agentis – persons and animals; common gender nouns; often, pejorative</td>
<td></td>
<td>muld-ē-t ‘to blabber’ – muld-on-a ‘blabber’ snaud-t ‘to take a nap’ – snaud-on-a ‘sleepy person’ bland-īties ‘to roam’ – bland-on-a ‘roamer’ plēs-t ‘to rip, to tear’ – plēs-on-a ‘predator’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-šan-  (F, NREFL), + -ās (F, REFL); derived from the infinitive stem</td>
<td>nomina actionis – actions as processes</td>
<td>cel-t ‘to lift’ – cel-šan-a ‘lifting’ smie-īties ‘to laugh’ – smie-šan-ās ‘laughing’ dom-ā-t ‘to think’ – dom-ā-šan-a ‘thinking’ mazg-āties ‘to wash oneself’ – mazg-ā-šan-ās ‘washing oneself’ las-i-t ‘to read’ – las-i-šan-a ‘reading’ audz-inā-t ‘to raise, to bring up’ – audz-inā-šan-a ‘raising, bringing up’ māc-i-īties ‘to study’ – māc-i-šan-ās ‘studying’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Base word – derivative word class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–N</strong></td>
<td>-tav- + -as, -tuv- + -e (F); usually derived from the infinitive stem (-tav- with conjugation 2, 3 verbs, -tuv- with conjugation 1 verbs)</td>
<td>locative nominalizations</td>
<td>tīr-i-t ‘to clean’ – tīr-i-tav-a ‘(dry) cleaner’s’ mazg-o-t ‘to wash’ – mazg-ātav-a ‘laundry room’ slīd-o-t ‘to skate’ – slīd-o-tav-a ‘skating rink’ peld-e-t ‘to swim’ – peld-ē-tav-a ‘place for swimming’ glud-inā-t ‘to iron’ – glud-inā-tav-a ‘ironing room’ cep-t ‘to bake’ – cep-tuv-e ‘bakery’ mal-t ‘to mill’ – mal-tuv-e ‘flour mill’ kau-t ‘to slaughter’ – kau-tuv-e ‘slaughterhouse’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-tāj-</strong> + -s (M), -a (F); usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 2, 3 verbs</td>
<td>things, tools; derivatives with -tav- usually are pluralia tantum</td>
<td>šķil-t ‘strike (fire)’ – šķil-tav-as ‘lighter’ tī-t ‘to reel’ – tī-tav-as ‘reel’ sē-t ‘to sow’ – sē-tuv-e ‘sowing basket’ splau-t ‘to spit’ – splau-tuv-e ‘spittoon’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina agentis – usually persons, sometimes also names of animals</td>
<td>las-i-t ‘to read’ – las-i-tāj-s, -a ‘reader’ staig-a-t ‘to walk’ – staig-ā-tāj-s, -a ‘walker’ peld-e-t ‘to swim’ – peld-ē-tāj-s, -a ‘swimmer’ slēp-o-t ‘to ski’ – slēp-o-tāj-s, -a ‘skier’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina agentis – job titles, professions, occupations</td>
<td>dzied-a-t ‘to sing’ – dzied-a-tāj-s, -a ‘singer’ skol-o-t ‘to school’ – skol-o-tāj-s, -a ‘teacher’ audz-inā-t ‘to raise, educate’ – audz-inā-tāj-s, -a ‘preschool teacher, child-minder’ māc-i-t ‘to teach’ – māc-i-tāj-s, -a ‘priest’ projekt-e-t ‘to design, plan’ – projekt-e-tāj-s, -a ‘design engineer’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina actionis – devices, tools, machines</td>
<td>mais-i-t ‘to mix’ – mais-i-tāj-s ‘mixer’ šāv-e-t ‘to dry’ – šāv-ē-tāj-s ‘dryer’ līmeņ-o-t ‘to level’ – līmeņ-o-tāj-s ‘leveling device’ mod-inā-t ‘to wake up (obj.)’ – mod-inā-tāj-s ‘alarm clock’ pa-gar-inā-t ‘to extend’ – pa-gar-inā-tāj-s ‘extension cable’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina agentis – usually, nouns with a pejorative meaning naming persons, also animals</td>
<td>vārg-t ‘to weaken (no obj.)’ – vārg-ul-is, -e ‘weakling’ snaus-t ‘to take a nap’ – snaus-ul-is, -e ‘sleepy head’ raud-a-t ‘to cry, to whine’ – raud-ul-is, -e ‘whiner’ grib-e-t ‘to desire’ – grib-ul-is, -e ‘sexual desire’ ne-māc-e-t ‘not to know how’ – ne-māk-ul-is, -e ‘inept, unskilled person’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>various things</td>
<td>zīm-e-t ‘to draw’ – zīm-ul-is ‘pencil’ vēst-i-t ‘to make known, to relate’ – vēst-ul-e ‘letter’ šūp-o-t ‘to rock’ – šūp-ul-is ‘cradle (mounted on rockers)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-ul-</strong> + -is (M), -e (F); usually derived from the root</td>
<td>nomina actionis – sensations</td>
<td>drebē-t ‘to tremble’ – dreb-ul-is, also PL drebulti ‘trembling, the shivers’ tīrp-t ‘to grow numb’ – tīrp-ul-i ‘numbness, pins and needles’ skurb-t ‘to get tipsy, giddy’ – skurb-ul-is ‘tipsiness, giddiness’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.6  Main noun formation types in Latvian: suffixation

Endings
Endings are another means of noun formation in Latvian. Endings are mostly attached to nominal, adjectival, and verbal bases. A special subtype are full-paradigm nouns derived from genitive-only nouns, i.e., compound nouns that have just one case form: the SG or PL (F/M) genitive (see Section 2.1.1 for a detailed discussion); full-paradigm nouns derived from genitive-only nouns and naming living beings, plants, sometimes also objects in a classifying way usually have both gender forms.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ADJ–N</strong></td>
<td><strong>-is (M)</strong></td>
<td>persons, names of animals (esp. specifying the color of horses, cows), things; some nouns have both gender forms</td>
<td>meln-s ‘black’ – meln-is, -e ‘black horse’ resns ‘fat’ – resn-is, -e ‘fat person, fatty’ slīnk-s ‘lazy’ – slīnk-is, -e ‘lazy person, lazybones’ ne-rātn-s ‘mischievous, naughty’ – ne-rātn-is, -e ‘mischievous, naughty person’ bārd-ain-s ‘bearded’ – bārd-ain-is ‘bearded person, beardy’ ūs-ain-s ‘moustached’ – ūs-ain-is ‘moustached person’ sprog-ain-s ‘curly’ – sprog-ain-is, -e ‘animal or person with curly coat or hair’ pirkst-ain-s ‘having fingers’ – pirkst-ain-is ‘glove’ dūr-ain-s ‘with a clenched fist’ – dūr-ain-is ‘mitten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-a, -as (F)</strong></td>
<td>abstract concepts, feelings; usually, pluralia tantum</td>
<td>skumjiš ‘sad’ – skumji-as ‘sadness’ ilg-s ‘long’ – ilg-as ‘longing’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **V–N**                           | -s (M)               | things; usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1 verbs | aug-t ‘to grow’ – aug-s ‘plant’
tērp-t ‘to clothe’ – tērp-s ‘clothes, garment’
aiz-kär-t (i.e., aizkart) ‘to curtain off’ – aiz-kar-s ‘curtain’
ap-au-t ‘to put on shoes’ – ap-av-s (i.e., apavi PL) ‘footwear, shoes’ |
|                                  |                      | **nomina actionis, nomina agentis;** usually derived from the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs | ap-rakst-i-t ‘to describe’ – ap-raksts-s ‘description’
pa-dom-ā-t ‘to think, to reflect’ – pa-dom-s ‘advice’
ie-vad-ā-t ‘to introduce’ – ie-vad-s ‘introduction’
pār-lūk-o-t ‘to browse’ – pār-lūk-s ‘browser’
pār-rauds-i-t ‘to supervise’ – pār-raug-s, -dze ‘supervisor’ |
|                                  | -is (M)              | things, also names of animals; usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1 verbs | urb-t ‘to drill’ – urb-is ‘drill’
slēg-t ‘to switch’ – slēdz-is ‘switch’
lenk-t ‘to surround’ – lenk-is ‘angle’
vilk-t ‘to pull’ – vilk-is (‘cork)screw’
svilp-t ‘to whistle’ – svilp-is ‘whistle’ |
|                                  |                      | **nomina agentis,** usually derived from the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs and have both gender forms | mel-o-t ‘to tell lies’ – mel-is, -e ‘liar’
aiz-stāv-ē-t ‘to defend’ – aiz-stāv-is, -e ‘defender’
pār-zin-ā-t ‘to look after, to curate’ – pār-zin-is, -e ‘keeper, curator’ |
|                                  | -a, -as (F)          | things, abstract concepts, places; usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1 verbs | teik-t ‘to tell’ – teik-a ‘tale’
steig-t ‘to hurry’ – steig-a ‘hurry’
mig-t ‘to fall asleep’ – mig-a ‘den, lair’
at-slēg-t ‘to unlock’ – at-slēg-a ‘key’
pār-tik-t ‘to live on’ – pār-tik-a ‘provisions’ |
|                                  |                      | **nomina actionis;** usually derived from the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs | gaid-ī-t ‘to wait’ – gaid-as ‘expectations, anticipation’
ie-tec-ē-t ‘to flow into (of a river)’ – ie-tek-a ‘mouth (of a river)’
sa-run-ā-t ‘to say a lot of things, to arrange, to agree’ – sa-run-a ‘talk, conversation’
sa-slauc-ī-t ‘to sweep up, to wipe up’ – sa-slauk-as ‘sweepings’ |
|                                  |                      | pejorative ways of referring to persons; common gender nouns; derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1 verbs and from the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs; derivatives may have root-final consonant-j alternation | snaus-t (i.e., snaud-) ‘to take a nap’ – snausā ‘sleepy person’
ne-jēg-t ‘not to understand’ – ne-jēg-a ‘halfwit, dullard’
ne-pras-t (i.e., prat-) ‘not to know how’ – ne-praš-a ‘unskilled, inept person’
ne-vīž-o-t ‘not to care, not to take trouble’ – ne-vīž-a ‘lazy, negligent person’
glūn-ē-t ‘to lurk’ – glūn-a ‘lurker’ |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V–N</td>
<td>-e (F)</td>
<td><em>nomina actionis</em>; usually derived from the infinitive stem of conjugation 1 verbs</td>
<td>*aug-t ‘to grow’ – audz-e ‘stand, a group of growing plants’&lt;br&gt; *ēs-t (i.e., ēd-) ‘to eat’ – ēd-e ‘eczema’&lt;br&gt; *spies-t (i.e., spied-) ‘to press, squeeze’ – spied-e ‘press, squeezer’&lt;br&gt; *at-lais-t (i.e., laid-) ‘to release, to reduce’ – at-laid-e ‘discount’&lt;br&gt; *aiz-deg-t ‘to ignite’ – aiz-dedz-e ‘ignition’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>things, abstract concepts, places; usually derived from the root of conjugation 2, 3 verbs</td>
<td>*kalt-ē-t ‘to dry’ – kalt-e ‘drying room, drying house’&lt;br&gt; *ie-cer-ē-t ‘to conceive, to intend’ – ie-cer-e ‘idea, intention’&lt;br&gt; *pār-vald-ī-t ‘to manage, to govern, to administer’ – pār-vald-e ‘administration, governance’&lt;br&gt; *ap-kalp-o-t ‘to attend, to serve’ – ap-kalp-e ‘crew’&lt;br&gt; *pie-gād-ā-t ‘to supply’ – pie-gād-e ‘supply’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.7  Main noun formation types in Latvian: endings

**Prefixation**

Derivation of nouns by prefixation is controversial in Latvian: it is not clear that prefixes actually actively function as means of noun formation in the language. Traditionally, Latvian grammars have listed prefixes among affixes used for deriving new nouns – e.g., Ahero et al. (1959: 184–190) and Vulāne (2013: 212–220) provide comprehensive overviews.

This grammar departs from the traditional approach, recognizing that there is an essential difference between prefixed nouns, on the one hand, and prefixed verbs and adjectives, where prefixes are active means of word formation, on the other hand.

Firstly, a large part of nouns that contain prefixes are derived from prefixed verbs, e.g.:

(2.1.140) a. *brauk-t* ‘to go (in a vehicle), drive’ – *aiz-brauk-t* (perfective) – *aiz-brauk-šan-a* (action, process nom.)

b. *sauk-t* ‘to call’ – *iz-sauk-t* ‘to call (invite), to cause’ (or *iz-sauk-ties*) – *iz-sauc-ien-s* ‘exclamation’

c. *vērt-ē-t* ‘to evaluate’ – *no-vērt-ē-t* (perfective) – *no-vērt-ēj-um-s* ‘evaluation’

d. *star-o-t* ‘to radiate, to beam’ – *at-star-o-t* ‘to reflect’ – *at-star-o-tāj-s* ‘reflector’

e. *vald-ī-t* ‘to rule, to reign, to dominate’ – *pār-vald-i-t* ‘to manage, to govern, to administer’ – *pār-vald-e* ‘administration, governance’

f. *run-ā-t* ‘to talk’ – *sa-run-ā-t* ‘to say a lot of things, to arrange, to agree’ – *sa-run-a* ‘talk, conversation’

g. *sac-ī-t* ‘to say, to tell’ – *pa-sac-ī-t* (perfective) – *pa-sak-a* ‘fairy tale’
None of the nouns in (2.1.140) are formed by prefixation. Formal and semantic derivational relationships in the derivational sequences indicate that the nouns are derived by attaching a suffix (2.1.140a–d) or an ending (2.1.140e–g) to a prefixed, rather than a non-prefixed, verb. Hence, prefixes here are means of verb, not noun, formation. This is also true of negatives with *ne*– in nouns of verbal and adjectival origin, the prefix *ne-* is usually part of the verbal (2.1.141) or adjectival (2.1.142) base.

(2.1.141)  
\[\text{cien-t} \text{ ‘to respect’} \quad \text{– ne-cien-t} \text{ ‘to disrespect’} \quad \text{– ne-cien-a} \text{ ‘disrespect’} \]
\[\text{zin-ā-t} \text{ ‘to know’} \quad \text{– ne-zin-ā-t} \text{ ‘to not know’} \quad \text{– ne-zin-a} \text{ ‘not knowing, uncertainty’} \]
\[\text{nāk-t} \text{ ‘to come’} \quad \text{– ne-nāk-t} \text{ ‘to not come’} \quad \text{– ne-nāk-šan-a} \text{ (action, process nom.)} \]

(2.1.142)  
\[\text{tīr-s} \text{ ‘clean’} \quad \text{– ne-tīr-s} \text{ ‘unclean, dirty’} \quad \text{– ne-tīr-um-s or ne-tīr-īb-a} \text{ ‘uncleanliness, dirt’, ne-tīr-el-is, -e ‘a dirty person’} \]
\[\text{krietn-s} \text{ ‘honest’} \quad \text{– ne-krietn-s} \text{ ‘dishonest’} \quad \text{– ne-krietn-īb-a} \text{ ‘dishonesty’, ne-krietn-el-is, -e ‘a dishonest person’} \]

Only in cases where the prefix *ne-* attaches directly to a base noun is it possible to speak of prefixal word-formation types (Table 2.8).

Secondly, with regard to secondary nouns of the kind shown in (2.1.143) there is the essential question of how to interpret the word-initial morphemes – as prefixes (e.g., Ahero et al. 1959: 182; Vulāne 2013: 212–213, 246–248 on combined prefix–suffix affixation) or prepositions. Prepositional phrases that underlie such nouns (and are linked to them by mutual semantic motivation) suggest that these are actually compounds based on a preposition and a noun (see also Ahero et al. op.cit.). The fact that compounds often have a different ending than their source noun, points to concretization of meaning in new formations.

(2.1.143) a. *ap-roc-e* ‘bracelet’ < *ap roku* ‘around the arm’  
b. *aiz-krāsn-e* ‘space behind the stove (in a house)’ < *aiz krāsn* ‘behind a stove’  
c. *no-mal-e* ‘outskirts’ < *no malas* ‘on the outside, from outside’  
d. *pār-galv-is* ‘reckless person’ < *pār gala* ‘over one’s head’  
e. *pie-krast-e* ‘coastal area’ < *pie krasta* ‘by the coast’  
f. *uz-gal-is* ‘tip, attachment’ < *uz gala* ‘at the tip’

From the point of view of semantics, nouns having the elements *at-* and *ie-* as their first component fit in with other members of this group:

(2.1.144) a. *at-starp-e* ‘space’, *at-kāz-as* ‘a post-nuptial feast held one week after a wedding’, *at-vasar-a* ‘Indian summer’  
b. *ie-roc-is* ‘weapon’, *ie-nadz-is* ‘cuticle’, *ie-mut-is* ‘mouthpiece’

The difficulty lies in the fact that there are no prepositions corresponding to these prefixes in contemporary Latvian, hence, there are also no corresponding prepositional phrases. Word-formation types similar to those illustrated in (2.1.143) are included in the subsection on compounds (see Table 2.9).

Thirdly, nouns beginning with *bez, pīrms, priekš, pret, zem, apakš, caur, starp, virs*, etc., which can be formed from all kinds of bases – genitive-only nouns
themselves compounds based on a prepositional phrase), noun–noun, adverb–noun, verb–adverb word combinations, etc., are also best viewed as compounds (see Ahero et al. 1959: 183–184, 190–196; Vulāne 2013: 212–220 for a discussion), see Table 2.9, since elements forming the first part of these nouns – prepositions, adverbs, and nouns – have not grammaticalized into prefixes in Latvian.

Finally, there is a small number of noun formation types that are best interpreted as cases of prefixation, see, e.g., derivatives with the prefixes ne- and pa- in Table 2.8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N–N</td>
<td>ne-</td>
<td>negation, absence, opposites of things, phenomena, also the meaning 'one that is bad'</td>
<td>zāl-e ‘grass’ – ne-zāl-e ‘weed’ spēk-s ‘strength’ – ne-spēk-s ‘absence of strength, weakness’ cel-š ‘road’ – ne-cel-š ‘bad road, dead end’ prāt-s ‘mind’ – ne-prāt-s ‘madness’ zvēr-s ‘beast, animal’ – ne-zvēr-s ‘monster’ gal-s ‘end’ – ne-gal-s ‘continuous trouble, bother’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.8 Derivation of nouns by prefixation

**Compounds**

The greatest variety of compounds in Latvian is found among nouns. Semantically endocentric determinative right-headed compounds based on phrases (i.e., subordinate structures) are predominant; other types include determinative left-headed compounds, semantically exocentric compounds as well as compounds based on preposition / adverb–noun word combinations. There is also a small number of copulative compound nouns.

The description of compound nouns in this grammar is based on the types (and subtypes) of syntactic structures underlying compound formation. Syntactic relations between words in each particular source structure enable the process of separate words merging into larger compounds and are thus the principal means of compound formation in Latvian. Compound formation is also usually linked to prosody in the sense that while each component of a compound normally has its own first-syllable word stress, compounds only have one.

As a rule, right-headed compounds inherit the ending and, accordingly, the declension of the head-word (at the same time, left-headed compounds with pus- as their first element have the same ending as the dependent). However, forming certain
types of compounds, namely, compounds based on instrumental or prepositional phrases, as well as verb-headed compounds (based on modern Latvian word order), involves adding the ending -is (M) or -e (F). For compounds having the same ending as the head-word of the source structure (incl. genitive-only nouns) the ending is not listed under *Word-formation means*; in all other cases, endings are included as means of word formation. The head-word of the source structure in each example, if identifiable, is highlighted in bold.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source structure – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N + N − N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) N₃₀¹₅ + N − N₃₀¹₅</td>
<td></td>
<td>persons and other living beings, things, abstract concepts, places, etc.</td>
<td>telp-as <em>aug-s</em> ‘house plant’ – telp-<em>aug-s</em> ‘houseplant’ up-<em>es</em> <em>mal-a</em> ‘bank of a river’ – up-<em>mal-a</em> ‘riverbank’ nam-<em>a</em> <em>māt-e</em> ‘mistress of the house’ – nam-<em>a</em>-māt-<em>e</em> ‘mistress of the house’ vid-<em>us</em> <em>laik-i</em> ‘middle ages’ – vid-<em>us</em>-laik-<em>i</em> ‘Middle Ages’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>places, spatial oppositions</td>
<td>prieķ-*as kāj-*a ‘front leg’ – prieķ-*kāj-*a ‘foreleg’ pakaļ-*as kāj-*a ‘back leg’ – pakaļ-*kāj-*a ‘hind leg’ *augš-as stilb-<em>s</em> ‘upper shank’ – *augš-stilb-<em>s</em> ‘thigh’ *apakš-as stilb-<em>s</em> ‘lower shank’ – *apakš-stilb-<em>s</em> ‘shank, shin’ iekš-*as pus-*e ‘inner side’ – iekš-*pus-*e ‘inside’ ār-*as pus-*e ‘outer side’ – ār-*pus-*e ‘outside’ virs-*as dal-*a ‘top part’ – virs-*dal-*a ‘top, surface’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) N + N₃₀¹₅ − N₃₀¹₅</td>
<td></td>
<td>the head-word is the word <em>puse</em> ‘half’; compounds express parts of a whole, middle points of time periods, partial similarity, etc.</td>
<td><em>pus</em>-e *gad-*a ‘one half of a year’ – *pus-gad-*s ‘half-year’ *pus-nakt-*s ‘middle of the night’ – *pus-nakt-*s ‘midnight’ *pus-e viln-*s as ‘half wool’ – *pus-viln-*a ‘wool blend’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) N₃₀¹₅ + N − N₃₀¹₅</td>
<td></td>
<td>the head-word is the GEN word <em>veida</em> ‘-like, -shaped’; compounds express similarity to something else in form or substance as a feature</td>
<td>pakava <em>veida</em> ‘in the shape of a horseshoe’ – pakav-*veid-*a ‘horseshoe (as modifier), U-shaped’ sird-<em>s veida</em> ‘in the shape of the heart’ – sird-<em>s</em>-veid-<em>a</em> ‘heart-shaped’ ol-*as veid-*a ‘in the shape of an egg’ – ol-*veid-*a ‘egg-shaped’ gāz-*es veid-*a ‘in the form of a gas’ – gāz-*veid-*a ‘gaseous, gasiform’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source structure – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N + V$_{\text{INF}}$ – N</td>
<td>nomina actionis; the head-word is usually a deverbal noun</td>
<td>grib-a ėš-t ‘wanting to eat’ – ėšt-grib-a ‘appetite’ prasm-e dej-o-t ‘skills for dancing’ – dejot-prasm-e ‘dancing skills’ spēj-a cel-t ‘capacity for lifting’ – celt-spēj-a ‘lifting capacity’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) ADJ$<em>{\text{NOM}}$ + + N$</em>{\text{NOM}}$ – N</td>
<td></td>
<td>gar-a kāt-a ‘having a long handle’ – gar-kāt-a ‘long-handled’ ātr-as gait-as ‘of high speed’ – ātr-gait-as ‘high-speed’ vec-u laik-u ‘of old times’ – vec-laik-u ‘old-time’ sik-u lap-u ‘having small leaves’ – sīk-lap-u ‘small-leaved’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) ADJ$<em>{\text{GEN}}$ + + N$</em>{\text{GEN}}$ – N</td>
<td>features</td>
<td>sirmu galvu ‘with white hair’ – sirm-galv-is, -e ‘a white-haired (elderly) person’ gaišiem matiem ‘with fair hair’ – gaiš-mat-is, -e ‘a fair-haired person’ brūn-ām ac-im ‘with brown eyes’ – brūn-ac-is, -e ‘a brown-eyed person’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) ADJ$<em>{\text{INS}}$ + + N$</em>{\text{INS}}$ – N</td>
<td>nouns describing, characterizing persons and other living beings, also plants</td>
<td>mūs-u dien-u ‘of our days’ – mūs-dien-u ‘contemporary’ cit-u taut-u ‘of other nations’ – cit-taut-u ‘foreign’ paš-u māj-u ‘(produced etc.) at home’ – paš-māj-u ‘domestic’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRON$<em>{\text{GEN}}$ + + N$</em>{\text{GEN}}$ – N$_{\text{GEN}}$</td>
<td>features</td>
<td>mūs-u dien-u ‘of our days’ – mūs-dien-u ‘contemporary’ cit-u taut-u ‘of other nations’ – cit-taut-u ‘foreign’ paš-u māj-u ‘(produced etc.) at home’ – paš-māj-u ‘domestic’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADV + N$<em>{\text{GEN}}$ – – N$</em>{\text{GEN}}$</td>
<td>the head-word is the adverb daudz ‘much’; compounds express features</td>
<td>daudz dien-u ‘many days’ – daudz-dien-u ‘lasting many days, multi-day’ daudz krās-u ‘many colors’ – daudz-krās-u ‘multicolored’ daudz bērn-u ‘many children’ – daudz-bērn-u ‘having many children’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source structure – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUM + N – N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) NUM&lt;sub&gt;NOM&lt;/sub&gt; + N&lt;sub&gt;NOM&lt;/sub&gt;– N&lt;sub&gt;NOM&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>ordinal numerals as the first element – fractions, days of the week; with the ordinal numeral <em>pirmaiš</em> ‘first’, also first-time events, something initial, etc.</td>
<td>trešā dāja ‘the third part’ – treš-dal-a ‘one-third’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>desmit-ā dal-a ‘the tenth part’ – desmit-dal-a ‘one-tenth’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pirm-ā diena ‘the first day’ – pirm-dien-a ‘Monday’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>otr-dien-a ‘Tuesday’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>piekt-ā dien-a ‘the fifth day’ – piekt-dien-a ‘Friday’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pirm-ā dzimten-e ‘the first edition’ – pirm-dzimten-e ‘country of origin’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) NUM&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt; + N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt;– N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>features</td>
<td>spread māj-u ‘of two homes’ – div-māj-u ‘dioecious’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tris krās-u ‘of three colors’ – trīs-krās-u ‘three-color’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tūkstoš gad-u ‘of a thousand years’ – tūkstoš-gad-u ‘thousand-year, millennial’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) NUM&lt;sub&gt;INS&lt;/sub&gt; + N&lt;sub&gt;INS&lt;/sub&gt;– N</td>
<td>-is (M) things, names of animals</td>
<td>vien-as istab-as ‘of one room’ – vien-istab-as ‘one-room’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>div-u māj-u ‘of two homes’ – div-māj-u ‘dioecious’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tris krās-u ‘of three colors’ – trīs-krās-u ‘three-color’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tūkstoš gad-u ‘of a thousand years’ – tūkstoš-gad-u ‘thousand-year, millennial’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vien-u rāg-u ‘with one horn’ – vien-rāg-u ‘unicorn’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>div-iem riten-iem ‘with two wheels’ – div-iem riten-iem ‘bicycle’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>trij-u stūr-u ‘with three angles’ – trij-stūr-u ‘triangular’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sīmt kāj-ām ‘with one hundred legs’ – sīmt-kāj-ām ‘centipede’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gan-ām-s pulks ‘herd to be pastured’ – ganāms-pulk-s ‘herd, flock’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ad-ām-a adata ‘needle for knitting’ – adāms-adat-a ‘knitting needle’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ēd-am-ais gald-s ‘table for eating’ – ēdam-gald-s ‘dinner table’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>guļ-ām-ā istab-a ‘room for sleeping’ – guļam-istab-a ‘bedroom’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plauj-mašān-a ‘mower’ kal-mašān-a ‘thresher’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lid-mašān-a ‘airplane’ pitā-spalv-a ‘pen’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>raid-lug-a ‘radio play’ sēd-viet-a ‘seat, place’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source structure – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) ( V + ) ( + ) NOM(_{\text{acc}}) (-) N</td>
<td>-is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>nomina agentis – jobs, professions, other ways of referring to persons, also names of animals</td>
<td>kalt zelt-u ‘to smith gold’ – zelt-kalis, -e ‘goldsmith’ kopt lopus ‘to breed livestock’ – lop-koris, -e ‘livestock breeder’ darit al-u ‘to brew beer’ – al-daris, -e ‘(beer) brewer’ nest zinu ‘to carry a message’ – zin-nes-is, -e ‘messenger’ vest baru ‘to lead a crowd’ – bar-ved-is, -e ‘leader, central figure of a group of people’ grauz-t miz-u ‘to eat bark’ – miz-graus-is ‘bark beetle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is (M)</td>
<td>nomina actionis – things, tools, devices</td>
<td>rādi-t cen-u ‘to show a price’ – cen-rād-is ‘pricelist’ griez-t skrūv-i ‘to turn a screw’ – skrūv-griez-is ‘screwdriver’ mes-t starus ‘to throw beams’ – star-met-is ‘searchlight, spotlight’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>nomina agentis – persons possessing certain qualities</td>
<td>darit labu ‘to do good’ – labdaris, -e ‘benefactor’ vēlēt labu ‘to wish well’ – lab-vēl-is, -e ‘well-wisher’ ēst lieku ‘to eat for no purpose’ – liek-ēd-is, -e ‘parasite, idler’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is (M), -e (F)</td>
<td>nomina actionis – things, devices, processes, etc.</td>
<td>run-ā-t skaļi ‘to speak loudly’ – skaļ-run-is ‘loudspeaker’ run-ā-t tālu ‘to speak remotely’ – tāl-run-is ‘telephone’ spies-t augstu ‘to press that which is raised’ – augst-spied-e ‘relief printing’ nes-t pāri ‘to carry over’ – pār-nes-e ‘transfer’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e (F), -is (M)</td>
<td>places, time, things, clothes</td>
<td>aiz mugur-as ‘behind one’s back’ – aiz-mugur-e ‘rear, back, backing’ no mal-as ‘from (the) outside’ – no-mal-e ‘outskirts’ no stūr-a ‘from/of a corner’ – no-stūr-is ‘corner, remote, secluded place’ pie kāj-as ‘by one’s foot’ – pie-kāj-e ‘foot (of a mountain, etc.)’ pie vakar-a ‘close to the evening’ – pie-vakar-e ‘late afternoon’ uz gal-a ‘at the tip’ – uz-gal-is ‘tip, attachment’ uz rok-as ‘on one’s arm’ – uz-rocs-is ‘oversleeve’ vīrs svārks ‘over a jacket’ – vīrs-svārc-is ‘overalls’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source structure – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) PREP + N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt; – N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>types, kinds, places, time</td>
<td>bez svar-a ‘without weight’ – bez-svar-a ‘zero-gravity (premodifier)’</td>
<td>bez svar-a ‘without weight’ – bez-svar-a ‘zero-gravity (premodifier)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pēc kara ‘after a war’ – pēc-kara-a ‘post-war (premodifier)’</td>
<td>pēc kara ‘after a war’ – pēc-kara-a ‘post-war (premodifier)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pie māj-as ‘by a house’ – pie-māj-as ‘adjoining (garden, plot, etc.)’</td>
<td>pie māj-as ‘by a house’ – pie-māj-as ‘adjoining (garden, plot, etc.)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>prieķš vēlēšan-u ‘before an election’ – prieķš-vēlēšan-u ‘pre-election’</td>
<td>prieķš vēlēšan-u ‘before an election’ – prieķš-vēlēšan-u ‘pre-election’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>starp valst-u ‘between countries, governments’ – starp-valst-u ‘intergovernmental, international’</td>
<td>starp valst-u ‘between countries, governments’ – starp-valst-u ‘intergovernmental, international’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virs zem-es ‘above the ground’ – virs-zem-es ‘above-ground, surface (premodifier)’</td>
<td>virs zem-es ‘above the ground’ – virs-zem-es ‘above-ground, surface (premodifier)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zem grīdas ‘under the floor’ – zem-grid-as ‘underfloor’</td>
<td>zem grīdas ‘under the floor’ – zem-grid-as ‘underfloor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) PREP + N&lt;sub&gt;ACC&lt;/sub&gt; – N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>-e, -a (F), -is (M)</td>
<td>places, things</td>
<td>pa kāj-ai ‘at the foot’ – pa-kāj-e ‘bottom, foot (of a mountain, etc.)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa kāj-ai ‘at the foot’ – pa-kāj-e ‘bottom, foot (of a mountain, etc.)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa krast-am ‘at the coast’ – pa-krast-e ‘nearshore area under water, also coastal slope’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa krast-am ‘at the coast’ – pa-krast-e ‘nearshore area under water, also coastal slope’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa galvai ‘at the head’ – pa-galv-is ‘headrest’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa galvai ‘at the head’ – pa-galv-is ‘headrest’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa sakn-ei ‘at the root’ – pa-sakn-is ‘counterfoil’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pa sakn-ei ‘at the root’ – pa-sakn-is ‘counterfoil’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ap kakl-u ‘around one’s neck’ – ap-kakl-e ‘collar’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ap kakl-u ‘around one’s neck’ – ap-kakl-e ‘collar’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ap mal-u ‘around the edge’ – ap-mal-e ‘edging, border’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ap mal-u ‘around the edge’ – ap-mal-e ‘edging, border’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār Daugav-u ‘across the Daugava’ – Pār-daugav-a ‘the part of Rīga on the left bank of the Daugava’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār Daugav-u ‘across the Daugava’ – Pār-daugav-a ‘the part of Rīga on the left bank of the Daugava’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār Gauj-u ‘across the Gauja’ – Pār-gauj-a ‘area on the other side of the Gauja’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār Gauj-u ‘across the Gauja’ – Pār-gauj-a ‘area on the other side of the Gauja’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār galv-u ‘over one’s head’ – Pār-galv-is, -e ‘reckless person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pār galv-u ‘over one’s head’ – Pār-galv-is, -e ‘reckless person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) PREP + N&lt;sub&gt;ACC&lt;/sub&gt; – N&lt;sub&gt;GEN&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>types, kinds</td>
<td>pret rūs-u ‘against rust, corrosion’ – pret-rūs-as ‘anti-corrosive’</td>
<td>pret rūs-u ‘against rust, corrosion’ – pret-rūs-as ‘anti-corrosive’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pret gais-u ‘against the air’ – pret-gais-a ‘anti-aircraft (defence)’</td>
<td>pret gais-u ‘against the air’ – pret-gais-a ‘anti-aircraft (defence)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pret alerģij-u ‘against an allergy’ – pret-alerģij-as ‘non-allergic, anti-allergenic’</td>
<td>pret alerģij-u ‘against an allergy’ – pret-alerģij-as ‘non-allergic, anti-allergenic’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, N – N</td>
<td>time periods, abstract concepts, etc.</td>
<td>dien-a ‘day’, nakt-s ‘night’ – dien-nakt-s ‘twenty-four-hour period’</td>
<td>dien-a ‘day’, nakt-s ‘night’ – dien-nakt-s ‘twenty-four-hour period’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sāl-s, maiz-e ‘salt, bread’ – sāl-(s)-maiz-e ‘bread and salt’</td>
<td>sāl-s, maiz-e ‘salt, bread’ – sāl-(s)-maiz-e ‘bread and salt’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gaism-ēn-a ‘light and shade’</td>
<td>gaism-ēn-a ‘light and shade’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.9  Main compound noun formation types in Latvian
2.2 ADJECTIVES

2.2.0 Introductory remarks

Adjectives form a class in Latvian comprised of words describing the properties of objects and are marked for gender, number, case, degree of comparison, and definiteness (Skujiņa 2007: 165). Adjectival gender, number, and case are contextual in the sense that adjectives agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they are syntactically linked:

(2.2.1) a. Abi sēņotāji apmaldījās biezajā mežā. 'Both mushroom picker got lost in the dense forest.' (www.delfi.lv)
b. Dzelteno rožu saulainā krāsa rada laimes sajūtu. 'The sunny color of yellow roses creates a feeling of happiness.' (www.draugiem.lv)

The majority of adjectives in Latvian can have three main syntactic functions; they can be attributive (2.2.2), nominal predicative (2.2.3), or used as secondary predicates expressing a resultative meaning (2.2.4):

(2.2.2) a. Šodien spīd spoža saule. 'A bright sun shines today.'
b. Viņam negaršo zaļā tēja. 'He dislikes green tea.'

(2.2.3) a. Rīts ir vēss. 'The morning is chilly.'
b. Pusdienas ir garšīgas. 'The dinner is tasty.'

(2.2.4) a. Ezera virsma jau krāsojās sārta. 'The surface of the lake had already started turning pink.' (C)
2.2.1 Declension

Indefinite and definite endings form the two major adjectival declension types in Latvian:

1) The indefinite type mirrors the inflectional endings of declension 1 nouns in masculine forms (mazs ‘small’ (M), skāls ‘loud’ (M)) and declension 4 nouns in feminine forms (maza (F), skāla (F)) (see Table 2.10).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>maz-s, skal-š</td>
<td>maz-a, skal-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>maz-a, skal-a</td>
<td>maz-as, skal-as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>maz-am, skal-am</td>
<td>maz-ai, skal-ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>maz-u, skal-u</td>
<td>maz-u, skal-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) maz-u, skal-u</td>
<td>(ar) maz-u, skal-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>maz-ā, skal-ā</td>
<td>maz-ā, skal-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>maz-š!, skal-š!</td>
<td>maz-š!, skal-š!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.10 Declension of indefinite adjectives in Latvian (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 62)

3) The definite type has a unique paradigm for each gender (mazais ‘small (DEF)’ (M), skaļais ‘loud (DEF)’ (M); mazā (F), skaļā (F)) (see Table 2.11).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>maz-ais, skal-ais</td>
<td>maz-ā, skal-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>maz-ā, skal-ā</td>
<td>maz-ās, skal-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>maz-ajam, skal-ajam</td>
<td>maz-ajai, skal-ajai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>maz-ō, skal-ō</td>
<td>maz-ō, skal-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) maz-ō, skal-ō</td>
<td>(ar) maz-ō, skal-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>maz-ajā, skal-ajā</td>
<td>maz-ajā, skal-ajā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>maz-āš!, skal-āš!</td>
<td>maz-āš!, skal-āš!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.11 Declension of definite adjectives in Latvian (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 62)
Adjectives do not have specific forms for the vocative case in Latvian. Corresponding nominative and, in the definite singular, also accusative forms are used with a vocative meaning. While definite adjectives are more common in the vocative function (whenever a person or a personified object is addressed he or she is thereby also specified) indefinite adjectives also do occur occasionally as vocatives, for example, in folklore texts:

(2.2.5) a. *Mana mīla māmulīna,*
   my.NOM.F dear.NOM.F.INDF mum.DIM.NOM.F
   Kā tu zini, tā tu dari!
   how you.NOM.SG know.PRS.2SG so you.NOM.SG do.IMP.2SG
   ‘My dear mummy,
   Do as you see fit!’ (http://latviandainas.lib.virginia.edu)

b. *Māci, māci, sveša māte,*
   teach.IMP.2SG teach.IMP.2SG foreign.NOM.F.INDF mother.NOM.F
   Vai mācīt nedrīkstēji?
   Q teach.INF not_allow.PST.2SG
   ‘Teach me, teach me, another’s mother,’
   Or were you not allowed to teach?’ (http://latviandainas.lib.virginia.edu)

A peculiar kind of adjective-noun agreement is found in expressions of direct address containing definite adjectives (see also Holvoet 2012; Nītiņa 2013a: 391–392; Kalnača 2017a). A noun in the vocative proper permits both nominative (2.2.6) and accusative (2.2.7) adjectives:

(2.2.6) ADJ NOM + N VOC
a. *Atvaino, jaunais cilvēk!*
   forgive.IMP.2SG young.NOM.M.DEF person.VOC.M
   ‘Excuse me, young man!’ (C)

b. *Mīlaš, tēti, tu paliec,*
   dear.NOM.M.DEF dad.VOC.M you.NOM.SG stay.IMP.2SG
   mājās, mēs ar mammu iesim uz koncertu.
   home.LOC.PL.F we.NOM with mum.INS.F go.FUT.1PL to concert.LOC.M
   ‘Dear daddy, stay at home, mummy and I are going to the concert.’
   (www.draugiem.lv)

c. *Ak, māt, mīla māt!*
   oh mother.VOC.F dear.NOM.F.DEF mother.VOC.F
   ‘Oh, mother, dear mother!’ (C)

(2.2.7) ADJ ACC + N VOC
a. *Manu mazo bērniņ, viss*
   my.ACC.M little.ACC.M.DEF child.DIM.VOC.M everything.NOM.M
   i r kārībā!
   be.COP.PRS.3 order.LOC.F
   ‘My little child, everything is all right!’ (C)
b. Manu milo engelīti, tu man
my.ACC.M dear.ACC.M.DEF angel.DIM.VOC.M you.NOM.SG I.DAT
iemācīji priecāties!
teach.PST.2SG rejoice.INF
‘My dear angel, you taught me to feel joy!’ (www.maminuklubs.lv)

c. Tik par tevi ir īr sis stāsts,
only about you.ACC.SG be.PRS.3 this.NOM.M story.NOM.M
manu milo māt.
my.ACC.F dear.ACC.F.DEF mother.VOC.F
‘This story is only about you, my dear mother.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

By contrast, a nominative noun used with a vocative function (declensions 1, 4, 5) only permits a nominative adjective within the same expression used for direct address, i.e., there is morphological adjective-noun agreement (2.2.8). This same type of morphological agreement occurs when a noun is in the accusative (declensions 1, 4) (2.2.9).

(2.2.8) ADJ NOM + N NOM

a. Stāvi, slinkais zirgs!
stop.IMP.2SG lazy.NOM.M.DEF horse.NOM.M
‘Stop, you lazy horse!’ (CW)

b. Milā māte daba, vienreiz
dear.NOM.F.DEF mother.NOM.F nature.NOM.F once
izlem – sniegs vai lietus!
decide.IMP.2SG snow.NOM.M or rain.NOM.M
‘Dear mother nature, decide for once – snow or rain!’ (www.twitter.com)

(2.2.9) ADJ ACC + N ACC

Miļo mammu, es, tavs dēls,
dear.ACC.F.DEF mum.ACC.F I.NOM your.NOM.SG.M son.NOM.M
vairs nedzivošu te.
anymore not_live.FUT.1SG here
‘Dear mummy, I, your son, will not live here any longer.’ (CW)

Adjectives derived by means of the suffix -ēj- (pēdējais-ā ‘last (DEF)’ (M, F), priekšējais-ā ‘front (DEF)’ (M, F), malējais-ā ‘side (DEF)’ (M, F), labējais-ā ‘right, right-wing (DEF)’ (M, F), vakarējais-ā ‘yesterday’s (DEF)’ (M, F), virsējais-ā ‘upper (DEF)’ (M, F), etc.) have a mixed paradigm of definite endings in Standard Latvian: definite dative and locative endings for both numbers and definite instrumental plural endings are substituted with corresponding indefinite endings to prevent consecutive similar sound clusters from occurring (haplology) (see also Paegle 2003: 57–58; Nitiņa 2013a: 392–393; Kalnača 2014: 2–3):
As was noted in the introductory remarks on word classes (Section 2.0.4), there exists a small group of indeclinable adjectives in Latvian. This group consists of borrowed color words: *rozā* ‘pink’, *lillā* ‘lilac’, *haki* ‘khaki’, *bordo* ‘bordeaux (color)’, *indigo* ‘indigo’:

\[(2.2.10)\] a. *Salasījos žurnālus un man ievajadzējās rozā kvarcu.*
   ‘Having read through the magazines I now need a pink quartz.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *Šoruden man noderētu soma haki vai lillā krāsā.*
   ‘A khaki or lilac handbag would come in useful this autumn.’ (Diena)

There are also several adjectives that have lost their full case paradigms and nowadays only seem to appear in set expressions in just one case form, for example:

\[(2.2.11)\] INS SG, PL *augu gadu* ‘all year long’, *augu naktī* ‘all night long’, *augām dienām* ‘for days on end’, used to refer to prolonged periods of time:

a. *Puravs augu gadu saglabā kuplu leek.NOM.M all.INS.M year.INS.M retain.PRS.3 rich.ACC.F vitaminu buķeti.*
   ‘Leek retains its rich vitamin bouquet throughout the year.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

b. *Pilsētā augām dienām uzņem city.LOC.F all.INS.PL.F day.INS.PL.F receive.PRS.3 augustus viesus.*
   ‘Distinguished guests arrive in the city for days on end.’ (www.lsm.lv)

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>malēj-ais</td>
<td>malēj-ā</td>
<td>malēj-ie</td>
<td>malēj-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>malēj-ā</td>
<td>malēj-ās</td>
<td>malēj-o</td>
<td>malēj-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>malēj-am</td>
<td>malēj-ai</td>
<td>malēj-īem</td>
<td>malēj-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>malēj-o</td>
<td>malēj-o</td>
<td>malēj-os</td>
<td>malēj-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) malēj-o</td>
<td>(ar) malēj-o</td>
<td>(ar) malēj-īem</td>
<td>(ar) malēj-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>malēj-ā</td>
<td>malēj-ā</td>
<td>malēj-os</td>
<td>malēj-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>malēj-ais!/malēj-o!</td>
<td>malēj-ā!/malēj-o!</td>
<td>malēj-ie!</td>
<td>malēj-ās!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.12** Declension of adjectives containing the suffix -ēj- (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 63)
From the point of view of semantics two broad groups of adjectives are distinguished:

1) Qualitative adjectives, which describe the qualities that an object may possess to a greater or lesser degree (2.2.12) (Skujina 2007: 177). Consequently, qualitative adjectives are, in general, gradable and can form degrees of comparison (2.2.13)–(2.2.15).

(2.2.12) a. *skaista* _diena_  
beautiful.NOM.F.INDF day.NOM.F  
‘a beautiful day’

b. *skaļa* _balss_  
loud.NOM.F.INDF voice.NOM.F  
‘a loud voice’

c. *vecs* _nams_  
old.NOM.M.INDF house.NOM.M  
‘an old house’

(2.2.13) a. *skaist-āk-a* _diena_  
beautiful-CMP-NOM.F.INDF day.NOM.F  
‘a more beautiful day’

b. *vis-skaist-āk-ā* _diena_  
SPL-beautiful-CMP-NOM.F.DEF day.NOM.F  
‘the most beautiful day’

(2.2.14) a. *skal-āk-a* _balss_  
loud-CMP-NOM.F.INDF voice.NOM.F  
‘a louder voice’

b. *vis-skal-āk-ā* _balss_  
SPL-loud-CMP-NOM.F.DEF voice.NOM.F  
‘the loudest voice’

(2.2.15) a. *vec-āk-s* _nams_  
old-CMP-NOM.M.INDF house.NOM.M  
‘an older house’

b. *vis-vec-āk-ais* _nams_  
SPL-old-CMP-NOM.M.DEF house.NOM.M  
‘the oldest house’

2) Relational adjectives, which describe the fixed, unvarying properties of an object. The lexical meaning of relational adjectives, as a rule, does not naturally lend itself to gradation, therefore, the majority of such adjectives lack degrees of comparison (Skujina 2007: 56).

(2.2.16) a. *vispārēja* _atziniba_  
universal.NOM.F.INDF recognition.NOM.F  
‘universal recognition’

b. *pērmais* _rudens_  
last_year.NOM.M.DEF autumn.NOM.M  
‘last year’s autumn’
c. *malējais* *krēsls*
   outermost.NOM.M.DEF chair.NOM.M
   ‘the outermost chair’

d. *galvenais* *notikums*
   main.NOM.N.DEF event.NOM.M
   ‘the main event’

e. *piecgadīgs* *bērns*
   five_years_old.NOM.M.INDF child.NOM.M
   ‘a five-year-old child’

f. *baložpelēks* *audums*
   dove_grey.NOM.M.INDF fabric.NOM.M
   ‘dove grey fabric’

This distinction, however, is not clear-cut and degrees of comparison for relational adjectives are formed quite often in actual language use (Paegle 2003: 55-56; Nītiņa 2013a: 373). Admittedly, it is impossible to propose a precise set of criteria for differentiating between qualitative and relational adjectives in Latvian, although certain clues can be gleaned from derivational morphology. Patterns of adjectival derivation show that derived adjectives tend to denote very concrete, non-variable properties (see Nītiņa 2013a: 373). Relational adjectives are, for the most part, complex words (2.2.17a), while qualitative adjectives are (at least synchronically) simplex (2.2.17b).

(2.2.17) a. *stiklains* ‘glassy’, *malējais* ‘outermost’, *iebrūns* ‘brownish’, *iezilgans* ‘blueish’,
   *vīnsarkans* ‘wine red’, *divzilbīgs* ‘disyllabic’, *brūnacains* ‘brown-eyed’

   *zils* ‘blue’, *liels* ‘large’, *labs* ‘good’

Whereas gradable compound adjectives are extremely rare, derived adjectives, even though their lexical meaning is usually very concrete, are much more readily used in comparative and superlative forms, as the examples in (2.2.18) illustrate. It must be pointed out, however, that some of these are not considered acceptable in Standard Latvian. The adjective *galvenais* ‘main (DEF)’, which already has ‘the highest degree’ as part of its lexical meaning, is a case in point:

(2.2.18) a. *Neviens* *ceļš* *nav*
   none.NOM.M road.NOM.M be.NEG.COP.PRS.3
   *galven-āk-s*
   important-CMP-NOM.M.INDF than another.ACC.M
   ‘No road is more important than another.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *Viņš* *irms* *otrs* *galven-āk-ais*
   he.NOM be.COP.PRS.3 second.NOM.M important-CMP-NOM.M.DEF
   [basketbola] treneris Ventspili.
   [basketball] coach.NOM.M Ventspils.LOC.F
   ‘He is the second top [basketball] coach in Ventspils.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

SPL-IMPORTANT.NOM.M.DEF
‘The competition factor is the main thing [in a ballet contest].’
(www.lsm.lv)

Likewise, as denominal derivatives usually describe very concrete properties, adjectives with the suffix -ain- should be classified as relational, for example:

(2.2.19) zarains ‘branchy’, ‘having branches’
   mālains ‘clayey’, ‘containing clay or being composed of clay’
   miltains ‘mealy’, ‘being in some respect like meal’
   likumains ‘curvy’, ‘having curves, bends (e.g., of a road)’

At the same time, unlike most relational adjectives they are used quite freely in the comparative (2.2.20), while the superlative form is, again, very rare (2.2.21):

(2.2.20) a. Jo augstāks un zarain-āk-s un Conj high.CMP.NOM.M.INDF and branchy-CMP-NOM.M.INDF be.PRS.3
ekoks, jo tā kopšana ir tree.NOM.M Conj it.GEN.M tending.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3
dārgāka.

expensive.CMP.NOM.F.INDF
‘The taller and branchier a tree, the more expensive it is to maintain.’
(Diena)

b. Kartupeļu raža cietusi tur, kur potato.GEN.PL.M crop.NOM.F suffer.PTCP.NOM.F there where
   mālain-āk-a augsne.
   clayey-CMP-NOM.F.INDF soil.NOM.F
‘The potato crop has suffered where the soil is more clayey.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

c. Pašu audsētā arbūza mīkstums self.GEN.PL.M grow.PTCP.GEN.M watermelon.GEN.M pulp.NOM.M
   ir miltain-āk-s, garša be.COP.PRS.3 mealy-CMP-NOM.M.INDF taste.NOM.F
   soldāka.
   sweet.CMP.NOM.F.INDF
‘The pulp of home-grown watermelons is mealier, the taste is sweeter.’
(Diena)

(2.2.21) a. Kartupelis bija vis-miltainākais produktos,
potato.NOM.M be.COP.PST.3 SPL-mealy.NOM.M.DEF product.NOM.M
   ko dot zidainim.
that.ACC give.INF infant.DAT.M
‘Potatoes were the mealest product to be given to the infant.’ (CW)

b. Te ir vis-likumainākais celš.
here be.COP.PRS.3 SPL-curry.NOM.M.DEF road.NOM.N
‘Here is the curviest road.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
2.2.2 Comparison

Degrees of comparison are a grammatical category of qualitative adjectives which establishes a comparison among objects according to the degree to which they possess a particular property. Latvian has three degrees of comparison (Skujiņa 2007: 336).

1) The **positive** form is the basic form of the comparison system and denotes a quality or property without qualification. The positive form is unmarked, i.e., it is formed without the use of specialized grammatical formatives and its meaning is expressed by the stem of the adjective, for example:

(2.2.22) *maz-s* ‘small’, *skaist-s* ‘beautiful’, *raib-s* ‘speckled’

a. *Bija dzestra augusta naktis.*
   be.COP.PRS.3 cool.NOM.F.INDF August.GEN.M night.NOM.F

‘It was a cool August night.’ (P. Bankovskis)

b. *Viņš gleznoja brūnu krūzi.*
   he.NOM paint.PST.3 brown.ACC.F.INDF mug.ACC.F

‘He was painting a brown mug.’ (A. Eglītis)

The **comparative** is a form indicating that the degree to which an object possesses a quality or property is greater than that expressed by the positive form. In Latvian, the comparative is grammatically marked by means of the **suffix** -āk-, which attaches to the adjectival stem of the positive form, for example:

(2.2.23) *maz-āk-s* ‘smaller’, *skaist-āk-s* ‘more beautiful’, *raib-āk-s* ‘more speckled’

a. *Lidojumu biļetēm klūstot arvien lēt-āk-ām, cheap-CMP-DAT.PL.F.DEF
   flight.GEN.PL.M ticket.DAT.PL.F become.PTCP ever also relationship.NOM.PL.F with other.INS.PL.M traveller.INS.PL.M
   klūstot arvien
   become.PTCP ever

   ‘With flight tickets becoming increasingly cheaper, relationships with other travellers have changed considerably, too.’ (P. Bankovskis)

b. *Viņš ticēja mediķiem kā augst-āk-ai
cilvēku sugai.*
   he.NOM believe.PST.3 doctor.DAT.PL.M as high-CMP-DAT.F.INDF
   man.GEN.PL.M species.DAT.F

‘He believed in medical professionals as if they were a higher species of man.’ (A. Eglītis)

The **superlative** is a form indicating that an object possesses a quality or property to the highest degree. The superlative is formed by means of the **prefix** vis- placed before the stem of the comparative degree, for example:

(2.2.24) *vis-mazāk-ais* ‘the smallest’, *vis-skaistāk-ais* ‘the most beautiful’, *vis-raibāk-ais* ‘the most speckled’
a. Šādos gadījumos vis-niecīgākā
such.LOC.PL.M event.LOC.PL.M SPL-trivial.NOM.M.DEF
nejaušība var izrādīties liktenīga.
happenstance.NOM.F be_able.prs.3 prove.INF fatal.NOM.F.INDF
‘In cases like this even the slightest happenstance may turn out to be fatal.’ (P. Bankovskis)

b. Viņa aizbrauc [no pilsētas] vis-tuvākajā
she.NOM leave.prs.3 [from city] SPL-close.LOC.F.DEF
nākotnē.
future.LOC.F
‘She is leaving [the city] in the near future.’ (A. Eglītis)

Although in modern Latvian the superlative form is normally used with the definite ending (2.2.25), indefinite superlatives do occur from time to time in colloquial speech, mass media, and even contemporary literary prose (2.2.26)–(2.2.27) (see also Nītiņa 2013a: 410):

(2.2.25) a. vis-mazāk-ais, vis-mazāk-ā
SPL-small-NOM.M.DEF SPL-small-NOM.F.DEF
‘the smallest’
b. vis-mazāk-ie, vis-mazāk-ās
SPL-small-NOM.PL.M.DEF SPL-small-NOM.PL.F.DEF
‘the smallest’

(2.2.26) a. vis-labāk-s
SPL-good-NOM.M.INDF
‘best’
b. vis-gudrāk-s
SPL-smart-NOM.M.INDF
‘smartest’
c. vis-skaistāk-s
SPL-beautiful-NOM.M.INDF
‘most beautiful’

(2.2.27) a. Kāpēc tieši ASV [izglītības
why exactly USA [education
modelis] vis-labāk-s?
model] SPL-good-NOM.M.INDF
‘Why exactly is the USA’s [model of education] the best?’ (www.tvnet.lv)
b. Cilvēks vis-gudrāk-s jūtas klusējot.
person.NOM.M SPL-smart-NOM.M.INDF feel.prs.3 be_quiet.PTCP
‘One feels the smartest when one is silent.’ (www.pietiek.com)
c. Uz atvadām tēvs manā 
on parting.DAT.PL.F father.NOM.M my.LOC.M 
mantu maišeli sabēra visādus 
belonging.GEN.PL.M bag.DIM.LOC.M pour_in.PST.3 various.NOM.PL.M 
ābolus – arī tos tumši sarkanos 
apple.NOM.PL.M also that.ACC.PL.M dark red.ACC.PL.M 
ar baltu mīkstumu, kas man 
with white.INS.M.INDF flesh.INS.M.INDF that I.DAT 
vis-mīlāk-i 
SPF-favorite-NOM.PL.M.INDF since childhood.GEN.F 
‘Upon parting, father put all sorts of apples into the bag containing my things – including the dark red ones with white flesh that had been my favorite since childhood.’ (P. Bankovskis)

d. Dievs pasarg, ja viņa 
God.NOM.M protect.IMP.2SG if she.NOM 
pati iedrošinātos nopirkts mētelī! 
self.NOM.F dare.COND buy.INF coat.ACC.M 
Tas būtu vis-aplāmāk-ā 
it.NOM.M be.COND SPL-inappropriate-LOC.F.INDF 
krāsā 
color.LOC.F 
‘God forbid that she should dare buy a coat on her own! It would be in a most inappropriate color.’ (A. Eglītis)

In certain varieties of Latvian, superlatives are also formed by placing the prefix vis- before the stem of the positive form. Such superlatives are used with either an indefinite (2.2.28) or definite (2.2.29) ending:

(2.2.28) a. Starp citu, kāpēc jūs tāds 
between other.ACC.M why you.NOM.PL such.NOM.M 
vis-gudr-s 
neejat politikā? 
SPL-wise-NOM.M.INDF not_go.PRS.2PL politics.LOC.F 
‘By the way, why, as all-knowing as you are, do you not go into politics?’ 
(Diena)
b. Citi tic, ka pasauli 
other.NOM.PL.M believe.PRS.3 that world.ACC.F 
ir radījusi vis-varen-a 
be.AUX.PST.3 create.PTCP.NOM.F SPL-mighty-NOM.F.INDF 
būtne. 
being.NOM.F 
‘Others believe that the world was created by an almighty being.’ 
(www.tvnet.lv)
c. Milestiba ir vis-spēcīg-a. 
love.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 SPL-powerful-NOM.F.INDF 
‘Love is all-powerful.’ (www.draugiem.lv)
(2.2.29) a. *Man Laimiņa taupijusi*
I.DAT. Laima.DIM.NOM.F save.PTCP.NOM.F
*vis-daiļ-o tēva dēlu.*
*SPL-handsome-ACC.M.DEF father.GEN.M son.ACC.M*
‘Laimiņa [the ancient Latvian goddess of fate] has saved for me a father’s handsomest son.’ (www.latviandainas.lib.virginia.edu)
b. *Uz bērēm bija ieradušies*
to funeral.DAT.PL.M be.AUX.PST.3 arrive.PTCP.NOM.PL.M
*savulaik vis-spēcīg-ā [kriminālā]*
once *SPL-powerful-GEN.M.DEF [criminal]*
grupējuma pārstāvji.
organization.GEN.M member.NOM.PL.M
‘The funeral was attended by members of what was once the most powerful [criminal] organization.’ (www.pietiek.com)
c. *Viņi paļaujas uz Vis-augst-o [Dievu].*
they.NOM.M rely.PRS.3 on *SPL-high-ACC.M.DEF [God]*
‘They rely on the Most High [God].’ (www.delfi.lv)

In addition to the method discussed above, there are also other means for expressing the superlative degree in Standard Latvian:

1) The construction **the definite pronoun pats, pati ‘self’ + the definite comparative form** is a grammatical variant of the superlative degree.

(2.2.30) a. *pat-s labāk-ais*
self-NOM.M good-NOM.M.DEF
‘the best’
b. *pat-i labāk-ā*
self-NOM.F good-NOM.F.DEF
‘the smartest girl’

c. *Tas ir pat-s labāk-ais,*
it.L.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 self-NOM.M good-NOM.M.DEF
*kas ar mani noticis.*
that.NOM with I.INS happen.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It’s the best thing that has ever happened to me.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. *Sveiciens paš-ai gudrāk-ajai meitenei*
greeting.NOM.M self-DAT.F smart-DAT.F.DEF.PTCP.F girl.DAT.F
‘Greetings to the smartest girl!’ (www.draugiem.lv)
c. *Paš-us vecāk-os [Rīgas] pils*
self-ACC.PL.M old-ACC.PL.M.DEF [Rīga] castle.GEN.F
*mūrā apdzīvo tris muzejī*
wall.ACC.PL.M inhabit.PRS.3 three museum.NOM.PL.M
‘The oldest walls of the [Rīga] castle house three museums.’ (Diena)

2) The definite comparative form functioning as the superlative is a grammatical synonym of the latter.
On balance, adjectival degrees of comparison form a grammatical category primarily characteristic of qualitative adjectives.

2.2.3 Definiteness

Definiteness is a grammatical category marked for adjectives. It indicates whether an object is identifiable and also expresses the speaker’s evaluation as to whether a noun is unfamiliar – familiar or mentioned in the text for the first time – previously mentioned.

In Latvian, definiteness is marked inflectionally by means of adjectival endings, which can be either indefinite or definite (due to their attributive function, definiteness is also marked for ordinal numerals and declinable participles):

1) The **indefinite ending** indicates that an object is unfamiliar or has not yet been mentioned in the text, for example:

(2.2.34) Vienā [mēteļa] kabatā bija
one.LOC.F [coat] pocket.LOC.F be.PST.3
kaut kas stūrains un ciets.
something.NOM angular.NOM.M.INDF and firm.NOM.M.INDF
Tas bija grumbuļain-s ādas
it.NOM.M be.COP.PST.3 uneven-NOM.M.INDF leather.GEN.F
maks. Bet tajā – meln-s fotoaparāts.
purse.NOM.M but it.LOC.M black-NOM.M.INDF camera.NOM.M
‘There was something angular and firm in one pocket [of the coat]. It was a pebbled-leather purse with a black camera inside of it.’ (P. Bankovskis)
2) The **definite ending** indicates that the object to which the adjective refers is known to the speaker or has already been mentioned in the text, for example:

(2.2.35) *Vēl viena it kā pazīstama vieta.*

more one.NOM.F as_if familiar.NOM.F.INDF place.NOM.F

*Tam vajadzētu būt liel-ajam ozolam*

it.DAT.M need.COND.PRS be.INF big-DAT.M.DEF oak.DAT.M

*pagalmā. Taču [tam] ciešī klāt uzbūvēta*

yard.LOC.M but [it] tightly beside built.PTCP.NOM.F

*tāda kā mājiņa. uz četriem pāliem.*

such.NOM.F as house.DIM.NOM.F on four.DAT.PL.M pile.DAT.PL.M

‘Another seemingly familiar place. That should be the big oak tree in the yard, but something like a little house on four piles has been built right beside [it].’ (P. Bankovskis)

In addition to the uses shown above, certain general semantic and grammatical principles governing the use of indefinite and definite endings can be identified in Latvian (Paegle 2003: 58–59).

1) The **indefinite ending** is typically used for stating facts:

a) in nominal adjective predicates (2.2.36a) and nominal noun predicates where the noun is modified by an adjective (2.2.36b):

(2.2.36) a. *Attēls ir gandrīz melnbalt-s.*

image.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 almost monochrome-NOM.M.INDF

‘The image is almost black and white.’ (P. Bankovskis)

b. *Viņai bija pievilcīg-a seja.*

she.DAT be.COP.PST.3 attractive-NOM.F.INDF face.NOM.F

‘She had an attractive face.’ (A. Eglītis)

b) in adjectival secondary predicates:

(2.2.37) a. *Stacijas laukums pletās pilnīgi tukš-s.*

station.GEN.F square.NOM.M stretch.PST.3 completely empty-NOM.M.INDF

‘The station square stretched ahead completely empty.’ (A. Eglītis)

b. *Parkets spīdēja tik zeltain-s.*

parquet.NOM.M shine.PST.3 so golden-NOM.M.INDF

‘The parquet [flooring] shone so golden.’ (A. Eglītis)

c) in adjectival detached attributes:

(2.2.38) a. *Jāņu diena, silt-a un milīg-a kā tikko dzimuša*

Midsummer.GEN.PL.F day.NOM.F warm-NOM.F.INDF and

sweet-NOM.F.INDF as just born.PTCP.GEN.M

bērna smarža.

baby.GEN.M scent.NOM.F

‘Midsummer’s Day, warm and sweet like the scent of a newborn baby.’ (C)
b. Vācu aitu suns,
   German.gen.pl.m.indf sheep.gen.pl.f dog.nom.m
   pieticīg-s un jūtīg-s
   modest-nom.m.indf and sensitive-nom.m.indf
   saskarsmē ar cilvēkiem.
   interaction.loc.f with person.ins.pl.m
   ‘The German sheepdog, modest and sensitive in interacting with people.’ (C)

2) The **definite ending** is typically used for specifying and concretizing facts:
   a) in terminological phrases and names of different objects and phenomena:

   (2.2.39) a. **balt-ais** āboliņš
      white-nom.m.def clover.nom.m
      ‘white clover’
   b. **elektronisk-ais** paraksts
      electronic-nom.m.def signature.nom.m
      ‘electronic signature’
   c. **globāl-ais** timeklis
      global-nom.m.def network.nom.m
      ‘World Wide Web’
   d. **iekšēj-ais** tīrīgs
      internal-nom.m.def market.nom.m
      ‘internal market’
   e. **mobil-ais** tālrūnis
      mobile-nom.m.def phone.nom.m
      ‘mobile phone’
   f. **zaļ-ais** tūrīms
      green-nom.m.def tourism.nom.m
      ‘green tourism’

   b) in geographical names:

   (2.2.40) a. **Maz-ā** Jugla
      little-nom.f.def Jugla
      ‘the Little Jugla’
   b. **Liel-ā** Jugla
      great-nom.f.def Jugla
      ‘the Great Jugla’
   c. **Liel-ais** Sālīsezer
      great-nom.m.def Salt_Lake.nom.m
      ‘the Great Salt Lake’
   d. **Klus-ais** okeāns
      Pacific-nom.m.def ocean.nom.m
      ‘the Pacific Ocean’
   e. **Tuv-ie** Austrumi
      near-nom.pl.m.def east.nom.pl.m
      ‘the Near East’
c) in substantivizations of adjectives and participles:

(2.2.41) a. 30 pazīmes, kas atšķir bagāt-os no nabag-ajiem.
char.:nom.pl.f that:nom distinguish:prs.3 rich:acc.pl.m.def from poor:dat.pl.m.def
‘30 characteristics that distinguish the rich from the poor.’
(www.apollo.lv)
b. Uz festivālu jābrauc ar autobusu, lidzi jāņem ēdam-ais.
to festival:acc.m deb:go with bus:ins.m along deb:take eat:ptcp:nom.m:def
‘One must go to the festival by bus and bring along something to eat.’
(www.tvnet.lv)
c. Pagājušajā vasarā izšķīros, un bijuš-ais apprečējās ar citu.
go:ptcp:loc.f summer:loc.f divorce:pst.1sg and be:ptcp:nom.m:def marry:pst.3 with other:ins.f
‘I divorced last year and my ex has remarried.’ (www.delfi.lv)

d) in superlatives (see examples (2.2.24) above).

However, these principles do not always apply consistently in actual language use (for a more detailed discussion see Nītiņa 2013a: 397-402; Holvoet 2014; see also Section 2.2.1 on variants of the superlative). For example, there are quite a lot of terminological phrases with an attributive indefinite adjective (or participle):

(2.2.42) a. brīv-a preču aprite
free:nom.f.indf goods:gen.pl.f movement:nom.f
‘free movement of goods’
b. fīzisk-a persona
natural:nom.f.indf person:nom.f
‘natural person’
c. ilgtspējīg-a izaugsme
sustainable:nom.f.indf growth:nom.f
‘sustainable growth’
d. salikt-a vielā
assemble:ptcp:nom.f.indf substance:nom.f
‘compound substance’
e. sinhron-a darbība
synchronous:nom.f.indf operation:nom.f
‘synchronous operation’
f. jaukt-s mežs
mix:ptcp:nom.m.indf forest:nom.m
‘mixed forest’
Some of these have parallel terminological variants with definite adjectives (or participles):

(2.2.43) **fiziskā persona, saliktā viela, sinhronā darbība**

Likewise, indefinite endings are common in names of dishes where one could reasonably expect to find definite adjectives (or participles), due to the specifying, concretizing character of such phrases:

(2.2.44) a. **sālit-as**

    pickle.PTCP-NOM.PL.F.INDF mushroom.NOM.PL.F

    ‘pickled mushrooms’

b. **marinēt-i**

    marinate.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF cucumber.NOM.PL.M

    ‘marinated cucumbers’

c. **cept-i**

    fry.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF potato.NOM.PL.M

    ‘fried potatoes’

d. **tvaicēt-i**

    steam.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF vegetable.NOM.PL.M

    ‘steamed vegetables’

e. **diedzēt-i**

    sprout.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF grain.NOM.PL.M

    ‘sprouted grain’

(2.2.45) a. **Man**

    piešķīra trīslitru burku ar

    I.DAT award.PST.3 three_liter.GEN.PL.F jar.ACC.F with

    sālit-ām

    pickle.PTCP-INS.PL.F.INDF mushroom.INS.PL.F

    ‘I was awarded a three-liter jar of pickled mushrooms.’

    (www.delfi.lv)

b. **Vai**

    jums jau ir apnikuši

    Q you.DAT.PL already be.AUX.PRS.3 fed_up.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

    marinēt-i

    marinate.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF cucumber.NOM.PL.M winter.LOC.F

    ‘Are you already fed up with eating marinated cucumbers during the winter?’ (www.maminuklubs.lv)

c. **Cept-i**

    fry.PTCP-NOM.PL.M.INDF potato.NOM.PL.M with garlic.INS.PL.M

    un Parmas sieru.

    and Parmesan.GEN.F cheese.INS.M

    ‘Fried potatoes with garlic and Parmesan.’ (Kas Jauns)
Finally, there are indefinite superlatives, which usually occur as part of nominal predicates:

(2.2.46) a. Šis siers vis-gardāk-s
this.NOM.M cheese.NOM.M SPL-delicious-NOM.M.INDF
ir uz maizītes.
be.COP.PRS.3 on bread.DIM.GEN.F
‘This cheese is at its most delicious when served on bread.’
(www.twitter.com)

b. Rundāle vis-skaistāk-a ir pavasari.
Rundāle.NOM.F SPL-beautiful-NOM.F.INDF be.COP.PRS.3 spring.LOC.M
‘Rundāle is at its most beautiful in spring.’ (www.epadomi.lv)

c. Piens ir vis-garšīgāk-s, kad vēl
milk.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 SPL-tasty.NOM.M.INDF when still
pasilts.
little_warm.NOM.M.INDF
‘Milk is at its tastiest when still a little warm.’ (A. Upīts)

2.2.4 Word formation

Although examples illustrating adjective formation types below are listed with the masculine ending, all adjectives can also be used with the feminine ending (see Section 2.2.1 on adjective declension). Endings are not included under Word-formation means, as they are the same for all word-formation types – -s (M), -a (F), with the diminutive suffix -iņ-, also -š (M).

Suffixation

Suffixation as a means of adjective formation shows a great deal of variety in Latvian. Adjectives can be formed from other adjectives, nouns, verbs, numerals, and pronouns. Derived adjectives usually name properties and subtle distinctions between properties (which are often attenuative, i.e., reducing the force, extent of a property or an attribute, or else indicate the permanent, constant character of a property) and also characterize something as having a certain attribute, or express a resemblance, likeness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ADJ–ADJ                           | -an- / -gan-         | attenuation          | slāb-s ‘weak, feeble’ – slāb-an-s ‘weakish, feeblish’
                                         |                      | valg-s ‘dewy, moist’ – valg-an-s ‘moistish’
                                         |                      | zal-š ‘green’ – zal-gan-s ‘greenish’
                                         |                      | bāl-s ‘pale’ – bāl-gan-s ‘palish’
<pre><code>                                     |                      | meln-s ‘black’ – meln-gan-s ‘blackish’ |
</code></pre>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ADJ–ADJ                           | -ād-                 | difference in kind, otherness | sveš-s ‘foreign’ – sveš-ād-s ‘strange, unfamiliar, alien’
|                                  |                      |                      | ab-ēj-s ‘both’ – ab-ēj-ād-s ‘of both kinds’
|                                  |                      |                      | div-ēj-i ‘two, two different’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | div-ēj-ād-s ‘of two kinds’
|                                  |                      |                      | četr-ēj-i ‘four, four different’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | četr-ēj-ād-s ‘of four kinds’ |
|                                  | -en-                 | attenuation          | sald-s ‘sweet’ – sald-en-s ‘sweetish’
|                                  |                      |                      | gar-š ‘long’ – gar-en-s ‘elongated’
|                                  |                      |                      | gurd-s ‘languid, unenergetic’ – gurd-en-s ‘rather languid, unenergetic’
|                                  |                      |                      | sārt-s ‘pink, rosy’ – sārt-en-s ‘pinkish’ |
|                                  | -ēj-                 | attenuation          | īpat-n-s ‘distinctive, one of a kind, singular’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | īpat-n-ēj-s ‘peculiar’
|                                  |                      |                      | kals-n-s ‘bony, scrawny’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | kals-n-ēj-s ‘rather bony’
|                                  |                      |                      | zal-oksn-s ‘verdant, robust, vigorous’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | zal-oksn-ēj-s ‘rather verdant, robust, vigorous’ |
|                                  | -ēj-                 | attenuation          | -ēj- |
|                                  | -iņ-                 | attenuation, DIM     | maz-s ‘little’ – maz-in-š (DIM)
|                                  |                      |                      | tiev-s ‘thin’ – tiev-in-š (DIM)
|                                  |                      |                      | viegl-s ‘light’ – viegl-in-š (DIM)
|                                  |                      |                      | sīk-s ‘tiny’ – sīc-in-š (DIM) |
|                                  | -isk-                | qualitative          | liels ‘large’ – lielisks ‘excellent, great’
|                                  |                      | characterization     | maz-s ‘little’ – maz-isk-s ‘petty, paltry’
|                                  |                      |                      | zem-s ‘low’ – zem-isk-s ‘base, low, mean’
|                                  |                      |                      | lab-s ‘right, good’ – lab-isk-s ‘of the knit side (as opposed to the purl side)’
|                                  |                      |                      | gar-en-s ‘elongated’ – gar-en-isk-s ‘lengthwise, longitudinal’ |
|                                  | -īg-                 | attenuation          | tīr-s ‘clean’ – tīr-īg-s ‘cleanly, tidy’
|                                  |                      |                      | vesel-s ‘healthy (of a person)’ – vesel-īg-s ‘healthful, robust, wholesome’
|                                  |                      |                      | vec-s ‘old, elderly’ – vec-īg-s ‘old-mannish’
|                                  |                      |                      | mil-š ‘dear, beloved, sweet’ – mil-īg-s ‘affectionate, sweet, lovable’
|                                  |                      |                      | apal-š ‘round’ – apal-īg-s ‘roundish, plump’
|                                  |                      |                      | lēn-s ‘slow’ – lēn-īg-s ‘slow, also meek, even-tempered’ |
|                                  |                      | permanent, constant  | māt-īsk-s ‘maternal, motherly’ – māt-īsk-īg-s ‘motherly’
|                                  |                      | properties          | tēv-īsk-s ‘paternal, fatherly’ –
|                                  |                      |                      | tēv-īsk-īg-s ‘fatherly’
|                                  |                      |                      | diev-īsk-s ‘divine’ – diev-īsk-īg-s ‘divine, godlike’ |
|                                  | -ūn-                 | attenuation          | tuv-s ‘close’ – tuv-in-s ‘closish’
|                                  |                      |                      | tāl-s ‘distant’ – tāl-in-s ‘remotish’
|                                  |                      |                      | agr-s ‘early’ – agrin-s ‘early (also, ahead of usual time), ripened early’
<p>|                                  |                      |                      | vēl-s ‘late’ – vēl-in-s ‘late (also, belated), late-bearing’ |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N–ADJ</strong></td>
<td>-ain- with declension 2, 5, or 6 bases, usually attaches to the GEN PL stem</td>
<td>having a lot of, being covered with, also having a lot, being covered with, also having (as opposed to not having) or having the quality of something</td>
<td>zar-s ‘branch’ – zar-ain-s ‘branchy’ māl-s ‘clay’ – māl-ain-s ‘clayey’ akmen-s ‘stone’ – akmen-ū (GEN PL) – akmen-ain-s ‘stony’ zem-e ‘soil, earth’ – zemj-ū (GEN PL) – zemj-ain-s ‘muddy’ smilt-s ‘sand’ – smilš-ū (GEN PL) – smilš-ain-s ‘sandy’ rag-s ‘horn’ – rag-ain-s ‘horned’ bārda ‘beard’ – bārd-ain-s ‘bearded’ sprog-a ‘curl’ – sprog-ain-s ‘curly’ kok-s ‘tree’ – kok-ain-s ‘wooden, stiff, stilted’ brīn-um-s ‘miracle’ – brīn-um-ain-s ‘miraculous’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-en-</td>
<td>attributes named by or following from the base noun</td>
<td>galv-a ‘head’ – galv-en-ais ‘main’ slav-a ‘fame’ – slav-en-s ‘famous’ mēr-s ‘measure, extent’ – mēr-en-s ‘moderate’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| N–ADJ                             | -ig-                 | attributes following from the base noun | sul-a ‘juice’ – sul-īg-s ‘juicy’  
priek-s ‘joy’ – priec-īg-s ‘joyful’  
māj-a ‘home’ – māj-īg-s ‘homey’  
vilt-us ‘cunning (N)’ – vilt-īg-s ‘cunning (ADJ)’  
ac-s ‘eye’ – acīg-s ‘sharp-eyed, observant’  
vien-zilb-es ‘one-syllable (GEN, modifier)’ – vien-zilb-īg-s ‘monosyllabic’  
trīs-bals-u ‘three-part (in music) (GEN, modifier)’ – trīs-bals-īg-s ‘three-part (ADJ)’  
bez-gal-a ‘without end (GEN, modifier)’ – bez-gal-īg-s ‘endless’  
bez-mērk-a ‘without aim (GEN, modifier)’ – bez-mērk-īg-s ‘aimless’  
lod-veid-a ‘globe-shaped (GEN, modifier)’ – lod-veid-īg-s ‘globular’  
gāz-veid-a ‘in the form of a gas (GEN, modifier)’ – gāz-veid-īg-s ‘gaseous, gasiform’  
plān-veid-a ‘according to a plan (GEN, modifier)’ – plān-veid-īg-s ‘planned, systematic’ |
|                                  | -ot-                 | attributes following from the base noun | zābak-s ‘boot’ – zābak-ot-s ‘booted’  
snieg-s ‘snow’ – snieg-ot-s ‘snow-covered’  
cimd-s ‘glove’ – cimd-ot-s ‘gloved’  
puk-e ‘flower’ – puk-ot-s ‘floral, flower-patterned, flowery’ |
| NUM–ADJ                          | -ād-                 | qualitative characterization | vien-s ‘one’ – vien-ād-s ‘equal, equivalent’  
trej-i ‘three’ – trej-ād-s ‘of three kinds’  
otr-s another, second’ – otr-ād-s ‘converse, inverse’ |
|                                  | -ēj-                 | quantity; pluralia tantum | div-i ‘two’ – div-ēj-i ‘two, two different’  
četr-i ‘four’ – četr-ēj-i ‘four, four different’ |
| PRON–ADJ                         | -ād-                 | qualitative characterization | cit-s ‘other’ – cit-ād-s ‘different, of another kind’  
sav-s ‘one’s, own’ – sav-ād-s ‘strange, unusual’  
dāž-s ‘some’ – dāž-ād-s ‘various, diverse’  
vis-s ‘all, everything’ – vis-ād-s ‘of all kinds’ |
| V–ADJ                            | -an-                 | attributes following from the action denoted by the base verb | drup-t ‘to crumble’ – drup-an-s ‘crumbly’  
alk-t ‘to crave’ – alk-an-s ‘voracious, insatiable’  
lig-t ‘lean, bend’ – lig-an-s ‘jaunty, springy, also unsteady’  
lōc-i-t ‘to fold, to bend (with object) – lōc-u PRS 1 SG – lōc-an-s ‘lithe, supple, pliable’ |
|                                  | -ig-                 | attributes following from the action denoted by the base verb | deg-t ‘to burn’ – dedz-īg-s ‘burning, ardent, fervent’  
der-ē-t ‘to suit, to fit’ – der-īg-s ‘valid, suitable’  
cer-ē-t ‘to hope’ – cer-īg-s ‘hopeful’  
tic-ē-t ‘to believe, to have faith’ – tic-īg-s ‘religious’  
pa-stāv-ē-t ‘to exist, also to last’ – pa-stāv-īg-s ‘constant, permanent’  
kait-ē-t ‘to harm’ – kait-īg-s ‘harmful’ |
Base word – derivative word class | Word-formation means | Derivational meaning | Examples
---|---|---|---
ADV–ADJ | -ēj- | place, quantity, kind, time, etc. | pretī ‘opposite, across’ – pret-ēj-s ‘opposite’
pāri ‘above, beyond, over’ – pār-ēj-ais ‘the rest’
kapā ‘jointly, together’ – kop-ēj-s ‘common, joint, also total’
div-kārt ‘twofold, two times’ – div-kārt-ēj-s ‘two-time, double’
vis-pār ‘in general’ – vis-pār-ēj-s ‘general, universal’
vien-reiz ‘once’ – vienreiz-ēj-s ‘single, happening only once’
var-būt ‘possibly, maybe’ – var-būt-ēj-s ‘possible, prospective’
vakar ‘yesterday’ – vakar-ēj-s ‘yesterday’s’
šo-dien ‘today’ – šo-dien-ēj-s ‘today’s’

-īg- | type, permanent, constant properties | pretī ‘opposite, across’ – pret-īg-s ‘disgusting’
vien-alga ‘all the same, of no consequence’ – vienaldz-īg-s ‘indifferent’
vis-pār ‘in general’ – vis-pār-īg-s ‘overall, general, broad’
vien-reiz ‘once’ – vienreiz-īg-s ‘unique, singular’
vien-mēr ‘always, invariably’ – vienmēr-īg-s ‘even, uniform, steady’
daudz-kārt ‘many times, repeatedly’ – daudz-kārt-īg-s ‘multiple, also manyfold’

**Table 2.13** Main adjective formation types in Latvian: suffixation

**Prefixation**
Prefixal adjective formation in Latvian is basically either attenuative or augmentative; it involves three prefixes – *ie-, pa-, and pār-* . The negative *ne-* is semantically different in that it generally indicates the lack of a property or an attribute. In some cases, however, it can be attenuative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ADJ–ADJ | ie- | attenuation | zil-š ‘blue’ – ie-zil-š ‘somewhat blue’
zal-š ‘green’ – ie-zal-š ‘somewhat green’
sārt-en-s ‘pinkish’ – ie-sārt-en-s ‘somewhat pinkish’
brūn-gan-s ‘brownish’ – ie-brūn-gan-s ‘somewhat brownish’
sāļ-š ‘salty’ – ie-sāļ-š ‘slightly salty’
apal-š ‘round’ – ie-apal-š ‘somewhat rounded, curved’
gar-en-s ‘elongated’ – ie-gar-en-s ‘slightly elongated’
| pa- | attenuation (depending on context, also ‘to a rather high degree’) | jaun-s ‘new, young’ – pa-jaun-s ‘relatively / fairly new, young’
tukš-s ‘empty’ – pa-tukš-s ‘relatively / fairly empty’
bāl-s ‘pale’ – pa-bāl-s ‘somewhat pale’
sāld-s ‘sweet’ – pa-sāld-s ‘relatively sweet’
sald-en-s ‘sweetish’ – pa-sald-en-s ‘rather sweetish’
daudz-īg-s ‘friendly’ – pa-daudz-īg-s ‘rather friendly’
smilš-ain-s ‘sandy’ – pa-smilšain-s ‘rather sandy’ |
Table 2.14 Main adjective formation types in Latvian: prefixes

### Compounds

The formation of compound adjectives in Latvian is represented, for the most part, by semantically exocentric determinative right-headed compounds based on phrases (i.e., subordinate structures). There is, however, one determinative left-headed compound formation type with the noun *puse* ‘half’, i.e., *pus-*, as the first component, and two copulative compound formation types.

The description of compound adjectives in this grammar is based on the types (and subtypes) of syntactic structures underlying compound formation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **ADJ–ADJ**                      | **pār-**             | ‘extreme, excessive’, also generalized properties | piln-s ‘full’ – pār-piln-s ‘filled, overfull, overcrowded’
gudr-s ‘wise, smart’ – pār-gudr-s ‘smart-alecky’
bagāt-s ‘rich’ – pār-bagāt-s ‘abundant’
dab-isk-s ‘natural’ – pār-dab-isk-s ‘supernatural’
cilvēc-īg-s ‘humane’ – pār-cilvēc-īg-s ‘superhuman, extraordinary’ |
| **ne-**                           | lack of a property or an attribute | lab-s ‘good’ – ne-lab-s ‘bad’
glīt-s ‘pretty’ – ne-glīt-s ‘ugly’
spodr-s ‘clean, shiny’ – ne-spodr-s ‘dull, lusterless’
līdz-en-s ‘even’ – ne-līdz-en-s ‘uneven’
uz-man-īg-s ‘attentive’ – ne-uz-man-īg-s ‘inattentive’ |
| **attenuation**                   | tāl-s ‘distant’ – ne-tāl-s ‘nearby’
liel-s ‘large’ – ne-liel-s ‘rather small’
sen-s ‘old, ancient’ – ne-sen-s ‘recent’ |

**Table 2.14** Main adjective formation types in Latvian: prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **N + ADJ – ADJ**                 |                      | specifying a property by relating it to an object | *priek-a piln-s* ‘full of joy’ – *priek-piln-s* ‘joyful’
*dom-u piln-s* ‘full of thoughts’ – *dom-piln-s* ‘pensive’
*zīn-u kār-īg-s* ‘eager for information’ –
*zīn-kār-īg-s* ‘curious’
mant-as kār-s ‘greedy for wealth’ –
mant-kār-s ‘acquisitive, money-oriented’
*ugum-s droš-s* ‘safe against fire’ –
*ugum-(s)-droš-s* ‘fireproof’
karst-um-a iz-tur-īg-s ‘resistant against heat’ –
kart-um-iz-tur-īg-s ‘heat-resistant’ |
| 1) **N ģen + ADJ – ADJ**          |                      | specifying a property by setting a standard of comparison (esp. when naming particular shades of color) | *rož-u sārt-s* ‘pink as a rose’ – *rož-sārt-s* ‘rose-pink’
*jūr-as zāl-s* ‘blue as the sea’ – *jūr-(as)-zāl-s* ‘sea-blue’
*sūn-u zaļ-š* ‘green as moss’ – *sūn-(u)-zaļ-š, also sūnzaļš* ‘moss-green’
snieg-a balts-s ‘white as snow’ – *snieg-balt-s* ‘snow-white’
led-us aukst-s ‘cold as ice’ – *led-(us)-aukst-s* ‘ice-cold’
med-us sals-s ‘sweet as honey’ –
med-(us)-sals-s ‘honey-sweet’
pērkon-skaļ-š ‘loudest as thunder’ –
pērkon-skal-š ‘thunderous’ |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2) N$_{INS}$ + ADJ – ADJ</td>
<td>intensifying a property, sometimes through repetition</td>
<td>brīn-um-u <strong>jauk-s</strong> ‘so lovely as to cause wonder’ – brīn-um-jauk-s ‘wonderfully lovely’ liel-um-u <strong>liels</strong> ‘of great size’ – liel-um-liel-s ‘very large’ vec-um-u <strong>vec-s</strong> ‘of great age’ – vec-um-vec-s ‘very old’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) N + ADJ$^\text{GEN}$ – ADJ</td>
<td>compounds headed by the word <em>puse</em> ‘half’ – reducing the force of a property, indicating its limitedness; source constructions of the type ‘puse ADJ$^\text{GEN}$’ are now obsolete</td>
<td>‘<strong>pus-s</strong> tumš-a – pus-tumš-s ‘semi-dark’ pus-gatav-s ‘half-done, half-ready’ pus-jēl-s ‘half-raw, underdone’ pus-sald-s ‘semi-sweet’ pus-gar-s ‘medium-length, half-length’ pus-tukš-s ‘half-empty’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ, ADJ – ADJ</td>
<td>two different properties of a thing, living being, etc.</td>
<td>melns, balts ‘black, white’ – meln-balt-s ‘black-and-white’ sarkan-s, balts, sarkan-s ‘red, white, red’ – sarkan-balt-sarkans ‘red-white-red (a reference to the colors of the Latvian flag)’ zil-s, zaļ-š ‘blue, green’ – zil-zaļ-š ‘blue-green’ zil-s, raib-s ‘blue, speckled’ – zil-raib-s ‘speckled blue’ kurl-s, mēm-s ‘deaf, mute’ – kurl-mēm-s ‘deaf-mute’ liel-s, bagāt-s ‘big / great, rich’ – liel-bagāt-s ‘very rich, great and rich’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Intensifying a property through repetition**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tāl-s, tāl-s ‘distant, distant’ – tāl-tāl-s ‘very distant’ sen-s, sen-s ‘old, old’ – sen-sen-s ‘very old’ gar-š, gar-š ‘long, long’ – gar-gar-š ‘very long’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.15 Main compound adjective formation types in Latvian
2.3 NUMERALS

Numerals form a class of words expressing the number or order of objects (viena māja ‘one house’, divas mājas ‘two houses’, trīs mājas ‘three houses’, pirmā māja ‘the first house’, otrā māja ‘the second house’, trešā māja ‘the third house’) (Skujiņa 2007: 363).

As a word class, numerals are peculiar in that they consist of a relatively small repertoire of lexemes that can be combined in an unlimited number of ways to denote any quantity or position in a sequence.

In writing, numerals can be represented as words or figures depending on the type of text and subject matter, for example, desmit ‘ten’ and 10, piecdesmit divi ‘fifty-two’ and 52.


Although ordinal numerals typically take the definite ending in modern Latvian, indefinite ordinals are sometimes still used in colloquial speech, dialects, and literary prose, for example:

(2.3.1) otr-s ‘second’, treš-s ‘third’, ceturt-s ‘fourth’, piekta-s ‘fifth’
Ekonomikas ministrija atradusi otr-u
person.ACC.M job.DAT.M ministry.NOM.F find.PTCP.NOM.F second-ACC.M
cilvēku darbam aģentūras valdē.
Economics.GEN.F find.VERB.F agency.GEN.F board_of_directors.LOC.F
‘The Ministry of Economics has found a second person to work on the agency’s board of directors.’ (www.lsm.lv)

Syntactically, numerals can function as attributes (2.3.2), (rarely) nominal predicates (2.3.3), subjects (2.3.4), and objects (2.3.5):

(2.3.2) a. Aktrise apprecējusies piecas dienas
actress.NOM.F marry.PTCP.NOM.F five.NOM.PL.F day.NOM.PL.F
pirms pirmizrādes.
before premiers.GEN.F
‘The actress got married five days before the premiere.’ (Latvijas Avīze)
b. *Pirms četriem gadiem bobsleja* before *four.DAT.PL.M year.DAT.PL.M bobsleigh.GEN.M* pilots guleja gulta ar smadzenu pilot.NOM.M sleep.PST.3 bed.LOC.F with brain.GEN.PL.F satricinajumu.

concussion.INS.M

‘Four years ago the bobsleigh pilot lay in bed with a concussion.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(2.3.3) a. *Skatitāju bija vesels tūkstotis.* spectator.GEN.PL.M be.COP.PST.3 whole.NOM.M thousand.NOM.M

‘The number of spectators amounted to a full thousand.’

b. *Grāmatas ir četras.* book.NOM.PL.F be.COP.PRS.3 *four.NOM.PL.F*

‘The books are four in number.’

(2.3.4) *Kur divi labi, tur trešais* where *two.NOM.PL.M good.NOM.PL.M there third.NOM.M lieks?* unnecessary.NOM.M

‘Where two are fine, the third one is the odd one out?’ (www.tvnet.lv)

(2.3.5) *Skatitāju skaitis nepārsniedz divus* spectator.GEN.PL.M number.NOM.M not_exceed.PRS.3 *two.ACC.PL.M tūkstošus.* thousand.ACC.PL.M

‘The number of spectators does not exceed two thousand.’ (www.sportacentrs.lv)

While, in general, attributive numerals precede the word they modify (2.3.6), they can also be used postpositively when expressing approximate values (2.3.7):

(2.3.6) a. *sešas dienas* six.NOM.PL.F day.NOM.PL.F

‘six days’

b. *vienpadsmit mēnešu* eleven month.GEN.PL.M

‘eleven months’

c. *simt gadu* hundred year.GEN.PL.M

‘a hundred years’

(2.3.7) a. *Puika, gadus četras vecs, bradā* boy.NOM.M year.ACC.PL.M four.ACC.PL.M old.NOM.M wade.PRS.3 gar krastu.

along shore.ACC.M

‘A boy, some four years of age, is wading along the shore.’ (G. Janovskis)
The numerals desmits ‘ten’ (DECL), desmit ‘ten’ (IDECL), simts ‘a hundred’ (DECL), simt ‘a hundred’ (IDECL), tūkstotis ‘a thousand’ (DECL), tūkstoš ‘a thousand’ (IDECL), miljons ‘a million’, miljards ‘a billion’, as well as 11–19, traditionally take a noun in the genitive case, for example:

(2.3.9) a. desmit dienu
ten day.GEN.PL.F
‘ten days’

b. simts rožu
hundred.NOM.M rose.GEN.PL.F
‘a hundred roses’

c. tūkstotis skolu
thousand.NOM.F school.GEN.PL.F
‘a thousand schools’

d. miljons gadiu
million.NOM.M year.GEN.PL.M
‘a million years’
(2.3.10) a. Režisors jau prezentējis jaunās sezonas repertuāru, kurā būs 10 jauniestudējumu.

The director has already announced the repertoire for the upcoming season, which will include 10 new productions. (Diena)

b. Tur bija 500 mēru no visām Eiropas Savienības valstīm.

There were 500 mayors there from all of the countries of the European Union. (Privātā Dzīve)

c. Valstī ir gandrīz 10 000 sociālā riska ģimeņu, kurās aug 18 000 bērnu.

There are almost 10 000 families at social risk in the country, bringing up 18 000 children. (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

In modern Latvian, however, these numerals also occur with nouns in the nominative, which seems to compete with the more classic use of the genitive in written texts as well as colloquial speech (see also Section 2.1.4), for example:

(2.3.11) a. [Drošības padomē] darbojas 10 valstis.

‘There are ten countries [on the Security Council].’ (Diena)

b. Lai privātīpašnieki, kuriem Dienvidu tilta teritorijā pieder aptuveni 30 hektāri zemes, zinātu “spēles noteikumus”.

‘So that the private owners who own approximately 30 hectares of land at the site of the Southern Bridge know the rules of the game.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)
Numerals used attributively can be expected to agree in gender, number, and case with the noun they modify, just like adjectives do. However, the nominal grammatical categories of gender, number, and case do not apply to all numerals to the same extent. Ordinal numerals always display numeral–noun agreement for gender, number, and case, for example:

(2.3.12) *ceturt-ais gad-s* ‘the fourth year’ (NOM M), *ceturt-ajam gad-am* (DAT M), *ceturt-ā klas-e* ‘the fourth grade’ (NOM F), *ceturt-ajā klas-ē* (LOC F)

By contrast, cardinal numerals alongside regular numeral–noun agreement also show some asymmetry of grammatical forms, which manifests itself in several ways in modern Latvian.

1) Some cardinal numerals are indeclinable, i.e., they do not inflect for any of these features, for example:

(2.3.13) a. 11–19
   *vienpadsmit* ‘eleven’, *divpadsmit* ‘twelve’, *piecpadsmit* ‘fifteen’,

b. 10–90
   *desmit* ‘ten’, *divdesmit* ‘twenty’, *piecdesmit* ‘fifty’,

c. 100–900
   *simt* ‘one hundred’, *divsimt* ‘two hundred’, *piesimt* ‘five hundred’,

d. 1000–9000
   *tūkstoš* ‘one thousand’, *divtūkstoš* ‘two thousand’, *piectūkstoš* ‘five thousand’

A few numerals have both a declinable and an indeclinable variant:

(2.3.14) *trīs* ‘three’
   *desmits – desmit* ‘ten’
   *simts – simt* ‘a hundred’
   *tūkstotis – tūkstoš* ‘a thousand’

2) Some cardinal numerals take only masculine (*desmits* ‘ten’, *simts* ‘a hundred’, *tūkstotis* ‘a thousand’, *miljons* ‘a million’, *miljards* ‘a billion’) or only feminine endings (*nulle* ‘zero’). The numeral *trīs* ‘three’, while having both gender paradigms (see Table 2.13) can also be gender-neutral, i.e., it can be used as an indeclinable word (*trīs brāli* ‘three brothers’, *trīs māsas* ‘three sisters’).

3) In terms of number, cardinal numerals subdivide into singular-only (*viens* ‘one’, *divdesmit viens* ‘twenty-one’, but *vieni prieki* ‘nothing but delights’) and plural-only words (2–9 and all corresponding phrasal numerals).

Cardinal and ordinal numerals follow different patterns of inflection.

1) **Cardinal numerals**, much like indefinite adjectives, mirror the endings of declension 1 (1–9, *desmits* ‘ten’, *simts* ‘a hundred’, *miljons* ‘a million’, *miljards* ‘a billion’) and declension 2 nouns (*tūkstotis* ‘a thousand’) for masculine gender and declension 4 (1–9) and declension 5 (*nulle* ‘zero’) nouns for feminine gender (see Table 2.3). The numeral *trīs* ‘three’ exhibits a distinct inflectional pattern:
2) **Ordinal numerals** follow the inflectional pattern of definite adjectives (see Section 2.2.1 and Table 2.11 above). In terms of morphological structure, a distinction is made between simplex, compound, and phrasal numerals.

1) Simplex numerals consist of a root or a root and an ending, for example:

(2.3.15) a. desmit ‘ten’ (IDECL), simt ‘a hundred’ (IDECL), ķūkstoš ‘a thousand’ (IDECL)
   b. vien-s ‘one’ (M NOM SG), vien-a (F NOM SG), 
      div-i ‘two’ (M NOM PL), div-as (F NOM PL), četr-i ‘four’ (M NOM PL), 
      četr-as (F NOM PL), desmit-s ‘ten’ (DECL), simt-s ‘a hundred’ (DECL).

2) Compound numerals are composed of more than one root, for example:

(2.3.16) a. 11–19 (vienpadsmit ‘eleven’ < vienu pa desmit ‘one by ten’, divpadsmit ‘twelve’ < divi pa desmit ‘two by ten’, piecpadsmit ‘fifteen’ < pieci pa desmit ‘five by ten’)
   b. 20–90 (divdesmit ‘twenty’, trīsdesmit ‘thirty’, piecdesmit ‘fifty’)
   c. 200–900 (divsimt ‘two hundred’, trīssimt ‘three hundred’, piecsimt ‘five hundred’)
   d. 2000–9000 (divtūkstoš ‘two thousand’, trīstūkstoš ‘three thousand’, 
      piectūkstoš ‘five thousand’)

3) Phrasal numerals are formed by combining several simplex or compound numerals to denote a single concept – a number or quantity, for example:

(2.3.17) a. 21–99
   divdesmit viens ‘twenty-one’, trīsdesmit deviņi ‘thirty-nine’,
   deviņdesmit divi ‘ninety-two’

   b. 101–999
   simtu viens ‘one hundred one’, divsimt divdesmit astoņi ‘two hundred twenty-eight’, deviņsimt piecdesmit trīs ‘nine hundred fifty-three’

   c. 1001–9999
   tūkstoš viens ‘one thousand one’, divtūkstoš trīsdesmit pieci ‘two thousand, three hundred forty-five’,
   astoņtūkstoš piecsimt divdesmit pieci ‘eight thousand, five hundred twenty-five’

---

Table 2.16 Declension of the numeral *trīs* ‘three’ (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 66)
Phrasal numerals are also used to express simple (2.3.18) and decimal fractions (2.3.19):

(2.3.18) a. viena  
\( \text{ceturtdaļa} \)  
one.NOM.F quarter.NOM.F  
‘one-quarter’  
b. divas  
\( \text{piektdaļas} \)  
two.NOM.PL.F fifth.NOM.PL.F  
‘two-fifths’  
c. viens  
\( \text{vesels un trīs ceturtdaļas} \)  
one.NOM.M whole.NOM.M and three quarter.NOM.PL.F  
‘one and three-quarters’  

(2.3.19) a. četri,  
\( \text{komats, pieci} \)  
four.NOM.PL.M comma.NOM.M five.NOM.PL.M  
‘four point five’  
b. desmit,  
\( \text{komats, divi} \)  
ten.NOM.M comma.NOM.M two.NOM.PL.M  
‘ten point two’  

Some numerals have parallel compound and phrasal implementations:

(2.3.20) a. divdesmit  
\( \text{divi desmiti} \)  
twenty two.NOM.PL.M ten.NOM.PL.M  
‘twenty’  
b. divsimt  
\( \text{divi simti} \)  
two_hundred two.NOM.PL.M hundred.NOM.PL.M  
‘two hundred’  
c. piectūkstoš  
\( \text{pieci tūkstoši} \)  
five_thousand five.NOM.PL.M thousand.NOM.PL.M  
‘five thousand’
2.4 PRONOUNS

2.4.0 Introductory remarks

The class of pronouns comprises words that point to living beings, things, and properties without directly naming them and usually substitute for nouns, adjectives, and numerals in a sentence (Skujiņa 2007: 451).

Similarly to nouns, adjectives, and numerals, a pronoun can function as the subject of a sentence (2.4.1a), an attribute (2.4.1b), an object (2.4.1c), or a nominal predicate (2.4.1d):

(2.4.1) a. Viņš  gribēja  būt  tautas  milēts
he.NOM want.PST.3 be.INF people.GEN.F love.PTCP.NOM.M
dzejnieks.
poet.NOM.M
‘He wanted to be a poet beloved by the people.’ (Jaunā Gaita)
b. Visi  mani  dokumenti  bija
all.NOM.PL.M my.GEN.PL.M document.NOM.PL.M be.PST.3
kārtībā.
order.LOC.F
‘All my documents were in order.’ (A. Eglītis)
c. Pa  laikam  Elzai  tos  [fotogrāfiju
now_and_then Elza.DAT.F they.ACC.F [photo
 albūmus]  patīk  pāršķirstīt.
album] like.PRS.3 browse_through.INF
‘Elsa likes browsing through them [photo albums] every now and then.’
(A. Žīgure)
d. Sikstas  likstas  nav
tough.NOM.PL.F hardship.NOM.PL.F not_be.COP.PRS.3
nekas.
nothing.NOM
‘Tough hardships are nothing.’ (www.lsm.lv)

The number of pronouns in Latvian is fixed, that is to say, no new pronouns enter the language either through word formation or borrowing. Nevertheless, these are among the most frequently used words in the language, because, in any text, they help to ensure its semantic wholeness and links with other texts, while also implementing the language economy principle by eliminating the need to repeat what has already been stated or is known and pointing to further information.

Based on their meanings and functions, Latvian pronouns are usually grouped as follows (Paegle 2003: 73–75; Kalnača 2013a: 67):

1) personal pronouns

(2.4.2) es ‘I’, tu ‘you (SG)’, mēs ‘we’, jūs ‘you (PL)’, viņš ‘he’, viņa ‘she’, viņi ‘they (M)’, viņas (F)
2) the reflexive pronoun

(2.4.3) sevis ‘(-)self’

3) possessive pronouns

(2.4.4) mans ‘my (M SG)’, mana (F SG), mani (M PL), manas (F PL), tavs ‘your (SG) (M SG)’, tava (F SG), tavi (M PL), tavas (F PL), savs ‘own, reflexive possessive meaning (M SG)’, sava (F SG), savi (M PL), savas (F PL)

4) demonstrative pronouns

(2.4.5) tas ‘that, it (M)’, tā (F), tie ‘those, they (M)’, tās (F), tāds ‘such, that kind (M SG)’, tāda (F SG), tādi (M PL), tādas (F PL), šīs ‘this (M)’, šī (F), šie ‘these (M)’, šīs (F), šāds ‘such, this kind (M SG)’, šāda (F SG), šādi (M PL), šādas (F PL), viņš ‘that (most distant) (M SG)’, viņa (F SG), viņi (M PL), viņas (F PL)

5) interrogative pronouns

(2.4.6) kas ‘who, what’, kurš ‘who, which (M SG)’, kura (F SG), kuri (M PL), kuras (F PL), kāds ‘what, what kind (M SG)’, kāda (F SG), kādi (M PL), kādas (F PL)

6) relative pronouns

(2.4.7) kas ‘who, what, which, that’, kurš ‘who, which, that (M SG)’, kura (F SG), kuri (M PL), kuras (F PL), kāds ‘which, what kind (M SG)’, kāda (F SG), kādi (M PL), kādas (F PL)

7) indefinite pronouns

(2.4.8) kas ‘something, somebody’, kurš ‘who, which, whoever, whichever (M SG)’, kura (F SG), kuri (M PL), kuras (F PL), kāds ‘some, some kind, someone (M, SG)’, kāda (F SG), kādi (M PL), kādas (F PL), dažs ‘some, some kind of (M SG)’, daža (F SG), daži (M PL), dažas (F PL), cita ‘other, someone else (M SG)’, cita (F SG), citas (F PL), kaut kas ‘something’, kaut kāds ‘some, some kind of (M SG)’, kaut kāda (F SG), kaut kādi (M PL), kaut kādas (F PL), kaut kurš ‘some, somebody (M SG)’, kaut kura (F SG), kaut kuri (M PL), kaut kuras (F PL), dažs labs ‘some, someone, a certain one (M SG)’, daža laba (F SG), viens otrs ‘someone, an occasional one (M SG)’, viena otra (F SG), diez(in) kas (diez(in), nez(in) and sasin when combined with kas, kurš, kāds reinforce the meaning of indefiniteness, adding different shades of meaning depending on the context), diez(in) kurš, diez(in) kura, diez(in) kuri, diez(in) kuras, diez(in) kāds, diez(in) kāda, diez(in) kādi, diez(in) kādas, nez(in) kas, nez(in) kurš, nez(in) kura, nez(in) kuri, nez(in) kuras, nez(in) kāds, nez(in) kāda, nez(in) kādi, nez(in) kādas, sasin kas, sasin kurš, sasin kura, sasin kuri, sasin kuras, sasin kāds, sasin kāda, sasin kādi, sasin kādas, jebkas ‘anything’, jebkurš ‘any, anyone (M SG)’, jebkura (F SG), jebkuri (M PL), jebkuras (F PL), jebkāds ‘any, any kind of (M SG)’, jebkāda (F SG), jebkādi (M PL), jebkādas (F PL)
8) definite pronouns

(2.4.9) *abi* ‘both (M)’, *abas* (F), *viss* ‘all, everything, everybody (M SG)’, *visa* (F SG), *visi* (M PL), *visas* (F PL), *pats* ‘reflexive emphatic meaning (M SG)’, *pati* (F SG), *paši* (M PL), *pašas* (F PL), *katrs* ‘every, each, everyone (M SG)’, *katra* (F SG), *katri* (M PL), *katras* (F PL), *ikkatrs* ‘every, each, everyone, all (M SG)’, *ikkatra* (F SG), *ikviens* ‘every, each, everyone, all (M SG)’, *ikkura* (F SG), *ikkurš* ‘every, everyone (M SG)’, *ikkura* (F SG)

9) negative pronouns

(2.4.10) *nekas* ‘nothing’, *nekāds* ‘no, none, not any kind (M SG)’, *nekāda* (F SG), *nekādi* (M PL), *nekādas* (F PL), *neviens* ‘no, nobody, no one (M SG)’, *neviena* (F SG)

Needless to say, the above classification should not be seen as absolute: one and the same pronoun can have different functions, depending on the context and communicative situation. Thus, personal, possessive, and reflexive pronouns, as well as personal and demonstrative pronouns, are partly bordering on one another in terms of their meanings and functions.

The pronouns *kas, kurš, kura, kuri, kuras, kāds, kāda, kādi, kādas*, depending on how they are used in a specific text, may belong to any of the following three groups: interrogative, relative, or indefinite pronouns (for more details see Section 2.4.5–2.4.7).

Semantically the pronoun *sevis* seems to fit in with the group of personal pronouns. However, due to its defective paradigm and functional distinctness of pointing back to the agent in a sentence (i.e., to an action which goes back to the agent), it is singled out into a separate group: the reflexive pronouns. Similar reflexive semantics is also expressed by the pronominal combinations *viens otru*, *viena otru*, *cits citu*, *cita citu* (for more details see Section 2.4.7) as well as the pronouns *pats, pati, paši, pašas* (see Section 2.4.8).

The pronouns *viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas* may act as either personal or demonstrative pronouns (for more details see Section 2.4.4). Admittedly though, the pronouns *viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas* only rarely function as demonstrative pronouns in contemporary Latvian. What can be observed, however, is functional parallelism between 3rd person pronouns and the demonstrative pronouns *tas, tā, tie, tās* (also, *šis, šī, šie, šās*) (see, e.g., Sections 2.4.1, 2.4.4).

The variety of uses to which Latvian pronouns lend themselves has been the topic of many discussions in Latvian linguistics (in detail see Paegle 2003: 73–76). As a result, several alternative classification principles have been suggested (Endzelins, Milenbachs 1907a, 1907b; Ahero et al. 1959: 503; Nītiņa 2001: 52–61). Nītiņa (2013b: 435–455) distinguishes between just three groups: 1) personal and demonstrative pronouns, 2) general pronouns, 3) indefinite pronouns.

The current grammar retains Paegle’s (2003) classification (see also Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 171), which consists of 9 groups, while also highlighting functional
similarities between and diversity within those groups. At the same time, one must agree with Bhat (2004) that functionally and morphosyntactically all pronouns can also be divided into two types: personal pronouns (1st and 2nd person pronouns related to the dialogue personae the author of the text and the addressee of the text or to the author or addressee of the text together with other persons) and pro-forms (all other pronouns, which can be used as substitutes for all kinds of nouns, adjectives, and numerals in a text: possessive, reflexive, interrogative, relative, indefinite, definite, and negative pronouns). In this sense, 3rd person pronouns are a transitional type as they include the functions of personal as well as demonstrative pronouns (pro-forms), which cannot always be neatly distinguished from one another in a language system. Bhat’s classification is consistent with the functions that, as in other languages, pronouns have in Latvian:

1) the exophoric (also deictic) function (Crystal 1997: 143), which is characteristic of direct communication and, although more typical of 1st and 2nd person pronouns, is also possible for 3rd person personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns;

2) the endophoric function where a pronoun points to antecedent (anaphora) or postcedent (cataphora) information within the same text (Crystal 1997: 136), which is typical of all pro-forms as well as 3rd person personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns.

Although overall, pronouns have the same grammatical categories as nominals – gender, number, case – the manner in which these categories manifest themselves is different:

1) the personal pronouns es, tu, mēs, jūs, the reflexive pronoun sevis, and the pronouns kas, kaut kas, diez(in) kas, nez(in) kas, sazin kas, jebkas, nekas lack the category of gender;

2) the pronoun, as a word class, does not have the vocative case; rather than directly naming things and properties, pronouns only point to them (for this reason the vocative is excluded from pronominal case paradigms);

3) the pronoun sevis (no nominative) and the pronouns kas, kaut kas, diez(in) kas, nez(in) kas, sazin kas, jebkas, nekas (no locative) have incomplete case paradigms;

4) the pronouns es, tu, mēs, jūs, sevis, tas, tā, šīs, šī historically have suppletive case forms with distinct roots in the nominative and the oblique cases (see pronoun declension paradigms Tables 2.16–2.18); the pronouns kas, kaut kas, diez(in) kas, nez(in) kas, sazin kas, jebkas, nekas display a similarly peculiar declension pattern (Table 2.19); the aforementioned pronouns cannot be segmented into morphemes both because of the suppletive forms and the fact that the root and ending have merged into a single entity in Latvian;

5) some pronouns exhibit an incomplete number paradigm; the pronouns es, tu are singular only, the pronouns mēs, jūs, abi, abas are plural only, while the pronouns sevis, kas, kaut kas, diez(in) kas, nez(in) kas, sazin kas, jebkas,
nekas lack this kind of juxtaposition altogether, as they can refer to both
singular and plural referents.

Another notion, which has, albeit limited, relevance to pronouns in Latvian, is
animacy. Personal pronouns and the possessive pronouns mans (mana, mani, manas)
and tavs (tava, tavi, tavas) only refer to humans, while all other pronouns can apply
to living beings as well as objects, i.e., their use is not restricted as to animacy. Unlike
other languages (for example, English and German) Latvian does not have dedicated
pronouns for inanimate objects: the pronoun tas (tā, tie, tās) is used for this purpose
(for more details see Section 2.7.4) when necessary.

In contrast to other declinable word classes, pronouns do not show evidence of
a well-developed word formation system. For the most part, pronouns in contemporary
Latvian are words consisting of either just a root (2.4.11a) or a root and an ending
(2.4.11b).

(2.4.11) a. es ‘I’, tu ‘you (SG)’, mēs ‘we’, jūs ‘you (PL)’, šī ‘this (F)’, tā ‘that (F)’
b. kur-š ‘who, which (interrogative pronoun) (M SG)’
   kād-s ‘what, what kind (interrogative pronoun) (M SG)’
   tād-s ‘such, that kind (M SG)’
   vis-s ‘all, everything, everybody (M SG)’
   pat-s ‘reflexive emphatic meaning (M SG)’
   man-s ‘my (M SG)’
   ab-i ‘both (M)’

There are a number of compounds with a particle in the leftmost part of the word:

(2.4.12) ik-katrs, ik-viens ‘every, each, everyone’
   jeb-kas ‘anything’, jeb-kāds ‘any, any kind of’
   ne-kas ‘nothing’, ne-viens ‘no one, nobody’

Some pronouns are combinations of a particle and a pronoun (2.4.13a) or a pronoun
and an adjective / numeral (2.4.13b):

(2.4.13) a. kaut kas ‘something’, dies(in) kas, nez(in) kas, sazin kas ‘something,
   somebody, who knows what, who knows who’ with dies(in), nez(in),
   and sazin reinforcing the meaning of indefiniteness and adding different
   shades of meaning depending on the context
b. dažs labs ‘some, someone, a certain one (M SG)’, viens otrs ‘someone,
   an occasional one (M SG)’

2.4.1 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns name a person who either takes part or is made reference to in
a speech situation (Skujiņa 2007: 295–296). Personal pronouns are closely linked to
dialogue and its personae. In a dialogue, the pronoun es ‘I’ refers to the author of
the text (2.4.14a), tu ‘you (SG)’ – to the addressee (2.4.14b), mēs ‘we’ – to the author
of the text together with other persons (2.4.14c), jūs ‘you (PL)’ – to the addressee of
the text together with other persons or to several addressees simultaneously (2.4.14d),
whereas the pronouns viņš ‘he’, viņa ‘she’, viņi ‘they (M)’, viņas ‘they (F)’ name persons who do not participate in the dialogue but are talked about (2.4.15a–d):

(2.4.14) a. *Es* varēju sēdēt mājās un lasit grāmatas.
   book.ACT.PL.F
   ‘I could sit at home and read books.’ (J. Joņevs)

b. Kāpēc *tu* smaiði?
   why *you.NOM.SG* smile.PRS.2SG
   ‘Why are you smiling?’ (C)

c. *Mēs* atgriežamies lidostā.
   we.NOM return.PRS.1PL airport.LOC.F
   ‘We are going back to the airport.’ (C)

d. Vai *jūs* saista kopīgas intereses?
   Q *you.NOM.PL* bind.PRS.3 shared.NOM.PL.F interest.NOM.PL.F
   ‘Are you bound together by shared interests?’ (C)

(2.4.15) a. *Viņa* uzvārdu es aizmirsu.
   *he.GEN* surname.ACC.M I.NOM forget.PST.1SG
   ‘I forgot his surname.’ (C)

b. Vēl tagad atceros *viņas* acu mirdzumu.
   still now remember.PRS.1SG *she.GEN* eye.GEN.PL.F radiance.ACC.F
   ‘Even now, I remember the radiance of her eyes.’ (C)

c. *Ar viņiem* sarunāties bijis ļoti viegli.
   with *they.INS.M* talk.INS be.PTCP.NOM.M very easy
   ‘Talking to them has been very easy.’ (C)

d. *Viņas* nejūtas vainīgas.
   *they.NOM.F* not_feel.PRS.3 guilty.NOM.PL.F
   ‘They (F) do not feel guilty.’ (C)

As can be seen from the examples above, pronouns correspond to the system of persons found in Latvian verbs: the pronouns *es* ‘I’, *tu* ‘you (SG)’, *mēs* ‘we’, *jūs* ‘you (PL)’ map onto 1st and 2nd person singular and plural, respectively, the pronouns viņš ‘he’, viņa ‘she’, viņi ‘they (M)’, viņas ‘they (F)’ onto 3rd person singular and plural.

The pronouns *es, tu, mēs, jūs* have the following declension paradigms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>SG</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td><em>es</em></td>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td><em>mēs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>manis</td>
<td>tevis</td>
<td>mūsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>tev</td>
<td>mums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>mani</td>
<td>tevi</td>
<td>mūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) mani</td>
<td>(ar) tevi</td>
<td>(ar) mums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>mani</td>
<td>tevi</td>
<td>mūsos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.17 Declension of the personal pronouns *es, tu, mēs, jūs*
The pronouns viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas inflect as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine (see Table 2.3).

Personal pronouns are closely linked to the concept of animacy. The pronouns es, tu, mēs, jūs always relate to actions carried out by humans (see examples (2.4.14), with the exception of personification (2.4.16)).

(2.4.16) a. Kur tu esi, vasara?

Where you.NOM.SG be.PRS.2SG summer.NOM.F

‘Where are you, summer?’ (www.twitter.com)

b. Maiga vai barga. Kāda tu mild.NOM.F or harsh.NOM.F which.NOM.F you.NOM.SG

būsi, ziema 2015?

be.FUT.2SG winter.NOM.F 2015

‘Mild or harsh. Which one will you be, winter of 2015?’ (Latvijas Avīze)

In Latvian, especially in colloquial speech, the meaning of the pronouns mēs ‘we’ and jūs ‘you (PL)’ is often further specified by naming one or several additional participants of the action in the instrumental case – the so-called inclusive plural pronouns function (Prauliņš 2012: 53).

(2.4.17) a. Mēs ar māsu [bērni bā] netikām

we.NOM with sister.INF.NOM.F [childhood] not.get.PST.1PL

ipašī lutinātas.

particularly pamper.PTCP.NOM.PL.F

‘My sister and I weren’t pampered too much [when we were kids].’

(www.maminuklubs.lv)

b. Vai jūs ar sievu apspriežat viens Q you.NOM.PL with wife.INF.NOM.F discuss.PRS.2PL one.NOM.M

otra profesionālo darbību?

other.GEN.M professional.ACC.F activity.ACC.F

‘Do you and your wife discuss each other’s professional activities?’

(www.apollo.lv)

c. Uz pastāvīgu dzīvi šeit [Talsos]

for permanent.ACC.F life.ACC.F here [in Talsi]

mēs ar viru un berniem

we.NOM with husband.INF.M and child.INF.PL.M

pārcēlāmies pirms diviem gadiem.

move.PST.1PL before two.DAT.PL.M year.DAT.PL.M

‘My husband, children, and I moved to live here [in Talsi] two years ago.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

In colloquial speech, the pronouns mēs ‘we’ and jūs ‘you (PL)’ are sometimes used to refer to a person together with that person’s pet, usually a dog:

(2.4.18) a. Kādu dienu mēs ar suni pastāgājāmies.

some.ACC.F day.ACC.F we.PL with dog.INF.M walk.PST.1PL

‘One day I went for a walk with the dog.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
b. Cik ilgi jūs staigājat ar suni pa āru?

‘How long do you walk outdoors with your dog?’ (www.draugiem.lv)

In Standard Latvian, the 3rd person pronouns viņš ‘he’, viņa ‘she’, viņi ‘they (M)’, viņas ‘they (F)’ only apply to humans (again, with the exception of personification) (see examples (2.4.15)). When referring to animals (2.4.19) or inanimate objects (2.4.20) the (demonstrative) pronouns tas ‘that, it (M)’, tā (F), tie ‘those, they (M)’, tās (F) are expected to be used.

(2.4.19) a. Pundurcūciņu dzīvnieku patversmē nogādāja no kāda dzīvokļa Rīgā.

‘The miniature pig was brought to the animal shelter from some apartment in Rīga. The previous owners had bought it on impulse.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. Cilvēki dzīvniekus bieži iegādājas, neapzinoties, ka par tiem būs jārūpējas.

‘People often buy animals without realizing that they will have to take care of them.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(2.4.20) a. Šīm fotogrāfijām ir lieliska kvalitāte, jo tās nav jāpalielina.

‘These photographs are of excellent quality, because they don’t need to be enlarged.’ (C)

b. Šo mežu bioloģisko daudzveidību ir grūtāk novērtēt.

‘The biological diversity of these forests is more difficult to assess. There aren’t many rare species in them which are easily observed.’ (C)

However, in colloquial speech and not infrequently also in the press (especially on Internet news sites) the pronouns viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas are used to refer to animals (2.4.21) and inanimate objects (2.4.22), which is not desirable in Standard Latvian:
(2.4.21) a. Alnis tuvojas apmeklētājiem, kaut arī kopēja dzīvnieku vēl ne reizi nav saukusi. "Viņš dzird, ka runā,” kopēja apstiprina. 

(2.4.21) b. Trusim pašam jāļauj izvēlēties, kurā būra stūri viņš gulēs. 

(2.4.21) c. Nesper sunītim, viņam sāp. 

(2.4.22) a. Manam mazulim niez smaganas. 

(2.4.22) b. Mans dators ļoti rūc. 

In contrast to the pronouns viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas the use of the pronouns tas, tā, tie, tās is not restricted with respect to animacy – these are applied to living beings (2.4.23a) and objects (2.4.24) alike, irrespective of whether the referent is a human being (2.4.23a) or an animal (2.4.23b).

(2.4.23) a. Kā tikt galā ar tiem, how get.inf end.loc.m with they.ins.m

(2.4.23) b. Savvaļā šinšillas dzīvo apmēram desmit gadus, but captivity.loc.f it.gen.pl.f life.gen.f length.nom.m

In contrast to the pronouns viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas the use of the pronouns tas, tā, tie, tās is not restricted with respect to animacy – these are applied to living beings (2.4.23a) and objects (2.4.24) alike, irrespective of whether the referent is a human being (2.4.23a) or an animal (2.4.23b).
Walking along the shore of the lake it seems like a sea.’ (N. Ikstena)

‘I will write up the report, in a couple of days it will be on your desk.’ (O. Zebris)

In phrases of politeness, when talking to a person who is older, has a higher standing, with whom one is in a formal relationship, or with whom one just is not on familiar terms, the pronoun jūs ‘you (PL)’ is used and the predicate is usually concordant, taking the 2nd person plural form (2.4.25). In letters, invitations, and other similar texts the pronoun is capitalized (2.4.26).

‘Māris, word has it that you (PL) know more about Mozart than about your contemporaries.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

‘How did you (PL) begin organizing the [architecture] competition?’ (Ir)

‘You (PL) will also be a welcome guest at our wedding!’ (www.prekos.lv)

’We would like to inform you (PL) that the library will be closed on the 8th and 9th of January.’ (www.twitter.com)
2.4.2 The reflexive pronoun

The reflexive pronoun *sevis* ‘(-)self’ is used to indicate that an action is directed back at the agent irrespective of the (grammatical) person of the latter (Skujiņa 2007: 53). The grammatical person is normally defined by contextual use. Importantly, other pronouns, personal pronouns included, are never used in this function in Latvian:

(2.4.27) a. 1SG

Barselonā [es] sāku noticēt sev kā
Barcelona.LOC.F [I] begin.PST.1SG believe.INF oneself.DAT as
artist.DAT.F

‘In Barcelona [I] began to believe in myself as an artist.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. 2SG

[Tu] Runā ar sevi!
you talk.IMP.2SG with oneself.INS

‘[You] Talk to yourself!’ (www.draugiem.lv)

c. 3SG

Gadās, ka cilvēks neieiklausās sevī.
occur.PRS.3 that person.NOM.M not_listen.PRS.3 oneself.LOC

‘Sometimes one doesn’t listen to oneself.’ (www.apollo.lv)

d. 1PL

Kad mēs sevi milam,
when we.NOM oneself.ACC love.PRS.1PL
mūsos veidojas enerģijas lādiņš.

‘When we love ourselves we get an energy boost.’ (www.delfi.lv)

e. 2PL

Vai jums ir bijis tā,
ka jūs sev nopērkat ko nederīgu?
that you.NOM.PL oneself.DAT buy.PRS.2PL what.ACC useless.ACC.M

‘Has it ever happened to you that you buy yourself something useless?’

(www.cosmo.lv)

f. 3PL

Vikingi sevi nedēvēja par vikingiem.
Viking.NOM.PL.M oneself.ACC not_call.PST.3 of Viking.DAT.PL.M

‘The Vikings didn’t call themselves Vikings.’ (Latvijas Avize)

Thus, in terms of syntax the reflexive pronoun *sevis* can act as a *subject controller*, as it always points to the agent in a sentence. Consequently, in sentences containing several agents the pronoun *sevis* may be ambiguous, in which case it can be disambiguated by introducing the definite pronoun *katrs* ‘every, each, everyone (M SG)’, *katra* (F SG), *katri* (M PL), *katras* (F PL) or by replacing the reflexive pronoun with a combination of the definite pronoun *katrs* (*katra, katri, katras*) and the possessive pronoun *savs* ‘own, reflexive possessive meaning (M SG)’ (*sava, savi, savas*):
The professor recommended that the students should buy [themselves] the course book (in the Latvian version it is unclear whether the reflexive pronoun sev refers to the professor or the students).

→

Profesors ieteica studentiem nopirkt katram sev/katram savu kursa mācību grāmatu.

‘The professor recommended that the students should each buy their own copy of the course book.’

The reflexive pronoun sevis has the following declension paradigm:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>GEN</th>
<th>DAT</th>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>INS</th>
<th>LOC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sevis</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>sevis</td>
<td>sev</td>
<td>sevi</td>
<td>(ar) sevi</td>
<td>sevī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.18 Declension of the pronoun sevis

Although it is more common to use the pronoun sevis for animate agents (humans (2.4.27) or animals (2.4.29)), sometimes it is also applied to inanimate objects (2.4.30):

(2.4.29) a. Kāpēc kaķi sev plēš aiz
why cat.NOM.PL.M oneself.DAT claw.PRS.3 behind
ear.GEN.F
‘Why do cats claw [themselves] at their ears?’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. Lieli suņi rada pret sevi cieņu.
large.NOM.PL.M dog.NOM.PL.M create.PRS.3 against oneself.ACC respect.ACC.F
‘Large dogs command respect [for themselves].’(www.tvnet.lv)

c. Lācene sevi nodevusi,
she-bear.NOM.F oneself.ACC give.away.PTCP.NOM.F
ekad tuvējās mājās mielojusies ar āboliem.
‘The she-bear gave herself away when she feasted on apples on a nearby property.’ (Diena)
(2.4.30) a. *Es skatos,*

\[
\text{how } \text{tree.NOM.M after tree.GEN.M tear.PRS.3 sev lapas nost. oneself.DAT leaf.ACC.PL.F off}
\]

'I am looking at how one tree after another tears its leaves off [itself].’ (C)

b. *Audzināšanas sistēma ietver sevī arī education.gen.f system.nom.f include.prs.3 oneself.loc also nacionālās audzināšanas komponentu. national.gen.f education.gen.f component.acc.m*

'The education system also includes [in itself] a national awareness component.’ (Jaunā gaita)

c. *Nepareizs sakodiens nes sev līdzi wrong.nom.m occlusion.nom.m bring.prs.3 oneself.dat along arī galvassāpes, stājas problēmas. also headache.acc.pl.f posture.gen.f problem.acc.pl.f*

'Malocclusion also brings about [with itself] headaches, posture problems.’ (Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)

### 2.4.3 Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns indicate possession by a certain person (Skujaņa 2007, 297). The possessive pronouns *mans* ‘my (M SG), *mana* (F SG), *mani* (M PL), *manas* (F PL) attribute possession to 1st person singular (2.4.31), the pronouns *tavs* ‘your (SG) (M SG), *tava* (F SG), *tavi* (M PL), *tavas* (F PL) – to 2nd person singular (2.4.32):

(2.4.31) a. *Jūs kaut ko zināt par manu you.nom.pl something.acc know.prs.2pl about my.acc.m tēvu? father.acc.m*

‘Do you know anything about my father?’ (C)

b. *Manā dzivē ir sācies jauns my.loc.f life.loc.f be.aux.prs.3 begin.ptcp.nom.m new.nom.m posms. stage.nom.m*

‘A new stage has begun in my life.’ (C)

c. *Blakussēdētāji izrādās mani person_sitting_next.nom.pl.m turn_out.prs.3 my.nom.pl.m tautieši. compatriot.nom.pl.m*

‘It turns out that the people sitting next to me are my compatriots.’ (P. Bankovskis)
(2.4.32) a. Cik tavam bērniam gadu?
   how_many your.DAT.SG.M child.DAT.M year.GEN.PL.M
   ‘How old is your child?’ (C)

b. Saņēmu tavu ziņu.
   receive.PST.1SG your.ACC.SG.F message.ACC.F
   ‘I’ve received your message.’ (C)

c. Ko stāsta tavas acis?
   what.ACC tell.PRS.3 your.NOM.PL.F eye.NOM.PL.F
   ‘What do your eyes say?’ (www.delfi.lv)

The pronouns savs ‘own, reflexive possessive meaning (M SG); sava (F SG), savi (M PL), savas (F PL) are not tied to any particular (grammatical) person. Depending on the specific contextual use, these pronouns can be used to attribute possession to any grammatical person and number. Therefore, just like the reflexive pronoun sevis the pronoun savs can be used in syntax as a subject controller pointing to the subject:

(2.4.33) a. 1 SG

Es lepojos ar savu skolu.
   I.NOM take_pride.PRS.1SG with own.INS.F school.INS.F
   ‘I take pride in my school.’ (C)

b. 2 SG

[Tu] Saudzē dabu un mīli savu zemi!
   you conserve.IMP.2SG nature.ACC.F and love.IMP.2SG own.ACC.F
country.ACC.F
   ‘[You] Conserve nature and love your country!’ (www.twitter.com)

c. 3 SG

Katram orķestrim ir savs skanējums.
   each.DAT.M orchestra.DAT.M be.COP.PRS.3 own.NOM.M sound.NOM.M
   ‘Each orchestra has its own [distinctive] sound.’ (C)

d. 1 PL

Mums ir sava māja.
   we.DAT be.PRS.3 own.NOM.F house.NOM.F
   ‘We have our own house.’ (www.delfi.lv)

2 PL

[Jūs] Izvēlieties savam monitoram
   [you (PL)] choose.IMP.2PL own.DAT.M monitor.DAT.M
   most_suitable.ACC.F resolution.ACC.F
   ‘[You] Choose the best resolution for your monitor.’ (C)
To avoid confusion, in sentences where possession can, in principle, be attributed to more than one person it is best to use the pronouns mans (mana, mani, manas) or tavs (tava, tavi, tavas), which apply to specific grammatical persons, instead of savs (sava, savi, savas), which does not:

(2.4.34) Vai tu man ļautu satikties ar savu māsu?
‘Would you let me meet ‘reflexive possessive meaning’ sister?’

→

Vai tu man ļautu satikties ar tavu māsu?
‘Would you let me meet your sister?’
/ Vai tu man ļautu satikties ar manu māsu?
‘Would you let me meet my sister?’

The possessive pronouns mans, mana, tavs, tava, savs, sava inflect like adjectives with an indefinite ending (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine, see Section 2.11, Table 2.3).

In Latvian, in order to indicate possession by someone corresponding to 3rd person singular and plural or 1st and 2nd person plural, one has to use the appropriate personal pronouns in the genitive: viņa ‘his’, viņas ‘her’, viņu ‘their’ (one form for both genders), mūsu ‘our’, jūsu ‘your (PL)’:

(2.4.35) a. Kopā ar muižnieku pie viņa

together with landlord.INS.M by he.GEN
kamīnu tumšajos vakaros
fireplace.GEN.M dark.LOC.PL.M evening.LOC.PL.M

tika izdzerta ne viena vien
get.AUX.PST.3 drink.PTCP.NOM.SG.F not one.NOM.F only

glāzite.
glass.NOM.F

‘Many a glass was drained together with the landlord by his fireplace during the dark winter evenings.’ (P. Bankovskis)

b. Pirmo reizi es redzu viņas [sievietes]

first.ACC.F time.ACC.F I.NOM see.PRS.1SG she.GEN [woman]

acis.
eye.ACC.PL.F

‘For the first time I see her [the woman’s] eyes.’ (I. Gaile)
c. Labklājības valsts bija viņu
welfare.gen.f state.nom.f be.pst.3sg they.gen.m
[iedzivotāju] atalgojums.
[inhabitants’] reward.nom.m
‘A welfare state was their [the inhabitants’] reward.’ (Ir)

d. Mūsu gadījumā vēsture neatkārtojas.
we.gen case.loc.m history.nom.f not_repeat.prs.3
‘In our case, history does not repeat itself.’ (O. Zebris)

e. Jums ir tiesības aizrādīt jebkuram, kurš jūsu tuvumā smēķē.
who.nom.m you.gen.pl proximity.loc.m smoke.prs.3
‘You have the right to reproach anyone who is smoking near you.’
(Latvijas Avīze)

As far as animacy is concerned, the pronouns mans (mana, mani, manas), tavs (tava, tavi, tavas) are always associated with an animate agent, namely, a human being (see examples (2.4.31) and (2.4.32)), as are the genitives of the personal pronouns used to indicate possession: mūsu, jūsu, viņa (viņas, viņu) (examples (2.4.35)). The pronoun savs (sava, savi, savas) relates to animate agents, i.e., human beings, if it is applied to 1st or 2nd person singular or plural (see examples (2.4.33a-b) and (2.4.33d-e)), otherwise, i.e., in the 3rd person, animacy depends on that of the antecedent, cf. (2.4.36a) with an animate agent and (2.4.36b) where the antecedent is an inanimate object:

(2.4.36) a. Viņš ar savu īpašumu rīkojas, kā grib.
he.nom with own.ins.m property.ins.m act.prs.3 as want.prs.3
‘He does as he pleases with his property.’ (C)

b. Valsts pārvalde savā darbībā
state.gen.f government.nom.f own.loc.f work.loc.f
ievēro cilvēktiesības.
respect.prs.3 human_rights.acc.pl.f
‘The authorities respect human rights in their work.’ (C)

Latvian also has standalone possessive pronouns derived by means of the suffix -ēj-:
manējais ‘mine (M SG)’ (manējā (F SG), manējie (M PL), manējās (F PL)), tavējais ‘yours (SG)’ (tavējā (F SG), tavējie (M PL), tavējās (F PL)), vinējais ‘theirs (M SG)’ (vinējā (F SG), vinējie (M PL), vinējās (F PL)), savējais ‘own, reflexive possessive meaning (M SG)’ (savējā (F SG), savējie (M PL), savējās (F PL)), mūsējais ‘ours (M SG)’ (mūsējā (F SG), mūsējie (M PL), mūsējās (F PL)), jūsējais ‘yours (PL) (M SG)’ (jūsējā (F SG), jūsējie (M PL), jūsējās (F PL)). These pronouns follow the inflection patterns of definite adjectives and agree with the antecedent, i.e., the word they stand for:

(2.4.37) a. Šis sporta veids
this.nom.m sport.gen.m manner.nom.m
nav manējais.
not_be.cop.prs.sg3 mine.nom.m
‘This sport is not for me.’ (www.delfi.lv)
b. *Tev patīk [kāds mākslas darbs] – paņem*

you.DAT.SG like.PRS.2SG [some art work] – take.IMP.PRS.2SG

*[un nopērc], tas [ir] tавējais!

[and buy] it.NOM.M [is] yours.NOM.SG.M

‘If you like [a work of art] – take it [and buy it], it [is] yours!’ (Diena)

c. *Sporta žurnālisti teiks, ka Miķelis ir vinējais.*

sport.GEN.M journalist.NOM.PL.M say.FUT.3PL that Miķelis.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.2 theirs.NOM.M

‘Sports journalists will say that Miķelis is one of them.’ (www.lsm.lv)

d. *Nepiederu nevienam stilam, man ir savējais.*

not_belong.PRS.1SG none.DAT.M style.DAT.M I.DAT be.COP.PRS.3 own.NOM.M

‘I don’t belong to any style, I have my own.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

e. *Atceros daudzu lielo izbrīnu – boxer nom.m from Latvia.gen.f he nom however [ir] mūsējais!*

remember.PRS.SG1 many.GEN.PL.M large.ACC.M surprise.ACC.M boxer.NOM.M from Latvia.GEN.F he.NOM however be ours.NOM.M

‘I remember how surprised many were – a boxer from Latvia? But he is one of ours!’ (Kas Jauns)

f. *Dvīnu māmiņas piedzīvojumi ar ratiem.

Kādi ir jūsējie?*

what_kind.NOM.PL.M be.COP.PRS.3 yours.NOM.PL.M

‘The pram adventures of a mother of twins. What are yours?’

(www.maminuklubs.lv)

In colloquial speech and written texts that incorporate some of the elements of colloquial speech (such as online comments, blog postings, etc.) these derivatives are often used in the function of the possessive pronouns *mans* (*mana, mani, manas*), *tavs* (*tava, tavi, tavas*), *savs* (*sava, savs, savi, savas*), and the personal pronouns *mūsu*, *jūsu*, *viņa*, *viņas*, *viņu*, i.e., as attributes showing grammatical agreement with the noun they modify or as substantivizations substituting for words like *vīrs* ‘husband’, *sieva* ‘wife’, *dzīvesbiedrs* ‘spouse (M)’, *dzīvesbiedre* ‘spouse (F)’, etc. This usage is considered non-standard.

(2.4.38) a. *Lombardā saka, ka tas nav nav*

that this.NOM.M not_be.COP.PRS.3

*manējais ritenis.*

mine.NOM.M bicycle.NOM.M

‘The pawnshop says that this is not my (‘mine’) bicycle.’ (www.lsm.lv)

(Correct: *mans ritenis ‘my bicycle’*)
b. **Tavējie**  

*bērni*  

vakaros  

nekur  

*yours.*  

child.  

evening.  

nowhere  

not_go.  

‘Don’t your (‘yours’) kids go anywhere in the evenings?’ (www.tvnet.lv)  

(Correct: *tavi bērni* ‘your kids’)

c. **Viņš**  

*pateica*  

savējo  

vārdu.  

he.  

say.  

own.  

word.  

‘He has said his (reflexive possessive meaning; ‘of his’) word.’ (C)  

(Correct: *savu vārdu* ‘his (reflexive possessive meaning) word’)

d. **Viņš**  

[deputāts]  

*tagad gaida, lai*  

tauta  

nostājas  

viņējā  

pusē.  

people.  

stand.  

theirs.  

side.  

‘Now he [the MP] expects that the people will be on his (‘of his’) side.’  

(Neatkarīgā Rita Avize)

(2.4.39)  

a. **Manējais**  

*labi gatavo,*  

nav  

slinks.  

mine.  

well prepare.  

not_be.  

lazy.  

‘Mine cooks well, isn’t lazy.’ (www.cosmo.lv)  

(Correct: *mans vīrs* ‘my husband’ / *dzīvesbiedrs* ‘my spouse’)

b. **Kad**  

*tavējā*  

ir  

augstprātīga.  

when  

*yours.*  

be.  

haughty.  

‘When yours begins to put on airs.’ (www.delfi.lv)  

(Correct: *tava sieva* ‘your wife’ / *dzīvesbiedre* ‘your spouse’)

The word class membership of these derivatives is still a matter of some controversy in Latvian grammar and they have been classified both as pronouns (Prauliņš 2012: 55–56; Vulāne 2013: 276) and adjectives (for more details and a discussion of the descriptive history and problems see Paegle 2003: 80–81). On the one hand, their semantics and functions correspond to those of possessive pronouns, which is confirmed by the fact that they are used in similar ways. On the other hand, the derivative type that they exhibit seems to fit in with the adjectival word formation system. In addition, the definite / indefinite ending opposition, although it is weaker in contemporary Latvian than it once was and rarely manifests itself in language use, is also, in principle, possible for these derivatives:

(2.4.40)  

*manējs* ‘mine (INDF)’  

–  

*manējais* (DEF)

*tavējs* ‘yours (SG) (INDF)’  

–  

*tavējais* (DEF)

* savējs* ‘own, reflexive possessive meaning (INDF)’  

–  

*savējais* (DEF)

*vinējs* ‘theirs (INDF)’  

–  

*vinējais* (DEF)

* mūsējs* ‘ours (INDF)’  

–  

*mūsējais* (DEF)

* jūsējs* ‘yours (PL) (INDF)’  

–  

*jūsējais* (DEF)
Admittedly though, there is no difference in meaning between the members of the opposition in contemporary Latvian and, on the whole, the definite ending prevails. The use of indefinite endings has become stylistically marked and is strongly associated with colloquial speech:

(2.4.41) a. Manējs [dēls] tik basiti dzenā.  
         mine.NOM.M [son] just basketball.DIM.ACC.M play.PRS.3  
         ‘Mine [son] just keeps on playing basketball.’ (www.musturs.lv)

b. Tavējs [vīrs] vēl slēpo?  
       yours.NOM.M [husband] still ski.PRS.3  
       ‘Does yours [husband] still ski?’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. Es domāju, ka visai drīz viņēji  
        I.NOM. think.PRS.1SG that very soon theirs.NOM.PL.M  
        aizmirsis par pussalu.  
        forgot.FUT.3 about peninsula.ACC.F  
        ‘I think that very soon they (‘theirs’) will forget about the peninsula.’  
        (Diena)

2.4.4 Demonstrative pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns point to specific living beings, objects, and features that are recognizable within a given speech situation or to information mentioned elsewhere in the text (Skujīna 2007: 258).

As has already been mentioned in the introductory remarks of this chapter, Latvian demonstrative pronouns have two functions:

1) an exophoric function, i.e., pointing to that which is nearby or farther away in space or time;
2) an endophoric function, i.e., pointing to antecedent (anaphora) or postcedent (cataphora) information within the same text; as a result of the increased availability of information and also due to written communication being nowadays widely used in all kinds of situations, the endophoric function of demonstrative pronouns is dominant in contemporary language.

The pronouns šis ‘this (M)’, šī (F), šie ‘these (M)’, šīs (F), šāds ‘such, this kind (M SG)’, šāda (F SG), šādi (M PL), šādas (F PL) point to spatially or temporally close objects or features (2.4.42), the pronouns tas ‘that, it (M)’, tā (F), tie ‘those, they (M)’, tās (F), tāds ‘such, that kind (M SG)’, tāda (F SG), tādi (M PL), tādas (F PL) point to objects that are farther away (2.4.43), while the pronouns viņš ‘that (M SG)’, viņa (F SG), viņi (M PL), viņas (F PL) point to very distant objects and features (2.4.44):

(2.4.42) a. Šai stāvā šis bija  
         this.LOC.M floor.LOC.M this.NOM.M be.COP.PST.3  
         vienīgais apdzīvota  
         only.NOM.M inhabit.PTCP.NOM.M apartment.NOM.M  
         ‘This was the only inhabited apartment on this floor.’ (J. Jonevš)
b. Pūces nebijā vienīgie šajā owl.NOM.PL.F not_be.COP.PST.3 only.NOM.PL.M this.LOC.F naktī dzirdamie putni. night.LOC.F hear.PTCP.NOM.PL.M bird.NOM.PL.M 'Owls weren’t the only birds that could be heard during this night.’ (C)

c. Šādas viesu telpas this_kind.NOM.PL.F guest.GEN.PL.M premises.NOM.PL.F patiks arī ciemiņiem! like.FUT.3 too visitor.DAT.PL.M 'Visitors will find guest premises like these agreeable, too.’ (Ievas Māja)

d. Šādās dienās, kad ārā ir tik this_kind.LOC.PL.F day.LOC.PL.F when outside be.COP.PRS.3 so auksts, jāsāk domāt par ziemu. cold.NOM.M DEB.START think.INF about winter.ACC.F 'On days like these when it is so cold outside one has to start thinking of winter’ (www.draugiem.lv)

(2.4.43) a. Man [dārzā] patīk skatīties un atcerēties, ka šis koks ir no brāļa, that this.NOM.M tree.NOM.M be.PRS.3 from brother.GEN.M bet tas – no draudzenes Siguldā. but that.NOM.M from friend.GEN.F Sigulda.LOC.F '[In the garden] I enjoy looking and remembering that this tree is from my brother, but that one – from my friend (F) in Sigulda.’ (Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)

b. Tā gada janvāri sniegs bija that.GEN.M year.GEN.M January.LOC.M snow.NOM.M be.PST.3 tikai mēneša sākumā. only month.GEN.M beginning.LOC.M 'In January of that year, there was snow only at the beginning of the month.’ (C)

c. [privāta meža] Teritorijai jābūt norobežotai, ja nav, tad tādā mežā neviens then that_kind.LOC.M forest.LOC.M nobody.NOM.M nedrikst aizliegt būt. not_be_allowed.PRS.3 prohibit.INF be.INF 'The territory [of a private forest] must be fenced in, if it isn’t, no one may prohibit anyone from being in such a forest.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

d. Gatavošanās kāzām – nāk skumjas par tādu come.PRS.3 sadness.NOM.PL.F about that_kind.ACC.M laiku. time.ACC.M 'Preparing for a wedding – this kind of weather makes one feel sad.’ (www.delfi.lv)
(2.4.44) a. *Pļavas viņā stūrī,*

meadow.GEN.F yonder.LOC.M corner.LOC.M

lielu eglu ieskautas, vidēja mājas.

‘In the farthest part of the meadow, surrounded by large fir trees, the house loomed ahead.’ (C)

b. *Viņu dienu Delila pēkšņi atkal yonder.ACC.F day.ACC.F Delilah.NOM.F suddenly again*

yatradās sporta nāma zālē.

be_located.PST.3 sports.GEN.M building.GEN.M hall.LOC.F

‘That day Delilah suddenly found herself in the hall of the sports center again.’ (C)

c. *Viņā dienā kreisi mērenais yonder.LOC.F day.LOC.F left moderate.NOM.M*

politikis ieradās ostā, politician.NOM.M arrive.PST.3 port.LOC.F

lai papriecātos par pavasara saulīti.

‘That day the moderately leftist politician arrived at the port to enjoy the spring sun.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

In modern Latvian, the demonstrative pronouns viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas are perceived as stylistically marked. They are mostly found in works of literature, somewhat less frequently in mass media texts (see, e.g., a fragment of a feuilleton (2.4.44c)) and never in business or scientific writing. Therefore, it is safe to say that the tripartite opposition close – farther away – very distant shows a tendency towards turning into the bipartite opposition close – distant where the contrast is expressed by the pronouns šis (šī, šie, šās), šāds (šāda, šādi, šādas), on the one hand, and the pronouns tas (tā, tie, tās), tāds (tāda, tādi, tādas), on the other hand.

The pronouns tas, tā, tie, tās are used to express general statements and make concretizing references:

(2.4.45) *Gints. Man bija jūrmieka dzīvesveids. Atbraucu mājās un tad atkal mēnesi prom [darbā].*  

‘Gints. I lived the life of a sailor. I would come home and then go away again for a month [at work].’

Agnese. *Tas bija grūti.*  

Agnese. that.NOM.M be.COP.PST.3 hard  

Bērni slimoja. Vīrs vienmēr prom.  

‘Agnese. That was hard. The children were often ill. My husband was always away.’ (Ievas Stāsti)

(2.4.46) *Uz galda bija kāda zēna fotogrāfija.*  

*Tas bija Kārlis,*  

that.NOM.M be.COP.PST.3 Kārlis.NOM.M tikai daudz jaunāks.  

‘There was a photograph of a boy on the table. That was Kārlis, just much younger.’ (I. Gaile)
The pronouns šis, šī, šie, šās, tas, tā, tie, tās (also šāds, šāda, šādi, šādas, tāds, tāda, tādi, tādas) are usually used to refer to antecedent or postcedent information in the same text, i.e., anaphorically (2.4.47) or cataphorically (2.4.48):

(2.4.47) a. *Ar latviešu simfoniskās mūzikas atskanošanu varam parādit, kas mēs esam.*

\[
\text{šajā mūzikā ir gan latvisks, gan universal.}
\]

By performing Latvian symphonic music we can show who we are. This music embodies that which is Latvian and also universal.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

b. *Daudzās valstīs mums ir problēmas,*

\[
bet mēs tās pārvaram
\]

We have problems in many countries but we overcome them and establish [what are] the facts.’ (Ir)

c. *Nacionālā Botāniskā dārza oranžērijā uzplaukuši agaves ziedi.*

\[
\text{šāds notikums pie mums gadās reti.}
\]

In the greenhouse of the National Botanical Garden, the agave is in bloom. Such an event is rare around here.’ (C)

d. *Visām senajām ēkām bija niedru jumti,*

\[
un tādi tie ir arī tagad.
\]

‘All ancient buildings had reed roofs and they are still like that today.’ (Ievas Māja)

(2.4.48) a. *Šī summa – aptuveni 300 000 EUR – paredzēta Rīgas cirka parādsaistību segšanai.*

\[
\text{šāda – divreiz gadā gatavoju aksesuāru [rotaslietu] kolekciju.}
\]

‘These funds – approximately 300 000 EUR – are reserved for covering the outstanding debts of the Rīga Circus.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

b. *Tas bija gandrīz komisks,*

\[
it be.cop.pst.3 almost comical
\]

‘It was almost comical how he was clinging to that old bag of his.’ (N. Ikstena)

c. *Pagaidām dzīve iekārtojusies šāda –*

\[
\text{divreiz gadā gatavoju aksesuāru [rotaslietu] kolekciju.}
\]

‘For the time being, life has settled down like this – twice a year I develop a collection of accessories [jewelry].’ (www.delfi.lv)
Another noteworthy phenomenon regarding Latvian demonstrative pronouns is the neutralization of the endophoric function, which manifests itself in a number of ways (each being non-standard, although very widespread in colloquial speech):

1) the pronouns *tas, tā, tie, tās*, less frequently also *šīs, šī, šie, šīs* functioning as definite articles and used to highlight pieces of information considered important – usually in colloquial speech and published or broadcast interviews; in written language such usage is superfluous and demonstrative pronouns can be omitted without affecting meaning;

(2.4.49) a. Tā pagale ar to lielo
*that.NOM.F log.NOM.F with* 
*that.INS.M large.INS.M*
*širu* [krāsnī] nelīdīs.
*branch.INS.M [into the stove] fit_in.fut.3*

‘That log with that big branch will not fit [into the stove].’ (C)

b. *Vecie cilvēki vienmēr tie gudrākie* (= visgudrākie).
*old.NOM.PL.M person.NOM.PL.M always* 
*that.NOM.PL.M
gudrākie* (= visgudrākie).
*clever.SPL.CMP.PL.M (= most clever)*

‘Old people are always the cleverest ones.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

2) the pronouns *tas, tā, tie, tās* in front of the comparative form of adjectives used to express the superlative degree;

(2.4.50) a. Vasara ir *tas skaistākais*
*summer.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 that.NOM.M beautiful.CMP.NOM.M*

(= visskaistākais) kāzu laiks.

(= most beautiful) wedding.GEN.PL.F time.NOM.M

‘Summer is the most beautiful season for a wedding.’ (C)

b. Vecie cilvēki vienmēr tie viņas;
*old.NOM.PL.M person.NOM.PL.M always* 
*that.NOM.PL.M
gudrākie* (= visgudrākie).
*clever.SPL.CMP.PL.M (= most clever)*

‘Old people are always the cleverest ones.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

3) the pronouns *šīs, šī, šie, šīs* functioning as the personal pronouns *viņš, viņa, viņi, viņas*; this kind of usage usually occurs in Internet comments where
readers of news sites actively discuss the actions and attitudes of particular individuals, announcements of political parties, etc.; this usage, which is stylistically marked in contemporary Latvian as it accentuates the negative stance taken by the author, was once stylistically neutral (for more details see Ahero et al. 1959: 517; Barbare 2002: 353; Kalnača 2011b).

(2.4.51) a. Ar ko šis (= viņš)
with what.IN.SG this.NOM.M (= he)
sliktāks par bijušo mēru?
bad.CMP.NOM.M than previous.ACC.M mayor.ACC.M
Tak jau cienījams un turīgs vīrs.
‘How is this one (= he) worse than the previous mayor? Surely, [he’s] a respected and wealthy man.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. Ko tādu šī (= viņa) izdarija?
what.ACC that.kind.ACC.M this.NOM.F (= she) accomplish.PST.3
‘What exactly has this one (= she) accomplished?’ (www.tvnet.lv)

The demonstrative pronouns šis, šī, tas, tā have the following declension paradigms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOM (SG)</td>
<td>(PL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šis</td>
<td>šis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tas</td>
<td>tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šie</td>
<td>šīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>šā // šī</td>
<td>šās // šīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šo</td>
<td>šo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>šim</td>
<td>šim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tam</td>
<td>tam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šiem</td>
<td>šiem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tiem</td>
<td>tiem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šai</td>
<td>šai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tai</td>
<td>tai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šim</td>
<td>šim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>tām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>(ar) šo</td>
<td>(ar) šo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) to</td>
<td>(ar) to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) šiem</td>
<td>(ar) tiem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tiem</td>
<td>(ar) šai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tai</td>
<td>(ar) tāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
<td>(ar) tāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ar) tās</td>
<td>(ar) šās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>šajā</td>
<td>šajā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tajā</td>
<td>tajā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šajos //</td>
<td>šajos //</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tajos //</td>
<td>tajos //</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šai</td>
<td>šai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tai</td>
<td>tai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šais</td>
<td>šais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tais</td>
<td>tais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šānī</td>
<td>šānī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tānī</td>
<td>tānī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šānīs</td>
<td>šānīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tānīs</td>
<td>tānīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.19 Declension of the demonstrative pronouns šis, šī, tas, tā (adapted from Kalnača 2013: 71); all parallel forms in the genitive and locative are standard

The pronouns šāds, šāda, tāds, tāda, viņš, viņa inflect like indefinite adjectives (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine).

The combinations of demonstrative pronouns šis tas ‘this and that’ (also šis un tas), šāds tāds ‘some, certain, some kind’ (šāda tāda (F SG), šādi tādi (M PL), šādas tādas (F PL)), also šāds un tāds mirror the meaning of the indefinite pronouns kaut kas ‘something’, kaut kāds ‘some kind, someone, something’:

(2.4.52) a. Sakarā ar pārvākšanos šo to
relation.LOC.M with moving.INF.F this.ACC that.ACC
pārdodu.
sell.PRS.1SG
‘Because we’re moving, I’m selling this and that.’ (www.cosmo.lv)
b. Pārdodu šādas tādas mazuļu
sell.prs.1sg this_kind.acc.pl.f that_kind.acc.pl.f baby.gen.pl.m lietas.
th.acc.pl.f
'I'm selling some baby things.' (www.delfi.lv)

The non-standard demonstrative pronouns šitas 'this (M SG)' (šitā (F SG), šitie (M PL), šitās (F PL)), also šitais (šitā, šitie, šitās), šitāds 'such, this kind (M SG)' (šitāda (F SG), šitādi (M PL), šitādas (F PL)), šams 'this, this one (M SG)' (šama (F SG), šami (M PL), šamas (F PL)), also šamais (šamā, šamie, šamās), šamējais (šamējā, šamējie, šamējās) etc., which are functionally identical to their standard language equivalents šis 'this', šāds 'such, this kind', mostly occur in colloquial speech, social network communities, less often also as a stylistic device in mass media or literary texts:

(2.4.53) a. Un kam šitas stress bija vajadzigs?
and who.dat this.nom.m stress.nom.m be.cop.pst.3 needed.nom.m
'And who needed this stress?' (www.maminuklubs.lv)
b. Vīnš prata savāldīt šitādus
he.nom know.pst.3 tame.inf this_kind.acc.pl.m
zvērūs.
beast.acc.pl.m
'He knew how to tame such beasts.' (C)
c. Ko oriģinālu lai uzdāvinu šamajam?
what.acc original.acc.m ptcl gift.prs.1sg this_one.dat.m
'What original gift should I give to this one?' (CW)
d. Šamējā kaķene meklē mājas.
this.nom.m she-cat.nom.m search.prs.3 home.acc.pl.f
'This she-cat is looking for a home.' (www.draugiem.lv)

2.4.5 Interrogative pronouns

Interrogative pronouns are used to introduce interrogative sentences (Skujiņa 2007: 175):
(2.4.54) kas 'who, what'

a. Kas tas par troksni?
what.nom that.nom.m for noise.acc.m
'What's that noise?' (C)
b. Kam tas vajadzigs?
who.dat that.nom.m needed.nom.m
'Who needs that?/ 'What's that for?'' (Ir)

(2.4.55) kurš, 'who, which (M SG)', kura (F SG), kuri (M PL), kuras (F PL)
a. Kurš apgalvojums ir pareizs?
which.nom.m statement.nom.m be.cop.prs.3 correct.nom.m
'Which statement is correct?' (C)
(2.4.56) **kāds** 'what, what kind' (M SG), **kāda** (F SG), **kādi** (M PL), **kādas** (F PL)

a. **Kāda** nozīme ir orhidejas

    meaning.nom.f be.cop.prs.3 orchid.gen.f

    'What meaning does an orchid’s color have?' (Latvijas Avīze)

b. **Kādus** darbus mākat darīt?

    work.acc.pl.m know.prs.2pl do.inf

    'What kind of work can you do?' (C)

Questions concerning the identity of the agent, i.e., the doer, or a previously unknown fact are introduced by means of the pronoun **kas**:

(2.4.57) a. **Kas** jūs esat?

    who.nom.pl be.cop.prs.2pl

    'Who are you?' (J. Joņevs)

b. **Ko** tas nozīmē?

    it.nom.m mean.prs.3

    'What does it mean?' (C)

c. **Kam** jāuzņemas atbildiba?

    who.dat.deb.take_on responsibility.nom.f

    'Who should take responsibility?' (C)

In order to ask for information specifying a living being or an object from a known set of possible answers, the pronouns **kurš**, **kura**, **kuri**, **kuras** are used:

(2.4.58) a. **Kura** māsa izaugusi skaistāka?

    which.nom.f sister.nom.f grow_up.ptcp.nom.f beautiful.cmp.nom.f

    'Which sister grew up to be more beautiful?' (Dienas Bizness)

b. **Kurā** klasē tu mācies?

    which.loc.f grade.loc.f you.nom.sg study.prs.2sg

    'What grade are you in?' (C)

c. **Kuri** ir īpaši vērtīgie meži?

    which.nom.pl.m be.cop.prs.3 particularly valuable.nom.pl.m

    'Which forests are particularly valuable?' (C)

The pronouns **kāds**, **kāda**, **kādi**, **kādas** are used to ask about a feature or a property:

(2.4.59) a. **Kādai** jābūt labai skolotāji?**

    what_kind.dat.f deb.be.cop good.dat.f teacher.dat.f

    'What must a good teacher (F) be like?’ (Lauku Avīże)
b. **Kāds** jums bijis šis gads?

‘What was this year like for you?’ (C)

c. **Kādas** redzi tuvākās sezonas teātrī?

‘How do you see the next few seasons at the theater?’ (Ir)

It is not recommended to use the pronouns *kāds* (*kāda, kādi, kādas*) ‘what, what kind’ in the sense of the pronouns *kurš* (*kura, kuri, kuras*) ‘who, which’, e.g.:

(2.4.60) **Kāda** (= *kura*) tēja ir visveselīgākā – **what**.nom.f (=*which*) tea.nom.f be.cop.prs.3 spl.healthy.nom.f melnā, zaļā vai baltā?

‘What (= which) tea is the healthiest – black, green, or white?’ (CW)

The pronoun *kas* ‘who, what’ has the following declension paradigm:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>kas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>kā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>kam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.20 Declension of the pronoun *kas* (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 72)

The pronouns *kurš, kura, kuri, kuras, kāds, kāda, kādi, kādas* inflect like indefinite adjectives (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine).

### 2.4.6 Relative pronouns

Relative pronouns are used to introduce subordinate clauses and define relations between the clauses of a complex sentence (Skujiņa 2007: 56):

(2.4.61) **kas** ‘who, what, which, that’

a. Viļņi sitas gar akmens molu,

kas aizved lidz mazai bākai.

**which.nom** lead.prs.3 to small-dat.f lighthouse.dat.f

‘Waves crash against the stone pier, which leads to a small white lighthouse.’ (N. Ikstena)
b. *Es nezīnu,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kam} & \quad \text{tas} & [\text{divritenis}] & \quad \text{pieder.} \\
\text{who.DAT} & \quad \text{that.NOM.M} & \quad \text{[bicycle]} & \quad \text{belong.PRS.3}
\end{align*}
\]

‘I don’t know to whom this [bicycle] belongs.’ (C)

(2.4.62) **kurš** ‘who, which, that (M SG), **kura** (F SG), **kuri** (M PL), **kuras** (F PL)

a. *Kad biju mazs, nekādi nevarēju atcerēties,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kura} & \quad \text{no} & \quad \text{upēm} & \quad \text{ir} & \quad \text{Driksa} \\
\text{which.NOM.F} & \quad \text{from} & \quad \text{river.GEN.PL.F} & \quad \text{be.COP.PRS.3} & \quad \text{Driksa.NOM.F}
\end{align*}
\]

and **which.NOM.F** Lielupe.NOM.F

‘When I was little I never could remember which river was Driksa and which one was Lielupe.’ (J. Joņevs)

b. *Tas ir standarts,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kuru} & \quad \text{izmantojam} \\
\text{which.ACC.M} & \quad \text{use.PRS.1PL}
\end{align*}
\]

‘This is the standard used in all our projects.’ (C)

(2.4.63) **kāds** ‘which, what kind (M SG), **kāda** (F SG), **kādi** (M PL), **kādas** (F PL)

a. *Skolēni zina,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kādi} & \quad \text{drošības} & \quad \text{noteikumi} & \quad \text{jāievēro.} \\
\text{what.kind.NOM.PL.M} & \quad \text{safety.GEN.F} & \quad \text{rule.NOM.PL.M} & \quad \text{deb.observe}
\end{align*}
\]

‘The pupils know which safety rules must be observed.’ (C)

b. *Ministru kabinets nosaka kārtību,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kādā} & \quad \text{piešķiramas} & \quad \text{valsts} \\
\text{which.LOC.F} & \quad \text{assign.PTCP.NOM.PL.F} & \quad \text{state.GEN.F}
\end{align*}
\]

‘The Cabinet establishes the procedure for assigning state earmarked subsidies.’ (C)

When due to its broad applicability the pronoun **kas** can give rise to ambiguity, it is best to use the pronoun **kurš** instead, e.g.:

(2.4.64) *Dārzā auga upenāji un ābeles,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kas} & \quad (= \text{kuras}) & \quad \text{pašlaik} & \quad \text{krāšņi} & \quad \text{ziedēja.} \\
\text{which.NOM} & \quad \text{(which)} & \quad \text{now} & \quad \text{gorgeously} & \quad \text{bloom.PST.3}
\end{align*}
\]

‘The garden contained blackcurrants and apple trees, which were blooming gorgeously at the time.’

Here, the pronoun **kas**, which introduces a subordinate clause, refers to both blackcurrants and apple trees, only the latter, however, bloom gorgeously, therefore the pronoun **kuras** (F PL), which refers specifically to the word **ābeles** ‘apple trees (F PL)’, is preferable in this case.

Likewise, when it is required that a relative pronoun introducing a subordinate clause be in the locative (2.4.65a) or the genitive case (2.4.65b) or when there is
a need to combine it with a preposition, (2.4.65c-d) the pronouns kurš, kura, kuri, kuras are used rather than kas (Paegle 2003: 84):

(2.4.65) a. Latvijā ir dārzs,
   kurā
   which.LOC.M
   vinogas
   which.PL.NOM.F
   which.PL.NOM.F
   lieliski sadzīvo ar dzērvenēm.
   splendidly coexist.PRS.3 with cranberry.PL.NOM.F
   ‘There is a garden in Latvia where grapes and cranberries coexist splendidly.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

b. Lētākas kļuvušas dažas preces,
   kur
   which.GEN.PL.F
   ipatsvars ir neievērojams.
   share.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 not_notice.PTCP.NOM.M
   ‘A few goods whose share is insignificant have become cheaper.’ (C)

c. Bruņurupucim nav zobu, bet ir knābis,
   ar kuru smalcina barību.
   with which.INF.M cut.PRS.3 food.ACC.F
   ‘Tortoises don’t have teeth but a beak with which they cut their food.’ (C)

d. Tie ir tie apsvērumi,
   kuru dēļ es balsošu “pret”.
   which.GEN.PL.M because_of I.NOM vote.FUT.1SG against
   ‘These are the considerations that are behind my decision to vote “against”’. (C)

For the declension patterns of relative pronouns see the section on interrogative pronouns.

2.4.7 Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns are used to refer to unknown or unspecified living beings, objects, and features (Skujina 2007: 252):

(2.4.66) kas ‘something, somebody’
   Bet tagad klausies ko jautru.
   but now listen.IMP.2SG something.ACC funny.ACC
   ‘And now listen to something funny.’ (N. Ikstena)

(2.4.67) kurš ‘who, which, whoever, whichever (M SG), kura (F SG), kuri (M PL), kuras (F PL)
   Dalībnieku skaits ir nieirobežots:
   kurš piesakās, tas piedalās
   who.NOM.M apply.PRS.3 that.NOM.M participate.PRS.3
   competition.LOC.PL.F
   ‘The number of participants is not limited: whoever applies gets to participate in the competition.’ (C)
(2.4.68) **kāds** ‘some, some kind, someone (M, SG), **kāda** (F SG), **kādi** (M PL), **kādas** (F PL)
Var viņam iedot **kādas**
be.able.prs.3 he.DAT give-INF some_kind.ACC.PL.F
nomierinošas zāles.
calm.PTCP.ACC.PL.F drug.ACC.PL.F
‘He can also be given some sort of sedative.’ (C)

(2.4.69) **dažs** ‘some (M SG), **daža** (F SG), **daži** (M PL), **dažas** (F PL)
Dažiem vairs nebija miera.
some.DAT.PL.M anymore not.be.cop.pst.3 peace.gen.m
‘Some could not find peace anymore.’ (J. Joņevs)

(2.4.70) **cits** ‘other, someone else (M SG), **cita** (F SG), **citi** (M PL), **citas** (F PL)
Mana istaba izīrēta citam.
my.nom.f room.nom.f rent.ptcp.nom.f other.dat.m
‘My room has been rented to someone else.’ (C)

(2.4.71) **kaut kas** ‘something’
Kaut kas bija jāsaka.
something.nom be.aux.pst.3 deb.say
‘Something had to be said.’ (J. Joņevs)

(2.4.72) **kaut kāds** ‘some, some kind (M SG), **kaut kāda** (F SG), **kaut kādi** (M PL), **kaut kādas** (F PL)
Ir jābūt kaut kādai iespējai.
be.aux.prs.3 deb.be some_kind.dat.f possibility.dat.f
‘There must be some kind of possibility.’ (C)

(2.4.73) **kaut kurš** ‘some, somebody (M SG), **kaut kura** (F SG), **kaut kuri** (M PL), **kaut kuras** (F PL)
Kaut kuras darbdienas naktī [televīzijā]
some.gen.f weekday.gen.f night.loc.f [television]
gāja tāds seriāls.
go.pst.3 that_kind.nom.m serial.nom.m
‘There was such a TV series [on television] on some weekday night.’ (CW)

(2.4.74) **dažs labs** ‘some, someone, a certain one (M SG), **daža laba** (F SG)
Dažam labam nācās gaidīt ilgu laiku.
some.dat.m be.obliged.pst.3 wait.inf long.acc.m time.acc.m
‘Some had to wait for a long time.’ (C)

(2.4.75) **viens otrs** ‘someone, an occasional one (M SG), **viena otra** (F SG)
Viens otrs varbūt neatminas
someone.nom.m maybe not.remember.prs.3
tādu aktieri.
that.kind.acc.m actor.acc.m
‘Probably there are some who don’t remember such an actor.’ (C)
The pronouns diez(in), nez(in) and sazin when combined with kas, kurš, kāds reinforce the meaning of indefiniteness, adding different shades of meaning depending on the context:

(2.4.76) **diez(in) kas**

Tev vajadzētu kerties pie īsta darba,  
you.DAT.SG need.COND tackle at real.GEN.M job.GEN.M  
laī tu nedomātu diezin ko!  
SUB you.NOM.SG not_think.COND God_knows_what.ACC  
‘You should take on a real job so that you don’t think goodness knows what!’ (C)

(2.4.77) **diez(in) kurš** (M SG), **diez(in) kura** (F SG), **diez(in) kuri** (M PL),  
**diez(in) kuras** ( F PL)  
Diezin kurš būs hokeja komandas  
God_knows_who.NOM.M be.COP.FUT.3 hockey.GEN.M team.GEN.F  
vārtsargs?  
goalkeeper.NOM.M  
‘Who will be the goalkeeper of the hockey team, I wonder?’  
(www.sportacentrs.com)

(2.4.78) **diez(in) kāds** (M SG), **diez(in) kāda** (F SG), **diez(in) kādi** (M PL),  
**diez(in) kādas** (F PL)  
Mūslaikos tu nevari izvēlēties  
nowadays.LOC.PL.M you.NOM.SG not_beable.prs.2sg choose.INF  
diezin kādu dzīvokli .. .  
God_knows_what_kind.ACC.M apartment.ACC.M  
‘Nowadays you can’t expect to get a decent apartment .. .’ (C)

(2.4.79) **nez(in) kas**

Acis veras spogulī,  
it kā nezin ko tur ieraudzījušas  
as_if not_know_what.ACC there perceive.PTCP.NOM.PL.F  
‘Eyes looking into the mirror as if they are seeing who knows what in there.’ (C)

(2.4.80) **nez(in) kurš, nez(in) kura, nez(in) kuri, nez(in) kuras**

Viņa nezin kurā paaudē esot  
she.NOM not_know_which.LOC.F generation.LOC.F be.aux.OBL  
cēlūsis no vectīcībniekiem.  
descend.PTCP.NOM.F from Old_Believers.DAT.PL.M  
‘She is descended from Old Believers in I don’t know which generation.’ (C)

(2.4.81) **nez(in) kāds, nez(in) kāda, nez(in) kādi, nez(in) kādas**

Negribu, lai mani uztver kā  
not_want.PRS.1SG SUB I.ACC perceive.INF as  
nez kādu mākslinieci .. .  
some_kind.ACC.F artist.ACC.F  
‘I don’t want to be perceived as some kind of [great] artist .. .’ (C)
(2.4.82) **sazin kas**

*Tas [lakats] no mammas.*

Un pirms viņas vēl *sazin kam*

and before she.gen additionally *who know who.dat.m*

*piederējis.*

belong.ptcp.nom.m.

‘This [neckchief] is my mother’s. And before that it belonged to God knows whom else.’ (C)

(2.4.83) **sazin kurš, sazin kura, sazin kuri, sazin kuras**

Viņš rakstīja savam draugam [vēstuli]

he.nom write.pst.3 own.dat.m friend.dat.m [letter]

*sazin kurā pasaules malā.*

who_knows_which.loc.f world.gen.f side.loc.f

‘He was writing [a letter] to his friend in who knows which end of the world.’ (C)

(2.4.84) **sazin kāds, sazin kāda, sazin kādi, sazin kādas**

Tas krējums ir

that.nom.m cream.nom.m be.cop.prs.3

*sazin kādas izcelsmes.*

who_knows_what_kind.gen.f origin.gen.f

‘Who knows where that cream comes from.’ (C)

(2.4.85) **jebkas** ‘anything’

Un kamēr es mīlu,

varu piedot jebko.

be_able.prs.1sg forgive.inf anything.acc

‘And as long as I feel love, I can forgive anything.’ (C)

(2.4.86) **jebkurš** ‘any, anyone (M SG), jebkura (F SG), jebkuri (M PL), jebkuras (F PL)

*Jebkuri panākumi ir kā*

any.nom.pl.m achievement.nom.pl.m be.cop.prs.3 like spārni.

wings.nom.pl.m

‘Any achievements are like wings.’ (C)

(2.4.87) **jebkāds** ‘any, any kind (M SG), jebkāda (F SG), jebkādi (M PL), jebkādas (F PL)

Futbolistam piedāvāta jebkāda naudas

footballer.dat.m offer.ptcp.nom.f any.nom.f money.gen.f

summa pēc paša vēlēšanās.

amount.nom.f after own.gen.m discretion.gen.f

‘The footballer was offered any amount of money he wanted.’ (C)
It is important to ensure the correct spelling of indefinite pronouns. Pronouns containing *kaut*, *diez(in)*, *nez(in)*, or *sazin* as their leftmost element are written separately (*kaut kas, kaut kāds, kaut kurš, dažs labs, viens otrs, diez(in) kas, diez(in) kurš, diez(in) kāds, nez(in) kas, nez(in) kurš, nez(in) kāds, sazin kas, sazin kurš, sazin kāds*), while those beginning with *jeb* are written as one word (*jebkas, jebkurš, jebkāds*).

Some of the meanings of the indefinite pronoun *kāds* ‘some, some kind, someone, any, whatever (M, SG); *kāda* (F SG) can also be expressed by means of the numeral *viens* ‘one (M SG), *viena* (F SG) (Paegle 2003: 86):

\begin{align*}
\text{(2.4.88) a. Vienu} & \quad \text{dienu} \quad \text{satiku} \quad \text{Sandi} \\
\text{one} & \quad \text{day.ACC.F} \quad \text{meet.PST.1SG} \quad \text{Sandis.ACC.M} \\
\text{Vecrīgā.} \\
\text{Old_Rīga.LOC.F} \\
\text{‘One (= some) day I met Sandis in Old Rīga.’ (www.delfi.lv)} \\
\text{b. Vienā} & \quad \text{vecā} \quad \text{mājā} \quad \text{bija} \\
\text{one} & \quad \text{old.LOC.F} \quad \text{house.LOC.F} \quad \text{be.PST.3} \\
\text{tāds} & \quad \text{pats} \quad \text{vannas} \quad \text{istabas} \quad \text{platums}.
\text{same_kind.NOM.M} \quad \text{bath.GEN.F} \quad \text{room.GEN.F} \quad \text{width.NOM.M} \\
\text{‘One (= some) old house had a bathroom of the same width.’} \\
\text{(www.draugiem.lv)}
\end{align*}

The combinations of pronouns *viens otru* ‘each other (M ACC), viena otru (F ACC), viens otram (M DAT), viena otrai (F DAT), viens otrā (M LOC), viena otrā (F LOC), cits citu ‘one another (M NOM), cita citu (F NOM), cits citam (M DAT), cita citai (F DAT), cits citā (M LOC), cita citā (F LOC) express reciprocal meaning (Paegle 2003: 85–86):

\begin{align*}
\text{(2.4.89) a. Suņi} & \quad \text{rēja} \quad \text{un} \quad \text{dzenāja} \\
\text{dog.NOM.PL.M} & \quad \text{bark.PST.3} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{chase.PST.3} \\
\text{viens} & \quad \text{otru.} \\
\text{one.NOM.M} & \quad \text{other.ACC.M.} \\
\text{‘The dogs were barking and chasing each other.’} \quad \text{(C)} \\
\text{b. Bridi} & \quad \text{mēs} \quad \text{skatijāmies} \\
\text{moment.ACC.M} & \quad \text{we.NOM} \quad \text{look.PST.1PL} \\
\text{viens} & \quad \text{otram} \quad \text{acis.} \\
\text{one.NOM.M} & \quad \text{other.DAT.M} \quad \text{eyes.LOC.PL.F} \\
\text{‘For a moment, we were looking into each other’s eyes.’} \quad \text{(C)} \\
\text{c. Bridi} & \quad \text{viņas} \quad \text{lūkojas} \\
\text{moment.ACC.M} & \quad \text{they.NOM.PL.F} \quad \text{look.PRS.3} \\
\text{viena} & \quad \text{otrā.} \\
\text{one.NOM.F} & \quad \text{other.LOC.F} \\
\text{‘For a moment, they were looking at each other (F).’} \quad \text{(C)}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{(2.4.90) a. Cilvēki} & \quad \text{cits} \quad \text{citu} \quad \text{atdarina.} \\
\text{person.NOM.PL.M} & \quad \text{other.NOM.M} \quad \text{other.ACC.M} \quad \text{imitate.PRS.3} \\
\text{‘People imitate one another.’} \quad \text{(C)}
\end{align*}
b. *Instrumentu kļuva arvien vairāk,*  

[of music] variations.NOM.PL.F follow.PST.3  
cita  citai.  

other.NOM.F  other.DAT.F  
‘The number of instruments increased, [musical] variations followed one after another.’ (C)

c. *Kā jau tādās reizēs,*  

visi  saspringti  skatijās  
everybody.NOM.PL.M anxiously look.PST.3  
cits  citā.  

other.NOM.M  other.LOC.M  
‘As always happens in such cases, everybody was looking anxiously at one another.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

Indefinite pronouns are declined in the same way as adjectives with the indefinite ending (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine), with the exception of the pronoun *kas* and word combinations and compounds ending in *kas*; the declension of the pronoun *kas* is described in the section on interrogative pronouns.

### 2.4.8 Definite pronouns

Definite pronouns are used to refer to known, identifiable living beings, objects, or generalized features (Skujina 2007: 262).

(2.4.91) *abi* ‘both (M), *abas* (F)  

Abas  spēles  sāksies  sešos  
both.NOM.PL.F  game.NOM.PL.F  begin.FUT.3  six.NOM.PL.M  
vakarā.  
evening.LOC.M  
‘Both games will begin at six p.m.’ (C)

(2.4.92) *viss* ‘all, everything, everybody (M SG)’, *visa* (F SG), *visi* (M PL), *visas* (F PL)  

Viss  ir  sajucis –  
everything.NOM.M  be.AUX.PRS.3  get_mixed_up.PTCP.NOM.M  
dienas  un  naktis.  
day.NOM.PL.F  and  night.NOM.PL.F  
‘Everything is mixed up – days and nights.’ (N. Ikstenā)

(2.4.93) *katrs* ‘every, each, everyone (M SG)’, *katra* (F SG), *katri* (M PL), *katras* (F PL)  

Katrs  tic,  kam  vēlas.  
everyone.NOM.M  believe.PRS.3  what.DAT  want.PRS.3  
‘Everyone believes what they want to believe.’ (C)
(2.4.94) **ikkatrs** ‘every, each, everyone, all (M SG)’, **ikkatra** (F SG)

*Ikkatrā* cilvēka šūnā ir gēni,

*each.LOC.F* human.*GEN.M* cell.*LOC.F* be.*PRS.3* genes.*NOM.PL.M*

*kas atbild par tās izdzīvošanu.*

‘Each human cell contains genes responsible for its survival.’ (C)

(2.4.95) **ikviens** ‘every, each, everyone, all (M SG)’, **ikviena** (F SG)

*Ikvienas* studiju programmas istsenošanai

*every.*GEN.F* studies.*GEN.PL.F* program.*GEN.F* implementation.*DAT.F*

*jāsaņem licence.*

‘The implementation of any program of studies requires a license.’ (C)

(2.4.96) **ikkurš** ‘every, everyone (M SG)’, **ikkura** (F SG)

*Literatūra* ir dabiska *ikkuras*

*every.*GEN.F* literature.*NOM.F* be.*cop.prs.3* natural.*NOM.F*

*valodas blakne.*

‘Literature is a natural by-product of any language.’ (C)

The definite pronouns *pats* ‘reflexive emphatic meaning (M SG)’, *pati* (F SG), *paši* (M PL), *pašas* (F PL) are used in Latvian with the so-called emphatic function – to stress the autonomy, detachedness of an agent (2.4.97) or significance of some fact (2.4.98):

(2.4.97) a. *Viņa bija mazliet īsāka par mani,*

*kaut es pati nemaz*

*although I.NOM self.*NOM.F* not_at_all*

*nebiju no garākajām.*

*not_be.cop.pst.1sg from tall.dat.pl.f*

‘She was a bit shorter than me, although I myself wasn’t very tall either.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. *Kolēģis pats nevarēja piedalīties.*

*colleague.*NOM.M* self.*NOM.M* not_be.able.pst.3 participate.INF*

‘The colleague could not personally participate.’ (C)

c. *Direktore stāsta par pašas*

*director.*NOM.F* talk.*PRS.3* about self.*GEN.F*

*rakstītajiem projektiem.*

*write.ptcp.dat.pl.m project.dat.pl.m*

‘The director is talking about projects she herself has written.’ (C)

(2.4.98) a. *Gar pašu ezera malu aizlikumija*

*along EMPH.ACC.F lake.*GEN.M* edge.ACC.F* meander.pst.3*

*šaura taka.*

*narrow.*NOM.F* path.*NOM.F*

‘A narrow path meandered along the very edge of the lake.’ (C)
b. Viņa iestājās rindas galā, kas bija jau pašās durvīs.  
She stood at the end of the queue, which stretched to the door.  
(C)

The significance of a fact can also be emphasized by means of the demonstrative–
definite pronoun combination *tas pats* ‘the very same, selfsame (M SG), tā pati (F SG), 
tie pašī (M PL), tās pašas (F PL) (examples 2.4.99), also tāds pats ‘the same, same kind 
(M SG), tāda pati (F SG), tādi pašī (M PL), tādas pašas (F PL) (examples 2.4.100):

(2.4.99) a. Tajā pašā acumirkli viņi viens  
very_same.LOC.M instant.LOC.M they.NOM.PL.M one.NOM.M  
otru pazina.  
other.ACC.M recognize.PST.3  
‘At the very same instant they recognized each other’ (C)

b. Viņa tajā pašā dienā pārdeva  
very_same.LOC.F day.LOC.F sell.PST.3  
īpašumu citam. 
property.ACC.M another.DAT.M  
‘That same day she sold the property to someone else.’ (C)

(2.4.100) a. Viss vienmēr tāds pats un  
everything.NOM.M always very_same.NOM.M and  
tajās pašās  
very_same.LOC.PL.F place.LOC.PL.F  
‘Everything is always the same and in the same places.’ (C)

b. Īrnieka ģimenes loceklim ir 
tenant.gen.m family.gen.f member.dat.m be.prs.3  
tādas pašas tiesības un pienākumi  
very_same.NOM.PL.F right.NOM.PL.F and responsibility.NOM.PL.F  
ak irniekam. 
as tenant.dat.m  
‘The tenant’s family members have the same rights and responsibilities 
as the tenant.’ (CW)

The emphatic function of the pronouns *pats, pati, pašī, pašas* also manifests itself in 
connection with verb reflexivity; in such cases the pronouns occur in conjunction 
with the reflexive pronoun *sevis*, reinforcing its meaning and drawing attention 
to the fact that the action is oriented towards the sphere of the subject (examples 
(2.4.101)). The use of such emphatic pronouns for expressing reflexivity, however, is 
not obligatory in Latvian.

(2.4.101) a. Cilvēks pats sevi spoguli  
person.NOM.M self.NOM.M own'acc.M mirror.LOC.M  
redz skaistāku,  
see.prs.3 beautiful.CMP.ACC.M  
nekā patiesībā viņu redz citi. 
‘One sees oneself in the mirror as more beautiful than actually seen by 
others.’ (www.cosmo.lv)
b. *Es pazīstu pati sevi,*
   I.NOM know.PRS.1SG self.NOM.F own.ACC.F
   esmu strādīga.
   ‘I know myself, I am hard-working.’ (CW)

c. *Viņš teica pats sev to,*
   he.NOM tell.PST.3 self.NOM.M own.DAT.M that.ACC.M
   ko gribēja dzirdēt.
   what.ACC want.PST.3 hear.INF
   ‘He told himself what he wanted to hear.’ (www.satori.lv)

In addition, the definite pronouns *pats, pati, paši, pašas* can be used to form the superlative forms of adjectives (see Section 2.2.2).

The pronouns *pats, pati* have the following declension paradigm:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>PL</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>pat-s</td>
<td>paš-i</td>
<td>pat-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>paš-a</td>
<td>paš-u</td>
<td>paš-as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>paš-am</td>
<td>paš-im</td>
<td>paš-ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>paš-u</td>
<td>paš-us</td>
<td>paš-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) paš-u</td>
<td>(ar) paš-im</td>
<td>(ar) paš-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>paš-ā</td>
<td>paš-os</td>
<td>paš-ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.21 Declension of the pronouns *pats, pati, paši, pašas* (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 73)

All definite pronouns inflect like adjectives with the indefinite ending (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine).

### 2.4.9 Negative pronouns

Negative pronouns are used to negate or indicate the absence of living beings, objects, or features (Skujiņa 2007: 255):

(2.4.102) **nekas** ‘nothing’

a. *Taču nekas nav mūžīgs.*
   however nothing.NOM not_be.COP.PRS.3 eternal.NOM.M
   ‘Nothing lasts forever though.’ (C)

b. *Vai tev ir bijusi tā sajūta –*
   nekā nav bijis un
   nothing.GEN not_be.AUX.PRS.3 be.PTCP.NOM.M and
   nekā nebūs,
   nothing.GEN not_be.FUT.3
   tikai šis brīdis?
   ‘Have you ever had that feeling – there never has been and never will be anything, just this moment?’ (N. Ikstena)
(2.4.103) **nekāds** ‘no, none, not any kind (M SG), nekāda (F SG), nekādi (M PL), nekādas (F PL)

Nekāds ligums ar mums
not_any_kind.NOM.M agreement.NOM.M with we.INS
netika nolēgts.
not_get.AUX.PST.3 conclude.PTCP.NOM.M
‘No agreement was concluded with us.’ (C)

(2.4.104) **neviens** ‘no, nobody, no one (M SG), neviena (F SG), nevieni (M PL), nevienas (F PL)

Nevieni vārti nav
no_one.NOM.PL.M gate.NOM.PL.M not_be.AUX.PRS.3
atvērti.
open.PTCP.PL.M
‘No gate is open.’ (C)

The absence of persons, i.e., humans, is usually indicated by means of the pronoun neviens ‘no one’:

(2.4.105) a. Mani neviens nesaprot.
I.ACC no_one.NOM.M not_understand.PRS.3
‘No one understands me.’ (Diena)

b. Jā, sapnot nevienam nav
yes dream.INF no_one.DAT.M not_be.AUX.PRS.3
liegts.
forbid.PTCP.M
‘Yes, nobody is forbidden from dreaming.’ (C)

c. Pie jūras nebijā neviena
at sea.GEN.F not_be.PST.3 no_one.GEN.M
cilvēka.
person.GEN.M
‘There wasn’t a single person on the beach.’ (N. Ikstena)

If a sentence contains a negative pronoun, the finite form of the verb, i.e., the predicate, is usually also negative:

(2.4.106) a. Šādās mājās nekas
this_kind.LOC.PL.F house.LOC.PL.F nothing.NOM
nevar notikt.
not_be_able.PRS.3 happen.INF
Nekas te nevar
nothing.NOM here not_be_able.PRS.3
ienākt prātā.
come.INF mind.LOC.M
‘Nothing can ever happen in such houses. Nothing can cross one’s mind here.’ (J. Joņevs)
b. *Nekādas atrunas nav*  
*not_any_kind.NOM.PL.F excuses.NOM.PL.M not_be.COP.PRS.3*  
iespējas.
possible.PTCP.NOM.PL.F
‘No excuses are possible.’ (C)

c. *Ģimenē neviens nesmēķē.*  
*family.LOC.F no_one.NOM.M not_smoke.PRS.3*  
‘No one smokes in the family.’ (C)

The negative pronouns *neviens*, *neviena*, *nekāds*, *nekāda* are declined in the same way as adjectives with an indefinite ending (i.e., as declension 1 nouns in the masculine and declension 4 nouns in the feminine).

### 2.5 VERBS

#### 2.5.0 Introductory remarks

The verb is a word class which comprises words expressing actions, states, and relations, and has, in Latvian, the grammatical categories of person, tense, mood, and voice (Skujiņa 2007: 76). In addition, declinable participles are marked for the categories of gender, number, and case.

Verbs are also connected to transitivity (Section 2.5.6) and expression of different reflexive (Section 2.5.7) and aspectual meanings (see Section 2.5.8).

Semantically, verbs can be subdivided into various groups or classes, for example:

1) verbs of speaking

(2.5.1) *runāt* ‘to talk, speak’, *teik* ‘to tell’, *sacīt* ‘to say’, *stāstīt* ‘to tell, narrate’

2) verbs of motion

(2.5.2) *iet* ‘to walk, go’, *skriet* ‘to run’, *lēkt* ‘to jump’, *kāpt* ‘to climb, ascend’

3) verbs of sound

(2.5.3) *rūkt* ‘to roar, rumble’, *svilpt* ‘to whistle’, *klabēt* ‘to clack’, *ribēt* ‘to rumble, thunder’

4) verbs of senses and perception

(2.5.4) *just* ‘to sense, feel’, *redzēt* ‘to see’, *dzirdēt* ‘to hear’, *skatīties* ‘to look’

5) modal verbs

(2.5.5) *spēt* ‘to be capable of’, *varēt* ‘to be able’, *gribēt* ‘to want’, *vajadzēt* ‘to need’

6) aspectual verbs

(2.5.6) *sākt* ‘to begin’, *beigt* ‘to end’, *turpināt* ‘to continue’

217
In sentences, verbs characteristically function as predicates:

(2.5.7) a. *Pagāja dažas dienas.*
   pass.PST.3 few.NOM.PL.F day.NOM.PL.F
   ‘A few days passed.’ (A. Eglītis)

b. *Būtu es to toreiz zinājis!*
   be.AUX.COND I.NOM that.ACC then know.PTCP.NOM.M
   ‘If only I’d known it then!’ (J. Joņevs)

c. *Uzzini, kāpēc sviests tomēr jāēd.*
   find_out.IMP.2SG why butter.NOM.M still be.AUX.PRS.3 eat
   ‘Find out why you should eat butter after all.’ (Latvijas Avize)

In addition, infinitives can be used as clause subjects (2.5.8a), parts of complex predicates (2.5.8b), and secondary predicates (2.5.8c):

(2.5.8) a. *Domāt ir māksla.*
   think.INF be.COP.PRS.3 art.NOM.F
   ‘Thinking is an art.’ (Ir)

b. *Pirms 70 gadiem Daugavpili sāka kursēt pirmie tramvaji.*
   before 70 year.DAT.PL.M Daugavpils.LOC.F start.PST.3 run.INF first.NOM.PL.M tram.NOM.PL.M
   ‘The first trams started running in Daugavpils 70 years ago.’ (Diena)

c. *Nesāc sarunu ar uzbrūkošiem vārdiem,*
   lai otrom nerastos vēlme
   SUB another.DAT.M not_originate.COND urge.NOM.F aizstāvēties.
   defend.oneself.INF
   ‘Do not start a conversation with an attack so as not to put your interlocutor on the defensive.’ (www.delfi.lv)

Verb forms are classified as either finite or non-finite depending on whether they are marked for person:

1) finite verb forms are marked for person and usually function as predicates with tense, mood, and voice (see Section 3.1.2);
2) non-finite verb forms – the infinitive and participles – are not marked for person and do not normally function as predicates (see Sections 3.2.3, 3.2.6, 3.2.9 on the use of the infinitive, see Sections 2.5.9, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.2.9 on participles).
Latvian uses the following means for deriving the grammatical forms of verbs:

1) endings, e.g., for person forms

(2.5.9) PRS
   1SG    es rakst-u ‘I write’
   2SG    tu rakst-i ‘you (SG) write’
   3SG/PL vinš, viņi rakst-a ‘he/she writes, they write’
   1PL    mēs rakst-ām ‘we write’
   2PL    jūs rakst-āt ‘you (PL) write’

2) suffixes, e.g., for tense forms

(2.5.10) a. PRS
   sē-t – sē-j-u ‘to sow – (I) sow’
   skrie-t – skrie-n-u ‘to run – (I) run’
   nir-t – nir-st-u ‘to dive – (I) dive’
   b. FUT 1SG, 1PL
   sē-t – sē-š-u, sē-s-im ‘to sow – (I) will sow, (we) will sow’
   skriet – skrie-š-u, skrie-s-im ‘to run – (I) will run, (we) will run’
   nir-t – nir-š-u, nir-s-im ‘to dive – (I) will dive, (we) will dive’

3) combining an auxiliary verb with a declinable participle

(2.5.11) a. in perfect tense forms
   esmu lasījis, biju lasījis, būšu lasījis ‘I have read, I had read, I will have read’
   b. in passive voice forms
   tiek lasīts, tika lasīts, tiks lasīts ‘is read, was read, will be read’

4) suppletion, i.e., using different roots in one paradigm when forming the person and tense forms of the verbs būt ‘to be’ and iet ‘to walk, go’

(2.5.12) a. esmu, esi, ir, biju, būšu ‘am, are, is, was, will be’
   b. eju, gāju ‘(I) go, (I) went’

In addition, Latvian verbal inflection involves different types of sound alternations (these usually occur in synthetic forms) – palatalization, consonant n alternation (for both see Section 1.1.2), fronting (see Section 1.1.1), consonant loss (see Section 1.1.3), and apophony (see Section 1.2.1 for detail).

The base of the inflectional forms of verbs in Latvian is the infinitive stem (Kalnača 2013b, 458–459). All simple tense forms – the present, past, future indefinite – are constructed from the infinitive stem with the help of different morphophonological (sound alternation) and morphological (suffixes) operations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INF</th>
<th>PRS 1SG</th>
<th>PST 1SG</th>
<th>FUT 1SG</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>siet ‘to tie’</td>
<td>sien-u ‘(I) tie’</td>
<td>sēj-u ‘(I) tied’</td>
<td>sie-š-u ‘(I) will tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domā-t ‘to think’</td>
<td>domā-j-u ‘(I) think’</td>
<td>domā-j-u ‘(I) thought’</td>
<td>domā-š-u ‘(I) will think’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cel-t ‘to raise’</td>
<td>cel-u ‘(I) raise’</td>
<td>celular ‘(I) raised’</td>
<td>cel-š-u ‘(I) will raise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last-t ‘to read’</td>
<td>las-u ‘(I) read’</td>
<td>las-j-u ‘(I) read’</td>
<td>las-š-u ‘(I) will read’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.22 The infinitive, present, past, and future stems of verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2014: 78)
The infinitive stem and all indefinite (simple) tense stems can be used as bases for constructing further inflectional forms of verbs:

1) the infinitive stem:
   a) the present indefinite conditional form

(2.5.13) INF – COND
   sie-t – sie-tu ‘to tie – would tie’
   domā-t – domā-tu ‘to think – would think’
   lasī-t – lasī-tu ‘to read – would read’
   b) the past passive participle forms

(2.5.14) INF – PTCP.PST.PASS
   sie-t – sie-t-s ‘to tie – tied’
   domā-t – domā-t-s ‘to think – thought’
   lasī-t – lasī-t-s ‘to read – read’
   c) the semi-declinable participle forms

(2.5.15) INF – PTCP.SEM.DECL
   sie-t – sie-dam-s ‘to tie – (while) tying’
   domā-t – domā-dam-s ‘to think – (while) thinking’
   lasī-t – lasī-dam-s ‘to read – (while) reading’

2) the present stem:
   a) the present indefinite oblique form

(2.5.16) PRS – OBL.PRS
   sien-u – sien-ot ‘(I) tie – reportedly tie’
   domāj-u – domāj-ot ‘(I) think – reportedly think’
   las-u – las-ot ‘(I) read – reportedly read’
   b) the debitive form

(2.5.17) PRS – DEB
   sien-u – jā-sien ‘(I) tie – must tie’
   domāj-u – jā-domā ‘(I) think – must think’
   las-u – jā-lasa ‘(I) read – must read’
   c) the present active participle form

(2.5.18) PRS – PTCP.PRS.ACT
   sien-u – sien-oš-s ‘(I) tie – tying’
   domāj-u – domāj-oš-s ‘(I) think – thinking’
   las-u – las-oš-s ‘(I) read – reading’
   d) the present passive participle form

(2.5.19) PRS – PTCP.PRS.PASS
   sien-u – sien-am-s ‘(I) tie – (should / can be) tied, tieable’
   domāj-u – domāj-am-s ‘(I) think – (should / can be) thought’
   las-u – las-ām-s ‘(I) read – (should / can be) read, readable’
e) indeclinable participle forms

(2.5.20) PRS – PTCP.IDECL

- sien-u – sien-ot, sien-am ‘(I) tie – tying’
- domāj-u – domāj-ot, domāj-am ‘(I) think – thinking’
- las-u – las-ot, las-ām ‘(I) read – reading’

3) the past stem – the past active participle forms

(2.5.21) PST – PTCP.PST.ACT

- sēj-u – sēj-is (M), sēj-us-i (F) ‘(I) tied – (have / has / had) tied’
- domāj-u – domāj-is (M), domāj-us-i (F) ‘(I) thought – (have / has / had) thought’
- lasīj-u – lasīj-is (M), lasīj-us-i (F) ‘(I) read – (have / has / had) read’

4) the future stem – the future indefinite oblique form

(2.5.22) FUT – OBL.FUT

- sīeš-u – sīeš-ot ‘(I) will tie – reportedly will tie’
- domāš-u – domāš-ot ‘(I) will think – reportedly will think’
- lasīš-u – lasīš-ot ‘(I) will read – reportedly will read’

2.5.1 Conjugation

Contemporary Latvian has three verb conjugation classes, which are distinguished based on the morphemic composition of the infinitive and certain specifics of present tense forming operations (Paegle 2003: 104–105; Kalnača 2013a: 75, 2013c: 545).

Prefixes and reflexive endings are not considered significant in determining conjugation classes even when they make the verbs that contain them semantically distinct from their non-prefixed or non-reflexive counterparts (2.5.23a) or when such counterparts do not exist in contemporary Latvian (2.5.23b and 2.5.23c):

(2.5.23) a. dot ‘to give’ and pār-dot ‘to sell’, nes-t ‘to carry’ and nes-ties ‘to rush’
   b. pa-zīt ‘to know, recognize’, aiz-mirst ‘to forget’
   c. mosties ‘to wake up’, kļūdīties ‘to be wrong, err’ (note that most and kļūdīt do not exist)

The verbs iet ‘to go, walk’, dot ‘to give’, būt ‘to be’ do not fit into any of the classes and are classified as irregular, because they have suppletive stems and non-systemic person forms.

Conjugation class 1 verbs can be identified based on the infinitive form, which, unlike the infinitive form of other verbs, contains just a root and an ending:

(2.5.24) nes-t ‘to carry’, aug-t ‘to grow’, kris-t ‘to fall’, kus-t ‘to melt’, cel-t ‘to lift, to build’, lauz-t ‘to break’, kāp-t ‘to climb, ascend’, sil-t ‘to get warm’, aus-t ‘to dawn’, plūs-t ‘to flow’
Conjugation class 2 (2.5.25a) and 3 (2.5.25b) verbs cannot be mutually differentiated in the infinitive as both can contain the same set of suffixes between the root and the ending:

(2.5.25) a. med-i-t ‘to hunt’, dom-a-t ‘to think’, tēr-ē-t ‘to spend (money)’
b. rakst-i-t ‘to write’, dzied-a-t ‘to sing’, redz-ē-t ‘to see’

Therefore, the conjugation class membership of such verbs has to be established based on their present tense forms.

It should be noted that the suffix -inā- occurs only in the infinitive form of conjugation class 3 verbs:

(2.5.26) audz-inā-t ‘to bring up’, smīd-inā-t ‘to make laugh’, midz-inā-t ‘to put to sleep’

**Conjugation class 1** verbs use a number of different devices to form present tense forms and are therefore grouped into three subclasses.

The present tense forms of **conjugation class 1 subclass 1** verbs are constructed without the help of either suffixes or sound alternation operations (**augt** ‘to grow’, **nest** ‘to carry’, **degt** ‘to burn’). The group also includes words that have undergone phonetic change in the infinitive but not in present tense forms (consonant **t** alternation (2.5.27a), tautosyllabic **in** – **ī** alternation (2.5.27b)), as well as verbs having **i** – **ij** (2.5.27c), **ei** – **ej** (2.5.27d) alternations at the root and present tense person ending junction to prevent vowel clustering.

(2.5.27) INF – PRS 1SG

a. mest – metu ‘to throw – (I) throw’, vest – vedu ‘to drive, carry – (I) drive, carry’
b. mīt – minu ‘to tread – (I) tread’, pit – pinu ‘to braid, weave – (I) braid, weave’
c. rīt – riju ‘to gobble, swallow – (I) gobble, swallow’, vit – viju ‘to weave, wind, twine – (I) weave, wind, twine’
d. liet – leju ‘to pour – (I) pour’, smiet – smeju ‘to laugh – (I) laugh’

**aug-t** ‘to grow’, **mes-t** ‘to throw’, **pī-t** ‘to braid, weave’, **rī-t** ‘to gobble, swallow’, **smie-ties** ‘to laugh’

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>aug-u, met-u, pin-u, rij-u, smej-os</td>
<td>aug-am, met-am, pin-am, rij-am, smej-amies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>audz-ø, met-ø, pin-ø, rij-ø, smej-as</td>
<td>aug-at, met-at, pin-at, rij-at, smej-aties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>aug-ø, met-ø, pin-ø, rij-ø, smej-as</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.23** The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 1 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 76)
The formation of present tense forms of **conjugation class 1 subclass 2** verbs involves apophony (2.5.28a), consonant n alternation (2.5.28b), and palatalization (2.5.28c).

(2.5.28) INF – PRS 1SG

b. *krist* ‘to fall’, *just* ‘to feel’, *prast* ‘to know how’ – kritu ‘(I) fall’, jūtu ‘(I) feel’, protu ‘(I) know how’


The group also includes verbs that once had *r* – ŗ palatalization (2.5.29) in the present tense forms. Although still considered standard, this type of palatalization nowadays survives almost exclusively in the speech of elderly people and in subdialects.

(2.5.29) INF – PRS 1SG

vilk-t ‘to draw’, mig-t ‘to fall asleep’, ras-ties ‘to appear’, plēs-t ‘to rip, tear’, lem-t ‘to decide’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>velk-u, mieg-u, rod-os, plēš-u, lemj-u</td>
<td>velk-am, mieg-am, rod-amies, plēš-am, lemj-am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>velc-ø, miedz-ø, rod-ies, plēš-ø, lem-ø</td>
<td>velk-at, mieg-at, rod-aties, plēš-at, lemj-at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>velk-ø, mieg-ø, rod-as, plēš-ø, lemj-ø</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 2.24* The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 2 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 76)

The present tense forms of **conjugation class 1 subclass 3** verbs are constructed by means of the suffixes -n- (2.5.30a), -j- (2.5.30b), -st- (2.5.30c).

(2.5.30) INF – PRS 1SG
a. *siet* ‘to tie’, skriet ‘to run’ – sienu ‘(I) tie’, skrienu ‘(I) run’


c. *birt* ‘to drop (no object), spatter’, *mirkt* ‘to soak’, dzimt ‘to be born’ – birstu ‘(I) drop (no object), spatter’, mirkstu ‘(I) soak’, dzimstu ‘(I) am born’

223
When the suffix -st- is used in verbs whose roots end in s, z, t, or d a reduction of the inflectional stem (i.e., loss of the root-final consonant) occurs to avoid consonant clustering at the root and present tense suffix junction (2.5.31) (see Section 1.1.3).

\[(2.5.31)\] INF – PRS 1SG
\[
aizmirs-t, lūz-t, kliš-t, mos-ties – aizmīr-st-u, lū-st-u, kli-st-u, mo-st-os ‘to forget, break (no object), wander, wake up’
\]

\[skrie-t ‘to run’, kau-ties ‘to fight’, dil-t ‘to wear out’, lūz-t ‘to break (no object)’\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>skrie-n-u, kau-j-os, dil-st-u, lū-st-u</td>
<td>skrie-n-am, kau-j-amies, dil-st-am, lū-st-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>skrie-n-ø, kau-j-ies, dil-st-i, lū-st-i</td>
<td>skrie-n-at, kau-j-atties, dil-st-at, lū-st-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>skrie-n-ø, kau-j-as, dil-st-ø, lū-st-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.25** The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 subclass 3 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 76)

Conjugation class 1 verbs skriet ‘to run’ (2.5.32a), gulties ‘to lie down’ (2.5.32b), and sēsties ‘to sit down’ (2.5.32c) permit parallel sets of present indefinite tense forms.

\[(2.5.32)\] a. skrie-n-u and skrej-u ‘(I) run’

b. gul-st-os and gul-os ‘(I) lie down’

c. sē-st-os and sēž-os ‘(I) sit down’

Generally, the present tense form of conjugation class 2 verbs (containing the suffixes -ā-, -ē-, -i, -o- [uo] in the infinitive) is derived by attaching the suffix -j- and a person ending to the infinitive stem. In the second-person singular and third-person singular and plural, however, there is neither a person ending nor a present tense suffix. As all conjugation class 2 verbs form their present tense forms in the same way they are not classified into further subclasses. The verb dabūt ‘to get’ is also included in this conjugation class, as an exception.

**valk-ā-t ‘to wear’, tēr-ē-ties ‘to spend (money)’, med-i-t ‘to hunt’, slēp-o-t ‘to ski’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>valk-ā-j-u, tēr-ē-j-os, med-i-j-u, slēp-o-j-u</td>
<td>valk-ā-j-am, tēr-ē-j-amies, med-i-j-am, slēp-o-j-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>valk-ā-o-ø, tēr-ē-j-ies, med-i-o-ø, slēp-o-ø-ø</td>
<td>valk-ā-j-at, tēr-ē-j-atties, med-i-j-at, slēp-o-j-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>valk-ā-o-ø-ø, tēr-ē-j-as, med-i-o-ø, slēp-o-ø-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.26** The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 2 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 77)
The present tense form of conjugation class 3 verbs (having the suffixes -ā-, -ē-, -ī-, -inā- in the infinitive) involves modifying the infinitive stem by either shortening or discarding the infinitive suffix, and then adding a person ending to the result. Conjugation class 3 verbs are further classified into two subclasses depending on the present tense person ending paradigm that they follow.

Conjugation class 3 subclass 1 verbs have a full paradigm of person endings and a long vowel ā in the first-person and second-person plural. As far as Standard Latvian is concerned, this subclass includes the verb zināt (note that in colloquial speech it is also used as a conjugation class 3 subclass 2 verb).

\[
rakst-i-t \text{ ‘to write’}, \text{ loc-i-ties ‘to bow, twist’}, \text{ liec-inā-t ‘to testify’}, \text{ zin-ā-t ‘to know’}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>rakst-u, lok-os, liec-in-u, zin-u</td>
<td>rakst-ām, lok-āmies, liec-in-ām, zin-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>rakst-i, lok-ies, liec-in-i, zin-i</td>
<td>rakst-āt, lok-āties, liec-in-āt, zin-āt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>rakst-a, lok-ās, liec-in-a, zin-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.27 The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 3 subclass 1 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 77)

Conjugation class 3 subclass 2 verbs lack third-person endings and take a short a in the first-person and second-person plural. The subclass permits words requiring palatalization in the present tense form.

\[
gul-ē-t \text{ ‘to sleep’}, \text{ dzied-ā-t ‘to sing’}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>gul-u, dzied-u</td>
<td>gul-am, dzied-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>gul-i, dzied-i</td>
<td>gul-at, dzied-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>gul-ø, dzied-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.28 The present indefinite forms of conjugation class 3 subclass 2 verbs (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 77)

Some verbs, such as pētīt ‘to research’, mērīt ‘to measure’, vēlēt ‘to elect, vote’, cerēt ‘to hope’, sargāt ‘to guard’, can inflect either as conjugation class 2 or conjugation class 3 verbs. In language practice, though, it is recommended not to use forms belonging to different conjugation classes within one formal paradigm.

The irregular verbs iet ‘to walk, go’, dot ‘to give’, būt ‘to be’ have, in part, suppletive person and tense forms and, in part, non-systemic person forms. Non-systemicity is only found in the present and past tense forms, the future tense forms being regular (see Section 2.5.3 on forming future tense forms).
**bū-t** ‘to be’, **ne-bū-t** ‘not to be’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>es-mu, ne-es-mu</td>
<td>es-am, ne-es-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>esi, ne-esi</td>
<td>es-at, ne-es-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ɪr, nav</td>
<td>bij-a, ne-bij-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.29 The present and past indefinite forms of the verbs *bū-t* ‘to be’ and *ne-bū-t* ‘not to be’ (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 78)

**ie-t** ‘to walk, go’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ej-u</td>
<td>ej-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ej-ø</td>
<td>ej-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ɪe-t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.30 The present and past indefinite forms of the verb *ie-t* ‘to walk, go’ (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 78)

**do-t** ‘to give’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>dod-u</td>
<td>dod-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dod-ø</td>
<td>dod-at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>dod-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.31 The present and past indefinite forms of the verb *do-t* ‘to give’ (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 78)

### 2.5.2 Person

In Latvian, the verbal category of person comprises three singular and three plural persons (e.g., Kalnača 2013a: 78).

Because linguistic communication, or a dialogue, is only possible between human beings the first- and second-person forms always express human actions (2.5.33a-b), with the exception of personifications (2.5.33c).

(2.5.33) a. *es ēdu, runāju, priecājos* ‘I eat, talk, rejoice’  
  b. *tu ēd, runā, priecājies* ‘you eat, talk, rejoice’  
  c. *Sniedziņ, usklausi mani!*  
     snow.DIM.VOC.M hear.IMP.2SG I.ACC  
     ‘Dear snow, hear me out!’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)

No such semantic restrictions apply to third-person forms, which can refer to literally any concrete or imagined actions performed by living things (humans, animals) and inanimate objects (such as natural phenomena, plants, abstract concepts, etc.) alike.
(2.5.34) a. **Mans brālis ir skolotājs un lauksaimnieks.**

‘My brother is a teacher and a farmer.’ (Ieva)

b. **Dzeņi apdzīvo dažādus mežus.**

‘Woodpeckers inhabit different forests.’ (www.lsm.lv)

c. **Rudens grima tendences demonstrē sistēmas ignoranci.**

‘Autumn makeup trends are all about ignoring the system.’ (Santa)

Latvian uses three different means for expressing verbal person:

1) **person endings** – in synthetic verb forms, this includes the so-called zero endings;
2) finite forms of **auxiliary verbs** – in analytical (periphrastic) verb forms (see Sections 2.5.3, 2.5.4);
3) **personal pronouns**, nouns or other words used as nouns – in contexts where verb forms lack person endings, usually, in the conditional, oblique, or debitive moods (see Section 2.5.4).

The synthetic forms of the Latvian verb have two main types of person endings:
1) non-reflexive endings;
2) reflexive endings.

A possible representation of the system of verbal person and number endings is shown in Tables 2.32–2.33 (non-reflexive verbs) and Tables 2.34–2.35 (reflexive verbs) (endings preceded by palatalization are displayed as separate exponents).

Tables 2.32–2.35 contain person endings of all conjugation classes, except for the irregular verbs *būt* ‘to be’, *iet* ‘to walk, go’, *dot* ‘to give’. The symbols used in the tables have the following meaning:
1 – conjugation class 1, subdivided into two subclasses:
1a – all conjugation class 1 verbs, excluding subclass 1b verbs, which take the ending -i in the second-person singular
2 – conjugation class 2
3 – conjugation class 3, subdivided into two further subclasses:
3a – conjugation class 3 subclass 1, 3b – all other conjugation class 3 verbs, i.e., conjugation class 3 subclass 2 verbs.

In Standard Latvian, the future indefinite second-person plural form permits two endings: -it (the original, older ending) and -iet for non-reflexive and -ities and -ieties for reflexive verbs, both being equally acceptable (see for example, Veidemane 2002: 414–415; Paegle 2003: 93; Kalnača 2013c: 520). Ozola (2005) points out that because
school grammars were promoting the use of the forms with -iet, -ieties in the second half of the 20th century these are more frequent in modern day speech. The paradigm of person endings presented below does not treat -it/-iet or -ities/-ieties as separate exponents.

Non-reflexive

**SG**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
<th>FUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1a</td>
<td>3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-'u, -u</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ø-ø</td>
<td>-ø</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ø-ø</td>
<td>-'ø, -ø</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.32** The person endings of the singular non-reflexive paradigm

**PL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
<th>FUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1, 3b</td>
<td>3a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-'am, -am</td>
<td>-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-at</td>
<td>-'at, -at</td>
<td>-āt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ø-ø</td>
<td>-'ø, -ø</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.33** The person endings of the plural non-reflexive paradigm

Apart from third-person SG/PL syncretism, the non-reflexive paradigm also shows syncretic forms in the present tense second-person and third-person singular for conjugation class 1 (partly) and conjugation class 2 verbs. In addition, the present tense second-person and third-person forms of conjugation class 2 verbs have a zero morph in place of an ending and the present tense suffix -j-. This results in the 1SG, 1PL, 2PL forms domāju ‘I think’, domājam ‘we think’, domājat ‘you think’, and the 2SG, 3SG/PL syncretic form domā ‘he/she thinks, they think’.

**Reflexive**

**SG**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
<th>FUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-'os, -os</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-ies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-'as, -as</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.34** The person endings of the singular reflexive paradigm
Reflexive verbs not only have a syncretic third-person SG/PL in all tenses, but also future tense 2SG and 3SG/PL forms ending in -ies.

The use of verb person depends on animacy and is based on the opposition animate / inanimate, which also underlies the division of verbs into three-person and single-person words. It is usually the case that all three persons are possible for verbs expressing actions performed by living beings – humans or (less frequently) animals.

(2.5.35) skriet ‘to run’, ēst ‘to eat’, smaidīt ‘to smile’, nirt ‘to dive’, domāt ‘to think’, runāt ‘to speak’, audzināt ‘to bring up (e.g., children)’, laimēt ‘to win’

Actions by inanimate objects (in the broadest sense – including natural phenomena and abstract concepts), on the contrary, are almost invariably expressed in the third person, i.e., by single-person verbs.

(2.5.36) birt ‘to drop (no object), spatter’, mirkt ‘to soak’, plukt ‘to lose color’, plīst ‘to break (no object), dīgt ‘to sprout’, līt ‘to pour (no object), snigt ‘to snow’, tumst ‘to grow dark’

Graudi > bir st   apcirkņos.
grain.NOM.PL.M pour.PRS.3  grain_tank.LOC.PL.M
‘Grain pours into grain tanks.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

Actions involving human beings as experiencers are also mostly third-person.

(2.5.37) sāpēt ‘to ache’, smelgt ‘to nag, to smart’, kniest ‘to tickle (no object)’, niezēt ‘to itch’, laimēties ‘to have luck’, gribēties ‘to want’, veikties ‘to succeed’

Cauruma nav, zobs > sāp!  
cavity.GEN.M not.be.PRS.3 tooth.NOM.M ache.PRS.3
‘There is no cavity but the tooth is aching!’ (www.tvnet.lv)

Very rarely single-person verbs are used in the first or second person – mainly to create or enhance poetic imagery in poetry and prose.

(2.5.38) jūs > man > sāpat  
you.NOM.PL I.DAT  ache.PRS.2PL

Cauruma nav, not.be.PRS.3
same as laughter.NOM.PL.M
‘You pain me
the same as laughter’ (Viks)
Likewise, actions characteristic of animals but not humans are usually in the third person.

(2.5.39) **riet** ‘to bark’, **naudēt** ‘to meow’, **blēt** ‘to bleat’, **maut** ‘to moo’, **lakt** ‘to lap’, **zviegt** ‘to neigh’, **pīkstēt** ‘to cheep’, **nurdēt** ‘to growl’

Such verbs are sometimes figuratively applied to humans, but this type of usage tends to be stylistically restricted to colloquial speech or slang (cf. examples (2.5.40) a and b).

(2.5.40) a. Zirgs **zviedz** ar augstī paceltu galvu.
   horse.nom.m neigh.PRS.3 with highly elevate.ins.f head.ins.f
   ‘The horse neighs with its head held high.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

   b. Par aktieru ākstīšanos **zviedz**
   about actor.gen.pl.m tomfoolery.acc.f neigh.PRS.3
   lielākā daļa skatītāju.
   major.cmp.nom.f part.nom.f audience.gen.pl.m
   ‘The majority of the audience laughs at the actors making fools of themselves.’ (Diena)

2.5.3 **Tense**

The verbal category of tense refers to the unfolding of actions in time. In Latvian, the verbal category of tense comprises six tense forms – three indefinite or simple tenses (present indefinite, past indefinite, future indefinite) and three perfect or complex tenses (present perfect, past perfect, future perfect) (Skujina 2007: 203).

Indefinite and perfect tense forms differ as to their internal structure. Indefinite tenses are synthetic, formed by means of suffixes and various kinds of morphophonological operations (for the most part, sound alternations).

The internal makeup of **present indefinite** forms is discussed in the description of conjugation classes and subclasses above.

**Past indefinite** forms are also, to a degree, sensitive to conjugation classes. The past indefinite forms of irregular verbs are provided in the description of conjugation classes above. The past forms of **conjugation class 2 and 3** verbs are constructed by attaching the suffix -j- and a person ending to the infinitive stem.

**tēr-ē-t** ‘to spend (money)’ (conjugation class 2), **las-ī-t** ‘to read’, **māc-ī-ties** ‘to learn, study’ (conjugation class 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>tēr-ē-j-u, las-i-j-u, māc-i-j-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tēr-ē-j-i, las-i-j-i, māc-i-j-īes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tēr-ē-j-a, las-i-j-a, māc-i-j-ās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.36  The past indefinite forms of conjugation class 2 and 3 verbs
Constructing the past form of conjugation class 1 verbs may consist of attaching a person ending to an unmodified infinitive stem (2.5.41a) or it may additionally involve apophony (2.5.41b) or fronting (2.5.41c).

(2.5.41) INF – PST 1SG
   a. *augt ‘to grow’, *meet ‘to throw’, *vest ‘to drive, carry’, *vilkt ‘to draw’,
      *pirkt ‘to buy’, *kāpt ‘to climb, ascend’, *glābt ‘to save’, *tit ‘to wrap’, *pīt
      ‘to braid, weave’ – *augu ‘(I) grew’, *metu ‘(I) threw’, *vedu ‘(I) drove, carried’,
      *vilku ‘(I) drew’, *pirku ‘(I) bought’, *kāpu ‘(I) climbed, ascended’,
      *glābu ‘(I) saved’, *tinu ‘(I) wrapped’, *pinu ‘(I) braided, weaved’
   b. *dzert ‘to drink’, *svērt ‘to weigh’, *liet ‘to pour’, *smiet ‘to laugh’, *kraut
      ‘to load’, *plaut ‘to mow’ – *dzēru ‘(I) drank’, *svēru ‘(I) weighed’, *lēju
      ‘(I) poured’, *smēju ‘(I) laughed’, *krāvu ‘(I) loaded’, *rāvu ‘(I) pulled’
   c. *saukt ‘to call’, *braukt ‘to drive, go (to)’, *lūgt ‘to ask’, *kliegt ‘to scream’ –
      *saucu ‘(I) called’, *braucu ‘(I) drove, went (to)’, *lūdzu ‘(I) asked’, *kliedzu
      ‘(I) screamed’

Some verbs, such as *vīt ‘to weave, wind, twine’, *rit ‘to gobble, swallow’, *mit ‘to
exchange’, etc., take a root-internal i – ij alternation to prevent vowel clustering at
the root and ending junction.

(2.5.42) INF – PST 1SG
   *vīt ‘to weave, wind, twine’, *rit ‘to gobble, swallow’, *mit ‘to exchange’ –
   *viju ‘(I) weaved, wound, twined’, *riju ‘(I) gobbled, swallowed’, *miju
   ‘(I) exchanged’

In addition, a number of verbs take the suffix -j- in past tense forms.

(2.5.43) INF – PST 1SG
   *klāt ‘to cover’, *rāt ‘to rebuke’, *plāt ‘to flatten, thin’ – *klāju ‘(I) covered’, *rāju
   ‘(I) rebuked’, *plāju ‘(I) flattened, thinned’

*vilk-t ‘to draw’, *tī-t ‘to wrap’, *smie-ties ‘to laugh’, *plau-t ‘to mow’, *sauk-t ‘to call’, *klā-t
‘to cover’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PST</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>vilk-u, tin-u, smēj-os, plāv-u, sauc-u, klā-j-u</td>
<td>vilk-ām, tin-ām, smēj-āmies, plāv-ām, sauc-ām, klā-j-ām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>vilk-i, tin-i, smēj-ies, plāv-i, sauc-i, klā-j-i</td>
<td>vilk-āt, tin-āt, smēj-āties, plāv-āt, sauc-āt, klā-j-āt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>vilk-a, tin-a, smēj-ās, plāv-a, sauc-a, klā-j-a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.37 The past indefinite forms of conjugation class 1 verbs

The verbs gulties ‘to lie down’ (2.5.44a) and plest ‘to spread’ (2.5.44b) permit two
parallel sets of past tense forms. It is not recommended to fuse the parallel paradigms
together in language use.
(2.5.44) a. gul-ās and gūl-ās ‘lay down’
   b. plet-a and plēt-a ‘spread’

The future indefinite of all verbs is derived in the same manner – by attaching
the future tense suffix -š- in 1SG and -s- in all other persons and numbers to an
unmodified infinitive stem. In Standard Latvian, the future indefinite second-person
plural permits two alternative endings: -it and -iet (see Section 2.5.2 for details).

smie-ties ‘to laugh’ (conjugation class 1), tēr-ē-t ‘to spend (money)’ (conjugation
class 2), las-ī-t ‘to read’ (conjugation class 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>FUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>smie-š-os, tēr-ē-š-u, las-ī-š-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>smie-s-ies, tēr-ē-s-i, las-ī-s-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>smie-s-ies, tēr-ē-s-ø, las-ī-s-ø</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.38 The future indefinite forms of all conjugation classes

Conjugation class 1 verbs with a root-final t, d, s, or z take the interfix -ī- between
the root and the future tense suffix to avoid unpronounceable consonant clusters (see
section 1.1.3).

(2.5.45) INF – FUT 1SG, 1PL
   a. vērs-t – vērt-(i)-š-u, vērt-(i)-s-im ‘to direct, turn – (I) will direct, turn,
      (we) will direct, turn’
   b. aus-t – aud-(i)-š-u, aud-(i)-s-im ‘to weave – (I) will weave, (we) will
      weave’
   c. nes-t – nes-(i)-š-u, nes-(i)-s-im ‘to carry – (I) will carry, (we) will carry’
   d. lauz-t – lauz-(i)-š-u, lauz-(i)-s-im ‘to break – (I) will break, (we) will break’

Perfect tense forms are analytical, conjugation class-independent, and consist of
the auxiliary verb būt ‘to be’ in a finite form and a declinable past active participle
inflected for number and gender.

dzedāt ‘to sing’, smieties ‘to laugh’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>PRS</th>
<th>PST</th>
<th>FUT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dziedāj-is (M), -usi (F) ‘sung’, smēj-ies (M), -usies (F) ‘laughed’</td>
<td>dziedāj-usi (M), -ušas (F) ‘sung’, smēj-ušies (M), -ušās (F) ‘laughed’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>esmu ‘have’</td>
<td>biju ‘had’</td>
<td>būšu ‘will have’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>esi</td>
<td>biji</td>
<td>būsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>bija</td>
<td>būs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.39 The paradigm of perfect tense forms (the indicative mood)
In addition, Latvian also has a special kind of past perfect indicative (used, for the most part, in colloquial speech, and sometimes in literary and mass media texts) composed of the past tense form of the auxiliary verb tikt ‘to get’ (in all persons) and a declinable past active participle (Kalnača 2013c: 479–480):

(2.5.46) a. Par visu to es tiku about all.ACC that.ACC I.NOM get.AUX.PST.1SG jau rakstījis 2013. gada novembrī. already write.PTCP.NOM.M 2013 year.GEN.M November.LOC.M

‘I had already written about all this in November 2013.’ (www.satori.lv)

b. Savus gadus viņa nekad netika own.ACC.PL.M year.ACC.PL.M she.NOM never not_get.AUX.PST.3 slēpusi.
hide.PTCP.NOM.F

‘She had never made a secret of her age.’ (R. Ezera)

c. leprieķējā gadā liktenis atkal stilisti previous.LOC.M year.LOC.M fate.NOM.M again stylist.ACC.F netika saudzējīs.
not_get.AUX.PST.3 spare.PTCP.NOM.M

‘Last year, again, fate had not been kind to the stylist.’ (Kas Jauns)

d. Pa visiem tiem gadiem, kopš viņi dzīvo mūsu mājā, ne reizes netikām Armīnu šeit redzējušas...
NEG.PTCL time.GEN.F not_get.AUX.PST.1PL Armīns.ACC.M here see.PTCP.NOM.PL.F

‘In all these years that they have been living in our house we hadn’t seen Armīns here, not once.’ (G. Priede)

dziedāt ‘to sing’, smieties ‘to laugh’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>tiku ‘(I) had’</td>
<td>dziedāj-is (M), -usi (F) ‘sung’; tikām ‘(we) had’; dziedāj-uši (M), -ušas (F) ‘sung’; smēj-ies (M), -usies (F) ‘laughed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tiki ‘(you) had’</td>
<td>tikāt ‘(you) had’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tika ‘(he/she/it) had’</td>
<td>tika ‘(they) had’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.40 Past perfect indicative with the auxiliary verb tikt ‘to get’

The above forms express the so-called dynamic perfect as opposed to the static perfect of the basic present and past perfect. The difference in meaning springs from the auxiliary tikt ‘to get’, which stands for processes as distinct from the verb būt ‘to be’, which represents states. Although, in Latvian, these forms have no counterparts
in other tenses and moods, similar variability of perfect forms and meanings based on the lexical meaning of auxiliaries exists in the passive voice (see Section 2.5.5).

The meaning of any tense form can vary depending on contextual use. Latvian draws a basic distinction between indefinite (simple) and perfect (complex) tense forms. The former characterize an action relative to the moment of speaking or another action but do not provide an evaluation of its resultativeness. The characteristic common feature of the latter, on the contrary, is that they express resultativeness, i.e., an evaluation of the consequences of a previously performed action relative to the present moment (present perfect) or a moment in the past (past perfect) or future (future perfect) (Skujiņa 2007: 336). A perfect tense form always expresses a completed action irrespective of whether there is a verbal prefix (see Section 2.5.8 on verbal prefixes and aspect).

The basic meanings of tense forms in Latvian can be summarized as follows:

**THE PRESENT INDEFINITE**

1. The **primary meaning** – an action taking place at the moment of speaking.

   (2.5.47) Divas sievietes sēž uz soliņa un nerunā.
   two.NOM.PL.F woman.NOM.PL.F sit.PRS.3 on bench.GEN.M and not_speak.PRS.3
   ‘Two women are sitting on the bench and are not talking (to each other).’
   (N. Ikstena)

2. Generalized time

   (2.5.48) Laukos jau tā ir: visi kopā strādā, un visi kopā iet ēst.
   countryside.LOC.PL.M PTCL so be.PRS.3 all.NOM.PL.M together work.PRS.3 and all.NOM.PL.M together go.PRS.3 eat.INF
   ‘That’s the way things are in the countryside: everyone works together and then everyone goes and eats together.’ (Ieva)

3. Future time

   (2.5.49) Uz Gruziju pēc nedēļas dodamies pirmo reizi mūžā.
   to Georgia.ACC.F after week.GEN.F leave_for.PRS.1PL first.ACC.F time.ACC.F lifetime.LOC.M
   ‘We are going to Georgia in a week’s time for the first time in our lives.’
   (Diena)

4. Narrative present (*praesens historicum*), an entire text or a segment of a narrative being expressed in the present indefinite (in fiction, fairy tales, tales, business texts, etc.)
One day he goes fishing on the lake. The fisherman sits down on a stumpy, broad barge mooring bollard, gets a can of worms and a book out of a canvas bag. He baits a worm, casts the fishing rod, and immerses himself in reading. Fish pull the bobber. If a roach gets caught he has to throw it back into the lake. Then he lands one perch, another.’ (Dz. Sodums)

5. Present perfect meaning

But dear Madam, hasn’t it occurred to you that when that person finds out the amount you have to pay they will worry even more?’ (www.apollo.lv)

6. Adjusting to the contextual meaning of surrounding tense forms (usually in subordinate clauses).

Several times he saw in a dream how she’d stand in the moonlight with one hand lifted, but when he’d wake up he’d never remember it.’ (R. Ezerā)

THE PAST INDEFINITE

1. The primary meaning – an action that took place prior to the moment of speaking.

Everybody sang along [with the musicians].’ (J. Joņevs)

2. Generalized time

When the horse took the wolf to court, the tail and mane were all that remained.’ (a Latvian proverb)
3. Narrative past, an entire text or a segment of a narrative being set in the past indefinite

(2.5.55) Teātra primadonas laulības ar desmit gudus jaunāku aktieri, kas pabalī spēlēja otrā un trešā plāna lomīnas, izvērtās par sensāciju, protams, islaicīgu. Viņam glaimoja sievas slava un izcilie tituli. Savukārt viņa jaunā viņa klatbūtnē kļuva vēl spožāka, lai gan viņas spožumam arī lidz šim trūka robežu. Pasaule nebija lomas, ko viņa nespētu nospēlēt.

‘The marriage of the leading actress to an undistinguished supporting actor ten years her junior caused a sensation – short-lived, of course. He was flattered by his wife’s fame and distinguished titles. She became even more brilliant with a young husband by her side, not that her brilliance had been limited in any way before. There wasn’t a role in the whole world she couldn’t play.’ (R. Ezera)

4. Present perfect meaning

(2.5.56) Pētot dokumentus, Latvijas valsts mežu speciālisti noskaidrojuši, ka kādreiz te bija (= be. aux.prs.3 be.ptcp.nom.pl.f) parkveida pļavas ar ozoliem.

‘When studying the documents, the specialists from Latvia’s State Forests found out that the area was once occupied by park-like meadows with oak trees.’ (www.delfi.lv)

5. Past perfect meaning

(2.5.57) Kad apprecējāmies (= bijām appreciate. past.1pl), when marry.pst.1pl (= be.aux.pst.1pl marry.ptcp.nom.pl.m) sākām dzīvot Rūjienā.

‘When we got married we started living in Rūjiena.’ (Ieva)

THE FUTURE INDEFINITE

1. The primary meaning – an action that will take place after the moment of speaking.

(2.5.58) Nav pat skaidribas, vai jelkad viņi viens otru vēl redzēs. if ever they.nom.pl.m one.nom.m another.acc.m again see.fut.3

‘It’s not even clear that they will see each other ever again.’ (N. Ikstena)

2. Generalized time

(2.5.59) Lēnāk brauksi, tālāk tiksi. slow go.fut.2sg farther get.fut.2sg

‘Travel slower, get farther.’ (a Latvian proverb equivalent to “Slow and steady wins the race.”)
3. Narrative future, an entire text or a segment of a narrative being set in the future indefinite

(2.5.60) “Tā. Tūlīt jūs dosities klasē. Es iešu līdzi un stādīšu jūs priekšā. Cerēsim, ka viss noritēs labi.”

“So. In a moment, you will enter the classroom. I will accompany you and present you. Let’s hope all will go well.” (A. Eglītis)

4. Modal function, expressing doubt (in the present), also in polite expressions, apologies, etc.

(2.5.61) a. Vakars it kā jauks, bet laikam

evening.NOM.M as if fine.NOM.M but probably

būšu (= esmu) slīma.

be.COP.FUT.1SG (= be.COP.PRS.1SG) ill.NOM.F

‘It’s a fine evening, so it would seem, but I think I’m going to be ill.’

(b. Neko tuvāk laikam nevarēšu

nothing.ACC closer probably not_be_able.FUT.1SG

jums paskaidrot.

you.DAT.PL explain.INF

‘I think I will be unable to explain anything further to you.’ (G. Priede)

5. Expressing a categorical command or a threat (predominantly, in colloquial speech in conjunction with a personal pronoun in the dative case, i.e., ethical dative).

(2.5.62) Tu man to Ernestu neprecēsi!

you.NOM.SG I.EMPH that.ACC.M Ernests.ACC.M not_marry.FUT.2SG

‘I won’t allow you to marry that Ernests!’ (V. Belševica)

6. Future perfect meaning

(2.5.63) Mēs arī tā darīsim,

tiklīdz atpūtīšos (= būšu atpūties)

as soon as rest.FUT.1SG (= be.AUX.FUT.1SG rest.PTCP.NOM.M)

no saviem pēdējiem darbiem.

from own.DAT.PL.M last.DAT.PL.M job.DAT.PL.M

‘We will do the same as soon as I recover (= will have recovered) from my last jobs.’ (C)

THE PRESENT PERFECT

1. The primary meaning – pointing to the consequences of a previously completed action in the present, expressing an action state.

(2.5.64) a. Aktīvā satiksme [pilsētā] liecina,

ka darba diena ir sākusies.

that work.GEN.M day.NOM.F be.AUX.PRS.3 begin.PTCP.NOM.F

‘Busy traffic [in the city] shows that the work day has begun.’ (Ieva)
b.  

\[ \text{Esmu noguris, gribētos visu aizmirst.} \]

'I'm tired, I'd like to forget everything.' (www.tvnet.lv)

2. Generalized time

(2.5.65) 

\[ \text{Rakstniekam nekad mūžā nav bijis savas dzīvokļa.} \]

'The writer has never had an apartment of his own during his life.'

(L. Volkova)

3. Narrative tense, an entire text or a segment of a narrative being set in the present perfect

(2.5.66) 


'Have to pay... The words sprang to mind as if out of nowhere. Have to pay... With what and how? Where and when did I read them? And in what connection? Yes, he has paid dearly. Got tired paying. Became immersed in debt servitude. And what's next – another twenty years of the same – up until retirement?' (R. Ezera)

THE PAST PERFECT

1. The primary meaning – evaluating the consequences of a completed action at a point in the past.

(2.5.67) 

\[ \text{Šo tekstu es izlasīju brīdī, kad jau biju uzrakstijusi par visām režisora izrādēm.} \]

'When I read this text I had already written about all the director's productions.' (I. Zole)

2. Generalized time

(2.5.68) 

\[ \text{Dzīvojot Amerikā, mums vienmēr bija svarīga Latvija.} \]

'Living in America, Latvia had always been important to us.'

(Latvijas Avīze)
3. Narrative tense (small fragments of a text)

(2.5.69) Viņas skatienam, viņas balsij nebija nekādas varas pār Askolda izjūtām. Viņa bija izcīnījusi uzvaru un ieguvusi tiesības uz šo cilvēku. Viņa bija to karsti vēlējusies un gribējusi par katru cenu, lūgusies un pazemojusies, pieprasījusi un uzstājusi.

‘Her glance, her voice had no power over Askolds’ feelings. She had won a victory and gained the right to this man. She had wished it ardently and wanted it at all costs, she had begged and humiliated herself, demanded and insisted.’ (R. Ezera)

THE FUTURE PERFECT

1. The primary meaning – evaluating the consequences of a completed action at a point in the future.

(2.5.70) Kad iznāks žurnāls, aktrise jau būs nospēlējusi

actress.nom.f already be.aux.fut.3 perform.ptcp.nom.f

galveno lomu main.acc.f role.acc.f

loti sarežģītā pirmizrādē.

very difficult.loc.f premiere.loc.f

‘When the magazine comes out, the actress will have already played the lead role in a very difficult premiere.’ (Santa)

2. Modal function (present perfect meaning), also in polite expressions, apologies, etc.

(2.5.71) a. Par pozitīvo kalcija un D vitamīna

about positive.acc.f calcium.gen.m and D vitamin.gen.m

ietekmi uz organismu reti kurš

effect.acc.f on body.acc.m rarely who.nom.m

nebūs dzirdējis vai lasījis.

not.be.aux.fut.3 hear.ptcp.nom.m or read.ptcp.nom.m

‘There won’t be many who will not have heard or read about the positive effects of calcium and Vitamin D on the human body.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. Vai es būšu ko sajaucis?

Q I.nom be.aux.fut.1sg what.acc mix_up.ptcp.nom.m

‘Have I gotten something wrong?’ (G. Priede)

In the grammatical system of Latvian, tense relations find their clearest reflection in the active indicative – as a totality, or a complex, of symmetrical indefinite and perfect tense forms in the present, past, and future with diverse contextual uses (Paegle 2003: 97). This complex of tense forms, then, can be viewed as the center of the functional system of verbal tense forms (Paulauskienė 1994: 326). Non-indicative (oblique, conditional, and debitive mood) tense forms, passive voice tense forms
as well as participial forms of the verb are, in this sense, peripheral. Their basic function is to convey modal, voice, and sequence meanings rather than to encode tense relations.

Tenses expressed by verb forms in the oblique, debitive, and conditional moods are usually construed relative to contextual indicative mood tense forms in terms of simultaneity, anteriority, and posteriority (see Section 2.5.4). Likewise, verb participles can express either simultaneity (present participles, partly declinable and indeclinable participles) or anteriority (past participles).

The active and passive voices both have six tense forms in the indicative mood and similar systems of tense forms in the oblique and conditional moods (see Section 2.5.5). The meanings and uses of corresponding active and passive voice tense forms are also much the same. Since the principal function of passive voice forms is to name actions whose agent is unspecified or unimportant expressing tense meanings should be considered peripheral to such forms.

### 2.5.4 Mood

The category of mood expresses modality as well as the speaker’s attitude towards the contents of an utterance or the reality of an action (Skujiņa 2007: 173). In Latvian, the verbal category of mood comprises five moods: the indicative, oblique, conditional, debitive, and imperative moods. With regard to the reality or non-reality of actions the moods are classified as follows (Paegle 2003: 113):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Realis</th>
<th>Irrealis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Indicative</em></td>
<td><em>Oblique</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Conditional</em></td>
<td><em>Debitive</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imperative</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Latvian, the **indicative mood** is grammatically unmarked, actions considered to be realis are expressed by means of the indefinite and perfect indicative tense forms (see the description of the category of tense in Section 2.5.3). Irrealis moods, on the contrary, are grammatically marked: the suffix -ot, -oties is used to form the oblique, the suffix -tu, -tos – the conditional, the prefix jā– the debitive, and the ending -iet – the imperative mood.

**Oblique mood**

The oblique mood is used to renarrate information originating from another source (2.5.72a-b) or indicate that the speaker is unsure as to whether it is actually true (2.5.72c-d) (Skujiņa 2007: 55). Oblique sentences often contain a *verbum dicendi* (construed literally or figuratively) signaling that the text is being renarrated, i.e., that it involves second-hand information.
a. Sieviete noprasīja, kurš no bērībās atceroties kādu skaitāmpantiņu.

‘The woman asked who could remember a nursery rhyme from their childhood.’ (C)

b. Viņa atteicās [...] starpgadījumu komentēt, sakot, ka vispirms konsultēšoties ar juristu.

‘She refused [...] to comment on the incident, saying that she would consult her lawyer first.’ (C)

c. Alma pati stāstīja, ka viņai esot jūras zilas acis.

‘Alma said so herself, that she had sea blue eyes.’ (I. Ābele)

d. Šogad būšot lotī silta

‘The meteorologists are forecasting a very warm summer this year.’ (Kas Jauns)

In addition, the oblique mood is sometimes used to show that the speaker feels surprised at something while also being ironic or disapproving about it (i.e., mirativity, see DeLancey 1997, 2012; Aikhenvald 2004, 2012; Kalviša 2018 for detail).

a. Un tās esot draudzenes!

‘And they’re supposed to be friends!’ (G. Priede)

b. Un grīda!

‘And the floor! That’s supposed to be parquet! It’s pitch black!’ (A. Eglītis)

The quotative semantics of oblique forms is often considered an obstacle to viewing the oblique as a verb mood (see, e.g., Holvoet 2007: 87). However, since Latvian oblique forms are also used to express doubt about the truth of what is said (e.g., examples (2.5.73)), which is a typical modal meaning, and, in addition, it is not uncommon for both meanings (referencing second-hand information and conveying modality) to co-occur in one sentence (see examples (2.5.72c–d)), the oblique can be classified as a verb mood without causing any inconsistencies as to the use of forms in the language.
The oblique forms are derived by attaching the suffix -ot, -oties to the present or future stem of a verb.

(2.5.74) a. INF – PRS – OBL PRS
   *darī-t* – *dar-u* – *dar-ot* ‘to do – (I) do – reportedly do(es)’
   *cel-ties* – *cel-os* – *cel-oties* ‘to rise – (I) rise – reportedly rise(s)’

b. INF – FUT – OBL FUT
   *darī-t* – *darīš-u* – *darī-š-ot* ‘to do – (I) will do – will reportedly do’
   *cel-ties* – *celš-os* – *celš-oties* ‘to rise – (I) will rise – will reportedly rise’

The perfect oblique forms involve the auxiliary verb *esot* ‘reportedly am / is / are’ (PRS) or *būšot* ‘will reportedly be’ (FUT) and a declinable past active participle.

(2.5.75) a. **Visi sacīja** –
   
   | that.NOM.M | be.COP.OBL.PRS | be.PTCP.NOM.M |
   | prātīgi | no | vecās | dāmas | pūses. |
   | prudent | no | old.GEN.F | lady.GEN.F | side.GEN.F |
   ‘Everyone said – it was prudent on the part of the old lady.’ (C)

b. **Viņš samaksāšot parādu pēc tam,**
   
   | kad | būšot | sanēmis | plāno |
   | when | be.AUX.OBL.FUT | receive.PTCP.NOM.M | plan.PTCP.ACC.F |
   | money.ACC.F |
   ‘He says he will repay the debt when, as he says, he will have received the expected amount of money.’ (C)

Since the oblique mood lacks person forms, person meanings are derived from clause subjects.

(2.5.76) a. **es darot, tu darot** ‘I reportedly do, you reportedly do’

b. **mēs darīšot, viņi darīšot** ‘we will reportedly do, they will reportedly do’

c. **es esot gājis, tu esot gājis** ‘I have reportedly gone, you have reportedly gone’

d. **mēs būšot gājuši, viņi būšot gājuši** ‘we will reportedly have gone, they will reportedly have gone’

The oblique mood has the following paradigm of forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td><em>dar-ot</em> ‘reportedly do(es)’, <em>cel-oties</em> ‘reportedly rise(s)’</td>
<td><em>es-ot</em> ‘have / has reportedly’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td><em>darīš-ot</em> ‘will reportedly do’, <em>celš-oties</em> ‘will reportedly rise’</td>
<td><em>būš-ot</em> ‘will have reportedly’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.41 The paradigm of oblique forms
The auxiliary verb *esot* ‘reportedly am / is / are’ is often omitted in the present perfect oblique, especially in longer stretches of text, in tales, fairy tales, etc.


‘Grandfather had heard a lot about the year 1919 from his father, who had spent the Bolshevik period together with Morbergs in a house opposite Bastejkalns. One night they heard someone knocking commandingly on the door. Morbergs put on his winter coat with the fox-fur collar, then took it off again and gave it to Ulste. It turned out though that the new government had other intentions – confiscation of Morbergs’ apartment and belongings. The rescued coat proved useful to Morbergs later on.’ (Z. Skujiņš)

In colloquial speech and literary texts, the present perfect oblique negative is sometimes formed by merging the auxiliary verb *neesot* ‘reportedly have / has not’ with a declinable past active participle into one combined form.

(2.5.78) *neesot teicis* (M)/-*usi* (F) ‘reportedly have / has not told’, *neesot rakstījis* (M)/-*usi* (F) ‘reportedly have / has not written’, *neesot devis* (M)/-*usi* (F) ‘reportedly have / has not given’

→

*neteicis* (M)/-*kusi* (F) ‘having not told / without telling’, *nerakstījis* (M)/-*usi* (F) ‘having not written / without writing’, *nedevis* (M)/-*usi* (F) ‘having not given / without giving’

(2.5.79) a. *Kad mājas saimnieks teicis,*

| lai | [kaimini] | savācot | [izbērtās] |
| SUB | [neighbor] | clear.OBL.PRS | [scatter] |
| smiltis], | [tie esot] | teikuši: |
| sand] | [they be.AUX.OBL.PRS] | say.PTCP.NOM.PL.M |
| jā, bet | nevākuši | (= *neesot* |
| yes but | not_clear.PTCP.NOM.PL.M | (= | not_be.AUX.OBL.PRS |
| vākuši). | clear.PTCP.NOM.PL.M) |

‘When the house owner told [the neighbors] to clear [the scattered sand] away, [they reportedly] said: yes, but didn’t.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

b. *Lai gan ekspedīcija kopumā noritējusi veiksmīgi,*

| neizticis | (= *neesot* |
| not_be_without.PTCP.NOM.M | (= | not_be.AUX.OBL.PRS |
| izticis) | arī be | starpgadījumiem. |
| be_without.PTCP.NOM.M | also without | incident.GEN.PL.M |

‘Although, on the whole, the expedition has gone well, it has not been without incidents.’ (Latvijas Avīze)
In relation to indicative tense forms appearing in the same context, the present indefinite oblique expresses simultaneity, the future indefinite oblique – posteriority, the present perfect oblique – resultativeness of a previously completed action at the time of the main event of the clause, and the future perfect oblique – resultativeness of a completed action at a point prior to another future event.

**Conditional mood**
The conditional mood is used to name a desirable or an imaginary, unreal action (Skujiņa 2007: 440).

(2.5.80) a. *Vecākiem bija ļoti svarīgi,*

\[
\text{lai mēs ar māsu mācītos tālāk.}
\]

SUB we.NOM with sister.INS.F study.COND further

'It was very important to our parents that I and my sister continue our education.' (Ieva)

b. *Filipam likās, itin kā viņu kāds novērotu.*

Philip.DAT.M seem.PST as_if he.ACC someone.NOM.M watch.COND

'Philip felt as if someone was watching him.' (A. Eglītis)

The conditional mood is also used in different kinds of exclamations conveying wishes (2.5.81) and in polite expressions, including polite requests (2.5.82) and (2.5.83).

(2.5.81) a. *Kaut Anete būtu šeit līdzās!*

PTCL Anete.NOM.F be.COND here by_side

'I wish Anete was here by my side!' (C)

b. *Būtu es to toreiz zinājis!*

be.AUX.COND I.NOM it.ACC then know.PTCP.NOM.M

'If only I knew it then!' (J. Joņevs)

(2.5.82) a. *Labdien, vai Dairis būtu jau mājās?*

good.AFTERNOM Q Dairis.NOM.M be.COND already home.LOC.PL.F

'Good afternoon, is Dairis home yet?' (G. Priede)

b. *Būtu labāk, ja jūs ietu prom.*

be.COND better if you.NOM.PL go.COND away

'It would be better if you left.' (Dz. Sodums)

Requests phrased as negative conditionals are perceived as less direct and particularly polite.

(2.5.83) a. *Vai tu nevarētu palīdzēt žurnālistiem vadīt sporta raidījumu?*

Q you.NOM not_be_able.COND help.INF journalist.DAT.PL.M anchor.INF sport.GEN.M program.ACC.M

'You couldn’t help the journalists anchor the sports program, could you?' (www.sportacentrs.lv)
b. *Dairīt, vai tu neuznāktu pabeigt*

Dairis.DIM.VOC Q you.NOM.SG not_come.COND finish.INF

[krāsot] to gridu?

[paint.INF] that.ACC.F floor.ACC.F

‘Dairis, I don’t suppose you could come upstairs and finish [painting] that floor, could you?’ (G. Priede)

The conditional tense forms are constructed by attaching the suffix -tu, -tos to the infinitive stem of a verb.

(2.5.84) INF – COND
darī-t – darī-tu ‘to do – would do’,
cel-ties – cel-tos ‘to rise – would rise’

The present perfect conditional tense is formed by combining the auxiliary verb būtu ‘would be’ with a declinable past active participle.

(2.5.85) *Ja mūs nebūtu mācījis tik labs*

if we.acc not_be.aux.cond teach.PTCP.NOM.M such good.NOM.M režisors,
director.NOM.M

mēs nebūtu tik labs [aktieru] kurss.

‘If we hadn’t been trained by such a good director we wouldn’t have become such a good class [of actors].’ (Santa)

Just as the oblique forms, the conditional tense forms are not marked for person and person meanings are therefore derived from clause subjects.

(2.5.86) a. *es darītu* ‘I would do’
b. *tu darītu* ‘you would do’
c. *mēs būtu darījuši* ‘we would have done’
d. *jūs būtu cēlušies* ‘you (PL) would have risen’

The conditional mood has the following paradigm of forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>darī-t ‘to do’, cel-ties ‘to rise’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tense</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.42 The paradigm of conditional forms

In the present perfect conditional negative, just as in the present perfect oblique negative, the auxiliary verb nebūtu ‘would not have’ and the past active participle are sometimes fused into one combined form, mostly in colloquial speech and literary texts.
nebūtu aizgājuši ‘wouldn’t have gone’, nebūtu sācis ‘wouldn’t have started’ → neaizgājuši ‘having not gone / without going’, nesācis ‘having not started / without starting’

Mēs būtu sadraudzējušies,
ja neaizgājuši
if not_go.ptcp.pl.m kats uz savu fakultāti [studēt].
go.ptcp.pl.m each to own.faculty.acc.f [study]
‘We would have become friends if we hadn’t each gone to our own faculty
[to study].’ (G. Priede)

Relative to indicative tense forms present in the same context, the present indefinite conditional may indicate either simultaneity or posteriority. The present perfect conditional, on the other hand, is used to express resultativeness.

**Debitive mood**

The debitive mood is used to name a necessary, obligatory action, i.e., an action that must be performed (Skujiņa 2007: 416).

(2.5.88) a. Es zinu, ka man ir jāmaksā,
I.nom know.prs.1sg that I.dat be.aux.prs.3 deb pay
un es maksāšu.
‘I know I must pay and I will.’ (C)

b. Man bija jāatgūst miers.
I.dat be.aux.pst.3 deb recover peace.nom.m
‘I had to recover peace of mind.’ (C)

c. Būs jāaiziet pie ārsta,
be.aux.fut.3 deb go to doctor.gen.m
zāles beidzas.
‘I will have to go to the doctor, I am running out of pills.’ (C)

The debitive forms are analytical and consist of a tense form of the auxiliary verb būt ‘to be’ and the debitive form of a lexical verb derived by attaching the prefix jā- to the third-person present indefinite of the verb.

(2.5.89) INF – PRS – DEB
dar-ī-t – dar-a – ir jā-dar-a ‘to do – (he / she / it / they) do – must do’
cel-ties – cel-as – ir jācelas. ‘to rise – (he / she / it / they) rise – must rise’

The verb būt ‘to be’ is an exception in this respect: its debitive form is constructed by attaching the prefix jā- to the infinitive.

(2.5.90) INF – DEB
bū-t – ir jā-bū-t ‘to be – must be’

The debitive forms are not marked for person; person is usually expressed by a dative clause subject.
(2.5.91) a. man ir jādara darbs
   I.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.do job.NOM.M
   'I must do my job'
b. tev ir jāceļas augšā
   you.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.get_up up
   'You have to get up'
c. mums bija jādara darbs
   we.DAT be.AUX.PST.3 DEB.do job.NOM.M
   'We had to do our job'
d. jums būs jāceļas augšā
   you.DAT.PL be.AUX.FUT.3 DEB.get_up up
   'You will have to get up'

The auxiliary verb ir 'is / are' is often omitted in the present indefinite debitive.

(2.5.92) a. Bet kāpēc māksla vispār [ir] jāsaprot?
   but why art.NOM.F at_all [be.AUX.PRS.3] DEB.understand
   'But why does art need to be understood at all?' (A. Eglītis)
   there [be.AUX.PRS.3] DEB.be such.DAT.PL.M fireman.GEN.PL.M
   'There should be one of those little fire escape ladders.' (G. Priede)

Forming the debitive involves changes to sentence structure (see also Section 3.2.3).

(2.5.93) Es (SNOM) daru darbu (OACC)
   I.NOM do.PRS.1 job.ACC.M
   'I do my job'

   →
   Man (S_DAT) ir jādara darbs (O_NOM).
   I.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.do job.NOM.M
   'I must do my job'

Verbs in the debitive mood usually take a nominative object (2.5.94), with the exception of first- and second-person objects and the reflexive pronoun, which remain in the accusative (2.5.95).

(2.5.94) a. Viedokļi ir jāsaskaņo.
   opinion.NOM.PL.M be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.reconcile
   'Opinions must be reconciled.' (C)
b. Jāmācās viss bija atkal no
   DEB.learn everything.NOM.M be.AUX.PST.3 again from
   beginning.GEN.M
   'Everything had to be learned all over again.' (C)
(2.5.95) a. *Man beidzot jāsatiek tevi un jāatdod grāmata.*
I.DAT finally DEB.meet you.ACC.SG and DEB.give_back book.NOM.F

‘I must finally meet you and give you back the book.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *Ir reizes,*

*kad man ir jāpiespiež sevi*
when I.DAT be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.force self.ACC
piecelties agrāk.
wake_up.INF earlier

‘There are times when I have to force myself to wake up earlier.’
(Kas Jauns)

In contemporary Latvian, when a verb in the debitive mood takes an infinitive, an object can be either in the nominative (2.5.96a) or the accusative (2.5.96b) (e.g., Paegle 2003: 119; Kalnača 2013c: 487).

(2.5.96) a. *Kad suns pieradis pie saimnieka,*
tas jāsāk audzināt un mācīt.
it.NOM.M deb.begin raise.INF and teach.INF

‘As soon as a dog gets used to its master, it’s time to start training it and make it learn new things.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. *Ministram jāmēģina laust stereotipus.*
minister.DAT.M deb.try break.INF stereotype.ACC.PL.M

‘The minister must try to break stereotypes.’ (Diena)

The aforementioned fact that the debitive causes changes to sentence structure has given rise to a certain amount of discussion as to the status of these forms – are they best viewed as a verb mood, passive voice forms with a modal meaning or, perhaps, a group of special modal forms (Kalnača 2013c: 481, 2014: 115, Lokmane, Kalnača 2014, for details about the debate; also see Holvoet, Grzybowska 2014)? In Latvian, the debitive has passive voice forms just as other moods (see Section 2.5.5), in addition, constructions of the type *Man ir jālasa grāmata* ‘I must read a book’ express an action of a non-canonical subject in the active voice, making it impossible, on the whole, to view all debitive forms as a subtype of the passive voice. Another fact in favor of the mood interpretation is that the debitive is characterized by very homogeneous, regular semantics – expressing necessity, and debitive forms exist for all Latvian verbs.

Perfective actions are expressed by combining two auxiliary verbs: būt ‘to be’ in a finite form (i.e., ir ‘is, are’, bija ‘was, were’, būs ‘will be’) and būt ‘to be’ in the past active participle form bijis.

(2.5.97) a. *Apgrozījums ir bijis jākāpina par apmēram 200%.*
turnover.NOM.M be.AUX.PRS.3 be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M deb.increase by about 200 %.

‘[We] have had to increase the turnover by approximately 200%.’ (C)
b. Šāds notikums vēl nebija
   this_kind.NOM.M event.NOM.M yet not_be.AUX.PST.3
   bijis jāpiedzīvo.
   be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M DEB.experience

   ‘[I] had never had to experience such an event [before].’ (C)

   c Diez vai motoram būs bijis
   PTCL PTCL engine.DAT.M be.AUX.FUT.3 be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M
   jāstrādā ekstrēmos apstākļos.
   DEB.work extreme.LOC.PL.M condition.LOC.PL.M

   ‘The engine will hardly have had to run under extreme conditions.’ (C)

The debitive mood has the following paradigm of forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dar-ī-t ‘to do’</td>
<td>jā-dara ‘to do’,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>ir ‘have, has’</td>
<td>bijis ‘had’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>bija ‘had’</td>
<td>bija ‘had’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>būs ‘will have’</td>
<td>būs ‘will have’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.43 The paradigm of debitive forms

In relation to indicative tense forms appearing in the same context, the debitive tense forms can express anteriority, simultaneity, or posteriority.

The debitive mood has two subtypes – the oblique debitive and the conditional debitive. The oblique subtype incorporates both debitive and oblique semantics and is used to renarrate another person’s necessity to perform an action (Skujiņa 2007: 416–417).

(2.5.98) a. Lidz Ankorvata templim esot jābrauc
   to Angkor_Wat.GEN.M temple.DAT.M be.AUX.OBL.PRS DEB.drive
   30–40 minūtes.
   30–40 minute.NOM.PL.F

   ‘Apparently it’s a 30–40-minute drive to the Angkor Wat temple.’
   (www.delfi)

b. Tev, piemēram, būsot jāsāk strādāt,
   you.DAT.SG for_example be.AUX.OBL.FUT DEB.begin work.INF
   jāmācās, jāatmet dzeršana...
   DEB.study DEB.give_up drinking.NOM.F

   ‘You, for example, will apparently have to start working, will have to study, give up drinking…’ (G. Priede)

The oblique debitive forms are constructed by combining the debitive form of a lexical verb with an auxiliary verb in an oblique-mood form.

(2.5.99) a. esot jādara ‘reportedly must do’, būsot jādara ‘reportedly will have to do’

b. esot jācelas ‘reportedly must rise’, būsot jācelas ‘reportedly will have to rise’
The present indefinite oblique debitive has parallel formal variants – *ir jā-dar-ot, esot jā-dar-ot*, which mostly occur in colloquial speech and sometimes also in mass media and literary texts and are not considered acceptable in Standard Latvian.

(2.5.100) *Partijas vadītājs teica,*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>that prime_minister.DAT.M</th>
<th>be.AUX.OBL.PRS</th>
<th>DEB.KNOW.OBL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ka premjeram esot jāzinot,</em> runā.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘The head of the party said that the prime minister should know what he is talking about.’ (www.delfi.lv)

The oblique subtype of the debitive mood has the following paradigm of forms:

**dar-ī-t** ‘to do’, **cel-ties** ‘to rise’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>esot ‘reportedly have / has’</td>
<td>jā-dara ‘to do’, jā-dara ‘to do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jā-dara ‘to do’, jā-celās ‘to rise’</td>
<td>bijis ‘had’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>būšot ‘reportedly will have’</td>
<td>būšot ‘reportedly will have’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>būšot ‘reportedly will have’</td>
<td>bijis ‘had’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.44 The paradigm of oblique debitive forms

The **conditional subtype** of the debitive mood combines debitive and conditional semantics and is used to name a possible or desirable action, which would have to be performed if conditions allowed (Skujiņa 2007: 417).

(2.5.101) a. *Un kāpēc taisni šeit tev būtu jāstrādā?*

and why exactly here you.DAT.SG be.AUX.COND DEB.WORK

‘And why would you have to work here of all places?’ (G. Priede)

b. *Man šķiet, nebūtu jāapšauba dzejas*

I think nobody should question the need for a poetry anthology.

(V. Rūmnieks, A. Migla)

The conditional subtype of the debitive mood has the following paradigm of forms:

**dar-ī-t** ‘to do’, **cel-ties** ‘to rise’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>būtu ‘would have’</td>
<td>būtu ‘would have’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jā-dara ‘to do’, jā-celās ‘to rise’</td>
<td>bijis ‘had’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bijis ‘had’</td>
<td>jā-dara ‘to do’, jā-celās ‘to rise’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.45 The paradigm of conditional debitive forms
Alongside the debitive forms, Latvian also has a number of constructions for expressing necessity, all of which can be rephrased by means of the debitive. Such constructions are similar to the debitive mood in that, when there is a formally expressed subject, it is in the dative case.

The construction with the verb vajadzēt ‘to need, require’ + infinitive is widely used in colloquial speech and mass media texts.

(2.5.102) a. Šo [mūzikas] albūmu nevajag klausīties
cilvēkiem ar depresivām nosliecēm.
People.DAT.PL.M with depressive.INF.PL.F disposition.INF.PL.F
‘People who are prone to depression should not listen to this [music] album.’ (J. Joņevs)
b. Pienāca Jāņu vakars.
Vajadzēja sagatavot vietu svinēšanai.
‘Midsummer’s Eve was upon us. We had to prepare a place for celebration.’ (I. Ābele)
c. Antidopinga komitejai no sākuma vajadzēs izlasīt un izanalizēt atklāto pierādījumu kopumu.
‘First, the Anti-doping committee will have to read and analyze the available body of evidence.’ (www.lsm.lv)

Aside from the indicative, the above construction can also be used in the oblique and conditional mood.

(2.5.103) a. Viena meitene rakstīja,
ka matus ābolu etiķi vajagot skalot.
One girl wrote that apparently one has to rinse one’s hair in apple cider vinegar.
‘One girl wrote that apparently one has to rinse one’s hair in apple cider vinegar.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)
b. 10 lietas, ko Tev vajadzētu zināt,
ja tiešām pazīsti savu viru.
‘10 things you should know if you really know your husband.’ (www.delfi.lv)
Another similar construction consists of the verb *nākties* ‘to be obliged, have to’ + infinitive, and it is mostly used in official communications, mass media, and literary texts.

(2.5.104) *Resno [bērza] stumbru ar mazo cirvīti nācās pārcirst hatchet.INS.M have.PST.3 chop.INF pat divās vietās, even two.LOC.PL.F place.LOC.PL.F un tikai tad koku izdevās novākt no ceļa.*

‘The thick trunk [of the birch-tree] had to be chopped in three with the small hatchet, only then did we manage to clear the tree from the road.’ (P. Bankovskis)

Like the previous one, this construction can be used in the oblique and conditional mood.

(2.5.105) a. *Viņam esot nācies dzīvi atsākt pilnīgi no nulles.*

‘He purportedly had to start a new life from nothing.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. *Ja iebraucējiem būtu nācies iziet cauri tam visam, ko pārcietuši šejienes iedzīvotāji, tad viņu šeit vairs nebūtu.*

‘If the newcomers had to go through everything that the locals had endured they wouldn’t be here any more.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

In addition, there is a construction made up of the past or future indefinite form of the verb *būt* ‘to be’ + infinitive. It occurs predominantly in literary texts and colloquial speech.

(2.5.106) a. *Par ko gan šeit bija uztraukties turīgajiem?* wealthy.DAT.PL.M ‘What was even there for the wealthy to worry about?’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *Kas nepiedalās [pašvaldību] vēlēšanās, tam nebūs [to rezultātus] kritizē.*[1]

‘Those who don’t vote in the [local] elections shall not criticize [the outcome]. (Diena)
Finally, in all varieties of Latvian, necessity can be expressed by means of the present passive participle combined with a copula functioning as a predicate.

(2.5.107) a. *Drāma ir daudz ilgāk rakstāma*  
drama.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 much longer write.PTCP.NOM.F  
nekā cita veida teksti.  
than other.GEN.M type.GEN.M text.NOM.PL.M  
‘A drama takes much longer to write than other types of text.’ (C)

b. *Partijas pārstāvētajās ministrijās vēl daudz esot paveicams.*  
party.GEN.F represent.PTCP.LOC.PL.F ministry.LOC.PL.F  
still much be.COP.OBL.PRS do.PTCP.NOM.M  
‘Apparently, much still remains to be done in the ministries represented by the party.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

c. *Nevienam nav tiesību norādīt, kas šai valstij būtu darāms.*  
what.NOM this.DAT.F country.DAT.F  
be.COP.COND do.PTCP.NOM.M  
‘No one has a right to tell this country what to do.’ (www.lsm.lv)

**Imperative mood**

The imperative mood is used to express the speaker’s will with respect to a particular action; it can be an encouragement (2.5.108a), order (2.5.108b-c), request (2.5.108d-e), invitation (2.5.108f-g), or prohibition (2.5.108h) (Skujiņa 2007: 292).

(2.5.108) a. *Apsēdies.*  
sit.IMP.2SG  
*Kurā klasē iet tavs vecākais zēns?*  
‘Sit down. Which form is your oldest boy in?’ (Dz. Sodums)

b. *Kāp iekšā, uzsaucā šoferis.*  
get.IMP.2SG in driver.LOC.PTCP.  
‘Get in, the driver called out.’ (R. Ezera)

c. *Sēdiet klusu!*  
sit.IMP.2PL still  
‘Sit still!’ (C)

d. *Mirkli, jel apstājies!*  
moment.VOC.M PTCL stop.IMP.2SG  
‘Stay, fleeting moment!’ (R. Ezera)

e. *Atcerieties –*  
remember.IMP.2PL

ja atrodat ūpja mazuli zemē pie koka, tad tam tur arī jābūt un jāpaliek!  
‘Remember, if you find a baby eagle owl on the ground under a tree, it’s where it should be and it should remain there!’ (Diena)
In Latvian, proper imperative forms only exist in the second-person singular and plural. The second-person singular form is the same as the second-person singular present indicative; the second-person plural is derived by attaching the ending -iet, -ieties to the present tense stem of a verb.

(2.5.109) INF – PRS – IMP 2PL

darī-t – dar-u – dar-iet ‘to do – (I) do – do!’
cel-ties – cel-os – cel-ieties ‘to rise – (I) rise – rise!’

It should be observed that the consonant preceding the ending of the second-person plural imperative is the same as the root-final consonant of the second-person singular, e.g., nāc – nāc-iet! ‘come!’, audz – audz-iet! ‘grow!’, cel – cel-iet! ‘build!’, kāp – kāp-iet! ‘climb!’, guli – gul-iet! ‘sleep!’, sēdi – sēd-iet! ‘sit!’ (Kalme, Smiltniece 2001: 241).

The personal pronouns tu ‘you (SG), jūs ‘you (PL), mēs ‘we’ do not normally appear with imperatives (Ahero et al. 1959: 606; Nītiņa 2001: 75), see examples (2.5.108a–c, e, h). It is only in emotionally highly loaded exclamations that a second-person pronoun may be used to show the speaker’s anger or express a negative attitude and disdain towards the addressee.

(2.5.110) a. Tu tur nemuldi tik you.NOM.SG there not_babble.IMP.2SG so dauz

much
‘You there! Stop babbling so much!’ (Diena)

b. Tu te, sikais, neizrunājies! you.NOM.SG there kid.NOM.M not_babble.IMP.2SG

‘You, kid, don’t babble!’ (www.draugiem.lv)

The third-person singular and plural forms used in conjunction with the particle lai ‘let’ (lai dara! ‘let (him / her / them) do!’; lai cel! ‘let (him / her / them) build!’) (2.5.111) and the first-person plural (darīsim! ‘let’s do!’; celsīmies! ‘let’s rise!’) (2.5.112) are actually third-person present and first-person future indefinite indicative forms that function as imperatives in specific contexts and speech situations.

(2.5.111) a. Lai [viņš] atnāk, let [he] come.IMP.3
es ar viņu parunāšu!
‘Let [him] come, I’ll talk to him!’ (C)
b. Lai parādās tagad Sibilla Švirkste!

‘Let Sibilla Švirkste appear now!’ (G. Priede)

(2.5.112) a. Lūdzu, cienīsim cits citul!

‘Please, let’s respect one another!’ (C)

b. Mēģināsim noskaidrot,

‘Let’s try to establish who he is and what he represents!’ (G. Priede)

In contrast to other verb moods, the imperative lacks tense forms but has person forms, with the exception of the first-person singular:

dar-i-t ‘to do’, cel-ties ‘to rise’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>daris-im! ‘let’s do!’; cels-imies! ‘let’s rise!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dar-il ‘do!’; cel-ies ‘rise!’</td>
<td>dar-iet! ‘do!’; cel-ieties! ‘rise!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>lai dar-a! ‘let him / her / them do!’; lai cel-as! ‘let him / her / them rise!’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.46 The paradigm of imperative forms (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 87)

In colloquial speech (and its literary renderings), the first-person plural present indefinite indicative is widely used as the first-person plural imperative – darām! ‘let’s do!’; cel-iamies! ‘let’s rise!’; ejam! ‘let’s go!’; braucam! ‘let’s drive!’

(2.5.113) a. Ejam sēnēs!

‘Let’s go picking mushrooms!’ (Kas Jauns)

b. Pietiks izklaidēties,

braucam mājās!

‘Enough hanging out, let’s go home!’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. Kāpjam lejā pie manis

‘Let’s go downstairs [to my apartment]!’ (G. Priede)

Finally, in polite expressions and colloquial speech, the second-person plural imperative is sometimes expressed by means of the second-person plural future indefinite indicative.

(2.5.114) a. Ģenerālā kungs, atlausiet ziņot!

‘General, permission to speak!’ (I. Ābele)
Relative to indicative tense forms appearing in the same context, the imperative forms express posteriority, i.e., actions that must take place after the speech moment.

**Modality and evidentiality**

In Latvian, verb moods can express both deontic and epistemic modality, as well as evidential meanings. Modal meanings are also present in some uses of the infinitive.

**Deontic modality** indicates how the state of the world ought to be according to the speaker (usually in the form of an order, prohibition, recommendation) (Palmer 2001: 9,10; Skujiņa 2007: 499). In Latvian, deontic modality is mainly manifested in the imperative mood, which is used to express the speaker’s assessment of an action in such a way so as to influence the addressee to fulfil the speaker’s intention – to make sure that the action is performed, see examples (2.5.108).

Deontic modality can also be communicated by means of the debitive mood, see examples (2.5.88). In that case, however, an addressee is not addressed directly. Since the subject is in the dative case, the speaker can only describe an action as being obligatory for himself or others.

Moreover, in specific contextual uses, deontic modality can be conveyed by the indicative mood, namely, when indicative forms function as imperatives:

1) the present indefinite indicative expressing invitations

(2.5.115) *Nākamgad tiekamies pie mums Latgalē!*

next_year meet.PRS.1PL by we.DAT Latgale.LOC.F

‘Let’s meet at our place in Latgale next year!’ (C)

2) the future indefinite indicative

a) expressing polite requests

(2.5.116) *“Kundzīt, jūs ar to grozu, lady.VOC.F you.NOM.PL with that.INS.M basket.INS.M panāksit tuvāk!”* come.FUT.2PL closer

*Salutauru uzsauc.*

“Dear lady, you with that basket, will you come closer!” Salutauris called out.’ (A. Eglītis)

b) demanding something categorically; such sentences usually contain the so-called ethical dative – a pronoun in the dative case referring to the speaker
Deontic modality is clearly manifested in the predicative uses of the infinitive in imperative sentences – exclamations (2.5.118), instructions (2.5.119), and prohibitions (2.5.120).

(2.5.118) a. Kaut ātrāk tikat atvaļinājumā!
pseudo-quoted get.INF vacation.LOC.M
‘If only I could be on vacation sooner!’ (www.apollo.lv)

b. Cīlēki, jums mani vairs ne ar ko nepārsteigt.
person.NOM.PL.M you.DAT.PL I.ACC anymore not anything.ins not_surprise.INF
‘People, you can’t surprise me with anything anymore.’ (www.twitter.com)

(2.5.119) a. Dokumentus iesniegt dekanātā.
document.ACC.PL.M submit.INF dean’s_office.LOC.M
‘Documents are to be submitted to the dean’s office.’ (www.lu.lv)

b. Tad atskanēja komanda:
   – Mierā! Pacelt karogu!
attention raise.INF flag.ACC.M
‘Then they heard a command: Attention! Raise the flag!’ (I. Ābele)

(2.5.120) a. Pa sliežu ceļiem nestaigāt!
on rail GEN.PL.F track.ACC.PL.M not_walk.INF
‘Do not walk on the railway tracks!’ (a warning on a railway track)

b. Neienākt virsdrebes un neienest
   not_enter.INF street_clothes.LOC.PL.M and not_carry.INF
   bibliotēkā pārtikas produktus.
library.LOC.F food GEN.F products.ACC.PL.M
‘Do not enter in street clothes, do not take food products into the library.’
(a warning displayed at a public library)

Epistemic modality concerns the speaker’s attitude towards or evaluation of the information contained in an utterance (a judgment, assertion), for example, certainty, possibility, probability, or disbelief (Palmer 2001: 8,9; Skujiņa 2007: 107). In Latvian, it is usually associated with the conditional mood, as its semantics naturally accommodate references to possible, uncertain, future-oriented actions, see examples (2.5.80)–(2.5.83). In addition, in certain contexts epistemic modality can be expressed by means of the indicative (2.5.121) and oblique (2.5.122) mood (often with the help of a particle, adverb, etc.).
(2.5.121) a. FUT Indefinite

Uz sēdi aicinātais aizturētā cilvēka advokāts nespēja paskaidrot, kā un kāpēc nelikumības notikušas.

“To es šobrīd nemācēšu teikt, that.ACC.M I.nom now not_know.FUT.1SG say.INF
jo es aizturētā ģimeni pārstāvu tikai apmēram gadu un par iepriekšējiem notikumiem man nav informācijas.”

‘The lawyer of the arrested man invited to the hearing was unable to explain how and why the offences took place. “I won’t be able to tell you this, as I have been representing the family of the defendant for only a year and do not have information about earlier occurrences.”’  (Kas Jauns)

b. FUT Perfect

Un es vēl savā naivumā domāju, ka maz būs to, kas balsos par šo [deputāta] kandidātu.

Laikam būšu kļūdījusies.

‘And I was naïve enough to believe that hardly anybody would vote for this [parliamentary] candidate. It appears, I was mistaken.’

(www.cosmo.lv)

(2.5.122) a. – Varbūt [Rīgā] nemaz nav tādas koncertu vietas?

– It kā laikam noteikti esot.

‘Maybe, there just isn’t a concert venue like that [in Rīga]? I’ve heard that there must be.’ (J. Joņevs)

b. Uzņēmējs tiesājas ar kluba līdzīpašniekiem,

jo viņi because they.NOM.M

esot pārskaitijuši

be.AUX.OBL.PRS transfer.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

miljoniem mārciņu uz citām

million.INS.PL.M pound.GEN.PL.F to other.DAT.PL.F

sev piederošām kompānijām.

self.DAT own.PTCP.DAT.PL.F company.DAT.PL.F

‘The businessman has sued the co-owners of the club, because they have allegedly transferred millions of pounds to other companies they own.’ (www.delfi.lv)

Evidentiality is a semantic category, which is concerned with the means that a language has for indicating the source of information included in an utterance and for providing an evaluation of the nature of such information (Wiemer 2007a: 198, 2007b; also see Holvoet 2001: 111). In Latvian, evidentiality, i.e., an indication that the speaker is not the source of information, is usually expressed by means of the oblique mood (Holvoet 2007: 80–105), see examples (2.5.72).
Evidential-type information, i.e., a renarrated necessity, is also inherent in the oblique subtype of the debitive mood, which is widely used in spoken language, see examples (2.5.98).

In addition, evidential semantics typically occur in indicatives functioning as obliques – usually, in composite sentences containing a *verbum dicendi* in one of the clauses.

(2.5.123) a. *Māsa lūdza,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{S} & \text{UB} & \text{I.NOM} & \text{meet.PRS.1SG} & \text{= meet.OBL.PRS} \\
\text{to} & \text{sievieti,} \\
\text{that.ACC.F} & \text{woman.ACC.F} \\
\text{kas koordinējusi bērnu adopciiju.}
\end{align*}
\]

‘Sister asked me to meet the woman who had coordinated the children’s adoption.’ (Ieva)

b. *Vecomāt, jums nupat zvanīja no radio un teica,*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ka} & \text{dzejoli} & \text{ir} & \text{= esot} \\
\text{that poet.ACC.M} & \text{be.AUX.PRS.3} & \text{= be.OBL.PRS} \\
\text{sacerējis} & \text{pavisam cits rakstnieks.}
\end{align*}
\]

‘Grandmother, you just got a call from the radio, they said the poem was written by a completely different writer.’ (G. Priede)

2.5.5 Voice

Voice is a lexico-grammatical category of verbs encoding the relationship between an action and its subject and object (Skujiņa 2007: 179). Depending on whether the speaker, in the process of communication, views the subject of a clause as being important with regard to a particular instance or manifestation of a process, a clause may be in the active (2.5.124a) or passive voice (2.5.124b), without affecting the logic of the judgment contained in it.

(2.5.124) a. active voice

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Viņš} & \text{savā dārzā} \\
\text{he.NOM own.LOC.M garden.LOC.M} \\
\text{ir} & \text{sastādījis} & \text{sparģeļus.}
\end{align*}
\]

‘He has planted asparagus in his garden.’ (A. Žīgure)

b. passive voice

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Mākslinieces} & \text{darbos bieži} & \text{ir} \\
\text{artist.GEN.F work.LOC.PL.M often} & \text{be.AUX.PRS.3} \\
\text{gleznoti} & \text{putni.}
\end{align*}
\]

‘Birds are often painted in the artist’s works.’ (Jaunā Gaita)
Overall, Latvian verbs have two voices – the active and the passive voice. This opposition, however, is only found in a lexically and grammatically limited range of verbs – mostly, transitive non-reflexive verbs taking an accusative object (see Section 2.5.6). In contemporary Latvian, reflexive verbs fall outside the category of voice and form a distinct lexico-grammatical group (see Section 2.5.7).

The active voice is grammatically unmarked, it is expressed by the indefinite and perfect tense forms of the indicative and other moods (see Tables 2.47–2.54). The passive voice forms are analytical. The indefinite passive tense forms are derived by means of the auxiliary verb *tikt* ‘to get’ in a finite form + past passive participle (Table 2.47), while the perfect passive tense forms use the auxiliary verb *būt* ‘to be’ in a finite form + past passive participle (Table 2.48).

### *slavināt* ‘to praise’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>PST</td>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>tieku</td>
<td>tiku</td>
<td>tikšu</td>
<td>tiekam</td>
<td>tikām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘am’</td>
<td>‘was’</td>
<td>‘will be’</td>
<td>‘are’</td>
<td>‘were’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tiec</td>
<td>tiki</td>
<td>tiksi</td>
<td>tiēkam</td>
<td>tikām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘are’</td>
<td>‘were’</td>
<td>‘will be’</td>
<td>‘are’</td>
<td>‘were’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tiek</td>
<td>tika</td>
<td>tiks</td>
<td>tiek</td>
<td>tika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘is’</td>
<td>‘was’</td>
<td>‘will be’</td>
<td>‘are’</td>
<td>‘were’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.47 Passive voice, indefinite tenses, indicative mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>PST</td>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>esmu</td>
<td>biju</td>
<td>būšu</td>
<td>esam</td>
<td>bijām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘have been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
<td>‘will have been’</td>
<td>‘have been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>esi</td>
<td>biji</td>
<td>būsi</td>
<td>esat</td>
<td>bijāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘have been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
<td>‘will have been’</td>
<td>‘have been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>bija</td>
<td>būs</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>bija</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘has been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
<td>‘will have been’</td>
<td>‘have been’</td>
<td>‘had been’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.48 Passive voice, perfect tenses, indicative mood

The formation of passive voice forms is linked to changes in sentence structure: the agent in passive clauses is usually omitted, while the accusative object of the active voice transforms into a nominative object.
(2.5.125) Es (SNOM) daru darbu (OACC)
I.NOM do.PRS.1SG work.ACC.M
‘I am doing work.’
→
Darbs (ONOM) tiek darīts.
work.NOM.M get.AUX.PRS.3 do.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Work is being done.’

Present perfect (2.5.127a) (also past (2.5.127b) and future perfect (2.5.127c)) passive clauses may contain a genitive agent forming a nominal phrase with the past passive participle.

(2.5.126) Es (SNOM) esmu darījis darbu (OACC)
I.NOM be.aux.PRS.1SG do.PTCP.NOM.M work.ACC.M
‘I have done work.’
→
Darbs (ONOM) ir manis (SGEN) darīts.
work.NOM.M be.AUX.PRS.3 I.gen do.PTCP.NOM.M
‘The work has been done by me.’

(2.5.127) a. Dzīvoklis ir mūsu abu pirkts uzreiz pēc kāzām.
apartment.NOM.M be.AUX.PRS.3 we.gen buy.PTCP.NOM.M shortly after wedding.dat.pl.m
‘The apartment was bought by both of us shortly after the wedding.’ (www.cosmo.lv)
b. Kandavas kultūras nama lielā pārpildita.
kandava.gen.f culture.gen.f house.gen.m grand.nom.f overcrowd.ptcp.nom.f
‘The grand hall of the Kandava community center was overcrowded (with spectators).’ (www.kandava.lv)
c. Mazi šokolādes cepumiņi – kārums, kas noteikti būs bērnu
little.nom.pl.m chocolate.gen.f cookie.nom.pl.m treat.nom.m that.nom definitely be.aux.fut.3 child.gen.pl.m
appreciate.ptcp.nom.m
‘Little chocolate cookies – a treat that will definitely be appreciated by children.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

Passive voice forms are also possible for verbs taking an indirect – usually, a dative (2.5.128a) or a prepositional (2.5.128b) – object. In that case, the grammatical form of the object remains unchanged.
(2.5.128) a. Dēls (S_{nom}) **stāsta** vecākiem (O_{dat})
son.NOM.M **tell.PRS.3** parent.DAT.PL.M
‘The son is telling his parents’
→
Vecākiem (O_{dat}) **tiek** stāstīts
parent.DAT.PL.M **get.AUX.PRS.3** tell.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Parents are being told’
b. Es (S_{nom}) **runāju** ar māsu (O_{prep})
I.NOM **talk.PST.1SG** with sister.INS.F
‘I talked to my sister’
→
Ar māsu (O_{prep}) **tiek** runāts
with sister.INS.F **get.AUX.PRS.3** talk.PTCP.NOM.M
‘My sister is being spoken to’

(2.5.129) a. Ja [Saeimas] deputātam patiešām
if [Saeima] member_of_parliament.DAT.M really
ir uzbrukts viņa pildāmo
he.gen officiate.ptcp.gen.pl.m
be.AUX.PRS.3 attack.PTCP.NOM.M he.gen officiate.ptcp.gen.pl.m
pielākumu dēl,
duty.GEN.PL.M because_of
tad tas ir nopietni.
‘If it’s really the case that the MP has been attacked because of his
official duties then it’s serious.’ (Latvijas Avīze)
b. Par vecvecākiem [ģimenē] netika daudz
about grandparent.DAT.PL.M [family] not get.AUX.PST.3 much
runāts.
talk.PTCP.NOM.M
‘The grandparents were not talked about much [in the family].’ (Ieva)

In some cases, Latvian also permits passive voice forms of intransitive non-reflexive verbs.

(2.5.130) a. Mati pirmie reaģē, ja uzturā
hair.NOM.PL.M first.NOM.PL.M react.PRS.3 if diet.LOC.M
trūkst vitaminu vai ilgi [ir]
lack.PRS.3 vitamin.GEN.PL.M or long [is]
slimots.
be._ill.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Hair is the first to react to a lack of vitamins in the diet or a long
illness.’ (www.delfi.lv)
b. Simt gadu te nav
hundred year.GEN.PL.M here not be.AUX.PRS.3
būts.
be.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It’s been ages since [I] was last here.’ (www.cosmo.lv)
c. Kāvies dažreiz esmu, pa fight.PTCP.NOM.M sometimes be.AUX.PRS.1SG through logu ari kāpts ir iekšā. window.ACC.M also climb.PTCP.NOM.M be.AUX.PRS.3 inside

‘I have been known to get into fights and climb through windows.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

Usually, such sentences are used to express generalized, regular or habitual actions, or for impersonal statements of fact. In addition, passive voice forms are only possible for three-person intransitive verbs denoting actions performed by human beings or (less frequently) animals. Single-person intransitive verbs do not occur in the passive voice in Latvian.

The active and passive voices function in parallel in all moods. In the passive voice, mood is marked on the auxiliary verb tikt ‘to get’ in indefinite tenses and on the auxiliary verb būt ‘to be’ in perfect tenses, see Tables 2.48–2.54 (the forms are exemplified by the verb slavināt ‘to praise’):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oblique mood</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>tiekot ‘reportedly is’</td>
<td>esot ‘reportedly has been’</td>
<td>slavināt-s (M), -a (F) ‘praised’</td>
<td>slavināt-i (M), -as (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>tikšot ‘reportedly will be’</td>
<td>būšot ‘reportedly will have been’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.49 Passive voice, oblique mood

(2.5.131) a. Ja nekas not_get.AUX.OBL.PRS prasits, prasīts, tand nekas ari not_get.AUX.OBL.PRS darīts. nekas arī netiekot darīts.

‘They said, if nothing was required, nothing was done.’ (C)

b. Konkursa result.NOM.PL.M not_get.AUX.OBL.FUT pārskatītī. review.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

‘Apparently, the results of the competition will not be reviewed.’ (C)

c. Viņš palika pie saviem meliem. my.NOM.F information.NOM.F be.AUX.OBL.PRS 

make_up.PTCP.NOM.F

‘He stuck to his lies. According to him, my information is invented.’ (G. Priede)
d. Zoodārza pārstāve piebilst, 

that Mežaparks.NOM.M be.AUX.OBL.PRS fox.GEN.PL.F widely inhabit.PTCP.NOM.M

‘The zoo’s spokesperson adds that Mežaparks is widely inhabited by foxes.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

e. Mūzikas skolas apkārte šajā mācibu gadā vakaros būšot

music.GEN.F school.GEN.F vicinity.NOM.F this.LOC.M studies.GEN.PL.M year.LOC.M evening.LOC.PL.M be.AUX.OBL.FUT light_up.PTCP.NOM.F

‘Apparently, this academic year there will be street lighting in the vicinity of the music school in the evenings.’ (C)

### Conditional mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>tiktu</td>
<td>būtu</td>
<td>slavināt-s (M), -a (F) ‘praised’</td>
<td>slavināt-i (M), -as (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘would be’</td>
<td>‘would have been’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.50 Passive voice, conditional mood

(2.5.132) a. Demokrātijas principi tiktu pilnibā
democracy.GEN.F principle.NOM.PL.M get.AUX.COND fully.LOC.F observe.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

‘The principles of democracy would be fully observed.’ (C)

b. Ugunsgrēks būtu pamanits aūrā, fire.NOM.M be.AUX.COND detect.PTCP.NOM.M sooner ja cilvēki dzīvokļos ierīkotu dūmu detektorus.

‘The fire would have been detected sooner if people had installed smoke detectors in their apartments.’ (C)

### Debitive mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>ir ‘has to’</td>
<td>jātiek ‘be’</td>
<td>slavināt-am (M), -ai (F) ‘praised’</td>
<td>slavināt-iem (M), -ām (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>bija ‘had to’</td>
<td>jābūt ‘have been’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>būs ‘will have to’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.51 Passive voice, debitive mood
In the debitive mood, the passive construction differs from the active construction in that the former requires the passive participle to be in the dative case, as it agrees in gender, number and case with the semantic object, i.e., the patient (Kalnača 2013c: 554–556).

(2.5.133) a. Šīm likumprojektam ir jātiek izstrādātam Tieslietu ministrijā.

(2.5.133) b. Viņa pavēlei bija jātiek izpildītai.

(2.5.134) a. Datoram ir jābūt saslēgtam ar drukāšanas iekārtu.

(2.5.134) b. Līdz Lieldienām visiem dzīvokļa nomazgātiem.

As shown in examples (2.5.133)–(2.5.134) and Tables 2.51–2.53, the hallmark of the passive debitive is a combination of two auxiliaries – the auxiliary verb būt ‘to be’ in a finite form and the auxiliary tikt ‘to get’ or būt ‘to be’ in the debitive form, signaling, respectively, the dynamic or static meaning of the passive debitive, i.e., jātiek (indefinite forms) or jābūt (perfect forms).

### Debitive mood, oblique subtype

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>esot ‘reportedly has to’</td>
<td>jātiek ‘be’</td>
<td>jābūt ‘have been’</td>
<td>slavināt-am (M), -ai (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>būšot ‘reportedly will have to’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.52 Passive voice, debitive mood, oblique subtype
(2.5.135) a. *Mitam, ka sviests ir neveselīgs,*

myth.DAT.M that butter.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 unhealthy.NOM.M

esot jātiek pamatotam.

be.AUX.OBL.PRS DEB.get.AUX validate.PTCP.DAT.M

‘It seems, the myth that butter is unhealthy needs to be validated.’

(www.tvnet.lv)
b. *Ierobežojumiem esot jābūt restriction.dat.pl.m be.aux.obl.prs jābūt*

be.AUX.OBL.PRS DEB.be.AUX noteiktiem ar likumu.

specify.PTCP.DAT.PL.M by law.INS.M

‘Apparently, restrictions have to be specified by the law.’ (C)

Debitive mood, conditional subtype

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>būtu ‘would’</td>
<td>jātiek ‘have to be’</td>
<td>jābūt ‘have to have been’</td>
<td>slavināt-am (M), -ai (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>slavināt-iem (M), -ām (F) ‘praised’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.53 Passive voice, debitive mood, conditional subtype

(2.5.136) a. *Šiem likumu grozijumiem būtu this.dat.pl.m law.gen.pl.m amendment.dat.pl.m be.aux.cond*

jātiek iesniegtiem jau lidz 27.

DEB.get.AUX submit.PTCP.DAT.PL.M already by 27

November.DAT.M

‘These amendments to the law would have to be submitted by November 27.’ (C)
b. *Tam [dokumentam] būtu jābūt*

it.DAT.M [document] be.AUX.COND DEB.be.AUX

apliecinātam ar parakstu.

certify.PTCP.DAT.M with signature.INS.M

‘It [the document] would have to have been certified with a signature.’ (C)

Imperative mood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>esi slavināts (M), -a (F) ‘be praised!’</td>
<td>esiet slavināti (M), -as (F) ‘be praised!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>lai slavināts (M), -a (F) ‘(let) be praised!’</td>
<td>lai slavināti (M), -as (F) ‘(let) be praised!’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.54 Passive voice, imperative mood

(2.5.137) a. *Esi sveicināta Holivudā!*

be.AUX.IMP.2SG welcome.PTCP.NOM.F Hollywood.LOC.F

‘Welcome to Hollywood!’ (Ieva)
b. *Mīliet un esiet mīlēti!!!*

‘Love and be loved!!!’ (C)

c. *Lai [ir] slavēta vienlīdzība!*

‘Equality be praised!’ (www.apollo.lv)

In mass media, literary, and certain other types of text, passive perfect tense forms sometimes contain a combination of two auxiliaries – *būt* ‘to be’ in a finite form and *būt* or *tikt* ‘to get’ in the past active participle (on active past tense forms with *tikt* see Section 2.5.3):

1) *ticis* ‘got (M, SG)*, *tikusi* ‘got (F, SG)*, *tikuši* ‘got (M, PL)*, *tikušas* ‘got (F, PL)*

(2.5.138) *Kīmiskas vielas tvaika noplūdes*

chemical.gen.f substance.gen.f fume.gen.m leakage.gen.m

dēl trešdien Rīgā [ir] because_of Wednesday.loc.f Riga.loc.f [is]
*tikuši evakuēti*

get.AUX.PTCP.NOM.PL.M evacuate.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

32 cilvēki,
32 person.nom.pl.m
*norādīja Valsts ugunsdzēsības un glābšanas dienests.*

‘Due to leakage of chemical fumes in Riga on Wednesday, 32 people got evacuated, the State Fire and Rescue Service of Latvia reported.’

(www.apollo.lv)

2) *bijis* ‘been (M, SG)*, *bijusi* ‘been (F, SG)*, *bijuši* ‘been (M, PL)*, *bijušas* ‘been (F, PL)*

(2.5.139) *Trešais bērns ģimenē ir bijis ļoti gaidīts.*

third.nom.m child.nom.m family.loc.f be.aux.prs.3

bijis loti gaidīts.

be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M very wait.PTCP.NOM.M

‘The third child in the family was very much looked forward to.’

(Latvijas Avīze)

Apart from the indicative, such forms also occur in the oblique (2.5.140), conditional (2.5.141), and debitive (2.5.142) passive.

(2.5.140) a. *Par ministrijas plāniem reorganizēt universitāti*

about ministry.gen.f plan.dat.pl.m reorganize.inf university.acc.f

tās rektore iepriekš neesot it.gen.f rector.nom.f in_advance not_be.aux.obl.prs

tikuši informēta.

get.AUX.PTCP.NOM.F inform.PTCP.NOM.F

‘The rector said she hadn’t been informed in advance about the ministry’s plans to reorganize the university.’ (www.delfi.lv)

267
b. Viņš esot bijis aicināts
   he.NOM be.OBL.PRS be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M invite.PTCP.NOM.M
   testify.INF court.LOC.F
   ‘Reportedly, he had been called to testify in court.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

(2.5.141) Ja es būtu ticis pieņemts
   if I.NOM be.AUX.COND get.AUX.PTCP.NOM.M accept.PTCP.NOM.M
   bērnu ansamblī,
   child.GEN.PL.M ensemble.LOC.M
   mans muzikālais ceļš izskatītos citāds.
   ‘If I had gotten accepted into the children’s ensemble, my musical path
   would have been different.’ (www.parmuziku.lv)

Consequently, there exist passive debitive forms containing a combination of three
auxiliaries:

(2.5.142) a. Ar šo kārtību
   with this.INS.F procedure.INS.F
   ir jābūt tikušam
   be.AUX.PRS DEB.be.AUX get.AUX.PTCP.DAT.M
   iepazīstinātam arī iestādes vadītājam.
   inform.PTCP.DAT.M also organization.GEN.F head.DAT.M
   ‘The head of the organization has to have been informed of the procedure
   as well.’ (www.pietiek.com)

b. Lai saņemtu nekustamā īpašuma nodokļa atlaidi,
   ārvalstniekam ir jābūt bijušam
   foreigner.DAT.M be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.be.AUX be.AUX.PTCP.DAT.M
   deklarētam
   declare.PTCP.DAT.M
   Latvia.LOC.F before taxation.GEN.F year.GEN.M first January.GEN.M
   ‘In order to be eligible for a real estate tax discount, a foreigner has to
   have had a residence registration in Latvia before January 1 of
   the taxation year.’ (www.info.riga.lv)

c. Katrs cilvēks apzinās lietas,
   every.NOM.M person.NOM.M realize.PRS.3 thing.ACC.PL.F
   kurām būtu bijis
   which.DAT.PL.F be.AUX.COND be.AUX.PTCP.NOM.
   jābūt izdarītam tā un ne savādāk.
   DEB.be.AUX do.PTCP.DAT.PL.F thus and no other_way
   ‘Everyone is aware of things, which should have been done in one way
   and not another.’ (Ir)

Examples of language use indicate that Latvian perfect passive forms with the above
auxiliaries are akin to the distinction between the dynamic and static passive found
in many other languages, especially considering that indefinite passive tense forms with \textit{tikt} ‘to get’ typically have a processual meaning, while perfect tense forms with \textit{būt} ‘to be’ express states and, at the same time, resultativeness. However, in Latvian, this kind of distinction between the forms and meanings of perfect tense forms (both in the active and passive voice) has never fully grammaticalized and is not consistently realized throughout the system of verbal forms, it only becomes relevant in specific cases when it is particularly significant in terms of content for the speaker. Due to inconsistent form usage and semantic non-obligatoriness, Latvian grammars have tended to exclude the distinction between the static and dynamic perfect of both voices from descriptions of the verb, leaving it outside the paradigm despite it being present in language use (Ahero et al. 1959: 552–553; Kalnača 2013c: 505–506; also see Nītiņa 2001: 81; Holvoet 2001: 164).

2.5.6 Transitivity

Transitivity is a property of verbs that refers to whether a verb can take a prepositionless accusative object (Skujina 2007: 284–285). Based on this ability, all verbs can be classified as either transitive or intransitive.

Transitivity or intransitivity depends on the lexical meaning of a verb and is expressed through syntactic relations in phrases or clauses, where a transitive verb takes an accusative object (2.5.143) while an intransitive verb does not (2.5.144).

(2.5.143) a. \textit{vilkt mēteli} ‘to put on a coat’, \textit{ravēt dārzu} ‘to weed the garden’, \textit{nest somu} ‘to carry a bag’, \textit{pirkt pārtiku} ‘to buy food’

b. \textit{Viesmilis} \textit{ienesa} \textit{kafiju}.

‘The waiter brought in the coffee.’ (A. Eglītis)

c. \textit{No dārznieka advokāts ik gadu pērk jaunus [rožu] stādus ar skaistiem nosaukumiem}.

‘Every year, the lawyer buys young [rose] plants with beautiful names from the gardener.’ (A. Žīgure)

(2.5.144) a. \textit{salt} ‘to be cold’, \textit{krist} ‘to fall’, \textit{zust} ‘to disappear’, \textit{snigt} ‘to snow’, \textit{tumst} ‘to grow dark’, \textit{jukt} ‘to fall to pieces’, \textit{gulēt} ‘to sleep’, \textit{sēņot} ‘to pick mushrooms’, \textit{ziedēt} ‘to bloom’

b. \textit{Puķudobēs zied smaržīgas lefkojas}.

‘Fragrant gillyflowers are blooming in the flower beds.’ (A. Žīgure)
In Latvian, verbs can also take prepositionless genitive objects. Although genitive objects mainly occur in literary prose, subdialects and in the speech of elderly people, they are also used in mass media texts for poetic effect – usually, with a negated predicate or verbs like pietikt ‘to be enough’, vajadzēt ‘to need’, gribēt ‘to want’, kārot ‘to crave’, bīties ‘to be afraid of’, dot ‘to give’, etc. (on adverbial genitive see Section 2.1.4)

(2.5.145) a. Cilvēkiem darba pietiek.
   person.DAT.PL.M work.GEN.M be_enough.PRS.3
   ‘People have enough work.’ (I. Ābele)

b. Es negribu teikt par jums nekā slikta.
   I.NOM not_want.PRS.1SG say.INF about you.DAT.PL anything.GEN bad.GEN.M
   ‘I don’t want to say anything bad about you.’ (A. Eglītis)

c. Dārgakmeņu un kažoka man nevajag.
   jewel.GEN.PL.M and fur_coat.GEN.M I.DAT not_need.PRS.3
   ‘I don’t need jewels or a fur coat.’ (Ir)

The syntactic relations that transitive verbs typically enter into are not limited to taking a direct accusative (or genitive) object. For example, object clauses (2.5.146) or direct speech if it stands in an object relation to the introductory verb (2.5.147) can both be viewed as analogues of a direct object.

(2.5.146) Elza cenšas izdomāt, kāds ir viņas dzīves uzdevums.
   Elza.NOM.F try.PRS.3 figure_out.INF what.NOM.M be.cop.PRS.3 viņas devīs uzdevums.
   she.GEN life.GEN.F mission.NOM.M
   ‘Elza tries hard to figure out what her mission in life is.’ (A. Žīgure)

(2.5.147) Māte saka: “Tu būsi dzejnieks, / but poet.DAT.M hard.NOM.M life.NOM.M
   Bet dzejniekam grūts mūžs.”
   poet.NOM.M be.COP.FUT.2SG poet.NOM.M
   ‘Mother says: “You will be a poet, / But life is hard for a poet.”’ (L. Tauns)

An object presupposed by the lexical meaning of a transitive verb is not always obligatory in a sentence. For example, an object may not be explicitly stated if it follows from the context or when expressing a generalized action; in that case, context and verbal lexical meaning provide sufficient semantic compensation.

(2.5.148) a. Ja tu runā pārkā atrī
   if you.NOM.SG speak.PRS.2SG too fast
   – ievēl elpu un turpinī nesteidzoties.
   ‘If you’re speaking too fast – take a breath and then go on at an easier pace.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
b. Nesen esi sācis spēlēt oboju Nacionālās operas orķestrī. Kādēļ tev to vajag?
   Nespēlēju orķestrī ne naudas, ne not_play.PRS.1SG orchestra.LOC.M not money.GEN.F not
   slavas dēl. glory.GEN.F because_of
   ‘Recently, you started playing the oboe in the National Opera Orchestra. Why do you need that? I don’t play in the orchestra for money or glory.’ (Santa)

c. Senāk arī es kalu un metināju earlier also I.NOM forge.PST.1SG and weld.PST.1SG
   [tēlniecības darbus]. [sculpture work]
   Bet tad es atklāju māksligā koka masu. Tā pārveidoja visu manu dzīvi.
   ‘There was a time when I also forged and welded [sculptures]. And then I discovered artificial wood mass. It changed my whole life.’ (A. Eglītis)

Although, as a rule, transitive verbs are non-reflexive, Latvian has a number of transitive reflexive verbs (Ahero et al. 1959: 557; Kalnača 2013c: 508; see also Section 2.5.7), which fall under one of the following types:

1) verbs with a concrete meaning (indirect-reflexive verbs)
   (2.5.149) a. iegādāties (iegādāt sev) apģērbu ‘to purchase clothes (for oneself)’
      uslikties (uzlikt sev) cepuri ‘to put on (on oneself) a hat’
      apsieties (apsiet sev) priekšautu ‘to tie an apron (around oneself), etc.
   b. Kad vecāki iegādās dārzu, when parent.NOM.PL.M buy.PST.3.REFL garden.ACC.M
      man lika zemi rakt.
      ‘When my parents bought a garden plot I was told to dig.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
   c. Vēlāk Lapiņš devās pie sava dienas darba – grāmatas siet,
      also Birznieks tie. PST.3.REFL apron.ACC.M
      lai dotos Lapiņam paliģē.
      ‘Later on Lapiņš went to do his daily work, which was binding books, Birznieks put an apron on, too, intending to help.’ (C)

2) verbs with abstract semantics related to memory, thinking and perception
   (2.5.150) a. klausīties ‘to listen’, atcerēties ‘to remember’, iedomāties ‘to imagine’,
      mācīties ‘to learn’, noskatīties ‘to watch (a film, etc.), look’
   b. Dažreiz Elza atceras sometimes Elza.NOM.F remember.PRS.3.REFL
      kādu skumju dziesmu.
      some.ACC.F sad.ACC.F song.ACC.F
      ‘Sometimes Elza remembers some sad song.’ (A. Žīgure)
c. Vairāki pedagogi gaidīja, 
ka mācīšos klasisko dziedāšanu.
that study.FUT.1SG.REFL classical.ACC.F singing.ACC.F

‘Several teachers expected me to study classical singing.’ (Santa)

Transitive reflexive verbs do not have passive voice forms and, therefore, like the rest of reflexive verbs, are not part of the active/passive voice opposition.

2.5.7 Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verbs form a distinct lexico-grammatical group of verbs based on at least one shared formal feature – a reflexive ending with a final formative -s in all persons, tenses, and moods. In terms of meaning and distribution, however, reflexive verbs are quite diverse and have been given different interpretations in Latvian grammars – as representing the middle voice in a ternary active – middle – passive voice opposition (Ahero et al. 1959: 548, 554–561; Holvoet 2001: 188–189; Holvoet, Grzybowska, Rembialkowska 2015) as a special lexico-grammatical category of verbs (Paegle 2003: 128–130), or as part of the binary derivative opposition non-reflexive verbs – reflexive verbs, i.e., part of the system of word formation (Soida 2009: 218–219). In the Grammar of Latvian published in 2013, reflexive verbs are treated as a special lexico-grammatical group having links, in part, with the verbal category of voice and, in part, with verbal word formation (Kalnača 2013c: 457, 511–515); the same descriptive principle is used here with an additional focus on relations between semantics and distribution. This approach is based on the fact that reflexive verbs, as a whole, can neither all be placed under the category of voice (although some reflexive verbs express middle voice meanings), nor exhaustively analyzed as derivatives of non-reflexive verbs (although some of them are related to certain word-formation models). The fact of the matter is that Latvian reflexive verbs are a heterogeneous group having both inflectional and derivational features.

It should also be emphasized that there does not exist a symmetrical system of non-reflexive/reflexive verbs in Latvian. Thus, intransitive non-reflexive verbs, for the most part, do not have reflexive counterparts.

(2.5.151) būt ‘to be’, tapt ‘to become, to get’, nirt ‘to dive’, silt ‘to grow warm’, mīrkt ‘to soak’, dīlt ‘to wear out’, kalst ‘to wither’, snigt ‘to snow’

Likewise, in some cases there is only a reflexive verb (2.5.152).

(2.5.152) kļūdīties-s ‘to err’, atcerēties ‘to remember’, gadīties-s ‘to happen’, pūlēties ‘to try hard’, mostie-s ‘to wake up (no obj.)’ (from *kļūdīt, *atcerēt, *gadīt, *pūlēt, *most)

Quite frequently, non-reflexive/reflexive pairs break up into separate lexemes. More often than not it happens as a result of metonymic changes in the original middle voice meaning (Gerritsen 1990; Kalnača 2014).
(2.5.153) a. *dot* ‘to give smb. (smth.)’ – *dotie-*s ‘to go away, move away’
   b. *salikt* ‘to put together, to put in’ – *saliktie-*s ‘colloq. to get ready’
   c. *prasīt* ‘to ask’ – *prasītie-*s ‘colloq. to want’

Usually, the non-reflexive verb in such pairs is neutral, while the semantically different reflexive verb is a colloquialism, as shown in (2.5.153b-c). For instance, the reflexive verbs *prasīties* ‘to want’ and *bremzēties* ‘to slow down’ clearly add a sense of colloquiality to the text in the examples below:

(2.5.154) a. *Ja prasās* apēst ko ļoti treknu,
   *crave.*PRS.3.REFL eat.INF something.ACC very fat-rich.ACC.M
   *organismam nepieciešams kalcijs.*
   ‘If one craves fat-rich food it means that the body needs calcium.’
   (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)
   b. *Mazumtirdzniecības izaugsme lēnām* bremzēsies.
   *retail_sector.gen.f growth.nom.f gradually slow_down.*
   ‘Growth in the retail sector will gradually slow down.’ (Kas Jauns)

Given the functional heterogeneity of reflexive verbs and their strong links to the semantic and grammatical structure of sentences, they are best grouped according to how they stand in relation to the prototypical reflexive meaning. Prototypical reflexive verbs are verbs whose subject and object refer to one and the same entity, i.e., whose agent and patient coincide (e.g., *ietīties* ‘to wrap oneself’, *atjaunoties* ‘to recover (no obj.)’, *mainīties* ‘to change (no obj.)’) (among others, Wierzbicka 1996; Enger, Nesset 1999; Haspelmath 2002). In Latvian, reflexive verbs have trifurcated into the following semantically and functionally distinct branches (Kalnača, Lokmane 2012; Kalnača 2013c: 512):

1) subject reflexive verbs, which come the closest to the prototypical meaning and are related to the middle voice meaning;
2) object reflexive verbs;
3) impersonal reflexive verbs.

Functionally and semantically, object reflexive and impersonal reflexive verbs are the farthest from the prototypical meaning. In terms of the semantico-syntactic sentence structure this means that either there is no agent or it is replaced with an experiencer or a beneficiary in the dative case (see also Section 3.2.3). In addition, reflexive verbs of all semantic groups also involve different kinds of modal and aspectual meanings, most of which arise due to changes in the agent’s status or its absence (i.e., zero form).

**Subject reflexive verbs**

Actions expressed by subject reflexive verbs are subject-oriented: the agent functions as a syntactic subject and at the same time the subject and object fully or partially coincide (Klaiman 1991: 4; Kemmer 1993: 2–5).
(2.5.155) a. Vai tas ir normāli,  
ka kaķis tik ilgi mazgājas?  
that cat.NOM.M so long_time wash.PRS.3.REFL  
‘Is it normal that a cat washes itself for so long?’ (www.delfi.lv)  

b. Šorīt agri cēlos,  
this_morning early get_up.PST.1SG.REFL  
‘I got up early today to participate in a television program.’ (www.twitter.com)  

c. Pārsvarā pēc dušas slaukos ātri.  
mostly after shower.GEN.F dry_oneself.PRS.1SG.REFL quickly  
‘Mostly, I dry myself with a towel right after a shower.’ (www.cosmo.lv)  

Thus, for example, the subject and object of the verbs celties (no gultas) ‘to get up (from bed)’, slaucīties (pēc peldes) ‘to dry oneself with a towel (after swimming)’, mazgāties (vannā) ‘to have a bath’ are entirely the same, while the subject and object of the verb kemmēties ‘to comb (one’s hair)’ only partially overlap, since it is usually one’s hair and not the whole body that one combs.

In functional and derivational terms, there are two kinds of subject reflexive verbs – with an implied reflexive pronoun in the accusative (2.5.156) or the dative case (2.5.157) (Endzelīns, Mülenbachs 1907a, 1907b).

(2.5.156) mazgāties ‘to wash oneself’
celties ‘to get (oneself) up’
liekties ‘to bend (oneself)’

(2.5.157) sapirkties ‘to buy (for oneself)’
apsieties ‘to tie (around oneself)’
apauties ‘to put on shoes (on oneself)’

While accusative reflexive verbs can have fully or partially coinciding subjects and objects, only a partial overlap is often possible for dative reflexive verbs (apsieties priekšautu ‘to tie an apron (around oneself)’ means to tie it around the waist or neck, i.e., around a certain part of the body rather than the whole body).

Subject reflexive verbs can be classified into the following semantic groups:

1. Verbs expressing everyday activities / grooming verbs – the patient is the same as the agent or agent’s body part (mazgāties ‘to wash (oneself)’, ģērbties ‘to dress (oneself)’, skūties ‘to shave (oneself)’, slaucīties ‘to dry oneself with a towel’, kemmēties ‘to comb one’s hair’, etc.).

(2.5.158) a. Līga [maza meitene] jau mēģina pati  
Līga.NOM.F [little girl] already try.PRS.3 self  
kemmēties.  
comb.INF.REFL  
‘Līga [a little girl] already is trying to comb her hair.’ (www.maminuklubs.lv)
b. Kā arī aukstā laikā ģērbties
how even cold.LOC.M weather.LOC.M dress.REFL 
moderini?
fashionably
‘How to dress fashionably even in cold weather?’ (www.delfi.lv)

2. Autocausative verbs – the patient is the agent’s physical body, which changes its location, position, etc.:

a) an animate agent

(2.5.159) a. Ja jāved suns ārā,
tad ceļos no gultas jau
then get up.PR.SG.REFL from bed.GEN.F already
piecos [no rīta].
five.LOC.M [in morning]
‘When I have to walk the dog I get up as early as five o’clock [in the morning].’ (www.cosmo.lv)

b. Bille un Ausma paslējās pirkstgalos.
Bille.NOM.F and Ausma.NOM.F raise.PST.REFL tiptoe.LOC.PL.M
‘Bille and Ausma raised themselves up on their tiptoes.’ (V. Belševica)

b) an inanimate agent; although an action takes place on its own, without human agency, it is described with the help of personification as though it were brought about by an agent. Reflexive verbs of this type can alternatively be interpreted as object verbs, i.e., passive verbs, since they lack an active agent (see, e.g., Paegle 2003: 130)

(2.5.160) a. Vasara nebeidzas:
sārtojas zemenes,
ripen.PR.SG.REFL strawberry.NOM.PL.F
zied puķes.
‘The summer is not nearing its end yet: strawberries are ripening, flowers are blooming.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

b. Daugavā ceļas ūdens limenis.
Daugava.LOC.F rise.PR.SG.REFL water.GEN.M level.NOM.M
‘The water level is rising in the Daugava.’ (www.lsm.lv)

3. Reciprocal verbs – an action is exchanged between several (at least two) agent–patients acting upon each other (Ahero et al. 1959: 558; Skujiņa 2007: 344).

(2.5.161) a. [Futbolistam Lionelam] Mesi nākot no rezervistu soliņa,
“Barcelona” cinās neizšķirti ar
Barcelona.NOM.F fight.PR.SG.REFL in a draw with
“Juventus”.
Juventus.INS.M
‘As [the football player Lionel] Messi returns from the bench the points are even between Barcelona and Juventus.’ (Diena)
b. Liekas, 
ka viņi sarunājas spāniski.
that they.NOM.M speak.PRS.3.REFL Spanish
‘It seems, they are speaking in Spanish.’ (A. Eglitis)

4. **Indirect-reflexive verbs** – the agent is also the beneficiary (sapirkties ‘to buy for oneself’, sagrābties ‘to grab, seize for oneself’, apsieties ‘to tie around/onto oneself’, apvilkties ‘to wrap oneself in smth.’, uzlikties ‘to place on oneself’, uzvilkties ‘to put on oneself’).

(2.5.162) a. **Sapirkos** lētas drēbes.
buy.PST.1SG.REFL cheap.ACC.PL.F clothes.ACC.PL.F
‘I have bought a lot of cheap clothes.’ (www.delfi.lv)
b. **Apvilcies** esmu savas labākās drānas.
dress.PTCP.NOM.M.REFL. be.AUX.PRS.1SG my.ACC.PL.F best.ACC.PL.F clothes.ACC.PL.F
‘I have dressed myself up in my best attire.’ (www.lauksaimnieks.wordpress.com)
c. **Viņš** gribēs še naudas sagrābties!
he.NOM want.FUT.3 here money.GEN.PL.F grab.INF.REFL
‘He will want to lay his hands on some money here.’ (C)

5. **Reflexive verbs with a modal or aspectual meaning** – subject reflexive verbs expressing aspectuality and (in certain contexts involving a positive or negative attitude) also modality:

a) an action with a focus on its extent or quantity with or without negative evaluation on the part of the speaker, expressed derivationally by means of circumfixation (prefix + reflexive ending) pie- ... -s; sa- ... -s, pa- ... -s, pār- ... -s, aiz- ... -s, no- ... -s, etc.

a1) an action carried out in full

(2.5.163) a. **Viņš** nezaudē cerības aizbraukt uz
he.NOM not_lose.PRS.3 hope.ACC.PL.F go.INF to
laukiem pie vecāsmātes, tur kārtīgi
country.DAT.PL.M to grandmother.GEN.F there a_lot
sadzerties pienu.
drink.INF.REFL milk.ACC.M
‘He still hopes to go to the country, to his grandmother’s, and drink all the milk he wants.’ (Latvijas Avīze)
b. **Dundagā** pamatīgi pieēdāmies kādā
Dundaga.LOC.F thoroughly eat.PST.1PL.REFL some.LOC.F
‘We ate our fill at some restaurant in Dundaga.’ (C)
b.) an action done to excess

(2.5.164) a. Nekad nav laika,

viennēr aizguļos.

always oversleep.PRS.1SG.REFL

‘I never have time, I always oversleep.’ (C)

b. Ja bail pārdzerties kafiju,

if afraid drink_too_much.INF.REFL coffee.ACC.F

to viennēr var aizstāt ar kakao.

‘If you’re afraid of drinking too much coffee you can always replace it with cocoa.’ (C)

b) an action with an inchoative focus, referring to the beginning of a sudden, unexpected, brief action, expressed derivationally by means of the circumfixes pie- ... -s; ie- ... -s; sa- ... -s, pa- ... -s, pār- ... -s, aiz- ... -s, no- ... -s, etc.:

(2.5.165) a. Ja cilvēkam kaut kas iesāpas

if person.DAT.M something hurt.PRS.3.REFL night.GEN.F

vidū,

middle.LOC.M

viņš neies pie ģimenes ārsta.

‘If one just feels a brief sting of pain at night one doesn’t rush to the GP.’ (C)

b. Es patiešām satrūkos,

I.NOM really jump.PST.1SG.REFL

cad ieraudzīju, kādi tenisisti ir “Top 100“.

‘It really made me jump when I saw which tennis players are included in the “Top 100“.’ (www.sportacentrs.com)

c) an iterative action not having an end

(2.5.166) a. Diemžēl nekur nav iespēju

unfortunately nowhere not_be.PRS.3 possibility.GEN.PL.F

kārtīgi pabraukāties [ar automašīnu],

normally drive.INF.REFL [with car]

policija tūlīt noķer.

‘Unfortunately, there is no place where you can drive to your heart’s content, the police will catch you at once.’ (Ieva)

b. – Vai tu tomēr nevarētu apsēsties, taisni neeērti [ka stāvi kājās].

– Esmu diezgan izsēdējies.

be.AUX.1SG enough sit.PTCP.NOM.M.REFL

“Still, can’t you sit down, it feels awkward [that you are standing].”

“I have sat enough.”’ (Z. Skujiņš)

Object reflexive verbs

Object reflexive verbs express object-oriented actions with the patient usually functioning as a syntactic subject.
The ring was found when everybody started to leave – it lay on the small table at the opposite end of the room.’ (Z. Skujiņš)

Since the agent of an object reflexive verb is either generalized, as shown in example (2.5.168), or transformed into a dative experiencer, it cannot be identical to the patient.

Object reflexive verbs can be classified into the following semantic groups:

1. **Anticausative verbs** refer to unexpected events occurring independently of human will or actions; the agent is absent or expressed as a dative experiencer, while the patient functions as a nominative syntactic subject; some of these verbs, with the help of personification, can be alternatively interpreted as autocauses.

      
      ‘A[n] [apartment] door opened in the basement. The smell of freshly baked bread flowed out. Then the door slammed shut.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

      
      ‘At some point, my friend’s shoelace came undone and he stooped to tie it.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

2. **Reflexive verbs with a modal or aspectual meaning** – reflexive verbs used with the so-called false passive meaning; although an action expressed in this way may not be agentless the speaker may choose to focus attention on the action itself and the fact that it is not always performed deliberately and actively, hence, the agent may be omitted or transformed into a dative experiencer, while the patient functions as a nominative syntactic subject.

   a) imperfective reflexive verbs with no agent or with a dative experiencer are usually related to a positive or negative evaluation of the action expressed; in many cases, this kind of usage is considered non-standard

use.FUT.3.REFL
‘It’s very important for a consumer to know how [the fabric] will withstand wear or use.’ (C)

b. Šis veļas pulveris tīri this.NOM.M washing.GEN.F powder.NOM.M clean mazgā, labi izskalojas.

wash.PRS.3 well rinse.PRS.REFL
‘This washing powder cleans and rinses well.’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)

b) perfective reflexive verbs often accompanied by a dative experiencer are used to express a sudden, unexpected action, likely to have negative consequences, and to shift responsibility from the doer – usually in colloquial or children’s speech (Holvoet 2001: 184–189; Kalnača 2006; Kalnača, Lokmane 2012).

(2.5.171) a. Un tad man aizmirsās atlikt to and then I.DAT forget.PST.1SG.REFL put_back.inf it.ACC.M [nazi] atpakaļ.

[knife] back
‘And then I somehow forgot to put that [knife] back.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. Man apēdās dažas sliktas eat.pst.3.refl some.nom.pl.f bad.nom.pl.f lietas.

thing.nom.pl.f
‘It so happened that I ate some bad things.’ (C)

3. Reflexive verbs with a passive meaning are used as passive voice verbs; the agent is left unexpressed and the subject position is filled by the patient in the nominative case; this kind of usage, however, is not encouraged in Standard Latvian:

(2.5.172) a. Izstāde atvērsies 3. maijā.

exhibition.nom.f open.fut.3.refl 3 May.loc.f
‘The exhibition will open on the 3rd of May.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

b. Vārdi ar vienu nozīmi bieži

word.nom.pl.m with one.ins.f meaning.ins.f often rakstās un lasās katram no write.prs.3.refl and read.pst.3.refl each.dat.m no šiem grieku valodas this.gen.pl.m Greek.gen.pl.m language.gen.f veidiem citādi.

variety.dat.pl.m differently
‘Words with the same meaning are often written and pronounced differently in each of these varieties of Greek.’ (C)
Impersonal reflexive verbs

Impersonal reflexive verbs do not allow for a syntactic subject and, hence, are either agentless or take an agent in the form of a dative experiencer.

(2.5.173) a. Sestdien būs apmācies
Saturday be.AUX.FUT.3 be_cloudy.PTCP.NOM.M.REFL
un līs.
and rain.FUT.3
‘It will be cloudy and rainy on Saturday.’ (www.lsm.lv)
b. Pa ceļam uz Grieķiju man laimējās
on way.DAT.M to Greece.ACC.F I.DAT be_lucky.PST.3.REFL
apmeklēt seno baznīcu.
visit.INF ancient.ACC.F church.ACC.F
‘On my way to Greece, I was lucky to be able to visit this ancient church.’ (www.apollo.lv)

Impersonal reflexive verbs can be classified into the following semantic groups:

1. **Agent-downgrading verbs with a modal meaning** – the agent is downgraded to an experiencer in the dative case:
   a) in questions and expressions of good wishes, mostly in colloquial speech and mass media texts, although the usage is considered non-standard.

(2.5.174) a. Kā tev vispār tagad dzīvojas?
how you.DAT.SG generally now live.PRS.3.REFL
‘How is life these days?’
Tā arī dzīvojas, kā redzi.
so also live.PRS.3.REFL as see.PRS.2SG
‘It’s going just like it seems.’
b. Lai labi rokas kartupelī!
let well dig.PST.3.REFL potato.NOM.PL.M
‘May your potato digging go well!’ (Kas Jauns)

b) when expressing an accidental, unintentional or spontaneous action that is not always anticipated or probable.

(2.5.175) a. Dzīvē gadās visādi.
life.LOC.F happen.PST.3.REFL variously
‘Things happen.’ (Ir)
b. Viņam negribējās tūdaļ celties un
he.DAT not_want.PST.3.REFL immediately get_up.INF and
doties laukā [no restorāna]
go.INF outside [from restaurant]
dedzinošajā saulē.
scorching.LOC.F sun.LOC.F
‘He didn’t want to get up and head right out into the scorching sunlight [from the restaurant].’ (A. Eglītis)
2. **Verbs with an inchoative meaning** express a sudden, unexpected action, focusing on its outset or starting point, and usually take a dative experiencer without either an agent or a patient; verbs of this type are derived by means of the circumfix *ie- ... -s*.

(2.5.176) a. *Man iedūrās krūtīs, likās, ka nevaru līdz galam ieelpot.*

*I felt a piercing sensation in my chest, I couldn’t seem to breathe in fully.* (NRA)

b. *Jā, mums iesāpas sirdī, ieduras smeldze.*

*‘Yes, we feel a twinge of pain in our hearts, pierced by an ache.’* (C)

### 2.5.8 Aspect

Aspect refers primarily to the way grammar marks the duration or type of a temporal activity denoted by a verb (Crystal 1997: 29). In other words, aspect characterizes an action in terms of results (an incomplete, complete, initiated action, an action performed in part, to excess, etc.), quantity (a single or iterative action), duration (a brief or prolonged action) and other properties (Skujiņa 2007: 439).

In much the same way as verb reflexivity, verbal aspect in Latvian has both derivational and inflectional features. Consequently, some grammarians view verbal aspect as part of word formation, while others attribute it to verbal inflection and, accordingly, it is seen either as a phenomenon emerging from derivation or as a grammatical category of the verb. Endzelins (1971: 307–655) and Soida (2009: 219–265) treat verbal aspect as a derivational phenomenon and do not postulate a category of aspect due to there not being sufficient grammatical abstraction (for a similar opinion see, e.g., Mathiassen 1997; Holvoet 2001; Kalnača 2013c: 531–545). On the other hand, e.g., Staltmane (1958), Ahero et al. (1959: 564–582), Nitiņa (2001: 90–93), Paegle (2003: 130–138) propose to treat verbal aspect as a verbal grammatical category while also recognizing, as a compromise, its links to word formation.

It should be emphasized that, in Latvian, aspectual meanings are not grammaticalized and rest on the lexical meaning of verbs as well as prefix and suffix semantics, while their realization is contingent on the opposition of indefinite/perfect tense forms and context. These are the main reasons why aspect cannot really be seen as a grammatical category. In fact, aspectual meanings in Latvian are a matter of pragmatics and as such are not a proper object of analysis for morphology or grammar.

In Latvian, aspectual opposition occurs in two kinds of cases (also see Section 2.5.10 on verbal derivation):
1) between _imperfective/perfective_ actions where unprefixed verbs express imperfective actions, while verbs containing the verbal prefixes _aiz-, ap-, at-, ie-, iz-, no-, pa-, pār-, sa-, uz_- are perfective:

(2.5.177) _nest_ ‘to carry’ – _aiz-nest_ ‘to carry (to a destination)’

_ kris- ‘to fall’ – _ap-kris- ‘to fall (around smth.)’
_ vēr-t ‘to open’ – _at-vēr-t ‘to open (completely)’
_ brauk-t ‘to drive’ – _ie-braukt_ ‘to drive into, enter (by car)’
_ nākt ‘to come’ – _iz-nākt ‘to come out’
_ kāpt ‘to climb’ – _no-kāpt ‘to climb down’
_ lasīt ‘to read’ – _pa-lasīt ‘to read for some time’
_ lēkt ‘to jump’ – _pār-lēkt ‘to jump over’
_ mest ‘to throw’ – _sa-mest_ ‘to throw together, in one heap’
_ likt ‘to put’– _uz-likt ‘to put onto’

2) between _semelfactive/iterative_ actions where primitive verbs express semelfactive actions, while verbs derived by means of the suffixes _-ā-, -ē-, -ī_, _-inā_- (2.5.178) or _-alē-, -alā-, -elē-, -uļo_-, for atelic, chaotic iterative activities (2.5.179), are iterative:

(2.5.178) _lēkt_ ‘to jump’ – _lēk-ā-t_ ‘to jump iteratively’

_ mērk-t ‘to soak’ – _mērc-ē-t ‘to soak for some time’
_ stiep-t ‘to pull, drag’ – _staip-ī-t ‘to pull, drag on several occasions’
_ vēr-t ‘to open’ – _vir-inā-t ‘to open iteratively’

(2.5.179) _brauk-t_ ‘to drive’ – _brauk-alē-t_ ‘to drive around’

_ kāpt ‘to climb’ – _kāp-alā-t, kāp-elē-t_ ‘to climb around’
_ šņāk-t ‘to hiss, puff’ – _šņāk-uļo-t ‘to hiss, puff repeatedly’

The semelfactive/iterative aspect and the imperfective/perfective aspect are not segregated from each other and can be combined. For example, an iterative verb can be turned into a perfective iterative verb by means of prefixation.

(2.5.180) a. _nest_ ‘to carry’ – _nēs-ā-t_ ‘to carry around’ – _pa-nēsāt_ ‘to carry around a little’, _iz-nēsāt_ ‘to carry (a child)’, _sa-nēsāt_ ‘to carry to one spot iteratively’


c. _kāpt_ ‘to climb’ – _kāpēlēt_ ‘to climb around’ – _pa-kāpelēt_ ‘to climb around a little’, _iz-kāpelēt_ ‘to climb, walk throughout’

d. _braukt_ ‘to drive’ – _braukalēt_ ‘to drive around’ – _pa-braukalēt_ ‘to drive around a little’

Unlike inflectional (person, tense, mood) verbal formatives, aspectual prefixes and suffixes are present in the infinitive and all other grammatical forms of a verb (see Section 2.5.1, 2.5.3, 2.5.4 on tense and mood forms).

Apart from expressing perfectivity, verbal prefixes usually also add additional, e.g., spatial (2.5.181a), quantitative (2.5.181b-c), aspectual, etc. information to the lexical meaning of a verb (see Section 2.5.10 on verbal derivation).
(2.5.181) a. skriet ‘to run’ – aiz-skriet ‘to run away’, at-skriet ‘to come running’, ie-skriet ‘to run in, into’, iz-skriet ‘to run out’, ap-skriet ‘to run around’, uz-skriet ‘to run up’, no-skriet ‘to run down, to run a certain distance’, sa-skriet ‘to come together running’, pār-skriet ‘to run over’, pa-skriet ‘to run a little’

b. kost ‘to bite’ – aiz-kost ‘take a bite (e.g., of an apple)’, ie-kost ‘to bite (once)’, sa-kost ‘to bite all over’, no-kost ‘to bite off’, pār-kost ‘to bite in two’

c. kurt ‘to make a fire’ – aiz-kurt, ie-kurt ‘to make a fire’, sa-kurt ‘to heat well’

Imperfectivity/perfectivity in Latvian is neither symmetrical nor universal in that it does not apply to all verbs:

1) some prefixed verbs do not have an unprefixed counterpart, e.g.:

(2.5.182) atzīt ‘to acknowledge’, pazīt ‘to know, recognize’, aizmirst ‘to forget’, apnikt ‘to bore’, atgādināt ‘to remind’, ietekmēt ‘to influence’, pielāgot ‘to adjust’, sastapt ‘to meet’

2) the lexical meanings of certain unprefixed and prefixed verbs are so dissimilar that they cannot possibly form an imperfective/perfective opposition, e.g.:

(2.5.183) a. dzīvot ‘to live’ – uz-dzīvot ‘to carouse’

b. mantot ‘to inherit’ – iz-mantot ‘to use’

c. stāvēt ‘to stand’ – pie-stāvēt ‘to suit (smb.)’

d. rast ‘to find’ – ap-rast ‘to get used to’

e. vēlēt ‘to vote (in an election)’ – pa-vēlēt ‘to order, to command’

However, such source verbs usually enter into an opposition with other prefixed derivatives having more similar semantics (e.g., dzīvot ‘to live’ – pa-dzīvot ‘to live for some time’, sa-dzīvot ‘to live with’, pie-dzīvot ‘to live to, to live over’, etc.).

3) some verbs (mostly, borrowed) do not readily combine with prefixes, e.g.:

(2.5.184) adaptēt ‘to adapt’, legalizēt ‘to legalize’, reabilitēt ‘to vindicate’, kanonizēt ‘to canonize’, konsolidēt ‘to consolidate’, pastierzēt ‘to pasteurize’, karbonizēt ‘to carbonize’, jonizēt ‘to ionize’

Taken out of context, the above verbs can be said to be biaspectral. Their aspectual meaning is context-dependent and may be closely linked to the semantics of the subject or object of a clause, also an attribute or an adverbial modifier, e.g.:

(2.5.185) imperfective aspect

a. Man šķita, ka tikko satiktos latviešus that just meet.PTCP.PL.M Latvian.ACC.PL.M pazīstu jau gadiem ilgi. know.PRS.1SG already year.INS.PL.M long

‘I felt as though I had known the Latvians I had just met for years.’

(www.kurzemnieks.lv)
b. Ūdeni pēc diennakts nostādināšanas vienmēr
water.ACC.M after day_and_night.GEN.F let_settle.GEN.F always
izmantoju puku laistišanai.
use.PRS.1SG flower.GEN.PL.F watering.DAT.F
‘I always use the water for flowers, after letting it settle for a twenty-four-hour period.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

c. [ekonomiskās] Krīzes laikā mēs
[economic] crisis.GEN.F time.LOC.M we.NOM
konsolidējām visu pēc kārtas,
consolidate.PST.1PL everything.ACC.M after row.GEN.F neiedziļinoties – ir attiecīgā nozare stratēģiski svarīga vai nav.
‘Throughout the [economic] crisis we consolidated anything and everything, never considering the strategic importance of each industry.’
(www.tvnet.lv)

(2.5.186) perfective aspect

a. Katrā mākslinieka akvarelī uzreiz
each.LOC.M artist.GEN.M painting.LOC.M instantly
pazīstu Latgali.
recognize.PRS.1SG Latgale.ACC.F
‘I instantly recognize Latgale in every watercolor painting by that artist.’ (www.rezeknesbiblioteka.lv)

b. Mēs nepērkam lielveikalā pārtiku
we.NOM not_buy.PRS.1PL supermarket.LOC.M food.ACC.F
lielā daudzumā un visu [noprirkto]
large.LOC.M quantity.LOC.M and all.ACC.M [bought]
loti ekonomiski izmantojam.
very economically use.PRS.1PL
‘We don’t buy much food at supermarkets and we use all of it very sparingly.’ (www.lsm.lv)

c. Ekonomiskās krīzes laikā visas
economic.GEN.F crisis.GEN.F time.LOC.M all.NOM.PL.F
dalīvalstis konsolidēja
member_state.NOM.PL.F consolidate.PST.3
savu budžetu.
own.ACC.M budget.ACC.M
‘During the economic crisis all member states consolidated their budgets.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

In example (2.5.185), imperfectivity is signaled by the adverbial modifiers gadiem ilgi ‘for years’ (2.5.185a), vienmēr ‘always’ (2.5.185b), krīzes laikā ‘throughout the crisis’ (2.5.185c) and the object visu pēc kārtas ‘anything and everything’ (2.5.185c). By contrast, the adverbial modifier uzreiz ‘instantly’ in (2.5.186a), the object visu ‘all of it’ in (2.5.186b) and the clause subject with an attribute visas dalīvalstis ‘all member
states’ in (2.5.186c) indicate perfectivity. Importantly, the opposition that biaspectual verbs seem to show in context is between general and specific actions rather than the imperfective and perfective aspect. According to Plungian (2011: 398–400), this type of aspectual opposition is secondary in that it is the result of a context-driven transformation of the imperfective aspect into a general action and the perfective aspect into a concrete action, in which the absence or presence of a verbal prefix becomes insignificant (also see Horiguči 2011: 102).

In Latvian, the realization of aspectual meanings within the imperfective/perfective opposition is tied to the parallel uses of indefinite and perfect tense forms (see Section 2.5.3 on perfect tenses and aspect), while the semelfactive/iterative aspect is not directly related to the paradigm of tense forms or their contextual uses.

Thus, an action occurring prior to another action in the present, past, or future can be expressed, interchangeably, either by indefinite or perfect tense forms, cf. examples (2.5.187) and (2.5.188) (Kalnača 2013c: 544–555). This becomes obvious in complex sentences containing relative temporal relations between clauses and subordinate relations between finite verb forms.

(2.5.187) a. PRS Indefinite // PRS Perfect

\[
\text{Jūs aizmirstat (// esat aizmirsis),} \\
\text{you.NOM.PL forget.PRS.2PL (// have forgotten)} \\
\text{kur atrodieties.}
\]

‘You forget (have forgotten) where you are.’ (M. Žīverts)

b. PST Indefinite // PRS Perfect

\[
\text{Kad viesi beidzot pamodās} \\
\text{when guest.NOM.PL.M finally awake.PST.3} \\
\text{// ir pamodušies}, \\
\text{// have awakened) \\
\text{tēvs lepni izrāda [dārzā] padarīto.}
\]

‘When the guests finally wake up (have finally woken up) father proudly shows them what has been accomplished [in the garden].’ (A. Žīgure)

c. PST Indefinite // PST Perfect

\[
\text{Kad iebraucām (// bijām iebraukuši) [Amerikā],} \\
\text{when come.PST.1PL (// had come) [to America] \\
\text{pirmajos gados es taisījos pieņemt kādu vienkāršu darbu, bet Jolanta neļāva.} \\
\text{when after half_year.gen.m sky.loc.pl.f again \\
\text{atgriezīšies (// būs atgriezusies) saule,} \\
\text{return.FUT.3 (// will have returned) sun.NOM.F \\
\text{pretī šalkos klūgu jaunās lapīnas.}
\]

‘When we first came (had come) [to America] I wanted to take an unskilled job but Jolanta would not let me.’ (A. Eglītis)

d. FUT Indefinite // FUT Perfect

\[
\text{Kad pēc pusgada debēsis atkal} \\
\text{when after half_year.gen.m sky.loc.pl.f again \\
\text{atgriezīšies (// būs atgriezusies) saule,} \\
\text{return.FUT.3 (// will have returned) sun.NOM.F \\
\text{pretī šalkos klūgu jaunās lapīnas.}
\]

‘When, in half a year, the sun will return (will have returned) to the sky it will be greeted by the rustle of young osier leaves.’ (I. Ābele)
(2.5.188) a. PRS Perfect // PRS Indefinite

Ap tevi aplūp ziedputekšņu spieti,

.. Ko saules klijos [ir]
what.ACC sun.GEN.F space.LOC.PL.M [having been]
pacēlis (// paceļ)
bring_up.PTCP.NOM.M (// bring)
tavs dārzs.
your.NOM.M garden.NOM.M

‘The clouds of pollen cling to you,

.. Brought up (having been brought up) into the sunlit spaces by your garden.’ (L. Tauns)

b. PRS Perfect // PST Indefinite

Laikam sporta ziņu portāls [ir] aizmirsis (// aizmirsa),
probably sports.GEN.M news.GEN.PL.F portal.NOM.M

[has] forget.PTCP.NOM.M (// forgot)
ka pašlaik notiek hokeja spēle!

‘It seems, the sports news portal has forgotten (forgot) that there’s a hockey game going on!’ (www.sportacentrs.com)

c. PST Perfect // PST Indefinite

Kamēr Filips spēja sevi atcerēties,
vinš bija visiem paticis (// patika).
he.NOM be.AUX.PST.3 everybody.DAT.PL.M like.PTCP.NOM.M

(// liked)

Īpaši meitenēm.

‘As long as Philip could remember everybody had always liked (liked) him. Especially, girls.’ (A. Eglītis)

d. FUT Perfect // FUT Indefinite

Izlasot šo grāmatu,
būsim izgājuši (// iziesim) cauri
be.AUX.FUT.1PL go.PTCP.NOM.PL.M (// go) through
vairāk nekā pieciem gadu desmitiem.
more than five.DAT.PL.M year.GEN.PL.M ten.DAT.PL.M

‘Having read this book, we will have gone through (go through) more than five decades.’ (www.kurzemesvards.lv)

It follows that, perfectivity can be expressed syntactically, i.e., making use of the properties of complex sentences. Interestingly, despite the fact that indefinite tense forms are shorter and easier to use, on the whole, there is no sign that they tend to supplant perfect forms in complex sentences. This shows that the tense forms
the speaker chooses to use to indicate that an action in one clause ends sooner than an action in another clause depends on the communicative situation.

The expression of imperfectivity/perfectivity can be linked to the lexical meaning, namely, the telicity of a verb. This is clearly manifested in the so-called telic constructions – couplings of an unprefixed/prefixed, i.e., an imperfective/perfective verb of motion with a spatial adverb:

(2.5.189) a. skriet prom – aizskriet prom ‘to run away’
   b. skriet šurp – atskriet šurp ‘to run hither’
   c. kāpt augšā – uzkāpt augšā ‘to go up, climb up’
   d. kāpt lejā – nokāpt lejā ‘to go down, climb down’

(2.5.190) unprefixed verb + adverb
   a. Pa kārtai viņi smeļ ārā ūdeni
      one_by_one they.NOM.M scoop.PRS.3 out water.ACC.M
      [no laivas].
      ‘They are scooping water [from the boat] one by one.’ (N. Ikstena)
   b. Viņš gāja lejā pa kāpnēm.
      he.NOM go.PST.3 down by stair.DAT.F
      ‘He was going down the stairs.’ (Joņevs)
   c. Mamma grib mest laukā
      mummy.NOM.F want.PRS.3 throw.INF out
      [Ķīnas rozi],
      [Chinese hibiscus]
      jo zemes baktērijas var būt kaitīgas veselībai.
      ‘Mummy wants to throw [the Chinese hibiscus] away, because soil bacteria can be bad for one’s health.’ (N. Ikstena)

(2.5.191) prefixed verb + adverb
   a. Viņš pa-skatījās apkārt.
      he.NOM PREF-look.PST.3 around
      ‘He looked around.’ (Joņevs)
   b. Cerams, ka viņi aku aiz-vēra
      hopefully that they.NOM.M well.ACC.F PREF-close.PST.3 closed
      ‘Hopefully, they closed that well.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
   c. Ilze nav ie-nesusi iekšā somu.
      Ilze.NOM.F not_be.AUX.PRS.3 PREF-bring.PTCP in bag.ACC.F
      ‘Ilze hasn’t brought in the bag.’ (I. Gaile)

In such constructions, a prefix indicates perfectivity and an adverb specifies the direction or purpose of motion but is not in itself a perfectivizing element and when used in a sentence is classified as an adverbial modifier (see examples (2.5.190)–(2.5.191)).
In colloquial speech, adverbial modifiers are sometimes used with telic verbs denoting non-physical actions and mental activities, however, such usage is usually evaluative and stylistically marked (Kalnača 2013c: 537; Kalnača 2014: 100):

(2.5.192) a. [viņi] Saņem savu vai bērnu
          [they] get.PRS.3 own.ACC.M or child.GEN.PL.M
          pabalstu un tik dzīvo nost.
          benefit.ACC.M and just live.PRS.3 away
Parazitē uz bērnu rēkina.
‘[They] get their welfare benefits or child care allowance and just live it up. Leeching off their children.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. Ātrāk gribējās tikt laukumā [pēc traumas].
       Nīku ārā no bezdarības.
       wither.PST.1SG out from idleness.GEN.F
‘I wanted to get back on the field as soon as possible [after the injury].
I was withering away from idleness.’ (Ieva)

Latvian linguistics has traditionally recognized the unprefixed verb + adverb type of telic constructions as marginal means of expressing aspectuality, and there have always been different opinions as to whether it applies to the imperfective (Paegle 2003; Soida 2009; Kalnača 2013c, 2014) or the perfective aspect (see Ahero et al. 1959; Kalme, Smiltniece 2001).

On the one hand, there is a tendency to use the construction unprefixed verb + adverb to emphasize a prolonged, continuous action (2.5.193) or whenever a perfectivity signaling prefix is undesirable, e.g., with the primary meaning of the present indefinite tense – an action taking place at the moment of speaking (2.5.194).

(2.5.193) a. Mēs kāpām ārā [no mašīnas].
          we.NOM get.PST.1PL out [of car]
‘We were getting out [of the car].’ (J. Joņevs)

b. Norunāsim, bērns, tā:
       kad ciemiņš ies projām,
       when guest.NOM.M go.FUT.3 away
       es piezvanīšu.
‘Let’s agree, child, that I will call you the moment the guest will be leaving.’ (G. Priede)

(2.5.194) Nu ko viņi tur tik ilgi dara,
          joprojām kumodi lauž valā?
          still bureau.ACC.F break.PRS.3 open
‘What’s taking them so long, are they still breaking open that chest of drawers?’ (G. Priede)

On the other hand, the construction unprefixed verb + adverb can also express perfective actions (see Horiguchi 2016; Kalnača 2017b for a detailed discussion), as in this example:
Vai obligāti jāstrādā mēnesi, ja eju prom no darba?

‘Do I have to work for the [notice] month if I am quitting my job?’

(www.delfi.lv)

In sum, the so-called telic constructions do not, in themselves, express aspectuality in Latvian, and, while, on the whole, verbal prefixes are the principal markers of perfectivity, in some cases perfectivity is contextual.

2.5.9 Participles

A participle is a non-finite form of a verb used to express an action, process, or state as an attribute and combining the inherent characteristics of a verb and an adjective or a verb and an adverb. Based on their inflectional properties, participles are classified into declinable, indeclinable, and semi-declinable participles (Skujiņa 2007: 94–95). Active participles have non-reflexive and reflexive endings.

Declinable participles make use of the verbal categories of voice, tense, and aspect and the adjectival categories of gender, number, case and, in part, also definiteness and gradation (Skujiņa 2007: 223) (see Section 2.2.2 and 2.2.3 for a detailed discussion on gradation and definiteness). Syntactically, declinable participles function either as attributes (2.5.196) or secondary predicates (2.6.197) (see 3.2.9 and 3.2.11).

(2.5.196) a. Skrejoši ļaudis piesēduši run.PTCP.NOM.PL.M people.NOM.PL.M sit_down.PTCP.NOM.PL.M saulītē ar kafijas turziņām. sun.LOC.F with coffee.GEN.F cup.INS.PL.F

‘Hurrying people were sitting in the sun with paper coffee cups.’
(N. Ikstena)

b. Uz skatuves uznāk vasarīgi on stage.GEN.F come_on.PRS.3 summery ģerbies be_dressed.PTCP.NOM.M conductor.NOM.M

‘The conductor dressed in summery clothes comes on the stage.’
(A. Žīgure)

c. Jolanta apēda sviestmaizi ar redzamu Jolanta.nom.f eat.PST.3 sandwich.ACC.F with see.PTCP.INS.F apetiti. appetite.INS.F

‘Jolanta ate the sandwich with a visible appetite.’ (A. Eglītis)

d. Viņai rokās ir atplēsta she.DAT hand.LOC.PL.F be.COP.PRS.3 open.PTCP.NOM.F aploksne.

‘She is holding an opened envelope in her hands.’ (N. Ikstena)
2.6.197) a. Dārzs **manī sagaidīja, piebiris**
   garden.NOM.M I.ACC greet.PST.3 get_filled.PTCP.NOM.M
   dzeltenām lapām.
   yellow.INS.PL.F leaf.INS.PL.F
   ‘The garden greeted me, strewn with yellow leaves.’ (N. Ikstena)
b. Tikā **vairākkārt mudināta, viņa**
   only several_times prompt.PTCP.NOM.F she.NOM
   piecēlās un devās uz virtuvi.
   get_up.PST.3 and go.PST.3 to kitchen.ACCESS.F
   ‘Only after being prompted several times did she get up and go to
   the kitchen.’ (A. Eglītis)

Depending on the voice meanings they express, declinable participles can be active or
passive. Active voice participles are used to refer to active, subject-oriented actions.

2.5.198) a. smejoša meitene ‘a laughing girl’
   šalcoša jūra ‘a soughing sea’
b. aizmidzis bērns ‘a child fallen asleep’
   sarūdzis piens ‘milk turned sour’

Passive voice participles, on the other hand, denote passive, object-centered actions.

2.5.199) a. ravējams dārzs ‘a garden to be weeded’
   pārstādāma roze ‘a rose to be replanted’
b. uzkopts dzīvoklis ‘a cleaned apartment’
   pārcelta brīvdiena ‘a non-working day transferred to another date’

The formation of participles is, to a degree, linked to verb transitivity. For instance,
declinable present active participles derived from intransitive verbs (2.5.200) are
more common than those based on transitive verbs (2.5.201).

2.5.200) ziedēt – ziedošs ‘to flower – flowering’
   plaukt – plaukstošs ‘to flourish, blossom – flourishing, blossoming’
   krist – kritošs ‘to fall – falling’

2.5.201) zināt – zinošs ‘to know – knowing’
   lasit – laosošs ‘to read – reading’
   nest – nesošs ‘to carry – carrying’

Passive participles, conversely, are usually formed from transitive verbs (2.5.202);
past passive participles from intransitive verbs are, in principle, possible (2.5.203) but
only as part of passive voice constructions expressing generalized actions (2.5.204).

2.5.202) nest – nesams, nests ‘to carry – to be carried, carried PTCP’
   rakstit – rakstāms, rakstīts ‘to write – to be written, written PTCP’
   domāt – domājams, domāts ‘to think – to be thought, thought PTCP’

2.5.203) mirkt – mirķts ‘to soak – soaked PTCP’
   augt – augts ‘to grow – grown PTCP’
   būt – būts ‘to be – been PTCP’
(2.5.204) a. Kad ilgi nav būts
when long not_be.AUX.PRS.3 be.PTCP.NOM.M
Rīgā, man ir tāds kā nemiers.
Riga.LOC.F I.DAT be.PRS.3 a_sort_of uneasiness.NOM.M
‘If I haven’t been to Riga for a while I start feeling somewhat uneasy.’
(www.kurzemesvards.lv)
b. Labs rīts!
Šonakt [ir] slikti gulēts,
tonight [have] poorly sleep.PTCP.NOM.M
jāmēģina celties.
DEB.try get_up.INF
‘Good morning! Having not slept well, [I] must try and get up.’
(www.blogi.oho.lv)

Latvian makes a formal distinction between present and past tense declinable participles. **Present participles** are used to refer to actions taking place simultaneously with the main action of a clause (Skujiņa 2007: 386).

(2.5.205) a. Viņa no skrejošiem mākoņiem
she.NOM from run.PTCP.DAT.PL.M cloud.DAT.PL.M
vairās.
shy_away.PRS.3
‘She shies away from running clouds.’ (L. Tauns)
b. Debesis austrumos jau blāzmoja
sky.NOM.PL.F east.LOC.PL.M already glow.PST.3
mostošās saules pirmajos staros.
wake_up.PTCP.GEN.F sun.GEN.F first.LOC.PL.M beam.LOC.PL.M
‘The eastern sky glowed brightly in the first beams of the morning sun.’
(www.tvnet.lv)
c. Kūstošā sniega dēl [rit]
melt.PTCP.GEN.M snow.GEN.M because_of [tomorrow]
veidosies lielas lāmas.
form.FUT.3 large.NOM.PL.F puddle.NOM.PL.F
‘The melting snow [tomorrow] will result in large puddles.’
(Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

(2.5.206) a. Tās [dainas] ir viegli
that.NOM.PL.F [dainas] be.COP.PRS.3 easily
dziedamas, viegli iegaumējamas,
sing.PTCP.NOM.PL.F easily memorize.PTCP.NOM.PL.F
pateicoties savam ritmam un uzbūvei.
thank.PTCP.IND own.DAT.M rhythm.DAT.M and structure.DAT.F
‘They [the dainas] are easy to sing, easy to remember, thanks to their rhythm and structure.’ (www.delfi.lv)
b. Mums bija ļoti daudz darāmu
we.DAT be.PST.3 very much do.PTCP.ACC.PL.M
darbu.
work.GEN.PL.M
‘We had quite a lot to do.’ (Diena)

c. Viņš savā blogā publicējis savas
he.NOM own.LOC.M blog.LOC.M publish.PTCP.NOM.M own.ACC.PL.F
jaunākās prognozes, kāda būs
newest.ACC.PL.F forecast.ACC.PL.F what_kind.NOM.F be.FUT.3
gaidāmā ziema.
await.PTCP.NOM.F winter.NOM.F
‘He has published his latest forecasts for the coming winter in his blog.’
(Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

The present active and passive participles are formed by attaching the suffix -oš- or am-/ām- (the suffix -ām- is reserved for conjugation class 3 subclass 1 verbs), respectively, to the present tense stem of a verb.

(2.5.207) a. aug-t – aug-u – aug-oš-s, aug-oš-a ‘to grow – (I) grow – growing PTCP (M), (F)’
smie-ties – smej-os – smej-oš-ies, smej-oš-ās ‘to laugh – (I) laugh – laughing PTCP (M), (F)’
b. nes-t – nes-u – nes-am-s, nes-am-a ‘to carry: (I) carry – to be carried (M), (F)’
rakst-ī-t – rakst-u – rakst-ām-s, rakst-ām-a ‘to write – (I) write – to be written (M), (F)’

The **declinable present active participle** inflects according to the following paradigm:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>INDF</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>aug-oš-s</td>
<td>aug-oš-ais</td>
<td>aug-oš-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>aug-oš-a</td>
<td>aug-oš-ā</td>
<td>aug-oš-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>aug-oš-am</td>
<td>aug-oš-ājam</td>
<td>aug-oš-īem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>aug-oš-u</td>
<td>aug-oš-o</td>
<td>aug-oš-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) aug-oš-u</td>
<td>(ar) aug-oš-o</td>
<td>(ar) aug-oš-īem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>aug-oš-ā</td>
<td>aug-oš-ajā</td>
<td>aug-oš-ōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>aug-oš-s!</td>
<td>aug-oš-āis!, aug-oš-o!</td>
<td>aug-oš-i!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.55 Inflection of the declinable present active participle, in the masculine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 93)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IND</td>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>IND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>aug-oš-a</td>
<td>aug-oš-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>aug-oš-as</td>
<td>aug-oš-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>aug-oš-ai</td>
<td>aug-oš-ajai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>aug-oš-u</td>
<td>aug-oš-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) aug-oš-u</td>
<td>(ar) aug-oš-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>aug-oš-ā</td>
<td>aug-oš-ajā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>aug-oš-ā!</td>
<td>aug-oš-ajā!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.56 Inflection of the declinable present active participle, in the feminine** (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 93)

The paradigm of reflexive present active participle forms is defective in both genders: mos-ties – mo-st-os – mos-st-oš-ies, mos-st-oš-ās ‘to wake up – (I) wake up – waking up PTCP (M), (F):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>mo-st-oš-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>mo-st-oš-os</td>
<td>mo-st-oš-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) mo-st-oš-ōs</td>
<td>(ar) mo-st-oš-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.57 Inflection of reflexive declinable present active participles** (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 93)

The **declinable present passive participle** inflects according to the following paradigm:
M – sveik-t – sveic-u – sveic-am-s, sveic-am-ais ‘to greet – (I) greet – to be greeted (INDF), (DEF)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IND</td>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>IND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>sveic-am-s</td>
<td>sveic-am-ais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>sveic-am-a</td>
<td>sveic-am-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>sveic-am-am</td>
<td>sveic-am-ajam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>sveic-am-u</td>
<td>sveic-am-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) sveic-am-u</td>
<td>(ar) sveic-am-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>sveic-am-ā</td>
<td>sveic-am-ajā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>sveic-am-s!</td>
<td>sveic-am-ais!, sveic-am-o!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.58 Inflection of the declinable present passive participle, in the masculine** (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 94)
F – sveik-t – sveic-u – sveic-am-a, sveic-am-ā ‘to greet – (I) greet – to be greeted (INDF), (DEF)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>DEF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>sveic-am-a</td>
<td>sveic-am-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>sveic-am-as</td>
<td>sveic-am-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>sveic-am-ai</td>
<td>sveic-am-ajai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>sveic-am-u</td>
<td>sveic-am-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) sveic-am-u</td>
<td>(ar) sveic-am-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>sveic-am-ā</td>
<td>sveic-am-āj-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>sveic-am-a!</td>
<td>sveic-am-āl,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.59 Inflection of the declinable present passive participle, in the feminine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 94)

**Past participles** are used to refer to actions preceding the main action of a clause (Skujiņa 2007: 272–273).

(2.5.208) a. Rita **gaisma** spīd **cauri**
morning.GEN.M light.NOM.F shine.PRS.3 through
[dzelzceļa stacijas] iedzelteni **noputējušajam**
[railway station] yellowish **become_dusty.PTCP.DAT.M**
stiklotajam **jumtam**.
put_in_glass.PTCP.DAT.M roof.DAT.M
‘The morning light shines through the yellowish dusty glass roof [of the railway station].’ (A. Žīgure)

b. Viņa **sagurusi** un **nobijusies**
she,NOM get_tired.PTCP.NOM.F and get_frightened.PTCP.NOM.F
skaidroja,
explain.PST.3
ka brauc pie sava drauga.
‘Tired and frightened, she explained that she was on her way to meet her friend.’ (N. Ikstena)

c. Rit **saglabāsies** daļēji **apmācies**
tomorrow remain.FUT.3 partly **get_cloudy.PTCP.NOM.M**
laiks.
weather.NOM.M
‘Tomorrow, it will continue to be partly cloudy.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
(2.5.209) a. Divas sievietes, izskāpušas no two.nom.pl.f woman.nom.pl.f get_out.ptcp.nom.pl.f from īrētas mašīnas, sēž uz soliņa un rent.ptcp.gen.f car.gen.f sit.prs.3 on bench.gen.m and nerunā. not_talk.prs.3
‘The two women, having gotten out of the rented car, are sitting on the bench, not talking to each other.’ (N. Ikstena)
b. Mintauts salasīja izsvaiditos Mintauts.nom.m pick_up.pst.3 scatter.ptcp.acc.pl.m papīrus un piezīmes. paper.acc.pl.m and note.acc.pl.f
‘Mintauts picked up the scattered papers and notes.’ (A. Eglītis)
c. Jācer, kas tas būs rūpīgi that it.nom.m be.aux.fut.3 carefully pārdomāts lēmums. consider.ptcp.nom.m decision.nom.m
‘Hopefully, it will be a carefully considered decision.’ (Jurista Vārds)

In Latvian, past participles are formed by adding the ending -is / the suffix -us- (2.5.210a) to the past tense stem of a verb (to form the past active participle) or by attaching the suffix -t- to the infinitive stem of a verb (to form the past passive participle) (2.5.210b).

(2.5.210) a. vel-t – vēl-u – vēl-is, vēl-us-i ‘to roll (obj.) – (I) rolled – rolled PTCP (M), (F)’ nobī-ties – nobij-os – nobij-ies, nobij-us-ies ‘to get frightened – (I) got frightened – frightened PTCP (M), (F)’
b. lik-t – lik-t-s, lik-t-a ‘to put – put PTCP (M), (F)’ cien-i-t – cien-i-t-s, cien-i-t-a ‘to respect – respected PTCP (M), (F)’

The **declinable past active participle** inflects according to the following paradigm: M – cel-t – cēl-u – cēl-is, cēl-uš-ais ‘to lift – (I) lifted – lifted PTCP (INDF), (DEF)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>INDF</td>
<td>DEF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>cēl-is</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ais</td>
<td>cēl-uš-i</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>cēl-uš-a</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ā</td>
<td>cēl-uš-u</td>
<td>cēl-uš-o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>cēl-uš-am</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ajam</td>
<td>cēl-uš-iem</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ajiem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>cēl-uš-u</td>
<td>cēl-uš-o</td>
<td>cēl-uš-us</td>
<td>cēl-uš-os</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) cēl-uš-u</td>
<td>(ar) cēl-uš-o</td>
<td>(ar) cēl-uš-iem</td>
<td>(ar) cēl-uš-ajiem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ā</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ajā</td>
<td>cēl-uš-os</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ajos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>cēl-is!</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ais!, cēl-uš-o!</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ī!</td>
<td>cēl-uš-ie!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.60 Inflection of the declinable past active participle, in the masculine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 95)
F – *cel-t* – *cel-u* – *cel-us-i*, *cel-us-i* ‘to lift – (I) lifted – lifted PTCP (INDF), (DEF)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td><em>cel-us-i</em></td>
<td><em>cel-us-ī</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td><em>cel-uš-as</em></td>
<td><em>cel-uš-ās</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td><em>cel-uš-ai</em></td>
<td><em>cel-uš-ajai</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td><em>cel-uš-u</em></td>
<td><em>cel-uš-o</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>cel-uš-u</em></td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>cel-uš-ō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td><em>cel-uš-ā</em></td>
<td><em>cel-uš-ajā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td><em>cel-us-ī!</em></td>
<td><em>cel-us-ī!</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.61 Inflection of the declinable past active participle, in the feminine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 95)

The paradigm of reflexive past active participle forms is defective in both genders: *mos-ties* – *mod-os* – *mod-ies*, *mod-us-ies* ‘to wake up – (I) woke up – woken up PTCP (M), (F)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td><em>mod-ies</em></td>
<td><em>mod-us-ies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td><em>mod-uš-ās</em></td>
<td><em>mod-uš-ās</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td><em>mod-uš-os</em></td>
<td><em>mod-uš-os</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>mod-uš-os</em></td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>mod-uš-os</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td><em>mod-ies!</em></td>
<td><em>mod-us-ies!</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.62 Inflection of reflexive declinable past active participles (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 95)

The **declinable past passive participle** inflects according to the following paradigm: M – *cel-t* – *cel-t-s*, *cel-t-ais* ‘to lift – lifted PTCP (INDF), (DEF)’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td><em>cel-t-s</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-ais</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td><em>cel-t-a</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-ā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td><em>cel-t-am</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-ajam</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td><em>cel-t-u</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-ō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>cel-t-u</em></td>
<td><em>(ar)</em> <em>cel-t-ō</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td><em>cel-t-ā</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-ajā</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td><em>cel-t-s!</em></td>
<td><em>cel-t-āis!</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.63 Inflection of the declinable past passive participle, in the masculine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 96)
Table 2.64 Inflection of the declinable past passive participle, in the feminine (adapted from Kalnača 2013a: 96)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>INDF</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>INDF</th>
<th>DEF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>cel-t-a</td>
<td>cel-t-ā</td>
<td>cel-t-as</td>
<td>cel-t-ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>cel-t-as</td>
<td>cel-t-ās</td>
<td>cel-t-u</td>
<td>cel-t-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>cel-t-ai</td>
<td>cel-t-ajai</td>
<td>cel-t-ām</td>
<td>cel-t-ajām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>cel-t-ai</td>
<td>cel-t-ajai</td>
<td>cel-t-ām</td>
<td>cel-t-ajām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>(ar) cel-t-ai</td>
<td>(ar) cel-t-ajai</td>
<td>(ar) cel-t-ām</td>
<td>(ar) cel-t-ajām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>cel-t-ā</td>
<td>cel-t-ajā</td>
<td>cel-t-ās</td>
<td>cel-t-ajās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC</td>
<td>cel-t-ā!</td>
<td>cel-t-ajā!</td>
<td>cel-t-ās!</td>
<td>cel-t-ajās!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The semi-declinable participle is formed by attaching the suffix -dam- to the infinitive stem of a verb and its inflection is limited to gender and number in the nominative case.

(2.5.211) a. *sauk-t* ‘to call’ – *sauk-dam-s* ‘(while) calling PTCP (M, SG, NOM),
   *sauk-dam-a* (F, SG, NOM), *sauk-dam-i* (M, PL, NOM), *sauk-dam-as* (F, PL, NOM),
   b. *liek-ties* ‘to bend’ – *liek-dam-ies* ‘(while) bending PTCP (M), *liek-dam-ās* (F)

The semi-declinable participle is an active voice participle used to refer to actions occurring simultaneously with the main action of a clause; it therefore typically functions as a secondary predicate, agreeing in number and gender with the agent of the action, i.e., the clause subject (see also 3.2.9) (Skujiņa 2007: 74–75).

(2.5.212) a. *Katru reizi, ieiedama katedrālē, viņa* every time enter.PTCP.NOM.F cathedral.LOC.F she.NOM
   vispirms nostājas pie durvīm, at_first stand.PST.3 at door.DAT.PL.F
   lai izjustu telpas garu.
   ‘Every time she enters the cathedral she first stops in the doorway to feel the spirit of the place.’ (A. Žīgure)
   b. *Viņš nolika somas priekšnamā un, juzdamies* he.NOM put.PST.3 bag.ACC.PL.F hall.LOC.M and feel.PTCP.NOM.M
   kā viesis, izstāgāja visas istabas.
   like visitor.NOM.M walk.PST.3 all.ACC.F room.ACC.PL.F
   ‘He put down the bags in the hall and, feeling like a visitor, walked around every room.’ (A. Eglītis)
   ies garām.
   go.FUT.3 by
   ‘Most people will just silently pass by.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
In certain expressions mostly found in colloquial speech, the semi-declinable participle may function as a predicate.

(2.5.213) a. Vīrs painteresējās: “Kurp iedams?”
man.NOM.M take_interest.PST.3 where_to go.PTCP.NOM.M
‘The man asked: “Where do you think you are going?”’
(www.delfi.lv)

b. Iznāk daži jauni robežsargi,
prasa [man], uz kurieni [es]
ask.PRS.3[I.DAT] to where[I.NOM]
braukdamis.
go.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Several young border guards appear, ask [me] where I am going.’
(www.draugiem.lv)

In colloquial speech, mass media and literary texts containing irony, as well as in subdialects the semi-declinable participle is sometimes used as an attribute (2.5.214).

(2.5.214) Ak, jaunā pasaule!
Nelabais staigā kā rūkdamsla
evil.NOM.M walk.PRS.3 like roar.PTCP.NOM.M lion.NOM.M
paparaci izskatā.
paparazzo appearance.LOC.M
‘Oh, this wicked world! The evil one prowls around like a roaring lion disguised as a paparazzo.’ (Ir)

**Indeclinable participles** lack grammatical forms and are used to denote an attribute of an action or state (Skujiņa 2007: 251), which, as an action or state in itself, is understood to occur simultaneously with the main action of a clause, see examples (2.5.217)-(2.5.218).

Indeclinable participles are formed by adding the non-reflexive or reflexive formatives -ot, -oties (2.5.215); -am/-ām, -amies/-āmies (the suffix -ām- is reserved for conjugation class 3 subclass 1 verbs) (2.5.216), namely, to the present tense stem of a verb.

(2.5.215) a. liek-ties – liec-os – liec-oties ‘to bend – (I) bend – bending PTCP’
   b. dom-ā-t – dom-ā-j-u – dom-ā-j-ot ‘to think – (I) think – thinking PTCP’
   c. māc-ī-ties – māc-os – māc-oties ‘to study – (I) study – studying PTCP’

(2.5.216) a. liek-ties – liec-os – liec-amies ‘to bend – (I) bend – bending PTCP’
   b. dom-ā-t – dom-ā-j-u – dom-ā-j-am ‘to think – (I) think – thinking PTCP’
   c. māc-ī-ties – māc-os – māc-āmies ‘to study – (I) study – studying PTCP’

The indeclinable participles typically function as secondary predicates and may also occur in various kinds of raising and control constructions with either shared or distinct participle and matrix predicate agents (see also 3.2.9).
(2.5.217) -ot, -oties

a. Bobslejisti pirmo braucienu veica minūtē un 5,18 sekundēs,
   esot  lideri  un  par  0,06
   be.PTCP.IDECL leader.NOM.PL.M and  PREP 0.06
   sekundēm  apsteidzot  konkurentus.
   second.DAT.PL.F overtake.PTCP.IDECL competitor.ACC.PL.M
   ‘The bobsleigh team completed the first run in one minute and 5.18
   seconds, leading the competition and being 0.06 seconds ahead of
   their closest competitors.’ (www.apollo.lv)

b. [Jelgavas] Mērs  teicies  neko
   [Jelgava] mayor.NOM.M admit.PTCP.NOM.M nothing.ACC
   nesaprotot  no  franču  vīniem.
   understand.PTCP.IDECL from  French.GEN.PL.M wine.DAT.PL.M
   ‘The mayor [of Jelgava] admitted to knowing nothing about French
   wines.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

c. Miers regionā  īespējams,
   esot  politiskai  gribai.
   be.PTCP.IDECL political.DAT.F will.DAT.F
   ‘Peace in the region is possible, there being sufficient political will.’
   (www.tvnet.lv)

(2.5.218) -am / -ām, -amies / -āmies

a. Andreju  vasarās  ik  dienas
   Andrejs.ACC.M summer.LOC.PL.F every day.ACC.PL.F
   redz  likājamies  rožu  dārzā,
   see.PRS.3 bend.PTCP.IDECL rose.GEN.PL.F garden.LOC.F
   rosāmies  pie  bišu  stropiem,
   bustle.PTCP.IDECL at  bee.GEN.PL.F hive.DAT.PL.M
   apstaigājam  tīrumus.
   walk.PTCP.IDECL field.ACC.PL.M
   ‘In summer, Andrejs is always seen bending down in the rose garden,
   busying himself around the beehives, or walking in the fields.’
   (A. Žīgure)

b. Viņš  juta  tuvojamies  šo
   he.NOM feel.PST.3 approach.PTCP.IDECL this.ACC.F
   iespēju.
   opportunity.ACC.F
   ‘He felt this opportunity approaching.’ (www.korpuss.lv)

c. Viņš  teicās  acumirkli  atrodamies
   he.NOM claim.PST.3 instant.LOC.M find.PTCP.IDECL
   visai  grūtos  apstākļos.
   rather  difficult.LOC.PL.M circumstance.LOC.PL.M
   ‘He did though claim that he found himself at once in a rather difficult
   situation.’ (A. Eglītis)
The indeclinable participle ending in -ot, -oties is widely used in absolute dative constructions, i.e., in participial clauses consisting of an indeclinable participle and a noun or a pronoun in the dative case naming the agent (Skujiņa 2007: 12).

(2.5.219) a. *No rīta,*

saulei lecot,
sun.DAT.F rise.PTCP.IDECL
pārgāju pār Bruklinas tiltu.
‘In the morning, just when the sun was rising, I crossed the Brooklyn Bridge. (N. Ikstena)

b. *Lietum lištot,*

rain.DAT.M pour.PTCP.IDECL
[pilsētā] iededz Ziemassvētku egli.
‘The Christmas tree is lit [in the town], with rain pouring down.’

(www.liepajniekiem.lv)

The indeclinable participle ending in -am/-ām, -amies/-āmies usually appears in conjunction with verbs of perception (*verba sentiendi*): *redzēt* ‘to see’, *dzirdēt* ‘to hear’, *manīt* ‘to glimpse’, *pamanīt* ‘to notice’, *ieraudzīt* ‘to see’, *sadorsdēt* ‘to hear’, *klausīties* ‘to listen’, just ‘to feel’, *saļut* ‘to start to feel’, *jaust* ‘to foresee’, etc.

(2.5.220) a. *Viņš redzēja mani raudam.*

he.nom see.PST.3 I.ACC cry.PTCP.IDECL
‘He saw me cry.’ (J. Joņevs)

b. *Cilvēks, ieraudzījis nākam tramvaju,*

person.NOM.M see.PTCP.NOM.M come.PTCP.IDECL tram.ACC.M
sāka skriet.
start.PST.3 run.INF
‘The person, seeing the tram approaching, started running.’ (Kas Jauns)

c. *[Mūzikas] albumā klavierspēle dzirdama skanam visā krāšņumā.*

[Music] album.loc.M piano_playing.nom.F
hear.PTCP.NOM.F sound.PTCP.IDECL all.LOC.M splendor.LOC.M
‘The [music] album reveals piano music in its full splendor.’

(www.parmuziku.lv)

In raising constructions, but never in absolute dative constructions, the two types of indeclinable participles can be used interchangeably.

(2.5.221) a. *Es dzirdēju dzērves sakliedzamies // sakliedzoties.*

I.NOM hear.PST.1SG crane.ACC.PL.F call.PTCP.IDECL
‘I heard cranes calling to each other.’

b. *Aiz pārsteiguma paliku stāvam // stāvot*

from surprise.GEN.M stay.PST.1SG stand.PTCP.IDECL
uz vietas.
on place.GEN.F
‘I froze in surprise.’
‘Feeling cool air flowing in, the girl closed the window.’

In control constructions with a shared agent, the indeclinable participle ending in -ot, -oties and the semi-declinable participle are synonymous.

(2.5.222) a. Mēness, gaiši mirdzot // mirdzēdamis,
moon.NOM.M light shine.PTCP.IDECL
rādīja tumsā ceļu.
‘The moon, shining bright, showed the way in the dark.’

b. Bērni rotaļājās jūras malā,
liksmi smejoties // smiedamies un
joyfully laugh.PTCP.IDECL and
ceļot // celdamī smilšu pilis.
build.PTCP.IDECL sand.GEN.PL.F castle.ACC.PL.F
‘Children were playing by the sea, laughing with joy and building sand castles.’

2.5.10 Word formation

Verb formation in Latvian is primarily based on suffixation, prefixation (Table 2.65 and Table 2.66), and a few circumfixal (prefix–postfix) verb formation types (Table 2.67).

Compound verbs are not particularly widespread in Latvian and are mostly limited to a relatively small number of compounds having an adverb as the first base (Soida 2009: 263; Vūlāne 2013: 292–293), e.g.:

(2.5.223) ADV + V (also V + ADV)

a. cauri skat-i-t (also skatīt caurī) ‘to look through’ – caur-skat-i-t ‘to look through, to peruse’
cauri urb-t (also urbt caurī) ‘to bore through, to drill through’ – caur-urb-t ‘to bore through, to drill through, to perforate’
cauri strāv-o-t (also strāvot caurī) ‘to flow through, to stream through’ – caur-strāv-o-t ‘to spread throughout, to permeate, to pervade’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’

b. pretī stat-i-t (also statīt pretī) ‘to set against’ – pret-stat-i-t ‘to set against, to counterpose, to contrast’
Some compound verbs of this type are loan translations, e.g.:

(2.5.224) from English

\textit{augšp-lādēt} ‘to upload’, \textit{lejup-lādēt} ‘to download’

Due to the small number and the (often) problematic origins of compound verbs they are not given further consideration in this grammar.

In Latvian linguistics, reflexive verbs are traditionally interpreted as derivatives formed from non-reflexive verbs by means of the reflexive ending (see, e.g., Soida 2009: 206–219; Vulāne 2013: 291). The semantics and functions of Latvian reflexive verbs, however, are closely linked to distribution, diathesis, and, hence, to the syntactic structure of sentences; furthermore, reflexive verbs do not show systematic, clearly definable derivational meanings in the same way as suffixal and prefixal verbal derivatives. Thus, verb reflexivity in Latvian clearly goes beyond the boundaries of word formation. Circumfixal (i.e., prefix + the reflexive formative -s) derivatives expressing aspectual meanings are a notable exception. In this grammar, the system of reflexive verbs is described from the point of view of semantics and distribution (see Section 2.5.7), rather than as part of the system of verb formation. That said, Table 2.67 contains a brief summary of prefix + -s combinations available for expressing quantitative meanings (such as duration, iterativity, etc.).

The INF ending -t is not listed under \textit{Word-formation means} in the tables below, as it is the same for all word-formation types. Where necessary (i.e., for circumfixal derivatives) both the non-reflexive ending -t and the reflexive formative -s (in examples, the INF reflexive ending -ties) are specified.

Likewise, as almost all word-formation types can produce INTRANS and TRANS verbs, and some verbs may be transitive or intransitive depending on context (see Section 2.5.6 on transitivity), the INTRANS/TRANS feature is only stated for strictly transitive derivatives, i.e., V–V with the suffix -ē- and V–V, N–V, ADJ–V with the suffix -inā-.

\textbf{Suffixation}

Suffixed verb formation in Latvian is represented by a wide range of word-formation types/models, defined, to a large extent, by the word class of the base. In Latvian, verbs are formed from other verbs, nouns, adjectives, and interjections (see Table 2.65). There are no systemic word-formation models for forming verbs from other word classes, therefore, these are not discussed in this grammar.

Although Latvian has just a few verbalizing suffixes – -ā-, -ē-, -ī-, -inā-, -o-, they are capable of carrying various derivational meanings, e.g., in V–V word-formation types – aspectuality and valency-related meanings, in N–V word-formation types – mainly, subject- and object-related meanings, in ADJ–V types – meanings related to subject/object attributes, in INT–V types – sound imitative meanings. The V–V suffixes -alē-, -aļā-, -elē-, -uļo- are monosemous and always express iterativity (usually, with chaotic actions and actions having no goal or endpoint).

In V–V derivatives, suffixes as the main means of word formation are sometimes accompanied by apophony (see Section 1.2.1 on apophony). The interfixes -(d)-,
-(st)-, -(ŋ)-, less frequently also -(šļ)-, -(šņ)-, -(žļ)- occur as a byproduct of word formation when there is a need to avoid vowel clustering between a vocalic suffix and a (primary) verbal root (see Section 1.1.4 on interfixes). These interfixes sometimes also occur, by analogy, where they are not formally necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **V–V**                          | -ā-; usually attaches to the INF stem of a verb; may be accompanied by apophony and/or an interfix: -(ŋ)-, -(šļ)-, -(šņ)-, -(žļ)- | iterative | brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – brauk-ā-t (iterative)  

sauk-t ‘to call’ – sauk-ā-t (iterative)  

trenk-t ‘to drive, to propel’ – trenk-ā-t (iterative)  

ves-t ‘to carry (in a vehicle), to lead smth. / smb. somewhere’ – vād-ā-t (iterative)  

nēs-t ‘to carry, to bear’ – nēs-ā-t (iterative), also ‘to wear’  

mī-t ‘to tread, trample’ – mī-(ŋ)-ā-t (iterative)  

rak-t ‘to dig’ – rak-(ŋ)-ā-t, also rak-ā-t (iterative)  

kos-t ‘to bite’ – ko-(šļ)-ā-t ‘to chew’  

os-t ‘to smell’ – o-(šņ)-ā-t ‘to sniff, to sniff around’  

zīs-t ‘to suck, to nurse’ – zī-(žļ)-ā-t (iterative) |
| **-i-**                           | -ī-; usually attaches to the INF stem of a verb; may be accompanied by apophony and/or an interfix: -(st)- or -(d)- | iterative | lauz-t ‘to break’ – lauz-ī-t (iterative)  

kas-t ‘to scrape’ – kas-ī-t (iterative), ‘to scratch’  

step-t ‘to drag, to stretch’ – staip-ī-t (iterative)  

svēs-t ‘to toss’ – svaid-ī-t (iterative)  

ker-t ‘to catch’ – ker-(st)-ī-t (iterative), ‘to try to catch’  

bēr-t ‘to pour (of dry substances)’ – bār-(st)-t ‘to stew, to scatter’  

vel-t ‘to roll (with object)’ – val-(st)-ī-t (iterative)  

lie-t ‘to pour (of liquids)’ – lai-(st)-ī-t (iterative), ‘to water’  

mi-t ‘to tread, trample’ – mi-(d)-ī-t (iterative)  

sper-t ‘to kick with the foot’ – spār-(d)-ī-t (iterative)  

skrie-t ‘to run’ – skrai-(d)-ī-t (iterative), ‘to run about’ |
| **-ē-**                           | -ē-; usually attaches to the INF stem of a verb; may be accompanied by apophony and/or the interfix -(d)- | causative (always TRANS) | aug-t ‘to grow (no object)’ –  

audz-ē-t ‘to grow (with an object)’  

kars-t ‘to grow hot’ – kars-ē-t ‘to heat’  

slāp-t ‘to be thirsty, to thirst, to fade’ – slāp-ē-t ‘to put out, to suppress, to damp down’  

kus-t ‘to melt (no object)’ –  

kaus-ē-t ‘to melt (with an object)’  

rūg-t ‘to ferment (no object)’ – raudz-ē-t ‘to ferment (with an object)’  

dīg-t ‘to germinate (no object)’ – dīdz-ē-t ‘to germinate (with an object)’  

žau-t ‘to hang smth. out (to dry)’ – žāv-ē-t ‘to dry, to cure, to smoke (with an object)’  

rau-t ‘to draw, to pull’ – rau-ē-t ‘to weed’  

klis-t ‘to wander’ – klīe-(d)-ē-t ‘to dissipate, to dispel’  

dīs-t ‘to heal (no object)’ –  

dzīe-(d)-ē-t ‘to heal (with an object)’  

grim-t ‘to sink, to go under’ – grim-(d)-ē-t ‘to sink (with an object), to immerse’  

rim-t ‘to cease, to subside’ –  

rem-(d)-ē-t ‘to alleviate, to soothe’ |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| V–V                              | -inā-; usually attaches to verbal roots; may be accompanied by apophony and/or the interfix -(d)- | causative (always TRANS) | ēs-t ‘to eat’ – ēd-inā-t ‘to feed’  
reib-t ‘to become dizzy, giddy’  
reib-inā-t ‘to make dizzy, giddy’  
brēk-t ‘to scream’ – brēc-inā-t ‘to let or make smb. scream’  
deg-t ‘to burn (no object)’ –  
dedz-inā-t ‘to burn (with an object)’  
sū-t ‘to sew’ – sū-(d)-inā-t ‘to sew, to have smth. sewn’  
gul-t ‘to fall, to cover’ –  
gul-(d)-inā-t ‘to lay (with an object)’  
dzer-t ‘to drink’ – dzēr(d)-inā-t ‘to give to drink’  
raud-ā-t ‘to cry’ – raud-inā-t ‘to make smb. cry’  
elp-o-t ‘to breathe’ – elp-inā-t ‘to apply artificial breathing’  
put-ē-t ‘to be dusty’ – put-inā-t ‘to be blown by the wind (of leaves, snow, dust)’  
skan-ē-t ‘to sound, to be heard’ – skan-(d)-inā-t ‘to jingle, to repeat, to chant’  
krakšķ-ē-t ‘to crack (of sound)’ –  
krakšķ-inā-t ‘to make smb. or smth. crack’  
plīkšķ-ē-t ‘to patter, to smack’ – plīkšķ-inā-t ‘to cause to patter, to smack’  
šū-(d)-inā-t ‘to sew, to have smth. sewn’  
švīkst-ē-t ‘to whiz’ – švīkst-inā-t ‘to cause to whiz’ |
|                                  | iterative (always TRANS) |  | urb-t ‘to bore, to drill’ – urb-inā-t ‘to pick, to poke’  
ves-t ‘to carry (in a vehicle), to lead smth. / smb. somewhere’ – ved-inā-t ‘to lead smb. somewhere, to direct’  
vil-t ‘to let down, to mislead, to lure’ – vil-inā-t ‘to allure, to tempt, to entice’  
vēr-t ‘to open/to shut’ – vēr-inā-t ‘to keep opening and shutting’ |
| -alē-, -ālā-, -elē-, -uļo-; usually attach to the INF stem of a verb; in some cases, occur with the interfix -(d)- | iterative verbs expressing chaotic actions and actions having no goal or endpoint | brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – brauk-alē-t (iterative)  
tec-ē-t ‘to flow’ – tek-alē-t ‘to bustle about’  
kāp-t ‘to climb’ – kāp-alē-t (iterative)  
snaus-t ‘to nap’ – snaud-alā-t (iterative)  
spried-ē-t ‘to reason, to judge’ – spried-elē-t ‘to hold forth about, to speak at length about’  
jā-t ‘to ride (a horse)’ –  
jā-(d)-elē-t (iterative)  
bēg-t ‘to run away’ – bēg-uļo-t ‘to be on the run’  
vārg-t ‘to grow weak, to weaken (no object)’ – vārg-uļo-t (iterative) |
| -ā-                              | agent-, object- and instrument-motivated verbs | sarg-s ‘guard’ – sarg-ā-t ‘to guard’  
bēd-a ‘trouble, also sorrow’ –  
bēd-ā-t ‘to trouble about/over’  
rot-a ‘ornament, adornment’ –  
rot-ā-t ‘to adorn’  
bur-ā ‘sail’ – bur-ā-t ‘to sail’ |
| -ē-                              | agent-motivated verbs | ārst-s ‘(medical) doctor’ – ārst-ēt ‘to treat, to cure’  
aukl-e ‘nanny’ – aukl-ē-t ‘to nurture’  
bend-e ‘executioner’ – bend-ē-t ‘to kill, to wreck’ |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–V</strong></td>
<td>instrument-</td>
<td><strong>word class</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>motivated verbs</td>
<td><strong>Derivational</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>meaning</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Examples</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>air-is</strong> ‘oar’</td>
<td>‘air-ē-t to row’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>kapl-is</strong> ‘hoe’</td>
<td>‘kapl-ē-t to hoe’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>sūkn-is</strong> ‘pump’</td>
<td>‘sūkn-ē-t to pump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>object-motivated</td>
<td><strong>verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>laim-e</strong> ‘luck, fortune’</td>
<td>**laim-ē-t to win’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>kās-s</strong> ‘cough’</td>
<td>‘kās-ē-t to cough’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>smīn-s</strong> ‘snee’</td>
<td>**smīn-ē-t to snee’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>vīl-e</strong> ‘hem’</td>
<td>**vīl-ē-t to hem’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-inā-</td>
<td><strong>object-motivated</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>mier-s</strong> ‘calm’</td>
<td>**mier-inā-t to calm’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>god-s</strong> ‘honor’</td>
<td>**god-inā-t to honor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>spēk-s</strong> ‘strength’</td>
<td>**spēc-inā-t to strengthen’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>šausm-as</strong> ‘horror’</td>
<td>**šausm-inā-t to horrify’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-o-</td>
<td><strong>agent-motivated</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tulk-s</strong> ‘translator’</td>
<td>**tulk-o-t to translate’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>spieg-s</strong> ‘spy’</td>
<td>**spieg-o-t to spy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>saim-niek-s</strong> ‘owner, master’</td>
<td>**saim-niek-o-t to manage, to run’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>kalp-s</strong> ‘servant’</td>
<td>**kalp-o-t to serve’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>instrument-</td>
<td><strong>and means-motivated verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>bumb-a</strong> ‘ball, bomb’</td>
<td>**bumb-o-t to play ball, to bomb’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>lāpst-a</strong> ‘shovel’</td>
<td>**lāpst-o-t to shovel’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>plost-s</strong> ‘raft’</td>
<td>**plost-o-t to float in a raft’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>vask-s</strong> ‘wax’</td>
<td>**vask-o-t to wax’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>krās-a</strong> ‘paint, color’</td>
<td>**krās-o-t to paint’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>object-motivated</td>
<td><strong>verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>glezn-a</strong> ‘painting’</td>
<td>**glezn-o-t to paint (to produce a painting’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>dej-a</strong> ‘dance’</td>
<td>**dej-o-t to dance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tēl-s</strong> ‘image, character’</td>
<td>**tēl-o-t to personate, to act the part of, also to affect’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>lap-a</strong> ‘leaf’</td>
<td>**lap-o-t to leaf’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>zar-s</strong> ‘branch’</td>
<td>**zar-o-t to branch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>sūn-a</strong> ‘moss’</td>
<td>**sūn-o-t to be overgrown with moss’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>jok-s</strong> ‘joke’</td>
<td>**jok-o-t to joke’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>glaim-i</strong> ‘flattery’</td>
<td>**glaim-o-t to flatter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>mel-i</strong> ‘lie’</td>
<td>**mel-o-t to lie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>baum-as</strong> ‘rumor’</td>
<td>**baum-o-t to rumor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>object-motivated</td>
<td><strong>verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>og-a</strong> ‘berry’</td>
<td>**og-o-t to pick berries’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>riekst-s</strong> ‘nut’</td>
<td>**riekst-o-t to gather nuts’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>sēn-e</strong> ‘mushroom’</td>
<td>**sēn-o-t to gather mushrooms’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>vēz-is</strong> ‘crayfish’</td>
<td>**vēz-o-t to catch crayfish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1) ‘to produce an object or phenomenon denoted by the base word’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) ‘to gather objects denoted by the base word’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) ‘to have a meal’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4) ‘to assign, to provide an object denoted by the base word’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>alg-a</strong> ‘pay, salary’</td>
<td>**alg-o-t to employ, to pay wages’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>bals-s</strong> ‘vote, voice’</td>
<td>**bals-o-t to vote’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ēn-a</strong> ‘shade’</td>
<td>**ēn-o-t to shade’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>gaism-a</strong> ‘light’</td>
<td>**gaism-o-t to light’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>piln-var-a</strong> ‘power of attorney’</td>
<td>**piln-var-o-t to assign a power of attorney to smb.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>veid-s</strong> ‘kind, shape, form’</td>
<td>**veid-o-t to shape, to form’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>-o-</td>
<td>spatially and temporally motivated verbs</td>
<td>tīr-g ‘market’ – tīr-g-o-t ‘to sell’ māj-a ‘dwelling, home’ – māj-o-t ‘to dwell’ ziem-a ‘winter’ – ziem-o-t ‘to winter, to spend the winter’ nāk-s ‘night’ – nāk-(šņ)-o-t ‘to spend the night’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJ–V</td>
<td>-ē-</td>
<td>processes bringing about the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>kļus-s ‘silent’ – kļus-ē-t ‘to be silent’ biez-s ‘thick’ – biez-ē-t ‘to thicken’ ciet-s ‘hard’ – ciet-ē-t ‘to harden’ tiev-s ‘slim’ – tiev-ē-t ‘to slim down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to cause to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>skāb-s ‘sour’ – skāb-ē-t ‘to ferment’ blīv-s ‘dense’ – blīv-ē-t ‘to seal, to pack, to compress’ smail-s ‘pointy, sharp’ – smail-ē-t ‘to prick (one’s ears)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ī-</td>
<td></td>
<td>to cause to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>tīr-s ‘clean’ – tīr-ī-t ‘to clean’ svēt-s ‘holy, sacred, blessed’ – svēt-ī-t ‘to bless’ šķīst-s ‘pure, virtuous’ – šķīst-ī-t ‘to purge, to purify’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-inā-</td>
<td></td>
<td>to cause to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word (always TRANS)</td>
<td>as-s ‘sharp’ – as-inā-t ‘to sharpen’ droš-s ‘sure, secure’ – droš-inā-t ‘to reassure, to encourage’ glud-s ‘smooth’ – glud-inā-t ‘to iron’ maz-s ‘little, small’ – maz-inā-t ‘to lessen, to reduce’ ret-s ‘rare’ – ret-inā-t ‘to thin out, to rarefy’ trak-s ‘mad’ – trac-inā-t ‘to madden’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o-</td>
<td></td>
<td>to cause to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>liksm-s ‘joyous’ – liksm-ō-t ‘to feel joy, to rejoice’ lab-s ‘right, good’ – lab-o-t ‘to correct, to put right, to repair’ klib-s ‘lame’ – klib-o-t ‘to limp’ skaidr-s ‘clear’ – skaidr-o-t ‘to clarify, to make clear, to explain’ taisn-s ‘straight’ – taisn-o-t ‘to straighten’ vingr-s ‘fit, agile’ – vingr-o-t ‘to exercise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT–V</td>
<td>-ā-</td>
<td>onomatopoeia – sound imitation</td>
<td>ai ‘ah!’ – aij-ā-t ‘to rock (a baby)’ pai (used when caressing, gently stroking smb., saying that smb. is good) – paij-ā-t ‘to caress’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ē-</td>
<td></td>
<td>blikš ‘bang!’ – blikš-ē-t, blikšk-ē-t ‘to bang’ krankš ‘crack!’ – krankš-ē-t, krankšk-ē-t ‘to crack (of sound)’ nāu ‘meow!’ – nāud-ē-t ‘to meow’ plunkš ‘plop!’ – plunkšk-ē-t ‘to plop’ švīks ‘whiz!’ – švīksk-ē-t ‘to whiz’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o-</td>
<td></td>
<td>ku-kū ‘coo-coo!, cuckoo!’ – kūk-o-t ‘to produce the sound of a cuckoo bird’ źū-źū ‘sound made to lull a child to sleep’ – źūž-o-t ‘to lull a child to sleep’ ūja ‘ooh!’ – ūjav-o-t ‘to ooh’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Base word – derivative word class | Word-formation means | Derivational meaning | Examples
---|---|---|---
INT–V | -ina- | iterative onomatopoeic verbs | čiv-čiv ‘chirp’ – čiv-inā-t ‘to chirp’
gā-gā ‘honk’ – gāg-inā-t ‘to honk, to cackle’
si-si ‘chirr’ – sis-inā-t ‘to chirr’
u-ū ‘o-o-oo!’ – ūj-inā-t ‘to call out, to hoot, to heckle’

Table 2.65 Main verb formation types: suffixation

Prefixation

In Latvian, prefixal verb formation is strictly deverbal. Prefixation does not affect the overall phonetic and morphological shape of the base word. The number of prefixes in a given verb, excluding the negative ne- ‘not, also dis’ (2.5.225), is usually limited to one, with the exception of verbs that are never used without a prefix and can therefore acquire a second prefix in the process of word formation (2.5.226).

(2.5.225) a. iz-skrie-t ‘to run out’ – ne-iz-skrie-t ‘to not run out’
b. ap-ģērb-t ‘to dress’ – ne-ap-ģērb-t ‘to not dress’
c. pār-las-ī-t ‘to reread’ – ne-pār-las-ī-t ‘to not reread’

(2.5.226) a. pa-zi-t ‘to be acquainted, to know’ – ie-pa-zi-t ‘to get acquainted’, at-pa-zi-t ‘to recognize’
b. ap-bed-ī-t ‘to bury’ – pār-ap-bed-ī-t ‘to rebury’

All verbal prefixes (aiz-, ap-, at-, ie-, iz-, no-, pa-, pār-, pie-, sa-, uz-) are perfective and polysemous. In addition to perfectivity, verbal prefixes often simultaneously express other, e.g., spatial (incl. spatial oppositions), quantitative, temporal and aspectual meanings (among others, Soida 2009: 219–261; see Section 2.5.8). Some prefix meanings can only be realized in specific contexts; furthermore, prefix meanings characteristically depend on the semantics of the base verb to which they attach (e.g., verbs of motion, state, telic / atelic verbs, etc.).

The meanings of each prefix in Table 2.66 are organized into three basic blocks (spatial, quantitative, temporal / aspectual) with the most common meaning variations being listed for each block. Prefix meanings falling outside of the basic blocks are not discussed in this grammar; notably, verbal prefixes may have highly individualized meanings depending on the meaning of the base verb (see, e.g., Soida 2009: 257–259). All examples include a prefixless verb, either primary or derived by suffixation, and a corresponding prefixed verb. Verbs lacking prefixless or prefixed correlates as well as pairs of prefixless and prefixed verbs with different lexical meanings (i.e., lexicalized prefixed verbs) are not analyzed.

The negative ne-, which negates actions, processes, and states, is not included in the description of verb formation, since it typically applies on the sentence rather than on the word level (see also 3.2.3).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>aiz-</td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td>kris-t ‘to fall’ – aiz-kris-t ‘to fall and land behind another object’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ie-t ‘to go’ – aiz-ie-t ‘to go away, to go to a destination’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>skrie-t ‘to run’ – aiz-skrie-t ‘to run away, to run to a destination’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>peld-ē-t ‘to swim’ – aiz-peld-ē-t ‘to swim away, to swim to a destination’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1) direction: ‘away’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) ‘in front of; up (so as to be closed)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bir-t ‘to drop, to run, to fall (of substances)’ – aiz-bir-t ‘to get filled up (with sand, etc.)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lik-t ‘to put’ – aiz-lik-t ‘to put in front of, to put behind’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sie-t ‘to tie’ – aiz-sie-t ‘to tie up, to fasten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>slēg-t ‘to shut, to lock’ – aiz-slēg-t ‘to lock up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quantitative meanings</td>
<td>kur-t ‘to stoke’ – aiz-kur-t ‘to make a fire’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deg-t ‘to burn’ – aiz-deg-t ‘to light, to kindle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>smēk-ē-t ‘to smoke’ – aiz-smēk-ē-t ‘to light up (a cigarette)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1) inchoative (inceptive) verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lauz-t ‘to break’ – aiz-lauz-t ‘to break without a complete separation of the parts’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kos-t ‘to bite’ – aiz-kos-t ‘to take a bite of (an apple, etc.)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plēs-t ‘to tear’ – aiz-plēs-t ‘to tear without a complete separation of the parts’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mig-t ‘to be in the process of falling asleep’ – aiz-mig-t ‘to fall asleep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>krau-t ‘to load, to pile up’ – aiz-krau-t ‘to block up with smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pild-ī-t ‘to fill’ – aiz-pild-ī-t ‘to fill up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>žū-t ‘to dry’ – ap-žū-t ‘to dry up a little bit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>deg-t ‘to burn’ – ap-deg-t ‘to become burnt, scorched on the surface’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pū-t ‘to rot’ – ap-pū-t ‘to become slightly rotten, to begin to rot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quantitative meanings</td>
<td>ģērb-t ‘to dress’ – ap-ģērb-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bir-t ‘to drop, to run, to fall (of substances)’ – ap-bir-t ‘to get covered, to get buried’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>au-t ‘to put on one’s shoes’ – ap-au-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nāk-t ‘to come’ – at-nāk-t ‘to come here, to arrive, to come back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – ap-brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive around smth., to bypass’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>skrie-t ‘to run’ – ap-skrie-t ‘to run around smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plau-t ‘to mow’ – ap-plau-t ‘to mow around smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nes-t ‘to carry’ – at-nes-t ‘to bring, to fetch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lauk-t ‘to load, to pile up’ – at-lauk-t ‘to block up with smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plēs-t ‘to tear’ – at-plēs-t ‘to tear without a complete separation of the parts’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ģērb-t ‘to dress’ – at-ģērb-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bir-t ‘to drop, to run, to fall (of substances)’ – at-bir-t ‘to get covered, to get buried’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>au-t ‘to put on one’s shoes’ – at-au-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) ‘off, away’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>māj-t ‘to come’ – at-māj-t ‘to come here, to arrive, to come back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – at-brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive around smth., to bypass’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>skrie-t ‘to run’ – at-skrie-t ‘to run around smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plau-t ‘to mow’ – at-plau-t ‘to mow around smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) ‘off, away’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nes-t ‘to carry’ – at-nes-t ‘to bring, to fetch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lauk-t ‘to load, to pile up’ – at-lauk-t ‘to block up with smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plēs-t ‘to tear’ – at-plēs-t ‘to tear without a complete separation of the parts’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) ‘up (so as to be open)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>vēr-t ‘to open / close’ – at-vēr-t ‘to open’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pēr-ā-t ‘to push’ – at-pēr-ā-t ‘to move’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>at-tais-ī-t ‘to open’ – at-tais-ī-t ‘to open’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>at-</td>
<td>quantitative meanings</td>
<td>skan-ē-t ‘to sound, to be heard’ – at-skan-ē-t ‘to resound, to ring out, to echo’ spīd-ē-t ‘to shine’ – at-spīd-ē-t ‘to begin to shine, to be reflected’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1) inchoative (inceptive) verbs</td>
<td>ģērb-t ‘to dress’ – at-ģērb-t ‘to take off (a coat, etc.’) lie-t ‘to pour (of liquids)’ – at-lie-t ‘to pour off’ ir-t ‘to fray’ – at-ir-t ‘to become unravelled’ pa-lik-t ‘to remain’ – at-pa-lik-t ‘to fall behind’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td>dzis-t ‘to fade, to go out’ – at-dzis-t ‘to cool, to become cold’ min-ē-t ‘to guess’ – at-min-ē-t ‘to solve, to figure out, to remember’ mod-īnā-t ‘to wake, to rouse’ – at-mod-īnā-t ‘to wake up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) actions carried out in full</td>
<td>ie- directional meanings ‘in, into’ kur-t ‘to stoke’ – ie-kur-t ‘to make a fire, to cause to start burning’ deg-t ‘to burn’ – ie-deg-t ‘to light, to kindle, to switch on’ šūp-o-t ‘to swing’ – ie-šūp-o-t ‘to cause to swing’ liksm-o-t ‘to feel joy, to rejoice’ – ie-liksm-o-t ‘to make glad, to make happy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quantitative meanings</td>
<td>skāb-t ‘to turn sour’ – ie-skāb-t ‘to start to turn sour, to turn slightly sour’ pel-ē-t ‘to grow moldy’ – ie-pel-ē-t ‘to start to grow moldy, to grow slightly moldy’ boj-ā-t ‘to spoil’ – ie-boj-ā-t ‘to spoil a little bit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td>do-t ‘to give’ – ie-do-t (PFV) gū-t ‘to get, to gain’ – ie-gū-t ‘to acquire, to obtain’ māc-ī-t ‘to teach’ – ie-māc-ī-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) actions carried out in full</td>
<td>iz- directional meanings ‘out’ skrie-t ‘to run’ – iz-skrie-t ‘to run out’ ie-t ‘to go’ – iz-ie-t ‘to go out’ brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – iz-brauk-t ‘to drive out, to depart’ svies-t ‘to toss’ – iz-svies-t ‘to toss out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td>klīs-t ‘to wander’ – iz-klīs-t ‘to wander in different directions, to disperse’ kais-ī-t ‘to strew, to scatter’ – iz-kais-ī-t ‘to strew, to scatter over a wide area’ sē-t ‘to sow’ – iz-sē-t ‘to sow out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) direction: ‘in all directions, every which way’</td>
<td>lauz-t ‘to break’ – iz-lauz-t ‘to break through, to make a hole in’ sil-t ‘to get warm’ – iz-sil-t ‘to get thoroughly warm’ rūs-ē-t ‘to rust’ – iz-rūs-ē-t ‘to rust through’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>iz-</td>
<td>quantitative meanings actions carried out in full</td>
<td>beig-t ‘to stop’ – iz-beig-t ‘to bring to an end, to terminate’ dīl-t ‘to wear out’ – iz-dīl-t ‘to become worn out’ audz-inā-t ‘to raise, to bring up’ – iz-audz-inā-t (PFV) med-i-t ‘to hunt’ – iz-med-i-t ‘to hunt to extinction’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>temporal and aspectual meanings prolonged actions</td>
<td>slim-o-t ‘to be ill’ – iz-slim-o-t ‘to have had (a certain illness)’ mit-inā-t ‘to give shelter, to give board and lodging’ – iz-mit-inā-t ‘to give shelter, to give board and lodging for a certain time’ ēd-inā-t ‘to feed’ – iz-ēd-inā-t ‘to feed all of smth. to smb.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no-</td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td>kāp-t ‘to step, to climb’ – no-kāp-t ‘to descend, to come down’ kris-t ‘to fall’ – no-kris-t ‘to fall down’ nāk-t ‘to come’ – no-nāk-t ‘to come down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quantitative meanings 1) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td>pras-t ‘to know how, to be able’ – no-pras-t ‘to perceive, to guess’ gald-i-t ‘to wait’ – no-gald-i-t ‘to wait until certain conditions are met’ smīn-ē-t ‘to grin, to sneer’ – no smīn-ē-t ‘to give a quick grin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quantitative meanings 2) actions carried out in full</td>
<td>sal-t ‘to be cold’ – no-sal-t ‘to get chilled to the bone, to freeze, to freeze to death’ grim-t ‘to sink, to go under’ – no-grim-t (PFV) bals-o-t ‘to vote’ – no-bals-o-t (PFV) dzied-ā-t ‘to sing’ – no-dzied-ā-t ‘to sing (a song, etc. in full)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>temporal and aspectual meanings 1) sudden and brief actions</td>
<td>dreb-ē-t ‘to shiver’ – no-dreb-ē-t ‘to give a shiver’ ēkst-ē-t ‘to whisper’ – no-ēkst-ē-t ‘to whisper smth. briefly’ grab-ē-t ‘to rattle’ – no-grab-ē-t ‘to produce a sudden and brief rattling sound’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>temporal and aspectual meanings 2) prolonged actions</td>
<td>liet-o-t ‘to use’ – no-liet-o-t ‘to wear out’ peld-ē-t ‘to swim’ – no-peld-ē-t ‘to swim for some time or to swim a certain distance’ valk-ā-t ‘to wear’ – no-valk-ā-t ‘to wear out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa-</td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings 1) direction: ‘under, below’</td>
<td>ie-t ‘to go’ – pa-ie-t ‘to pass under (a bridge, etc.)’ kris-t ‘to fall’ – pa-kris-t ‘to fall under, to get run over by’ brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – pa-brauk-t ‘to drive under’ lid-o-t ‘to fly’ – pa-lid-o-t ‘to fly under’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings 2) ‘open’</td>
<td>lais-t ‘to let, to release’ – pa-lais-t ‘to let loose, to set free’ sis-t ‘to hit’ – pa-sis-t ‘to throw open’ rau-t ‘to pull’ – pa-rau-t ‘to pull open’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivation mean</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>pa-</td>
<td>3) ‘away, aside’</td>
<td>lēk-t ‘to jump, to leap’ – pa-lēk-t ‘to jump aside, to leap aside’ muk-t ‘to bolt’ – pa-muk-t ‘to bolt away’ sper-t ‘to kick’ – pa-sper-t ‘to kick aside’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quantitative meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aug-t ‘to grow’ – pa-aug-t ‘to grow a little bit’ cel-o-t ‘to travel’ – pa-cel-o-t ‘to travel a little bit’ vār-I-t ‘to boil’ – pa-vār-I-t ‘to boil a little bit’ tīr-I-t ‘to cleanse’ – pa-tīr-I-t ‘to cleanse a little bit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ės-t ‘to eat’ – pa-Ės-t (PFV) bar-o-t ‘to feed’ – pa-bar-o-t (PFV) zus-t ‘to disappear’ – pa-zus-t (PFV) dart-t ‘to do’ – pa-dart-t (PFV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>spīd-ē-t ‘to shine’ – pa-spīd-ē-t ‘to shine briefly or suddenly’ zib-ē-t ‘to flash’ – pa-zib-ē-t ‘to flash suddenly’ mirds-ē-t ‘to twinkle’ – pa-mirds-ē-t ‘to twinkle briefly’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>temporal and aspectual meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sudden and brief actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pār</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) direction: ‘across, over’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>kāp-t ‘to step, to climb’ – pār-kāp-t ‘to step over’ skrie-t ‘to run’ – pār-skrie-t ‘to run across’ nes-t ‘to carry’ – pār-nes-t ‘to carry across, to carry over’ līd-o-t ‘to fly’ – pār-līd-o-t ‘to fly over’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) ‘somewhere else’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bēr-t ‘to pour (of dry substances)’ – pār-bēr-t ‘to pour from one container into another’ bēg-t ‘to flee’ – pār-bēg-t ‘to flee to’ krau-t ‘to load’ – pār-krau-t ‘to transfer cargo to another vehicle, place, etc.’ stād-ī-t ‘to plant’ – pār-stād-ī-t ‘to replant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) direction: ‘back’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nāk-t ‘to come’ – pār-nāk-t ‘to come back’ brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – pār-brauk-t ‘to return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quantitative meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tulk-o-t ‘to translate’ – pār-tulk-o-t (PFV) cies-t ‘to suffer’ – pār-cies-t ‘to have been through smth., to have had (an illness, operation, etc.)’ zied-ē-t ‘to blossom’ – pār-zied-ē-t ‘to cease blossoming’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bar-o-t ‘to feed’ – pār-bar-o-t ‘to overfeed’ sālī-t ‘to season with salt’ – pār-sālī-t ‘to oversalt’ tēr-ē-t ‘to spend’ – pār-tēr-ē-t ‘to overspend’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) actions done to excess</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>temporal and aspectual meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prolonged actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>las-ī-t ‘to read’ – pār-las-ī-t ‘to read over, to reread’ dom-ā-t ‘to think’ – pār-dom-ā-t ‘to think over’ skat-ī-t ‘to view, to consider’ – pār-skat-ī-t ‘to go over again, to revise, to reconsider’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pie</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) direction: ‘up (so as to be near), towards’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ie-t ‘to go, to walk’ – pie-ie-t ‘to walk up to smb., to approach’ nāk-t ‘to come’ – pie-nāk-t ‘to come up to smb.’ nes-t ‘to carry’ – pie-nes-t ‘to bring to smb.’ lik-t ‘to put’ – pie-lik-t ‘to add, attach smth. to smth.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) ‘elsewhere’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) direction: ‘back’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V–V</strong></td>
<td><strong>pie-</strong></td>
<td>2) ‘to add, to supplement’</td>
<td>audz-ē-t ‘to grow (with an object)’ – pie-audz-ē-t ‘to extend (hair, etc.)’ dzer-t ‘to drink’ – pie-dzer-t ‘to accompany food with a drink, to wash down’ ēs-t ‘to eat’ – pie-ēs-t ‘to accompany food with smth. extra to eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quantitative meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) incomplete actions, actions performed in part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>temporal and aspectual meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prolonged actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sa-</strong></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) direction: ‘together’</td>
<td></td>
<td>lik-t ‘to put’ – sa-lik-t ‘to put together’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) direction: ‘in, into’</td>
<td></td>
<td>mes-t ‘to throw’ – sa-mes-t ‘to throw together, to throw in one heap, etc.’ sā-t ‘to sew’ – sa-sā-t ‘to stitch up’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quantitative meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>skum-t ‘to be sad’ – sa-skum-t ‘to become sad’ sīrg-t ‘to ail, to be ill’ – sa-sīrg-t ‘to be taken ill’ strut-o-t ‘to fester’ – sa-strut-o-t ‘to begin to fester’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) inchoative (inceptive) verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>deg-t ‘to burn’ – sa-deg-t ‘to burn down (no object)’ lī-t ‘to rain’ – sa-lī-t (PFV) ciet-ē-t ‘to solidify’ – sa-ciet-ē-t (PFV)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) actions carried out in full</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>temporal and aspectual meanings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>krā-t ‘to put aside, to save’ – sa-krā-t ‘to save up, to accumulate’ glab-ā-t ‘to keep, to store’ – sa-glab-ā-t ‘to preserve, to retain’ sēn-o-t ‘to gather mushrooms’ – sa-sēn-o-t ‘to gather a certain amount of mushrooms’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prolonged actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>uz-</strong></td>
<td>spatial meanings</td>
<td>kāp-t ‘to step, to climb’ – uz-kāp-t ‘to climb up, to ascend; to step on, to tread on; to board (a ship)’ mes-t ‘to throw’ – uz-mes-t ‘to throw onto’ brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – uz-brauk-t ‘to go up, to drive up’ iē-t ‘to go, to walk’ – uz-iē-t ‘to go up, to walk up’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.66  Main verb formation types: prefixation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| V–V                               | uz-                  | **quantitative meanings**  
1) inchoative (inceptive) verbs  
2) incomplete actions, actions performed in part  
3) actions carried out in full | zied-ē-t ‘to blossom’ – uz-zied-ē-t ‘to begin to blossom’  
gavil-ē-t ‘to rejoice, to feel or show great joy’ – uz-gavil-ē-t ‘to cheer, to hail’  
liesm-o-t ‘to be in flames’ – uz-liesm-o-t ‘to burst into flame, to flare up’  
gaid-ī-t ‘to wait’ – uz-gaid-ī-t ‘to wait for a short while’  
kos-t ‘to bite’ – uz-kos-t ‘to have a snack, to have a bite’  
spēl-ē-t ‘to play’ – uz-spēl-ē-t ‘to play for a short while’  
cel-t ‘to build’ – uz-ceł-t (PFV)  
cep-t ‘to bake’ – uz-cep-t (PFV)  
plauk-t ‘to blossom, to bloom’ – uz-plauk-t (PFV) |
|                                  |                      | **temporal and aspectual meanings**  
1) sudden and brief actions  
2) prolonged actions | run-ā-t ‘to speak’ – uz-run-ā-t ‘to speak to, to address’  
lūk-o-t ‘to look, to check’ – uz-lūk-o-t ‘to direct a look at’  
elp-o-t ‘to breathe’ – uz-elp-o-t ‘to be able to breathe again, to take a breath’  
bar-o-t ‘to feed’ – uz-bar-o-t ‘to fatten’  
krā-t ‘to put aside, to save’ – uz-krā-t ‘to save up, to accumulate’  
glab-ā-t ‘to keep, to store’ – uz-glab-ā-t ‘to store for a certain period of time’ |

**Combined, i.e., circumfixal, derivatives**

Meanings related to the quantitative aspect of actions can also be expressed by means of circumfixes – prefix+postfix combinations where the postfix is the reflexive formative -s. Circumfixes of this type can attach both to primary verb stems and to secondary verb stems derived by suffixation (see the V-V word-formation type below). The reflexive formative -s in the examples below is shown as part of the INF ending, i.e., -ties.

Verbal circumfixes consisting of a prefix and the formative -s are associated with the following meanings (see also Section 2.5.7):
1) sudden, unexpected, and brief actions;
2) actions done to a great extent, a great deal;
3) actions done to excess
The last two cases may additionally involve modality, as excessive actions are not always viewed positively.

Circumfixes consisting of a prefix and a suffix are used for forming verbs from nouns (N-V) and adjectives (ADJ-V).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V–V</td>
<td>aiz- + -s</td>
<td>brief, sudden, unexpected, also inchoative actions</td>
<td>svil-t ‘to burn superficially or lightly’ – aiz-svil-ties ‘to catch fire’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>actions done to a great extent, also for too long</td>
<td>dom-ā-t ‘to think’ – aiz-dom-ā-ties ‘to be deep in thought, to be lost in thought’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gul-ē-t ‘to sleep’ – aiz-gul-ē-ties ‘to oversleep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sēd-ē-t ‘to sit’ – aiz-sēd-ē-ties ‘to sit for too long, to overstay’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sapņ-o-t ‘to dream’ – aiz-sapņ-o-ties ‘to be lost in dreams, to daydream’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at- + -s</td>
<td>actions done to a great extent, also until one is tired of them</td>
<td>ės-t ‘to eat’ – at-ēs-ties ‘to eat one's fill’</td>
<td>dzer-t ‘to drink’ – at-dzer-ties ‘to drink one’s fill, to quench one’s thirst’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gul-ē-t ‘to sleep’ – at-gul-ē-ties ‘to sleep as much as one wishes’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sēd-ē-t ‘to sit’ – at-sēd-ē-ties ‘to sit a lot, also for a long time’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ie- + -s</td>
<td>brief, sudden, unexpected, also inchoative actions</td>
<td>klieg-t ‘to scream’ – ie-klieg-ties ‘to cry out’</td>
<td>klep-o-t ‘to cough’ – ie-klep-o-ties ‘to cough (a little, once or twice)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rie-t ‘to bark’ – ie-rie-ties ‘to begin to bark’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sāp-ē-t ‘to ache’ – ie-sāp-ē-ties ‘to ache suddenly and briefly’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>niez-ē-t ‘to itch’ – ie-niez-ē-ties ‘to begin to itch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mīrdz-ē-t ‘to twinkle’ – ie-mīrdz-ē-ties ‘to begin to twinkle, also for a brief moment’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iz- + -s</td>
<td>actions done to a very great extent, also to one’s limits</td>
<td>cēl-o-t ‘to travel’ – iz-cēl-o-ties ‘to travel a lot and for a long time’</td>
<td>brauk-t ‘to go (in a vehicle), to drive’ – iz-brauk-ties ‘to move about a lot, to drive a lot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>skrie-t ‘to run’ – iz-skrie-ties ‘to run to one’s heart’s content’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>klep-o-t ‘to cough’ – iz-klep-o-ties ‘to cough it out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dej-o-t ‘to dance’ – iz-dej-o-ties ‘to dance to one’s heart’s content’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>smēk-ē-t ‘to smoke’ – iz-smēk-ē-ties ‘to smoke to one’s heart’s content’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no- + -s</td>
<td>actions done to a great extent, also until one is tired of them</td>
<td>brēk-t ‘to cry’ – no-brēk-ties ‘to cry oneself hoarse’</td>
<td>bris-t ‘to wade’ – no-bris-ties ‘to wade for a long time, until tired’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>staig-ā-t ‘to walk’ – no-staig-ā-ties ‘to walk a lot until tired’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>raud-ā-t ‘to weep’ – no-raud-ā-ties ‘to weep intensely, over a certain period of time’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base word – derivative word class</td>
<td>Word-formation means</td>
<td>Derivational meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **V–V**                           | pie- + -s            | actions done to a great extent | ās-t ‘to eat’ – pie-ās-ties ‘to eat one’s fill’  
dzer-t ‘to drink’ – pie-dzer-ties ‘to get drunk’  
smel-t ‘to draw (water)’ – pie-smel-ties ‘to draw (water) until filled’  
zag-t ‘to steal’ – pie-zag-ties ‘to steal a lot, a quantity of smth.’ |
| **pār- + -s**                     | actions done to excess | ās-t ‘to eat’ – pār-ās-ties ‘to overeat’  
dzer-t ‘to drink’ – pār-dzer-ties ‘to drink too much’  
gaidā-t ‘to wait’ –  
pār-gaidā-ties ‘to be tired of waiting’  
strādā-t ‘to work’ –  
pār-strādā-ties ‘to work too hard, too much’  
gulē-t ‘to sleep’ – pār-gulē-ties ‘to sleep too much, for too long’ |
| **sa- + -s**                      | actions done to a great extent | elp-o-t ‘to breathe’ – sa-elp-o-ties ‘to breathe in, to inhale a significant quantity of smth.’  
domā-t ‘to think’ –  
sa-domā-ties ‘to think carefully, for a long time, to be lost in thoughts’  
lasā-t ‘to read’ – sa-lasā-ties ‘to read a lot about smth.’  
smēķē-t ‘to smoke’ –  
sa-smēķē-ties ‘to smoke a lot so as to reach a certain physical state’ |
| **N–V**                           | ap- + -o-t / -ties    | acquiring or causing to acquire the thing denoted by the base word | balv-a ‘award, prize’ – ap-balv-o-t ‘to award’  
mež-s ‘forest’ – ap-mež-o-t ‘to afforest, to cover with forest’  
laim-e ‘happiness’ – ap-laim-o-t ‘to make very happy’  
led-us ‘ice’ – ap-led-o-t ‘to become covered with ice’  
siev-a ‘wife’ – ap-siev-o-ties ‘to take a wife’  
bērn-s ‘child’ – ap-bērn-oties ‘to have a child’ |
| **pār- + -o-ties; attaches to the GEN PL stem of nouns** | becoming the thing denoted by the base word | purv-s ‘bog, swamp’ –  
pār-purv-o-ties ‘to become boggy, to turn into swamp’  
akmen-s ‘stone’ –  
pār-akmen-oties ‘to petrify, to fossilize’  
kaul-s ‘bone’ – pār-kaul-o-ties ‘to ossify’  
ogl-e ‘coal’ – pār-ogl-o-ties ‘to get charred, to turn into coal’  
cukur-s ‘sugar’ –  
pār-cukur-o-ties ‘to become candied, to form sugar crystals’ |
| **ADJ–V**                         | ap- + -inā-t / -o-t   | causing to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word | grūt-s ‘difficult’ –  
ap-grūt-inā-t ‘to inconvenience, to trouble, to make smth. difficult’  
stulb-s ‘stupid’ – ap-stulb-inā-t, ap-stulb-o-t ‘to stupefy’  
tumš-s ‘dark’ – ap-tumš-o-t ‘to darken, to cloud’ |
Table 2.67 Main verb formation types: circumfixation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base word – derivative word class</th>
<th>Word-formation means</th>
<th>Derivational meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADJ–V</td>
<td>at- + -inā-t / -o-t</td>
<td>restoring or enhancing the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>jaun-s ‘new’ – at-jaun-inā-t ‘to update’, at-jaun-o-t ‘to restore, to renew’ sveš-s ‘strange, alien’ – at-sveš-inā-t ‘to estrange, to alienate’ tāl-s ‘distant’ – at-tāl-inā-t ‘to remove, to move away from’ viegl-s ‘easy, light’ – at-viegl-inā-t ‘to make easier’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no- + -inā-t / -o-t</td>
<td>causing to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>gatav-s ‘ready, ripe’ – no-gatav-inā-t ‘to ripen’ trul-s ‘dull, blunt’ – no-trul-inā-t ‘to dull, to blunt’ meln-s ‘black’ – no-meln-o-t ‘to become black, to denigrate’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa- + -inā-t</td>
<td>enhancing, increasing the attribute denoted by the base word</td>
<td>ātr-s ‘fast, speedy’ – pa-ātr-inā-t ‘to speed up’ augst-s ‘high’ – pa-augst-inā-t ‘to raise, to increase’ ilg-s ‘long’ – pa-ildz-inā-t ‘to prolong’ slikt-s ‘bad’ – pa-slikt-inā-t ‘to worsen’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa- + -inā-t/ -o-t</td>
<td>causing to acquire the attribute denoted by the base word to the highest degree</td>
<td>raib-s ‘mottled, speckled’ – sa-raib-inā-t ‘to mottle’ šaur-s ‘narrow’ – sa-šaur-inā-t ‘to narrow, to narrow down’ rūgt-s ‘bitter’ – sa-rūgt-inā-t ‘to upset’ nikn-s ‘furious, enraged’ – sa-nikn-o-t ‘to infuriate, to enrage’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.6 ADVERBS

2.6.0 Introductory remarks

The adverb is a word class which consists of indeclinable words used to characterize actions, properties, circumstances, and, less frequently, objects. In sentences, adverbs function as adverbial modifiers (usually, those of place, time, measure, manner, cause, and purpose) (Skujiņa 2007: 40), typically attaching to verbs (2.6.1a), adjectives (2.6.1b) other adverbs (2.6.1c), and, occasionally, nouns (2.6.1d-e), pronouns (2.6.1f), and numerals (2.6.1g):

(2.6.1) a. ēst lēni ‘to eat slowly’
   b. ārkārtīgi skaists ‘extraordinarily beautiful’
   c. ļoti ātri ‘very quickly’
   d. blakus stāvētājs ‘a bystander’
   e. papīldu atvaļinājums ‘additional vacation’
   f. gluži cits ‘quite different’
   g. aptuveni simts ‘approximately a hundred’
Moreover, adverbs can be used to introduce sentences, in which case they apply to, or characterize, the entire content of such sentences (see also 3.2.10), e.g.:

(2.6.2) expressing time
a. **Tūlīt** atbrauks daži
   **in_a_moment** come.FUT.3 some.NOM.PL.M
   mani draugi.
   my.NOM.PL.M friend.NOM.PL.M
   ‘Some friends of mine will be here in a moment.’ (C)
b. **Šodien** gaidāms stiprs lietus.
   **today** expect.PTCP.NOM.M heavy.NOM.M rain.NOM.M
   ‘Heavy rain is expected today.’ (www.apollo.lv)

(2.6.3) expressing place
a. **Vietām** upe ir seklāka
   **in_places** river.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 shallow.CMP.NOM.F
   par metru.
   than meter.ACC.M
   ‘In some spots, the river is less than a meter deep.’ (C)
b. **Ārā** iedziedas gailis.
   **outside** begin_singing.PRS.3 rooster.NOM.M
   ‘A rooster starts crowing outside.’ (C)

The adverbs *kad* ‘when’, *kur* ‘where’, *kurp* ‘where to’, *kā* ‘how’, *cik* ‘how much’, *kāpēc*, *kādēl*, *kālab* ‘why, for what reason, what for’ are used to introduce interrogative sentences, asking questions about time (2.6.4), place (2.6.5), manner (2.6.6), cause (2.6.7), and quantity (2.6.8):

(2.6.4) **Kad** tev jābūt pilsētā?
   **when** you.DAT.SG deb.be city.LOC.F
   ‘When do you need to be in the city?’ (C)

(2.6.5) a. **Kur** izeja?
   **where** exit.NOM.F
   ‘Where is the exit?’ (C)
   c. **Kurp** mēs braucam?
   **where_to** we.NOM go.PRS.1PL
   ‘Where are we going to?’ (C)

(2.6.6) **Kā** pareizi kopt zemenes?
   **how** properly care.INF strawberry.ACC.PL.F
   ‘How to properly care for strawberries?’ (www.draugiem.lv)

(2.6.7) a. **Kāpēc** tūjas dzeltē?
   **why** thuja.NOM.PL.F yellow.PRS.3
   ‘What causes thujas to turn yellow?’ (Latvijas Avīze)
   b. **Kādēl** sevi ir tik grūti milēt?
   **why** oneself.ACC be.COP.PTRS.3 so difficult love.INF
   ‘Why is it so difficult to love oneself?’ (www.tvnet.lv)
d. **Kālab** vajadzīga lidosta?  
**why** necessary.NOM.F airport.NOM.F  
‘Why is an airport necessary?’ (C)

(2.6.8) **Cik** ilgi jūs strādājat par pārdevēju?  
**how** long you.NOM.PL work.PRS.2PL as shop_assistant.ACC  
‘How long have you been working as a shop assistant?’ (C)

All the above adverbs can also function as subordinating conjunctions introducing subordinate clauses (for details on conjunctions and conjunction words see Sections 2.6 and 3.5.2):  

(2.6.9) **Kad** esi atbildīgas izvēles priekšā,  
**when** be.cop.PRS.2SG responsible.gen.f choice.gen.f front.LOC.F  
jāpaskatās uz savām iespējām no malas.  
‘When you’re facing a difficult choice, you have to take a look at your options from the side.’ (Diena)

(2.6.10) a. **Kartē apkopotas ēdināšanas iestādes Rīgā,**  
**where** be.able.PRS.3 eat.INF vegan.gen.pl.m dinner.acc.pl.f  
‘The map shows restaurants in Rīga where one can have a vegan dinner.’ (CW)

b. **Karte ar dabas taku aprakstiem palīdzēs izlemt,**  
**where_to** go.inf holidays.loc.pl.f  
‘A map with descriptions of nature trails will help [you] decide where to go on the weekend.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(2.6.11) **Es** zinu, **kā** ir, **kad**  
I.NOM know.PRS.1SG **how** be.PRS.3 when  
nezini, ko gribi.  
not_know.PRS.2SG what.ACC want.PRS.2SG  
‘I know what it’s like when you don’t know what you want.’ (Ir)

(2.6.12) a. **Tūristi nesaprot,**  
**why** DEB.pay for enter.acc.f nature.gen.f parkā.  
‘Tourists do not understand why they have to pay to enter a nature park.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
b. *Ministrija pieprasā skaidrot,*

_The ministry demands an explanation as to why the president of the sports federation went to the competition instead of the trainer._

(Diena)

c. *Gribu zināt, kālab nepiegādā*  

_I want to know why the newspaper [I have subscribed to] isn’t being delivered._ (Latvijas Avīze)

Structurally, it is possible to distinguish between three kinds of adverbs:

1) one-word adverbs


2) compound adverbs

(2.6.15) _šovakar_ ‘this evening’, _nākamvasar_ ‘next summer’, _toreiz_ ‘then’

3) word combinations (of two words)

(2.6.16) _šur tur_ ‘here and there’, _kaut kad_ ‘at some point in time’, _vienis prātis_ ‘of the same opinion’, _galu galā_ ‘eventually’, _pa labi_ ‘right’

### 2.6.1 Semantic groups

Based on their semantics adverbs can be classified into (Paegle 2003: 162–179):


(2.6.17) a. *Tagad nenožēloju toreizējo lēmumu.*  

_Now I don’t regret the decision I made then._ (C)

b. *Varbūt piezvani vēlāk?*_  

_Maybe you can call later?_ (C)

e. *Šogad visu vasaru ir auksti.*  

_This year, it has been cold throughout the summer._ (C)

(2.6.18) a. Kas te notiek?
what.NOM here happen.PRS.3
‘What’s happening here?’ (C)
b. Fausts vienmēr, visur bija viens.
Faust.NOM.M always everywhere be.COP.PST.3 alone.NOM.M
‘Faust was always, everywhere alone.’ (C)
c. Emīls iziet laukā,
Emīls.NOM.M go_out.PRS.3 out
Balvis paliek sēžam.
‘Emīls goes out, Balvis remains seated.’ (C)


(2.6.19) a. No dokumentiem varēja secināt, ka skolu šā tā ir beidzis.
school.ACC.F like_this like_that be.AUX.PRS.3 finish.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It could be concluded from the documents that [he] got through school somehow.’ (C)
b. Rītausma nāk lēni.
dawn.NOM.F come.PRS.3 slowly
‘The dawn breaks slowly.’ (C)
c. Viņam aumaļām tecēja asaras.
he.DAT.M in_streams pour.PST.3 tear.NOM.PL.F
‘Tears were streaming down his face.’ (C)


(2.6.20) a. Cik skaist!
how beautiful
‘How beautifully!’ (C)
b. Patērētāji maz zīna par savām tiesībām.
consumer.NOM.PL.M little know.PRS.3 about own.ACC.PL.F
‘Consumers know little about their rights.’ (C)
c. Kārlim rotaļlietu ir gana.
Kārlis.dat.m toy.gen.pl.f be.cop.prs.3 enough
‘Kārlis has enough toys.’ (www.mansmazais.lv)

5) adverbs of purpose and cause – kāpēc, kādēļ, kālab ‘why, for what reason, what for’, tāpēc, tādēļ, tālab ‘for that reason, therefore, because’

(2.6.21) a. Kāpēc piekritāt kandidēt uz iestādes
why agree.pst.2pl run.inf for institution.gen.f
direktora amatu?
director.gen.m position.acc.m
‘Why did you agree to run for the position of the director of the institution?’ (Ir)

b. U-18 basketbolistēm grūts un
difficult.nom.m and
tāpēc lielisks panākums
therefore remarkable.nom.m achievement.nom.m
Eiropas čempionātā.
Europe.gen.f championship.loc.m
‘A difficult and therefore remarkable achievement for the U-18 basketball players (F) at the European championship.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

c. Katram jāmācās paša dēļ,
everybody.dat.m deb.study self.gen.m because_of
nevis tālab, ka skolotājs to grib.
not for_that_reason that teacher.nom.m it.acc.m want.prs.3
‘One has to study for one’s own sake rather than because their teacher wants them to.’ (C)

The above classification is, to an extent, arbitrary: some adverbs can express different meanings depending on the context (for a detailed discussion see Paegle 2003: 159–161). For example, the adverbs tūlīt, tūdaļ ‘in a moment, right away’ can carry time (2.6.22a) as well as place (2.6.22b) semantics:

(2.6.22) a. Tūlīt sākas olimpiskās
shortly begin.prs.3 Olympic.nom.pl.f
spēles.
game.nom.pl.f
‘The Olympic games will start shortly.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. Debitanti basketbola ligas tabulā
newcomer.nom.pl.m basketball.gen.m league.gen.f table.loc.f
redzami tūlīt aiz trim
see.ptcp.nom.pl.m immediately behind three.dat
spēcīgākajām komandām.
strong.gen.comp.pl.f team.gen.pl.f
‘The newcomers immediately follow the three strongest teams on the basketball league table.’ (Diena)
Likewise, the adverb *turpat* ‘in the same place, right there’, for example, can express place (2.6.23a) and measure (2.6.23b) meanings:

(2.6.23) a. *Hokejistu apciētina turpat uz ledus.*

hockey_player.acc.m arrest.prs.3 there on ice.gen.m

‘The hockey player is arrested right there on the ice.’

(Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

b. *Zemessardzes kājnieku bataljonā dienē turpat pieci simti cilvēku.*

National_Guard.gen.f infantry.gen.pl.m battalion.loc.m serve.prs.3 almost five.nom.m hundred.nom.pl.m person.gen.pl.m

‘Almost five hundred persons serve in the National Guard infantry battalion.’ (Diena)

Moreover, the adverbial meanings of manner and measure, manner and time, manner and place are not always clearly distinguishable, i.e., it is perhaps best to view them as being realized simultaneously. For example, the adverb of manner *lēni* ‘slowly’ in example (2.6.24a) can also be interpreted as an adverb of measure, while the adverb of time *palaikam* ‘from time to time’ (2.6.24b) and the adverb of place *vietumis* ‘here and there’ (2.6.24c) can both be construed as adverbs of manner.

(2.6.24) a. *Valstij ir lēni augoša, bet daudzsološa ekonomika.*

country.dat.f be.cop.prs.3 slowly grow.ptcp.nom.f but promising.nom.f economy.nom.f

‘The country has a slowly growing but promising economy.’ (Ir)

b. *Naktī visā valstī palaikam līs.*

night.loc.f entire.loc.f country.loc.f occasionally rain.fut.3

‘Intermittent rain is expected tonight throughout the country.’ (www.apollo.lv)

c. *Ostā vietumis redzami ledus sastrēgumi.*

port.loc.f here_and_there see.ptcp.nom.pl.m ice.gen.m

‘Ice jams can be seen here and there in the port.’ (www.liepajniekiem.lv)

2.6.2 Comparison

Since adverbs are indeclinable they lack grammatical categories. Some adverbs of adjectival origin (mostly derived from qualitative adjectives), however, are gradable and can appear in the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative* degrees, which are formed in the same way as adjectival degrees of comparison: using the suffix *-āk-* to form the comparative degree and the prefix *vis-* to form the superlative degree; word-final *-i, -u,* and *-ām* are not retained in the comparative and superlative forms:
(2.6.25) a. maz – maz-āk – vis-maz-āk ‘little – less – least’
b. gudr-i – gudr-āk – vis-gudr-āk ‘cleverly – more cleverly – most cleverly’
c. tāl-u – tāl-āk – vis-tāl-āk ‘far – farther – farthest’
d. lēn-ām – lēn-āk – vis-lēn-āk ‘slowly – more slowly – most slowly’

(2.6.26) labi ‘well’
a. Jums labi padodas valodas?
you.DAT.PL good come_easy.PRS.3 language.NOM.PL.F
‘Are you good at languages?’ (C)
b. Lauku sētā labāk
countryside.GEN.PL.M farmstead.LOC.F better
iederēsies peonijas.
fit_in.FUT.3 peony.NOM.PL.F
‘Peonies will be better suited for a farmstead.’ (C)
c. Tas [saldējums] viņiem vislabāk
that.NOM.M [ice_cream] they.DAT.M like.PRS.3 best
‘They like that [ice cream] the best.’ (C)

Forming the comparative and superlative degrees of the adverb daudz ‘much, a lot’ involves using a different root:

(2.6.27) daudz – vair-āk – vis-vair-āk ‘much – more – most’
a. Ar optimismu var ļoti daudz
with optimism.INS.M be_able.PRS.3 very much
izdarīt.
accomplish.INF
‘Much can be accomplished with optimism.’ (C)
b. Šogad skolas gaitas sāks
this_year school.GEN.F activity.NOM.PL.F begin.FUT.3
vairāk pirmklasnieku nekā pērn.
more first_form_pupils.GEN.PL.M than last_year.
‘More first form pupils will begin their schooling this year than the year before.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
c. “Ar sudrabu strādāju visvairāk, bet
with silver.INS.M work.PRS.1SG most but
izmantoju arī zeltu,”
use.PRS.1SG also gold.ACC.M
stāsta [rotu] mākslinieks.
“I work with silver the most, but I also use gold”, the [jewelry] artist says.’ (Kas Jauns)

As a rule, the comparative and superlative degrees of adverbs derived from relational adjectives either do not occur at all or are rare, e.g., the adverb latviški ‘in Latvian, in a Latvian manner’ in mass media texts:
Likewise, examples of gradable adverbs derived from compound adjectives are very rare in language use, e.g., the comparative of the adverb *melnbalti* ‘in a black-and-white manner’:

(2.6.29) a. *Dramaturģe daudz melnbalt-āk iezīmējusi* 
playwright.NOM.F much black_white-cmp outline.PTCP.NOM.F
*galvenās varones mazdēla raksturu.* 
main.GEN.F heroine.GEN.F grandson.GEN.M character.ACC.M
‘The playwright (F) outlines the character of the protagonist’s (F) grandson in a much more black-and-white manner.’
(Latvijas Avīze)

b. *Fotoattēls jāmēģina veidot bāl-āk* 
photo.NOM.M DEB.try produce.INF pale-cmp
*vai melnbalt-āk.* 
or black_white-cmp
‘[You] should try to produce paler or more black-and-white photographs.’
(www.draugiem.lv)
Suffixation

ADJ–ADV

Derivation of adverbs by means of the suffix -i

1) Adverbs ending in -i can be derived from virtually any adjective regardless of its internal morphological makeup (2.6.30), semantics, or stratum of the vocabulary (2.6.31):

(2.6.30) a. from primary adjectives
   viegl-s – viegl-i ‘easy – easily’
   ērt-s – ērt-i ‘comfortable – comfortably’

b. from derived adjectives
   zar-ain-s – zar-ain-i ‘branchy – in a branched manner
   ie-zaļ-š – ie-zaļ-i ‘greenish – greenishly’
   vērstur-isk-s – vērstur-isk-i ‘historical – historically’

c. from compound adjectives
   zil-zaļ-š – zil-zaļ-i ‘blue-green – in a blue-green manner’
   meln-balt-s – meln-balt-i ‘black-and-white – in a black-and-white manner’

(2.6.31) from borrowed adjectives
   aktīv-s – aktīv-i ‘active – actively’
   abstrakt-s – abstrakt-i ‘abstract – abstractly’
   destruktīv-s – destruktīv-i ‘destructive – destructively’
   konsekvent-s – konsekvent-i ‘consistent – consistently’

2) In addition, adverbs ending in -i can also be derived from declinable participles, namely, the present active participle (2.6.32a), present passive participle (2.6.32b), and past passive participle (2.6.32c); here, again, whether the source verb is a primary or a derived word is of no particular significance:

(2.6.32) a. klieg-t – kliedz-oš-s – kliedz-oš-i ‘shout – shouting – in a shouting manner’

b. teik-t – teic-am-s – teic-am-i ‘commend – commendable – commendably’
   pār-skat-i-t – pār-skat-ām-s – pār-skat-ām-i ‘peruse – perusable – in a perusable manner’

c. slēp-t – slēp-t-s – slēp-t-i ‘hide – hidden – in a hidden manner’
   aiz-vain-o-t – aiz-vain-o-t-s – aiz-vain-o-t-i ‘offend – offended – in an offended manner’

Derivation of adverbs by means of the suffixes -u, -ām

Although the adverbial suffixes -u, -ām can only combine with native primary qualitative adjectives, the resulting adverbs do not differ from adverbs derived by means of the suffix -i either semantically or with respect to usage, therefore, all three suffixes are considered to be derivational variants. In contemporary Latvian, some adverbs can occur in any of the three variants:
(2.6.33) klusi, kļusu, kļusām ‘quietly’

a. Tēvs klusi elpo.
   father.NOM.M quietly breath.PRS.3
   ‘Father is breathing quietly.’ (C)

b. Viņi kļusu izgāja.
   they.NOM.M quietly leave.PST.3
   ‘They left quietly.’ (C)

c. Valdis kļusām iesvilpās.
   Valdis.NOM.M quietly whistled.PST.3
   ‘Valdis whistled quietly.’ (C)

There are also adverbs that permit two variants:

(2.6.34) -i and -ām

a. lēni, lēnām ‘slowly’
   Lēni kājos atpakaļ pa rasaino taku.
   slowly back.PRS.1SG away down dewy.ACC.F path.ACC.F
   ‘I back away slowly down the dewy path.’ (C)

Kuģi lēnām aplēdo.
   ship.NOM.PL.M slowly ice_over.PRS.3
   ‘The ships slowly become covered with ice.’ (C)

b. gauži, gaužām ‘very, intensely, bitterly’
   Viņa sāka gauži raudāt.
   she.NOM start.PST.3 bitterly cry.INF
   ‘She started to weep bitterly.’ (C)

Stādi izskatās gaužām vārīgi.
   seedling.NOM.PL.M look.PRS.3 very frail.NOM.PL.M
   ‘The seedlings look very frail.’ (C)

(2.6.35) -i and -u

a. tāli, tālu ‘far (away)’
   Kaut kur tāli vēl ducina.
   somewhere far still rumble.PRS.3
   ‘The rumbling sound is still coming from somewhere far away.’ (C)

Tikai nepeldi tālu.
   just not_swim.IMP.2SG far.
   ‘Just do not swim far.’ (C)

b. augsti, augstu ‘highly’
   Šīs nozares prasa
   this.NOM.PL.F industry.NOM.PL.F require.PRS.3
   augsti kvalificētu darbaspēku..
   highly qualified.PTCP.ACC.M personnel.ACC.M
   ‘These industries require highly qualified personnel …’ (C)

Tu pārāk augstu sevi vērtē.
   you.NOM.SG too highly self.ACC rate.PRS.2SG
   ‘You rate yourself too highly.’ (C)
N–ADV, PRON–ADV

Derivation of adverbs by means of the suffix \(-p\)

In addition to the above, there is a group of adverbs expressing direction and derived from spatial nouns (2.6.36a) and pronouns (2.6.36b) by means of the suffix \(-p\):


b. \textit{kur-p} ‘where to’, \textit{tur-p} ‘to there’, \textit{šur-p} ‘to here’

(2.6.37) a. \textit{Ar uzvaru} \textit{māju} \textit{no} \textit{Ventspils}

\textit{volejbolisti}.

\textit{atgriežas}

\textit{home from Ventspils.gen.f}

\textit{return.prs.3 volleyball_player.nom.pl.m}

‘The volleyball players are coming home from Ventspils with a victory.’

(www.sportacentrs.lv)

b. \textit{Paskaties} \textit{augšup!}

\textit{look.imp.2sg upwards}

\textit{Vai pazīsti Vecrīgas celtnes?}

‘Look up! Do you recognize the buildings of Old Rīga?’

(www.delfi.lv)

c. \textit{Viņš bieži turp aizbrauc.}

\textit{he.nom often to_there go.prs.3}

‘He often goes there.’ (C)

d. \textit{Nāc šurp!}

\textit{come.imp.2sg to_here}

‘Come here!’ (C)

Syntactic word formation

Conversion – adverbialization

Adverbs produced by conversion can be of nominal, pronominal, or verbal origin (with reduced or retained case endings, which in some cases belong to obsolete grammatical forms):

1) nominal origin – adverbs derived from different forms of nouns (2.6.38), adjectives (2.6.39), or numerals (2.6.40)

(2.6.38) a. NOM SG

\textit{gana} ‘enough’, \textit{pulka} ‘a lot’, etc.

b. DAT SG

\textit{mūžam} ‘forever’, \textit{laikam} ‘possibly’, etc.

c. ACC SG

\textit{drusku} ‘a little bit’, \textit{rit(u)} ‘tomorrow’, etc.

d. INS SG

\textit{milzum} ‘extremely’, \textit{brīnum} ‘astonishingly’, \textit{krustu Šķērsu} ‘in all directions’, etc.
e. LOC SG
augšā ‘up’, ārā ‘outside’, laukā ‘out’, valā ‘open’, kopā ‘together’, reizē ‘at the same time’, vienatā ‘on one’s own’, divatā ‘the two (of us, them, etc.), two together’, pirmdien ‘on Monday’, otrdien ‘on Tuesday’, etc.
f. ACC PL
tecīnus ‘quickly and lightly’, sāņus ‘sideways’, etc.
g. INS PL
h. LOC PL
lēkšos ‘at a gallop’, pušu ‘in half, asunder’, etc.


(2.6.40) pirms ‘before’

2) pronominal origin – adverbs derived from pronouns


3) verbal origin – adverbs mostly derived from participial forms of verbs
a) adverbializations of indeclinable participles

(2.6.42) beidzot ‘at last’, negribojot ‘unwittingly’, nekavējoties ‘immediately’

b) old participial forms in -u, -us, -šus

(2.6.43) a. tupu ‘squatting’, rāpu ‘crawling’, papildu ‘additionally’, etc.
b. sēdus ‘sitting’, stāvus ‘standing’, papildus ‘additionally’, četrrāpus ‘on all fours’, etc.
c. braukšus ‘riding, driving as opposed to ‘on foot’, skrievus ‘running, at a run’, lišus ‘creeping’, etc.

Compounds and word combinations

Compound adverbs

1) PREP + N (2.6.44), PREP + ADJ (2.6.45), PREP + NUM (2.6.46) – with or without case endings:


(2.6.45) pa-retam ‘seldom’, pa-pilnam ‘in abundance’, aiz-pērn ‘the year before last’, etc.

(2.6.46) aiz-vien ‘always, still’, ar-vien ‘always, still, increasingly’, etc.
2) PREP + PRON (2.6.47a) and PRON + POST (2.6.47b)
(2.6.47)  
a. *pa-visam* ‘very, completely, at all’  
b. *kā-pēc, kā-dēl, kā-lab* ‘why, for what reason, what for’, *tā-pēc, tā-dēl, tā-lab* ‘for that reason, therefore, because’

3) PTCL + ADV (2.6.48a) and ADV + PTCL (2.6.48b)
(2.6.48)  
b. *tur-pat* ‘right there’, *te-pat, še-pat* ‘right here’, *tā-pat* ‘in the same way’

4) N + N (2.6.49a), ADJ + N (2.6.49b), NUM + N (2.6.49c))
(2.6.49)  
a. *mūž-dien* ‘always’, *viet-vietām* ‘here and there’, etc.  
b. *lielāko-ties* ‘mostly’, *maz-liet* ‘slightly’, *galveno-kārt* ‘for the most part’, etc.  

5) PRON + N
(2.6.50)  
*šo-gad* ‘this year’, *to-dien* ‘that day’, *to-gad* ‘that year’, *vin-gad* ‘last year’, *vin-nedēl* ‘last week’, *citu-dien* ‘next day, another day’, *daž-brīd* ‘at times’, *paš-reiz* ‘at present’, *kād-reiz* ‘once, someday’, etc.

6) PTCP DECL + N
(2.6.51)  
*nākoš-reiz* ‘next time’, *nākam-gad* ‘next year’, *pagājušo-ziem* ‘last winter’, etc.

**Adverbial word combinations**
1) N + N (2.6.52a) (although it is also possible that some of them are historical participial forms (see Soida 1969) (2.6.52b))
(2.6.52)  
a. *krustu šķērsu* ‘in all directions’, *beigu beigās* ‘after all’, etc.  
b. *juku jukām* ‘in a topsy-turvy manner’, *liču loču* ‘in a zigzag manner’, *atliku likām* ‘more than enough, plenty’, etc.

2) PREP + ADJ
(2.6.53)  
*pa istam* ‘genuinely, for real’, *pa vecam* ‘in the old way’, *pa labi* ‘right’, *pa kreisi* ‘left’, etc.

3) ADV + ADV
(2.6.54)  
*šad tad* ‘now and then’, *šur tur* ‘here and there’, *šurp turp* ‘back and forth’, *šā tā* ‘anyhow, somehow’, *cik necik* ‘more or less, a little’, etc.

4) PTCL + ADV
(2.6.55)  
*kaut kad* ‘at some point in time’, *kaut kur* ‘somewhere’, *kaut kā* ‘somehow’, *sazin kad, diez(in) kad, nez(in) kad* ‘at an unknown moment’, *sazin kur, diez(in) kur, nez(in) kur* ‘at an unknown place’, *sazin kā, diez(in) kā, nez(in) kā* ‘in an unknown manner’ with *sazin, diez(in), and nez(in)* reinforcing the meaning of indefiniteness and adding different shades of meaning depending on the context
2.7 PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions (adpositions) are a class of function words indicating relations between objects, phenomena, processes, etc. In a sentence, a preposition typically combines with a noun (2.7.1a), a word functioning as a noun (2.7.1b), or a pronoun (2.7.1c) in a particular case, helping to establish syntactic relationships between content words in the containing clause and specify case meanings (Skujiņa 2007: 311).

(2.7.1) a. No rīta biju uz pastu.
   from morning.GEN.M be.PST.1SG to post_office.ACC.M
   ‘In the morning, I went to the post office.’ (I. Ābele)
   b. Pelēkais tērps viņai bija vairākus numurus par lielu.
      grey.NOM.M garment.NOM.M she.DAT.F be.COP.PST.3
      several.ACC.PL.M size.ACC.PL.M too large.ACC.M
      ‘The grey garment was several sizes too large for her.’ (A. Eglītis)
   c. Pie manis atbrauca krusttēvs!
      by I.GEN come.PST.3 godfather.NOM.M
      ‘My godfather has come to visit!’ (www.draugiem.lv)

Most prepositions are polysemous so that their actual meaning can only be determined within context.

As a rule, Latvian prepositions come before the word with which they combine, e.g.:

(2.7.2) a. ap koku
    around tree.ACC.M
    ‘around a tree’
   b. ar māsu
      with sister.INS.F
      ‘with one’s sister’
   c. bez naudas
      without money.GEN.F
      ‘without money’
   d. caur tirgu
     through market.ACC.M
     ‘through the market’
   e. gar māju
     along house.ACC.F
     ‘along a house’
   f. no atvilktnes
      from drawer.GEN.F
      ‘from a drawer’
   g. pār strautu
      over brook.ACC.M
      ‘over a brook’
There is, however, a small number of postpositions, e.g., dēļ ‘due to, because of’ and labad ‘for the sake of’:

(2.7.3) a. **Lietus dēļ Rīgā applūdušas**
    rain.GEN.M because_of Rīga.LOC.F flood.PTCP.NOM.PL.F
    ielas.
    street.NOM.PL.F
    ‘Rain left the streets of Rīga flooded.’ (www.delfi)

b. **Precēti virieši veselīgu ēdienu ēdienu**
    marry.PTCP.NOM.PL.M man.NOM.PL.M healthy.ACC.M food.ACC.M
    mājās ēd tikai mīļā labad,
    home.LOC.PL.F eat.PRS.3 only dear.GEN.M peace.GEN.M
    for_the_sake_of
    savukārt, kad sieva neredz, labprāt mielojas ar neveselīgām ātrajām
    uzkodām.
    ‘Married men only eat healthy food at home to keep the peace, but
    whenever their wife isn’t looking they are only too happy to treat
    themselves to unhealthy fast food snacks.’
    (www.tvnet.lv)

While the postposition dēļ is sometimes used prepositively, e.g., in colloquial speech and mass media texts, such usage is considered non-standard:

(2.7.4) a. **Tikai dēļ tevis reģistrējos sporta**
    only because_of you.GEN register.PST.1SG sport.GEN.M
    portālā.
    website.LOC.M
    ‘You are the only reason why I registered at the sports website.’
    (www.sportacentrs.lv)
    Correct: **tevis dēļ**
b. Adīt nevaru dēļ [slimas]

knit.INF not_be_able.PRS.1SG due_to [ill]
sirds, paskatos televisoru, palasu

heart.GEN.F watch.PRS.1SG television.ACC.M read.PRS.1SG

kādu grāmatu.
some_kind.ACC.F book.ACC.F

‘I can’t knit because of [an ill] heart, [so] I watch a bit of television, read a book.’(C)

Correct: sirds dēļ

The preposition pēc ‘after, by, for, because of’ can be used either prepositively (when expressing spatial, temporal relations, intent or purpose, etc. (2.7.5a)), or postpositively (when stating causes and reasons (2.7.5b)):

(2.7.5) a. Sākumā cilvēki nāca [uz veikalu]

at_first.LOC.M person.NOM.PL.M come.PST.3 [to shop]
pēc lauku produktiem.

for country.GEN.PL.F product.DAT.PL.M

‘At first, people would come [to the shop] for farm produce.’ (Ir)

b. Kāda jēga precēties, ja tāda

what_kind.NOM.F point.NOM.F marry.INF if that_kind.GEN.M

triele.GEN.M for not_be_able.PRS.2PL agree.INF

‘What’s the point of marrying if you can’t agree over such a trifle.’

(www.cosmo.lv)

The distribution of prepositions
Prepositions determine the case of words with which they combine. Case requirements differ depending on whether the dependent words are in the singular or plural.

SINGULAR

GEN

(2.7.6) a. aiz ‘after, behind’

Aiz loga ir silts

behind window.GEN.M be.PRS.3 warm.NOM.M

septembrīs masā Amerikas miestā.

September.NOM.M small.LOC.M America.GEN.F village.LOC.M

‘Outside the window is a warm September in a small American village.’

(N. Ikstena)

b. bez ‘without’

Pārdevējas [veikalā] strādā bez atelpas.

shop_assistant.NOM.PL.F [shop] work.PRS.3 without rest.GEN.F

‘The shop assistants [at the shop] are working without a moment’s rest.’

(Ir)
c. *kopš* ‘since, from’

*Par locītavām jārūpējas kopš jaunības.*

‘One needs to take care of one’s joints from a young age.’

(Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

d. *dēļ* ‘due to, because of’

*Jau piektdienas vakarā Rīgā būs satiksmes ierobežojumi maratona dēļ.*

‘Traffic restrictions will be in place in Rīga already on Friday evening due to the marathon.’ (www.lsm.lv)

e. *labad* ‘for the sake of’

*Kārtības labad atjaunojām ēkas fasādi.*

‘For the sake of order we have restored the façade of the building.’

(www.liepajniekiem.lv)

f. *no* ‘from, out of’

*Pilsētas torņi bija redzami no mūsu mājas otrā stāva logā.*

‘The city’s towers could be seen from our second-floor window.’

(Jaunā Gaita)

g. *pēc* ‘after, by, for, because of’

*Pēc izglītības filoloģe viņa by education.gen.f philologist.nom.f she.nom Zviedrijā daudz laika veltījusi Sweden.loc.f much time.gen.m devote.ptcp.nom.f latviešu valodas mācišanai.*

‘A philologist by training, she devoted a lot of time to teaching Latvian in Sweden.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

h. *pie* ‘at, by’

*Visiem mums patīk pie dabas.*

‘We all like to spend time in nature.’ (Ir)
i. **pirms** ‘before, prior to, ahead of, ago’

   Viņš ir atnācis **pirms**

   **ir** he.NOM **be.AUX.PRS.3** arrive.PTCP.NOM.M **pirms** ahead_of **laika**.

   **time.GEN.M**

   ‘He arrived ahead of time.’ (M. Zīverts)

j. **priekš** ‘ago’

   Kaimiņu draudzes mācitājs **priekš** neilga

   neighbor GEN.PL.M parish GEN.F priest NOM.M **priekš** before short GEN.M **time.GEN.M**

   with entire INS.F parish INS.F be AUX.PST.3 **vispirms** katolīcībā, **pārgājis**

   convert PTCP.NOM.M at_first Catholicism LOC.F then **pareizticībā**.

   **Orthodoxy LOC.F**

   ‘Recently, the neighboring parish priest converted first to the Catholic, then to the Orthodox faith together with the whole congregation.’ (C)

k. **virs** ‘above, over’

   Liepāža **virs** jūras novērots

   Liepāja LOC.F **virs** above sea GEN.F spot PTCP NOM.M

   whirlwind NOM.M

   ‘A whirlwind was spotted in Liepāja over the sea.’ (Ir)

l. **zem** ‘under’

   Bille mazliet paceļ [albuma] lapu,

   Bille NOM.F slightly lift up PRS.3 [album] page ACC.F

   kas **zem** [albuma] lapu,

   which NOM underneath tissue paper GEN.M

   ‘Bille lifts up the [album] page slightly, which is underneath the tissue paper.’ (V. Belševica)

---

**DAT**

(2.7.7) **līdz** ‘until, (up) to’

   Ķūjorkā reiz latvieši dzirdami

   New York LOC.F once [Latvian NOM.PL.M] carouse PTCP NOM.PL.M

   dzejoja un staigāja pa ielām **līdz**

   compose poetry PST.3 and walk PST.3 in street DAT.PL.F until

   morning DAT.M

   ‘Once upon a time in New York, Latvians made up poems and walked the (city’s) streets carousing until morning.’ (Jaunā Gaita)
ACC  
(2.7.8) a. *ap* ‘around, about’

_Zemes ap muižu [baronam]_

*land.GEN.M around manor_house.ACC.M [baron]*

_palīcis maz._

*remain.PTCP.NOM.M little*

‘[The baron hasn’t] much land left around the manor house.’

(V. Belševica)

b. *caur* ‘through’

_Es skrēju caur mežu uz I.NOM ran.PST.1SG through forest.ACC.M towards home.DAT.PL.F*_

‘I ran home through the forest.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

c. *gar* ‘along, past’

_Viņa atceras stāvas kāpnes gar she.NOM recall.PRS.3 steep.ACC.PL.F staircase.ACC.PL.F along mājas ārpusi._

*house.GEN.F outside.ACC.F*

‘She recalls a steep staircase running along the outside of the house.’

(V. Belševica)

d. *pa* ‘on, during’

_Pa to laiku kļuis pavisam during that.ACC.M time.ACC.M become.PTCP.NOM.M quite gaišs._

*light.NOM.M*

‘In the meantime, daylight broke.’ (A. Žīgure)

e. *par* ‘about, on’

_Vai tu tagad runā par savu Q you.NOM.SG now talk.PRS.2SG about own.ACC.M stāstu? story.ACC.M_

‘Are you talking about your story now?’ (N. Ikstena)

f. *pār* ‘across, over’

_Pārkāpumā piekertais zvejnieks aiz offense.LOC.M catch.PTCP.NOM.M fisherman.NOM.M out_of pārsteiguma gandrīz pārvēlās pār laivas surprise.GEN.M almost roll_over.PST.3 over boat.GEN.F malu. side.ACC.F_

‘The fisherman caught committing an offense almost rolled overboard with surprise.’ (Ir)
The prepositions *uz* ‘to, on’ and *pa* ‘on’ can take words in two different cases in the singular:

1) *uz* with GEN denotes location (2.7.10a), while with ACC it denotes direction (2.7.10b)

(2.7.10) a. **Uz** rokas tev smaržoja rožu

   on arm.GEN.F you.DAT.SG smell.PST.3 rose.GEN.PL.F

   klēpis.

   armful.NOM.M

   ‘There was an armful of fragrant roses resting against your arm.’

   (M. Zīverts)

b. **Viņš** gāja atpakaļ **uz** istabu.

   he.NOM go.PST.3 back to room.ACC.F

   ‘He went back to the room.’ (I. Ābele)
2) the meaning of *pa* is partitive with DAT (2.7.11a) and spatial with ACC (2.7.11b)

(2.7.11) a. Šo maizi grūti griezt, vieglāk ir laust *pa* gabalam.
   this.ACC.F bread.ACC.F difficult slice.INF easier be.COP.PRS.3 break.INF by piece.DAT.M
   ‘This bread is difficult to slice, it’s easier to break off piece by piece.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. *Pa* ganību *ceļu* uz *sētu* along pasture.GEN.PL.F road.ACC.M towards yard.ACC.F nāca come.PST.3 cow.NOM.F
   ‘A cow was approaching the yard by the pasture road.’ (V. Belševica)

The prepositions *abpus* ‘on either side’, *apakšpus* ‘below’, *ārpus* ‘outside, beyond’, *augšpus* ‘above, up’, *lejpus* ‘below, down’, *šaipus* ‘on this side’, *vīnspus* ‘on that side, on the far side’, *otrpus* ‘on the other side, across’, *iekšpus* ‘inside’, *virsīspus* ‘above, over’ usually govern GEN SG, but can also be used with DAT SG with no difference in meaning:

(2.7.12) *abpus* ‘on either side’

a. GEN

   *Jo* lielāks [mašīnu] ātrums, *jo*
   conj great.CMP.NOM.M [car] speed.NOM.M conj
   platākiem *ceļi* jābūt, *jo*
   wide.COMP.DAT.PL.M road.DAT.PL.M deb.be conj
   platākai *brīvajai* joslai *abpus* *ceļa*.
   wide.CMP.DAT.F free.DAT.F lane.DAT.F on_either_side road.GEN.M
   ‘The greater the [car] speed, the wider the necessary [width] of the motorways and the hard shoulders on either side of the road.’ (CW)

b. DAT

   *Par* grāvju izrakšanu *abpus*
   about ditch.GEN.PL.M digging_up.ACC.F on_either_side
   *ceļam* to labojot, *aizmirsts*.
   road.DAT.M it.ACC.M repair.PTCP.IDECL forget.PTCP.NOM.M
   ‘They forgot to dig ditches on either side of the road when repairing it.’ (Kas Jauns)

(2.7.13) *lejpus* ‘below, down’

a. GEN

   *Ceļi* vēl joprojām savieno cietokšņus ar pilšētu,
   that.NOM locate.PRS.3 below mountain.GEN.M
   *kas* *atrodas* *lejpus* *kalna*.
   kas atrodas lejpus kalna.
   ‘To this day, the roads connect the fortresses to the town at the foot of the mountain.’ (C)
b. DAT

*Izkāpjot [no mašīnas] pie mājas ar koptu*

step.PTCP [out_of car] at house.GEN.F with groom.INS.M

*pagālnu un ezeru lejpus kalnam*
courtyard.INS.M and lake.INS.M down mountain.DAT.M

redzu durvju priekšā rosāmies cilvēkus.

‘Stepping out [of the car] at a house with a well-kept courtyard and a lake at the foot of the hill, I see people bustling about in front of the door.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(2.7.14) šaipus ‘on this side’

a. GEN

Vai viņš kur paslēpies šaipus upes?
Q he.NOM anywhere hide.PRS.3 on_this_side river.GEN.F

‘Is he hiding somewhere on this side of the river?’ (www.draugiem.lv)

b. DAT

*Ari šaipus upei ir klusas un*
also on_this_side river.DAT.F be.PRS.3 quiet.NOM.PL.F and

*interesantas vietas.*

‘There are quiet and interesting places on this side of the river, too.’

(Diena)

**PLURAL**

**GEN**

When combined with words in the plural, all three Latvian postpositions, namely, *dēl* ‘due to, because of’ (2.7.15a), *labad* ‘for the sake of’ (2.7.15b), and *pēc* ‘for, because of’ (2.7.15c), require the genitive case:

(2.7.15) a. *Kanādā plūdu dēl*

Canada.LOC.F flood.GEN.PL.M because_of

evakuēti 2000 cilvēki.
evacuate.PTCP.NOM.PL.M 2000 person.NOM.PL.M

‘In Canada, 2000 people were evacuated due to the flood.’ (Diena)

b. *Vai bērnu labad vecākiem*

Q child.GEN.PL.M for_the_sake_of parent.DAT.PL.M

jāatsakās no operas apmeklēšanas?
DEB.give_up from opera.GEN.F visiting.GEN.F

‘Should parents forgo going to the opera for the sake of children?’

(Latvijas Avīze)

(c. *Jums jābeidz apvainoties kaut kādu*

you.DAT.PL deb.stop take_offense.INF some_kind.ACC.PL.M

nieku pēc.

trifle.GEN.PL.M because_of

‘You should stop taking offense at trifles.’ (CW)
Although the preposition bez ‘without’ sometimes does occur with words in the genitive plural, especially in literary works, colloquial speech, and mass media texts (see examples (2.7.16)), in contemporary Latvian, it is more commonly followed by nouns or pronouns in the dative plural (see example (2.7.18)).

(2.7.16) a. Šajā dārzā un mājā var iet bez baiļu.
   ‘One can enter this garden and house without fear.’ (C)

b. Ārpus pilsētas centra zālienā uzsturēties var bez bēdu.
   ‘Outside the city center you can use public lawns without worries.’ (C)

c. Uzcel pili tā bez logu, bez durvju.
   ‘Build a castle like that, with no windows, no doors.’ (C)

INS

(2.7.17) ar ‘with’

Stacijās vagons piepildās ar jauniem pasažieriem.
   ‘At the stations, the carriage fills up with new passengers.’ (A. Žīgure)

DAT

The rest of the prepositions, i.e., aiz ‘after, behind’, ap ‘around, about’, bez ‘without’, gar ‘along, past’, no ‘from, out of’, par ‘about, on’, pār ‘across, over’, pēc ‘after, by’, pie ‘at, by’, pret ‘against, towards’, zem ‘under’, uz ‘to, on’, vīrs ‘above, over’, govern plural words in the dative, e.g.:

(2.7.18) a. Elsa bez grūtībām iekļaujas pilsētas ritmā.
   ‘Elsa has no difficulty in adapting to the rhythm of the city.’ (A. Žīgure)

b. Dievs mums katram piešķīris savu daļu laimes, bet tā nenonāk līdz mums.
   ‘God has given each of us our share of happiness, only it does not reach us.’ (M. Žīverts)
c. **Celtniecība man patikusi jau no**

construction.NOM.F I.DAT like.PTCP.NOM.F already from seniem laikiem.

ancient.DAT.PL.M time.DAT.PL.M

‘I’ve liked construction for ages.’ (A. Eglītis)

d. **Par vecākām jāuzskata [latviešu]**

PREP old.DAT.CMP.PL.F DEB.consider [Latvian]
tautasdziesmas,

folk_song.NOM.PL.F

kur vēstīts, kā tabaku audzē un šņauc.

‘The [Latvian] folk songs that talk about how to grow tobacco and take snuff should be considered the oldest.’ (A. Johansons)

e. **Pirms 100 gadiem,**

ago 100 year.DAT.PL.M ja tu vispār gribēji tomātu,

if you.NOM.SG at_all want.PST.2SG tomato.ACC.M

tas bija pašam jājaaudzē.

it.NOM.M be.AUX.PST.3 self.DAT.M DEB.grow

‘A hundred years ago, if you wanted a tomato at all, you had to grow it yourself.’ (Ir)

f. **Suns noliek galvu uz kepām un**

dog.NOM.M put.PRS.3 head.ACC.F on paw.DAT.PL.F and iesmilkstas.

whimper.PRS.3

‘The dog puts its head on its paws and whimpers.’ (V. Belševica)

Likewise, all prepositions ending in -pus, such as **abpus** ‘on either side’, **apakšpus** ‘below’, **ārpus** ‘outside, beyond’, **augšpus** ‘above, up’, **lejpus** ‘below, down’, **šaipus** ‘on this side’, **vinpus** ‘on that side, on the far side’, **otrupus** ‘on the other side, across’, **iekšpus** ‘inside’, and **virspus** ‘above, over’ combine with dative plurals, e.g.:

(2.7.19) a. **Augšpus [upes] krācēm ir liels**

above [river] rapid.DAT.PL.F be.PRS.3 large.NOM.M

atvars.

whirlpool.NOM.M

‘There is a large whirlpool upstream from the [river] rapids.’ (C)

b. **Kā uzvesties iekšpus mājām?**

how behave.INF inside house.DAT.PL.F

‘How to behave inside the house?’ (www.satori.lv)

c. **Ainava otrpus logiem neko**

landscape.NOM.F other_side window.DAT.PL.M nothing.ACC

aizdomigu neliecina.

suspicious.ACC.M not_suggest.PRS.3

‘The landscape on the other side of the windows does not suggest anything suspicious.’ (C)
The semantics of prepositions

Most prepositional meanings fall under one of the following basic domains (also see Kalme 2001: 28–38; Paegle 2003: 187–206; Nitiņa 2013c: 621–625, 629–640):

1) spatial relationships

(2.7.20) a. *aiz* ‘after, behind’

\[
\text{Aiz } \text{pilsētas } \text{sākās } \text{lauki } \text{un } \text{meži.}
\]

behind city.ACC.F begin.PST.3 field.NOM.PL.M and forest.NOM.PL.M

‘The fields and forests began beyond the city.’ (V. Belševica)

b. *ap* ‘around, about’

\[
\text{Kā } \text{sniegputenis } \text{plosās } \text{ap } \text{mūsu } \text{māju!}
\]

how blizzard.NOM.M rage.PRS.3 around we.GEN house.ACC.F

‘How the blizzard is raging around our house!’ (M. Zīverts)

c. *caur* ‘through’

\[
\text{Gāju } \text{uz } \text{jūru } \text{caur } \text{mežu.}
\]

go.PST.1SG towards sea.ACC.F through forest.ACC.M

‘I was walking towards the sea through the forest.’ (I. Ābele)

d. *gar* ‘along, past’

\[
\text{Būvēs } \text{vairāk } \text{nekā } \text{500 km } \text{garu}
\]

build.FUT.3 more than 500 km long.ACC.M

velocelīņu gar Baltijas jūras bicycle_path.ACC.M along Baltic.GEN.F sea.GEN.F shore.ACC.M

‘A bicycle path more than 500 kilometers in length will be built along the shore of the Baltic Sea.’ (www.db.lv)

e. *līdz* ‘(up) to’

\[
\text{Bille } \text{[vilcienā] } \text{nogulēja } \text{līdz } \text{pašam}
\]

Bille.NOM.F [train] sleep.PST.3 up_to same.DAT.M Tukumam.

Tukums.DAT.M

‘Bille slept [on the train] all the way to Tukums.’ (V. Belševica)

f. *no* ‘from, out of’

\[
\text{Viņa baidījās,}
\]

ka tiks izlikta no šīs

that get.AUX.FUT.3 evict.PTCP.NOM.F out_of this.GEN.F sanatorijas.

sanatorium.GEN.F

‘She was afraid that she would get evicted from this sanatorium.’

(M. Zīverts)
g. pie ‘at, by’
Ārsts pasauca mani novakarē pie
doctor.NOM.M call_over.PST.3 I.ACC afternoon.LOC.F at
loga.
window.GEN.M
‘In the late afternoon, the doctor called me over to the window.’
(I. Ābele)

h. pa ‘on’
Mintauts bungoja ar pirkstgaliem pa
Mintauts.NOM.M tap.PST.3 with fingertip.INS.PL.M on
galdu.
desk.ACC.M
‘Mintauts was tapping his fingertips on the desk.’ (A. Eglītis)

i. pār ‘across, over’
Laba braukšana bija vienīgi pār
good.NOM.F ride.NOM.F be.PST.3 only across
tiltu.
bridge.ACC.M
‘The ride was good only when crossing the bridge.’ (V. Belševica)

i. pret ‘against, towards’
Atbalstijos pret tilta malu un
support.PST.1SG against bridge.GEN.M parapet.ACC.F and
raudzijos tālumā.
look.PST.1SG distance.LOC.M
‘I supported [myself] against the parapet of the bridge and looked into the distance.’ (N. Ikstena)

j. starp ‘between, among’
Vini ieraudzija Filipu staigājam starp
they.NOM.M see.PST.3 Philip.ACC.M walk.PTCP.IDECL between
[restorāna] galdiņiem.
[restaurant] table.DAT.PL.M
‘They saw Philip walking between the [restaurant] tables.’ (A. Eglītis)

k. uz ‘to, on’
Bille apsēdās mājas priekšā uz
Bille.NOM.F sit_down.PST.3 house.GEN.F front.LOC.F on
soliņa.
bench.GEN.M
‘Bille sat down on the bench in front of the house.’ (V. Belševica)

l. virs ‘above, over’
Virs Vecrīgas jumtiem pacēlās migla.
over Old_Rīga.GEN.F roof.DAT.PL.M rise.PST.3 fog.NOM.F
‘The fog rose over the roofs of Old Rīga.’ (www.delfi.lv)
m. *zem ‘under’*

*Laulātais pāris pastaigājās zem*
marry.pst.3 couple.nom.m stroll.pst.3 under

*neredzētu sugu palmām.*
not_see.pst.3 species.gen.pl.f palm.tree.dat.pl.f

‘The married couple was strolling under never-before-seen varieties of palm trees.’ (A. Eglītis)

In addition to the above, all prepositions ending in *-pus* also express very concrete spatial meanings:

(2.7.21) a. *apakšpus ‘below’*

*Augsīpus un **apakšpus** klēpjdatora tastatūrai*

above and below [laptop_computer] keyboard.dat.f

*iestraūdātas metāla joslas.*
work.into.pst.3 metal.gen.m band.dat.f

‘Above and below the keyboard [of the laptop computer] are metal bands (which) had been worked into it.’ (CW)

b. *augšpus ‘above, up’*

**20 kilometru augšpus Jelgavas**

20 kilometer.gen.pl.m above Jelgava.gen.f

*ūdens limenis [Lielupē] pēdējās*
water.gen.m level.nom.m [Lielupe] last.gen.f

*nedēļas laikā cēlies par 2,2 metriem.*
week.gen.f time.loc.f rise.pst.3 of 2,2 meter.dat.pl.m

‘Twenty kilometers upstream from Jelgava the water level [in the Lielupe River] has risen 2.2 meters over the last week.’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. *lejpus ‘below, down’*

**Otrdienas pēcpusdienā izkustējies ledus**

Tuesday.gen.f afternoon.loc.f budge.pst.3 ice.gen.m

*sastrēgums Daugavā lejpus*
threshing_barn.dat.f downstream

Jēkabpils.

Jēkabpils.gen.f

‘On Tuesday afternoon, an ice jam broke free on the Daugava, downstream from Jēkabpils.’ (www.lsm.lv)

d. *šaipus ‘on this side’*

**Tas notika pirtiņā šaipus riijas.**

it.pst.3 happen.pst.3 threshing_barn.dat.f this_side

‘It happened in the bathhouse on this side of the threshing barn.’ (C)
e. **viņpus** ‘on that side, on the far side’

> Latvijas vieglatlētu starti

> Latvia.gen.f track_and_field_athlete.gen.pl.m start.nom.pl.m

> viņpus okeāna ir veiksmīgi.

> across ocean.gen.m be.cop.prs.3 successful.nom.pl.m

> ‘Latvian track and field athletes are making good starts overseas.’

(www.sportacentrs.lv)

f. **otrpus** ‘on the other side, across’

> Valsts šogad otrpus robežai

> state.nom.f this_year other_side border.dat.f

> atstājusi daudz iebraucēju.

> leave.ptcp.nom.f many foreigner.gen.pl.m

> ‘This year, the state left many foreigners on the other side of the border.’

(Diena)

g. **iekšpus** ‘inside’

> [tēlniecības] Kvadriennāle pirmo reizi

> [sculpture] quadrennial.nom.f first.acc.f time.acc.f

> būs skatāma iekšpus [muzeja]

> see.ptcp.nom.f inside [museum]

> sētas.

> fence.gen.f

> ‘For the first time the [sculpture] Quadrennial will be held inside the [museum] fence.’

(Diena)

h. **ārpus** ‘outside, beyond’

> Cilvēkam vajag laiku,

> kad var kaut ko paspēt

> when be_able.prs.3 something.acc manage.inf

> izdarīt ārpus darba.

> do.inf outside work.gen.m

> ‘A person needs time to be able to do something outside work.’

(Ir)

i. **virspus** ‘above, over’

> Viņš ilgi nespēšot noturēties virspus ūdens.

> he.nom long_time not_be_able.obl.fut stay.inf above water.gen.m

> ‘Apparently, he will not be able to stay afloat for long.’

(C)

j. **abpus** ‘on either side’

> Abpus šosejai būs sēta.

> both_sides motorway.dat.f be.fut.3 fencing.nom.f

> ‘There will be fencing on either side of the motorway.’

(www.lsm.lv)
2) temporal relationships

(2.7.22) a.  *ar* ‘with’

**Ar** nākamo *gadu* plānots celt

with **next.INS.M** year.INS.M plan.PTCP.NOM.M rise.INF

ūdens pakalpojumu tarifu.

water.GEN.M service.GEN.PL.M rate.ACC.PL.M

‘Beginning next year, water rates are expected to rise.’

(www.liepajniekiem.lv)

b.  *ārpus* ‘outside’

Skolotājiem arī *ārpus* darba laika

teacher.DAT.PL.M also outside work.GEN.M time.GEN.M

jāievēro profesijas ētika.

DEB.observe profession.GEN.F ethics.NOM.F

‘Teachers should also observe professional ethics outside working hours.’ (www.lsm.lv)

c.  *kopš* ‘since’

Kopš šī brīža dzejnieks Elzu

since this.GEN.M moment.GEN.M poet.NOM.M Elsa.ACC.F

dēvē tikai par Marcelīnu.

refer_to.PRS.3 only as Marcelina.ACC.F

‘From this moment on, the poet always refers to Elsa as “Marcelina”.’

(A. Žīgure)

d.  *līdz* ‘until’

Līdz šim es te dzīvoju viens.

until this.DAT.M I.NOM here live.PST.1SG alone.NOM.M

‘Until now, I have lived here alone.’ (M. Zīverts)

e.  *no* ‘from’

No rīta vides inspektori

from morning.GEN.M environment.GEN.F inspector.NOM.PL.M

ieraudzīja,

see.PST.3

ka [upē] airē viens vīrs ar tīkliem laivā.

‘In the morning, environmental inspectors saw a man rowing on the river

with a fishing net in (his) boat.’ (Ir)

f.  *pa* ‘during’

Pa svētku laiku te ciemojās

during holiday.GEN.PL.M time.ACC.M here stay.PST.3

daudzi tēva studiju laika

many. NOM.PL.M father.GEN.M studies.GEN.PL.F time.GEN.M

draugi.

friend.NOM.PL.M

‘During the holidays, many of my father’s friends from (his) student

days stayed here.’ (A. Žīgure)
g. **pēc** ‘after’

After year.Gen.M compulsory be.Aux.Fut.3 Deb.take
exam.Nom.M physics.loc.f and chemistry.loc.f

‘A year from now, the physics and chemistry exams will be compulsory.’ (www.lsm.lv)

h. **pirms** ‘before, prior to, ahead of, ago’

Prior_to several.Dat.PL.M year.Dat.PL.M fall.Pst.1sg from
hor.se.Gen.M

‘Several years ago, I fell off a horse.’ (I. Ābele)

g. **priekš** ‘ago’

These days, hops are more valuable than ten years ago.’ (CW)

i. **uz** ‘before’

Monday night will be cold.’ (www.lsm.lv)

3) **manner**

(2.7.23) a. **ar** ‘with’

The fir tree starts to lean to one side and falls down with a mighty
rustle.’ (V. Belševica)

b. **aiz** ‘by’

Do not pull your dog by the leash.’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. **bez** ‘without’

The parliament rejects the proposal to work without a recess this
summer.’ (www.tvnet.lv)
d. pa ‘out, through’
   Pamodos šorit, pa logu.
   look.PST.1SG through window.ACC.M
   ‘I woke up this morning, looked out the window.’ (I. Ābele)

e. pie ‘at, by’
   Jolanta paņēma Mintautu pie elkoņa.
   Jolanta.NOM.F take.PST.3 Mintauts.ACC.M by elbow.GEN.M
   ‘Jolanta took Mintauts by the elbow.’ (A. Eglītis)

f. pēc ‘according to’
   Bērnam jāsaprot, pēc viņa prāta.
   that not always everything.NOM.M happen.PRS.3 according_to he.GEN mind.GEN.M
   ‘A child needs to understand that things don’t always go the way he wants.’ (CW)

g. par ‘as, having the quality of’
   Pārstrādāšanās nāk par sliktu sirdij.
   overwork.NOM.F come.PRS.3 as bad.ACC.M heart.DAT.F
   ‘Overwork is bad for the heart.’ (Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)

h. uz ‘on’
   Kā var iemācīties staigāt uz galvas?
   how be_able.PRS.3 learn.INF walk.INF on head.GEN.F
   ‘How can one learn to walk on one’s hands [lit. head]?’ (CW)

i. zem ‘under’
   Vannojot turi zīdaini no galvas puses zem padusēm.
   bathing.PTCP.IDECL hold.IMP.2SG infant.ACC.M from under underarm.DAT.PL.F
   ‘When bathing an infant, place your arm under his head grasping his underarms.’ (www.delfi.lv)

4) reason or cause

(2.7.24) a. aiz ‘with, out of’
   Bijā laiks, kad smējos aiz laimes.
   when laugh.PST.1SG out_of happiness.GEN.F
   ‘There was a time when I used to laugh out of happiness.’ (M. Zīverts)

b. ar ‘with’
   Ar vējbakām meitene [ir]
   with chickenpox.INS.PL.F girl.NOM.F [is]
   saslimusi bērnudārzā.
   caught.PTCP.NOM.F kindergarten.LOC.M
   ‘The girl caught chickenpox in kindergarten.’ (Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)
c. *dēl* ‘due to, because of’

*Līdzīgā* izskata *dēl* daudzi
visas krunkainās pavasara sēnes
maldigi uzskata par ēdamām.
mistakenly consider.Prz.3 as edible.Dat.Pl.F
‘Due to a similar appearance, many mistakenly believe all wrinkly spring mushrooms to be edible.’ (www.delfi.lv)

d. *no* ‘from, out of’

*Dziedātāja* pēc koncerta raudāja *no* prieka.
‘After the concert, the singer wept with joy.’ (Kas Jauns)

e. *par* ‘for’

*Par* godu Mātes dienai notiks
day.Dat.F happen.Fut.3 for honor.Acc.M
dażadi pasākumi.
domestic events.Nom.Pl.M
‘Various events will take place in honor of Mother’s Day.’ (Diena)

f. *pēc* ‘due to, for, over’

*Niecīga* parāda pēc tiesu izpildītājs
atnem ģimenei māju.
take_away.Prs.3 family.Dat.F home.Acc.F
‘Due to a trifling debt, the bailiff takes away the family’s home.’
(Kas Jauns)

5) intent or purpose

(2.7.25) a. *ar* ‘with’

Viņš atsūtīts šurp *ar*
he.Nom send.PTCP.Nom.M to here with
kādu uzdevumu.
some_kind.Ins.M mission.Ins.M
‘He has been sent here with a mission.’ (M. Zīverts)

b. *dēl* ‘for’

Lūk, tā *dēl* ir vērts censties.
‘Look, that’s why it’s worth making an effort.’ (C)

c. *labad* ‘for the sake of, for’

*Dzeltenās* linijas *labad* māju pagalmos
novilkas iedzīvotāju. drošības *labad*.
‘These yellow lines [in the yards of apartment buildings] have been painted for the safety of the residents.’ (www.lvportals.lv)
d. *par ‘as’*

Esmu mācījusies par sākumskolas logopēdu un skolotāju.

speech_therapist.ACC.M and teacher.ACC.F

‘I trained as a primary school speech therapist and teacher.’
(www.cosmo.lv)

e. *uz ‘for’*

Pabarojusi bērnus,
viņa sāk posties uz darbu.

‘After feeding the children, she starts getting ready for work.’
(www.delfi.lv)

6) partitivity

(2.7.26) a. *pa ‘by (as in expressions like hour by hour, step by step, etc.)’*

Mēs palīdzēsim jums [jūsu atmiņai]

pēdas dzīt soli pa solim.

‘We will help you recover [your memory] step by step.’ (M. Zīverts)

b. *no ‘of’*

Pagājušajā nedēļā divi no mums bija [mūzikas] ierakstu studijā.

‘Last week two of us were at the [music] recording studio.’ (CW)

7) quantity:

a) a definite quantity

(2.7.27) a. *par ‘for’*

Pirmās mellenes tirgū var nopirkt par četriem eiro litrā.

‘The first blueberries [of the season] can be bought at the market for four euros per liter.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *pret ‘against, for’*

Mainu divistabu dzīvokli

change.PRS.1SG two-room.GEN.PL.F apartment.ACC.M

Liepājā pret īpašumu laukos.

Liepāja.LOC.F for property.ACC.M country.LOC.PL.M

‘I’m looking to swap a two-room apartment in Liepāja for a property in he country.’ (www.liepajniekiem.lv)
b) an approximate quantity (in the sense of a numerical value, which can include time)

\[(2.7.28)\]

(a) \( \text{ap} \) ‘about, around’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Aizmigu} & \quad \text{ap} \quad \text{septiņiem} \quad \text{vakarā}. \\
\text{fall_asleep.PST.1SG} & \quad \text{about} \quad \text{seven.DAT.PL.M} \quad \text{evening.LOC.M}
\end{align*}
\]

‘I fell asleep at about seven in the evening.’ (I. Ābele)

(b) \( \text{līdz} \) ‘up to’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Vasaras} & \quad \text{celojumiem} \quad \text{atlaides} \quad \text{līdz} \quad 20 \\
\text{summer.GEN.F} & \quad \text{trip.DAT.PL.M} \quad \text{discount.NOM.PL.F} \quad \text{up_to} \quad 20 \\
\text{procentiem} & \quad \text{ar} \quad \text{mūsu} \quad \text{klienta} \\
\text{percent.DAT.PL.M} & \quad \text{with} \quad \text{we.GEN} \quad \text{client.GEN.M} \\
\text{karti} & \quad \text{card.INS.F}
\end{align*}
\]

‘Up to twenty percent off on summer trips with our loyalty card.’ (www.apollo.lv)

c) \( \text{pret} \) ‘at, towards’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pret} & \quad \text{ritu} \quad \text{sāka} \quad \text{celties} \\
\text{towards} & \quad \text{morning.ACC.M} \quad \text{start.PST.3} \quad \text{gather.INF} \\
\text{vētra} & \quad \text{sāka} \quad \text{lit.} \\
\text{storm.NOM.F} & \quad \text{started} \quad \text{rain}
\end{align*}
\]

‘In the small hours of the morning, a storm began to gather, it started to rain.’

d) \( \text{starp} \) ‘between’ (CW)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Starp} & \quad \text{pirmdienu} \quad \text{un} \quad \text{otrdienu} \\
\text{between} & \quad \text{Monday.ACC.F} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Tuesday.ACC.F} \\
\text{gulējām} & \quad \text{divas} \quad \text{stundas.} \\
\text{sleep.PST.1PL} & \quad \text{two.ACC.PL.F} \quad \text{hour.ACC.PL.F}
\end{align*}
\]

‘We had two hours of sleep sometime between Monday and Tuesday.’

e) \( \text{virs} \) ‘over, above’ (CW)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ūdens} & \quad \text{limenis} \quad \text{Daugavā} \quad \text{pakāpies} \\
\text{water.GEN.M} & \quad \text{level.NOM.M} \quad \text{Daugava.LOC.F} \quad \text{rise.PTCP.NOM.M} \\
\text{virs} & \quad \text{normas.} \\
\text{above} & \quad \text{norm.GEN.F}
\end{align*}
\]

‘The water level in the Daugava has risen above the norm.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

8) absence or lack

\[(2.7.29)\]

(a) \( \text{bez} \) ‘without’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{[Ceptuves]} & \quad \text{izveidošanā} \quad \text{esam} \quad \text{istikuši} \\
\text{[bakery]} & \quad \text{formation.LOC.F} \quad \text{be.AUX.PRS.1PL} \quad \text{subsist.PTCP.NOM.PL.M} \\
\text{bez} & \quad \text{aizdevumiem.} \\
\text{without} & \quad \text{loan.DAT.PL.M}
\end{align*}
\]

‘When setting up [the bakery] we did so without a loan.’ (Ir)
9) means, co-presence

(2.7.30) *ar* ‘with, by means of’

a. [saldējuma] Pārdevējs aicinot māju
   [ice cream] seller.NOM.M invite.PTCP.IDECL wave.PST.3
   *ar* roku.
   with hand.INS.F
   ‘The [ice cream] seller waved his hand invitingly.’ (V. Belševica)

b. Sēžot ar šiem zinātniekiem, sitting.PTCP.IDECL with this.INF.PL.M scientist.INF.PL.M
   laiks bija paskrējis nemanot.
   time went by without us noticing.’ (A. Eglītis)

10) relationships forming semantic objects

(2.7.31) a. *ar* ‘with’

*Es piedalījos [viesnīcas] projekta*
I.NOM. participate.PST.1SG [hotel] project.GEN.M
*izstrādāšanā un sadarbojos ar*
development.LOC.F and work.PST.1SG with
*būvuzņēmējiem.*
contractor.INF.PL.M
‘I participated in the development of the design [of the hotel] and
worked with the building contractors.’ (A. Eglītis)

b. *par* ‘about, of’

*Izrāde stāsta par attiecībām*
performance.NOM.F tells.PRS.3 of relationship.DAT.PL.F
*trīs cilvēku starpā.*
three people.GEN.PL.M space.LOC.F
‘The performance is about the relationship among three people.’ (Ir)

c. *pēc* ‘after’

*Es pat uz veikalu pēc maizes*
I.NOM. even to shop.ACC.M after bread.GEN.M
*ēju ar fotoaparātu.*
go.PRS.1SG with camera.ACC.S
‘I take the camera with me even when I go to the shop for bread.’
(Diena)

d. *pie* ‘(on)to, (along) with’

*Izvārītas lēcas var pievienot*
boiled.PTCP.ACC.PL.F lentil.ACC.PL.F be.able.PRS.3 add.INF
*pie dažādiem ēdieniem.*
onto different.DAT.PL.M dish.DAT.PL.M
‘Boiled lentils can be added to all kinds of dishes.’
(Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)
e. *pret* ‘towards’

Bet kā ar mūsu cieņu pret
but how with we.Gen respect.Ins.F towards

parent.Dat.Pl.M

‘But what about our respect for parents?’ (www.maminuklubs.lv)

f. *no* ‘of’

Viņa vēlējās redzēt kaut ko no
she.Nom want.Pst.3 see.Inf something of

[acteku] drupām.
[Aztec] ruin.Dat.Pl.F

‘She wanted to see something of the [Aztec] ruins.’ (A. Eglitis)

g. *uz* ‘at, towards’

Tēvs skatās uz meitu, un
father.Nom.M look.Prs.3 at daughter.Acc.F and

acīs ir lepnums.
eye.Loc.Pl.F be.Prs.3 pride.Nom.M

‘The father looks at his daughter and there is pride in his eyes.’

(A. Žīgure)

11) features

(2.7.32) a. *ar* ‘with’

Brūnais [albuma] vāks ar zeltūtām

pogām izskatās smags.
button.Ins.Pl.F look.Prs.3 heavy.Nom.M

‘The brown cover [of the album], with its gilded buttons, looks heavy.’

(V. Belševica)

b. *aiz* ‘behind, across’

Ar pirmajām pavasara dienām saimnieks
dzen aitas uz ganībām aiz
drive.Prs.3 sheep.Acc.Pl.F to pasture.Dat.Pl.F behind
meža.

forest.Gen.M

‘With the coming of spring, the head of the household takes the sheep
to the pasture beyond the forest.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

c. *bez* ‘without’

Kivi ir putns vistas lielumā,
bez spārniem un ar garu knābi.

‘The kiwi is a chicken-sized bird, without wings and with a long beak.’

(CW)
d. *pret* ‘against’

Mūsu projekts bija par priežu

Our project was about the resistance of pines against diseases.’ (Ir)

12) sequence, order

(2.7.33) a. *aiz* ‘after, behind’

Riteņbarucēji drīkst braukt viens aiz otra.

The cyclists are allowed to follow closely behind one another.’

(www.tvnet.lv)

b. *pēc* ‘after’

Nākamajā pieturā pēc Jelgava, Krimūnas, vilciens stāv ilgāk.

‘At the next station after Jelgava, Krimūnas, the train stops for a longer time.’ (A. Žīgure)

13) comparison

(2.7.34) a. *no* ‘of’

Viņš bija skaistākais no brāļiem.

‘He was the handsomest of the brothers.’ (V. Belševica)

b. *par* ‘than’

Ir ari skaistākas meitenes par mani.

‘There are more beautiful girls than me.’ (M. Zīverts)

c. *starp* ‘among’

Viņš ir labākais starp Latvijas kamaniņu sportistiem.

‘He is the best among Latvian luge athletes.’ (Diena)

This account of prepositional meanings is not intended as a set of hard and fast categories, since, clearly, category membership may vary depending on interpretation
in at least some of the cases. For example, some prepositional meanings included under ‘manner’ can be construed as being concerned with spatial relationships or semantic objects, and vice versa. Likewise, prepositions used to indicate means or co-presence can be analyzed as also serving to mark semantic objects, etc.

Although originally the preposition priekš ‘ago’ expressed temporal relationships, this usage is now, to an extent, dated, and the preposition pirms ‘before, prior to, ahead of, ago’. In colloquial speech, priekš often indicates intent or purpose:

(2.7.35) a. Likums ir viens priekš visiem.
   law.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 one.NOM.M for everyone.DAT.PL.M
   ‘The law is the same for everyone.’ (C)
   b. Ne priekš sevis viņš dzīvo, bet gan priekš pasaules.
      not for self.GEN he.NOM live.PRS.3 but rather world.GEN.F
      ‘It’s not for himself that he lives, it’s for the world.’ (C)

Such usage, however, is considered incorrect in Standard Latvian, prepositionless dative or genitive constructions being preferred instead:

(2.7.36) a. Likums ir viens visiem.
   law.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 one.NOM.M everyone.DAT.PL.M
   ‘The law is the same for everyone.’
   b. Ne sev .., bet gan pasaulei.
      not self.DAT.M but rather world.DAT.F
      ‘Not for himself... but for the world.’

Latvian has a number of adverbs functioning as prepositions. These usually express spatial and temporal relationships, manner, etc., for example, apkārt ‘around’, cauri ‘through’, garām ‘past, by’, pāri ‘over, across’, pretī ‘opposite, across’, virsū ‘on top of, on, onto, over’, and combine with nouns and other declinable words in the dative:

(2.7.37) a. Es piecēlos kājās un lēnām
   I.NOM stand.PST.1SG foot.LOC.PL.F and slowly
   apgāju apkārt istabai.
   walk_around.PST.1SG around room.DAT.F
   ‘I got to my feet and slowly walked around the room.’ (C)
   b. Saule spid cauri koku galotnēm.
      sun.NOM.F shine through tree.GEN.PL.M top.DAT.PL.F
      ‘The sun is shining through the treetops.’ (C)
   c. Iedama garām spogulim,
      walk.PTCP.NOM.F past mirror.DAT.M
      vīna nepacēla acis.
      ‘She did not look up as she walked past the mirror.’ (C)
d. Es pāri laukam steidzos mājup.
I.NOM across field.DAT.M hurry.PST.1SG homeward
'I hurried home across the field.' (C)
e. Mēs dzīvojam kalnā tieši pretī jūrai.
we.NOM live.PRS.1PL mountain.LOC.M directly opposite sea.DAT.F
'We live on a mountain, directly opposite the sea.' (C)
f. Putni metas virsū graudiem.
bird.NOM.PL.M swoop.PRS.3 onto grain.DAT.PL.M
'The birds swoop down onto the grain.' (C)

2.8 PARTICLES

Particles are a class of function words used to express the speaker’s attitude towards the content of an utterance and add a modal, emotional, and/or semantic meaning to a particular part of a sentence (i.e., a sentence constituent) or to an utterance as a whole (Škujiņa 2007: 288). The majority of particles are polysemous and their meaning is highly context-dependent.

Particles do not inflect, do not function as parts of sentences and, in general, are usually uninvolved in dependencies.

Particles may express the following types of meaning (Kalme 2001: 56–63; Paegle 2003: 210–213):
1) affirmative

(2.8.1) a. jā ‘yes’
   yes yes please
‘May I come in? – Yes, yes, please.’ (C)
b. nujā, nuja ‘yes’ (in colloquial speech)
yes [we are] forest.GEN.M edge.LOC.F he.NOM
‘Yes, [we are] at the edge of the forest,’ he confirms. (C)

2) negative

(2.8.2) a. nē ‘no’
   Nē, es te vairs nepalikšu.
   no I.NOM here anymore not stay.FUT.1SG
‘No, I won’t stay here any longer.’ (C)
b. ne ‘not’

[ dziesmas] Aizliegums attiecas tikai uz valsts radio un televīziju,  
but ne privātām stacijām.  
‘The [song broadcasting] prohibition only applies to public radio and television but not to private stations.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

3) interrogative
(2.8.3) vai ‘whether, if’

    Vai Kārlis vēl nav apprecējies?  
‘Is Kārlis still unmarried?’ (I. Gaile)

4) comparative
(2.8.4) a. it kā, itin kā ‘as if, as though, seemingly’

    Tā ir skaista vieta,  
    meži ir it kā atkāpušies  
    no jūras.  
‘It is a beautiful place, the forests look as though they have retreated from the coast.’ (N. Ikstena)

    Trīs bērni dzīvo itin kā pilnīgi normālā mūsdienu realitātē.  
‘The three children live in a seemingly normal modern reality.’ (Diena)

b. kā ‘like, as’

    Rakstnieka tēlotajam zēnam pasaule  
    ir kā brīnums.  
‘The boy depicted by the writer sees the world as a miracle.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

c. nekā ‘than, as’

    Mēs dzīvojām citā pilsetā nekā mātes vecāki.  
‘We live in a different town than our maternal grandparents.’ (Jaunā Gaita)
5) conditional

(2.8.5) a. *kaut* ‘if only, I wish’

\[
\text{Kaut nebūtu tik neciešami karsti!}
\]

‘If only it weren’t so unbearably hot!’ (A. Eglītis)

b. *lai* ‘let, may’

\[
\text{Lai viss izdodas!}
\]

‘Let it all go well!’ (www.draugiem.lv)

6) limitative

(2.8.6) a. *tikai* ‘only’

\[
\text{Tikai pēc ilgākas meklēšanas Argods atrada brīvu vietu [automašīnas novietošanai].}
\]

‘Only after a long search did Argods find a vacant [parking] space.’

(A. Eglītis)

b. *vien* ‘unless, as long as’

\[
\text{Gadu tūkstošu gaitā ir izrādījies, ka cilvēks ir pārāks [par zvēriem].}
\]

\[
\text{Ja } \text{vien nav no bailīgajiem.}
\]

‘Over the course of the millennia, it turned out that man is superior [to animals]. As long as he or she is not timid.’ (P. Bankovskis)

c. *vieniņi* ‘only, though’

\[
\text{Vieniņi gribētos zināt, kas ir mani kaimiņi.}
\]

‘I would just like to know who my neighbors are.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

d. *vairs* ‘anymore, already’

\[
\text{Tur vairs nekas nav glābjams.}
\]

‘It is beyond saving already.’ (A. Žīgure)

7) emphasizing, intensifying, or attenuating

(2.8.7) a. *ak* ‘oh, I see’

\[
\text{“Es biju sapratis, ka ari viņa [krustmāte] ir šeit [slimnicā].”}
\]

\[
\text{“Ak tā?” Ārsts teica.}
\]

\[
\text{oh_I_see so doctor.NOM.M say.PST.3}
\]

\[
\text{“Interesanti. Bet, nē, viņas te nav.”}
\]

‘I was led to believe that she [the aunt] is here [at the hospital], as well.

“Were you, indeed?” the doctor said.

“That’s interesting. But, no, she is not here.”’ (I. Gaile)
b. "ari, ar ‘also, what’s more, at that, either’

Daudzi cilvēki vispār neko nedara.

Un negrib arī mācīties.

and not_want.prs.3 either learn.inf

‘Many [people] don’t do anything at all. And don’t want to learn either.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

c. "ir, i ‘also, too’

"Mainies ir tu uz augšu", teica change.imp.1pl too you.nom.sg to top.acc.f say.pst.3 režisors citiem.

director.nom.m other.dat.pl.m

‘You, too, should strive to elevate yourself.” said the director to the others.’ (www.kroders.lv)

d. "it, itin ‘at all, in the slightest’

Tā [abstraktā tēlniecība] vispār it.nom.f [abstract sculpture] at_all nav it not_be.cop.prs.3 at_all nothing.nom

‘It [abstract sculpture] is nothing at all!’ (A. Eglītis)

Par privāto dzīvi es negribu runāt about private.acc.f life.acc.f I.nom not_want.prs.1sg talk.inf itin nemaz.

at_all not_at_all

‘I do not want to talk about my private life at all.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

e. "gan ‘emphasis, e.g., ‘really’"

Kad mēs augām, tā gan when we.nom grow_up.pst.1pl like_that really nebija.

not_be.pst.3

‘It really wasn’t like that when we were growing up.’ (www.tvnet.lv)

f. "jau ‘already’

Nekad nevajag atstāt teātri jau never not_should.prs.3 leave.inf theater.acc.m already pēc pirmā.cēliena.

after first.gen.m act.gen.m

‘One should never leave the theater [already] after the first act.’ (A. Eglītis)

jel, jele ‘emphasis, e.g., emphatic ‘do’

"Bet saki jel, Bērtuli,” viņš runāja,

but tell.imp.2sg EMPH Bērtulis.acc.m he.nom say.pst.3

“kādēl gan Jēkabs tā nebēdājās kā tu?”

“Bērtulis, do tell,” he said, “why didn’t Jēkabs grieve as much as you did?”” (C)
Vai tu vispār esi jele ko
Q you.NOM.SG at_all be.AUX.PR.SG EMPH what.ACC
darījis [manā labā]? do.PTCP.NOM.M [my sake]
‘Have you ever done anything at all [for me]?’ (A. Eglītis)

h. jo ‘emphasis’
Piektdienas ritā Latvijā, jo ipaši
Friday.GEN.F morning.LOC.M Latvia.LOC.F EMPH particularly
Latgale, aprūtināta satiksme
Latgale.LOC.F burden.PTCP.NOM.F traffic.NOM.F [snigšanas dēl].
[snigšanas dēl].
‘On Friday morning, traffic is heavy [due to snow] throughout Latvia, especially in Latgale.’ (Neatkarīgā Rita Avize)

i. nebūt ‘by no means, at all’
Man liekas,
ka mums viss nebūt
that we.DAT all.NOM.M by_no_means
nav tik labi,
not_be.COP.PRS.3 so well
kā varētu būt.
‘It seems to me that all is, by no means, as well as it could be between you and me.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

j. nu ‘emphasis’
Bet te nu tā [iespēja] bija.
but here EMPH it.NOM.F [opportunity] be.PST.3
‘There it [the opportunity] was.’ (I. Gaile)

k. pat ‘even’
Viņš raksta, glezno un iet pat
he.NOM write.PRS.3 paint.PRS.3 and go.PRS.3 even
zvejot.
fish.INF
‘He writes, paints, and even goes fishing.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

l. tad ‘emphasis’
Jā, bet kā tad to var zināt?
yes but how EMPH it.ACC be_able.PRS.3 know.INF
‘Yes, but how are you supposed to know that?’ (Rīgas Laiks)

m. tak ‘emphasis’
Jūs tak zināt prāvestu Plāni
you.NOM.PL EMPH know.PRS.2PL dean.ACC.M Plānis.ACC.M
Nikolaju?
Nikolajs.ACC.M
‘You do know the dean, Nikolajs Plānis, don’t you?’ (I. Ābele)
n. *tik, tikai* ‘just, nothing more than’

Bet bērns tik stāv kā
but child.NOM.M just stand.PRS.3 as
stand.PTCP.NOM.M

‘But the child just keeps standing.’ (L. Tauns)

Tās visas ir tikai tavas
that.NOM.PL.F all.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 just your.NOM.PL.F
iedomas.

imagination.NOM.PL.F

‘These are all just figments of your imagination.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

o. *vēl* ‘still, yet’

Dēli vēl snauda savās
son.NOM.PL.M still snooze.PST.3 own.LOC.PL.F

bed.LOC.PL.F

‘The sons were still snoozing in their beds.’ (I. Ābele)

p. *vien, vienīgi* ‘(when/what/etc.)ever, only, except that’

Katrā laikā,
kad vien tev izdevīgi [varam satikties]!
when ever you.DAT.SG convenient

‘Any time, whenever it suits you [we can meet]!’ (A. Eglītis)

Ārēji gimenē nekas nemainās,
outwardly family.LOC.F nothing.NOM not_change.PRS.3

vienīgi meita aug.

except_that daughter.NOM.F grow.PRS.3

‘Outwardly, nothing changes in the family, except that the daughter is
growing up.’ (A. Žīgure)

r. *vis* ‘negative emphasis’

Kad Artūrs šo [lidostas] departamentu sāka veidot,
tā [tik labi] vis nebija.
that [so well] NEG.EMPH not_be.PST.3

‘When Arthur first started setting up this [airport] department it was
nothing like that.’ (Diena)

8) generalizing

(2.8.8) *ik* ‘every’

Archīva darbinieks ik ritu šķērso
archive.GEN.M worker.NOM.M every morning.ACC.M cross.PRS.3

Stokholnu trolejbusā.
Stockholm.ACC.F trolleybus.LOC.M

‘Every morning, the archive worker crosses Stockholm in a trolleybus.’
(Dz. Sodums)
9) indefinite

(2.8.9) a. diez, diezin ‘who knows’, diez vai, diezin vai ‘hardly’

Who knows what he [the son] is up to these days? (www.maminuklubs.lv)

b. it kā, itin kā ‘sort of, kind of’

Miegs it kā nāca, it kā nenāca.

I could say a word, or even a half word, to show that I didn’t agree.’ (www.satori.lv)

c. kaut ‘at least’

I could say a word, or even a half word, to show that I didn’t agree.’ (www.satori.lv)

d. nez ‘(I) wonder’, nezin ‘somehow, for some reason’

I wonder, will he fire me?’ (I. Gaile)

Man nezin kāpēc ir labs mood.nom.m I.dat for some reason why be.prs.3 good.nom.m garastāvoklis.

‘I feel great for some reason.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

e. lai ‘uncertainty regarding a future action’

What shall I do?’ (L. Tauns)

f. tā kā ‘as it were’

‘It would be wise, as it were, to draw some conclusions [after the festival]’ (Diena)
g. vai ‘almost, nearly’
   Tēlnieka daļrāde pētīta gadiem ilgi,
   bet vai ik reizi atklājas
   but almost every time.ACC.F be_discovered.PRS.3
   kaut kas jauns.
   something.NOM new.NOM.M
   ‘The sculptor’s works have been studied for years, yet one still discovers
   something new almost every time.’ (www.lsm.lv)

10) expressing doubt

(2.8.10) a. droši vien ‘probably, likely’
   Droši vien [senās ēkas] telpu
   probably [ancient buildings] room.GEN.PL.F
   iekārtojums jāsaista ar kādiem
design.NOM.M DEB.tie with some.INS.PL.M
   vēstures notikumiem.
   history.GEN.F event.INS.PL.M
   ‘The design of indoor spaces [in the ancient building] should probably
   be tied to relevant historical events.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

b. laikam ‘probably, likely’
   Sarūgtināts viņš nodomāja,
   ka laikam būs jānēsā brilles.
   that probably be.AUX.FUT.3 DEB.wear glasses.NOM.F
   ‘He was upset and thought that he would probably have to wear
   glasses.’ (R. Ezera)

c. sak ‘you know’
   Būt par aktieri...
   Sak, tas jau bija
   you_know it.NOM.M already be.COP.PST.3
   vienīgais pareizais ceļš.
   only.NOM.M right.NOM.M way.NOM.M
   ‘To be an actor … It was the only right way, you know.’
   (www.liepājniekiem.lv)

d. tā kā ‘like, as if’
   Francis augšstāvā tā kā iclepojas.
   Francis.NOM.M upstairs.LOC.M as_if cough.PRS.3
   ‘It sounds like Francis is coughing upstairs.’ (C)

e. varbūt ‘perhaps, maybe’
   Varbūt es pārāk slikti domāju par
   perhaps I.NOM too badly think.PRS.1SG about
   cilvēkiem?
   person.DAT.PL.M
   ‘Perhaps, I think too badly of people?’ (I. Gaile)
11) positive or negative evaluation

(2.8.11) a. diemžēl ‘unfortunately’

\[ \text{diemžēl} \quad \text{iepriecināt} \quad \text{nevarēsim} \]

\[ \text{unfortunately} \quad \text{cheer_up.INF} \quad \text{not_be_able.FUT.1PL} \]

\[ \text{laiks} \quad \text{klūs} \quad \text{siltāks} \quad \text{tikai} \quad \text{marta} \quad \text{otragā} \quad \text{pusē}. \]

‘Unfortunately, we won’t be able to cheer you up – the weather will not get warmer until the second half of March.’ (Kas Jauns)

b. tātad ‘so, then’

\[ \text{Kalnus} \quad \text{vēl} \quad \text{neredzam}, \quad \text{jo} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{tumšs}, \]

\[ \text{tātad} \quad \text{rit} \quad \text{mūs} \quad \text{sagaida} \quad \text{pārsteigums}. \]

‘We can’t see the mountains yet, because it’s dark, so there is going to be a surprise for us tomorrow.’ (www.lsm.lv)

In Latvian, particles often occur in combinations (usually, of two particles) (also see examples (2.8.9)–(2.8.10) with the particles it kā, itin kā, tā kā, droši vien, diezin vai, vai ne above), e.g.:

(2.8.12) a. gan jau ‘surely’

\[ \text{Gan jau} \quad \text{drīz} \quad \text{redzēsimies}. \]

\[ \text{surely} \quad \text{soon} \quad \text{meet.FUT.1PL} \]

‘Surely, we will meet again soon.’ (C)

b. nu gan ‘emphasis, e.g., really, indeed’

\[ \text{Tu} \quad \text{nu gan} \quad \text{esi} \]

\[ \text{you.NOM.SG} \quad \text{really} \quad \text{be.cop.prs.2sg} \]

\[ \text{naïve}.\text{NOM.M} \]

‘You really are naïve.’ (C)

c. vai tad ‘disbelief, e.g., really, actually’

\[ \text{Vai} \quad \text{tad} \quad \text{mums} \quad \text{loti} \quad \text{jāsteidzas?} \]

\[ \text{Q} \quad \text{EMPH} \quad \text{we.DAT} \quad \text{very} \quad \text{DEB.hurry} \]

‘Are we really in such a hurry?’ (C)

d. tad gan ‘emphasis, focus, e.g., that's when’

\[ \text{Tad gan} \quad \text{iestājās} \quad \text{liela} \quad \text{bezceriba} \]

\[ \text{that's_when} \quad \text{start.PST.3} \quad \text{large.NOM.F} \quad \text{hopelessness.NOM.F} \]

\[ \text{un} \quad \text{izmisums}. \]

\[ \text{and} \quad \text{despair.NOM.M} \]

‘That’s when real hopelessness and despair kicked in.’ (C)

e. nu tad ‘well then’

\[ \text{Nu} \quad \text{tad} \quad \text{uz} \quad \text{drīzu} \quad \text{tikšanos}, \]

\[ \text{well} \quad \text{then} \quad \text{to} \quad \text{near.ACC.F} \quad \text{meeting.ACC.F} \]

\[ \text{Kārlis}. \]

\[ \text{Kārlis.VOC.M} \]

‘Well then, see you soon, Kārlis.’ (I. Gaile)
Affirmative, negative, interrogative, and conditional particles usually apply to whole utterances, therefore, their typical position is at the beginning of a text.

(2.8.13) a. Jā, tā tas ir.
   yes so it.NOM.M be.PRS.3
   ‘Yes, that’s the case.’ (C)

b. – Vai tu vēl raksti
   Q you.NOM.SG still write.PRS.2SG
dzeju?
   poetry.ACC.F
   ‘Do you still write poetry?’

   – Nē, sen vairs ne.
   no long anymore no
   ‘No, not for a long time.’ (C)

c. Vai tu zini,
   Q you.NOM.SG know.PRS.2SG
   ko tu tikko pasūtināji [restorānā]?
   ‘Do you know what you have just ordered [at the restaurant]?’
   (A. Eglītis)

d. Kaut es varētu iekāpt tani
   if_only I.NOM be_able.COND board.INF that.LOC.M
   [kuģī]!
   [ship]
   ‘If only I could board that [ship]!’ (L. Tauns)

In spoken language, especially in colloquial speech, affirmative, negative, and interrogative particles are sometimes placed at the end of a text.

(2.8.14) a. Es, protams, biju laimīgs, jā.
   I.NOM of_course be.COP.PST.1SG happy.NOM.M yes
   ‘I was, of course, happy, to be sure.’ (C)

b. Vai jums ir pazīstams šīs
   Q you.DAT.PL be.COP.PRS familiar.NOM.M this.NOM.M
   vārds? Nē?
   name.NOM.M no
   ‘Do you know this word? No?’ (P. Bankovskis)

c. Taču nebūsim nodevēji, vai ne?
   still not_be.FUT.1PL traitor.NOM.PL.M Q EMPH
   ‘Let’s not be traitors though, OK?’ (R. Ezera)

All other particles usually precede or follow the syntactic constituent to which their modal, emotional, etc. meaning relates (see examples above). Irrespective of their position in a sentence, all particles function as discourse markers, since their meaning always rests on a wider context inextricably linked to a specific communicative situation.
The negative particles nē ‘no’ and ne ‘not’ are not synonymous. The particle nē ‘no’ usually applies to the whole content of an utterance and is separated by a comma.

(2.8.15) “Vai vēlaties celot uz [Meksikas]
galvaspilsētu?”

‘Do you want to travel to the capital [of Mexico]?’

“No, to Acapulco.”

The particle ne ‘not’, by contrast, applies to a particular part of sentence, either preceding it (2.8.16) or substituting for, or pointing to, a previously mentioned negated predicate (2.8.17).

(2.8.16) Ne mirkli nešaubījos par to,
not moment.ACC.M not_doubt.pst.1SG about that.ACC.M
ka drošības sajūtu rada ģimene.

‘Not for a moment did I doubt that family gives us a sense of security.’

(Latvijas Avīze)

(2.8.17) a. Meitu viņam nebija, māsu
daughter.GEN.PL.F he.DAT not_be.pst.3 sister.GEN.PL.F
ari ne [nebija].
also not [not_be]

‘He didn’t have daughters or sisters.’ (I. Ābele)

b. Mēs katrs zinām, kas
we.NOM each.NOM.M know.prs.1PL what.NOM
mums der un kas ne
we.DAT suit.prs.3 and what.NOM not
[neder].

‘Each of us knows what suits us and what doesn’t.’ (C)

Particles may be homonymous with adverbs (tad ‘then’, jau ‘already’, nu ‘now’, vēl ‘yet, still’), conjunctions (ari ‘and also, as well’, vai ‘or’, lai ‘so that’, ne ‘not’, i ‘both ... and’, ir ‘both ... and’, gan ‘both ... and’, jo ‘as, since’), and interjections (ak ‘oh’, nu ‘well, why’) (see Section 2.0.4).
2.9 CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions are a class of function words used to connect syntactic units, such as content (lexical) words, phrases, clauses, and, at the text level, also sentences. Conjunctions do not inflect and are not included in parts of sentences (Skujīna 2007: 332). Depending on the type of syntactic relationship they signal, conjunctions are further classified into coordinating and subordinating conjunctions.

**Coordinating conjunctions** join syntactic units that are of equal syntactic importance, such as coordinated parts of sentences (2.9.1), coordinated clauses (2.9.2), independent clauses (2.9.3), and sentences (2.9.4) (Skujīna 2007: 334).

(2.9.1) a. *Pa dienu vēl bija saulains* during day.Acc.F still be.PST.3 sunny.NOM.M
    *un silts,* and warm.NOM.M *bet naktīs kļuva* warm.nom.m but night.loc.pl.f become.cop.pst.3 chillier.nom.m

‘The days were still sunny and warm, but nights were getting chillier.’
(P. Bankovskis)

b. *Rozes, neļķes un lilijas* rose.nom.pl.f carnation.nom.pl.f and lily.nom.pl.f
    *vislabāk jūtas atsevišķas, nevis best_of_all feel.prs.3 separate.loc.pl.f instead_of jauktās mix.ptcp.loc.pl.f bouquets.loc.pl.f

‘Roses, carnations, and lilies feel best in separate, rather than mixed, bouquets.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(2.9.2) *Un notrīs meitene,*
*Kas ar vecmāmiņu iet pa ielu* Un eat.prs.3 apple.acc.m
    *and eat.prs.3 apple.Acc.M* and ‘And the girl,
*Who is walking down the street with her grandmother* and is eating an apple, shivers.’ (L. Tauns)

(2.9.3) *Puķu [dārzā] ir daudz, un tās* flower.gen.pl.f [garden] be.prs.3 a_lot and they.nom.f
    *zied tik koši.* bloom.prs.3 so colorfully

‘There are a lot of flowers [in the garden] and they are so colorful.’
(A. Žīgure)
(2.9.4) [1921. gadā] Izrādās, lielā florencieša [Dantes] darbi latviski vispār nav atdzejoti.

Un pēkšņi jauns atklājums – tomēr ir gan!

‘[In 1921] It turns out that the great Florentine [Dante] has never been translated into Latvian. And then all of a sudden another discovery – he has been, after all!’ (Z. Skujiņš)

Coordinating conjunctions may have one of the following meanings (Paegle 2003: 216–219):

1) cumulative or copulative

(2.9.5) a. un ‘and’

Viņš pirka un pārdeva mežus.

‘He bought and sold woodland.’ (I. Ābele)

b. arī ‘also, too’

Mūsu mājās arī tika dejots.

‘We also used to have dances at our house [during parties].’ (Jaunā Gaita)

c. kā arī ‘and also, as well as’

Revīzijā tika vērtēta tilta projektēšana un būvniecība, kā arī izmaksas.

‘The audit assessed the design and construction workflow, as well as the cost of the bridge.’ (C)

d. gan – gan ‘both … and’

Sēnes ir gan vienšūnas, gan fungi.nom.pl.f be.cop.prs.3 CONJ single-celled.gen.f CONJ daudzšūnu organismi.

‘There are both single-celled and multicellular organisms among fungi.’ (C)

e. ir – ir, i – i ‘both … and’

Tētis milēja ir māmiņu, ir bērnus, ir godīgu darbu.

‘Daddy loved mummy, the children, and also honest work.’ (C)

Uz šo adresi agrāk bieži braucām to this.acc.f address.acc.f before often drive.pst.1pl

‘In the past, we often drove to this address in the morning and at midnight alike.’ (I. Ābele)
f. *ne – ne, nedz – nedz* ‘(n)either … (n)or’

Par to vairs negribas *ne* runāt,

about it.acc.m anymore not_want.aux.prs.3 NEG.conj talk.inf

*ne* lastit, *ne* domāt.

NEG.conj read.inf NEG.conj think.inf

‘One neither wants to talk, nor read, nor think about it anymore.’ (C)

Mājās nav *nedz* galas, *nedz* kāpostu.

cabbage.gen.pl.m

‘There is neither meat nor cabbage at home.’ (A. Eglītis)

g. *ne vien – bet arī, ne tikai – bet arī* ‘not only / not just … but also’

Šī ierīce uzrāda *ne* siltuma,

this.nom.f device.nom.f show.prs.3 not only heat.gen.m

*bet* arī ādens cirkulāciju.

but also water.gen.m circulation.acc.f

‘This device keeps track of heat as well as water circulation.’ (C)

Martinam Rīgā patīk *ne* tikai

Martins.dat.m Riga.loc.f like.prs.3 not only

skaistā vecpilsēta un jūgendstils, *bet* beautiful.nom.f old_town.nom.f and Art_Nouveau.nom.m but

arī kultūra.

also culture.nom.f

‘What Martins likes about Rīga is not just the beauty of the Old Town and Art Nouveau, but also the culture.’ (Ir)

h. *tiklab – kā arī* ‘equally well’

*Tas* var liecināt *tiklab* par

that.nom.m may.prs.3 signify.inf as much about

iekšējās kultūras trūkumu, *kā* arī par

inner.gen.f culture.gen.f lack.acc.m as also about

kaitigu ieradumu.

hareful.acc.m habit.acc.m

‘This may equally well indicate a lack of personal culture as a bad habit.’ (C)

i. *kā – tā* ‘either’

Papildlaikā pie panākuma varēja tikt

extra_period.loc.m to success.gen.m be_able.pst.3 get.inf

*kā* viena, *tā* otra [basketbola]

CONJ one.nom.f CONJ other.nom.f [basketball]

komanda.

team.nom.f

‘Either [basketball] team could have been successful in the extra period.’ (C)
2) adversative

(2.9.6) a. *bet* ‘but’

*Dzīvoklis* *ir* *liels, bet* *tumšs.*

apartment.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 large.NOM.M but dark.NOM.M

‘The apartment is large but dark.’ (A. Žīgure)

b. *nevis* ‘instead of, rather than’

*Domā par veselību, nevis* *[ķermeņa] svaru!*

think.IMP.2SG about health.ACC.F rather_than [body] svaru!

weight.ACC.M

‘Think in terms of health rather than [body] weight!’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. *taču* ‘however, whereas’

*Veco šķirņu garš sausumā un karstumā kļuva rūgti,*

*taču* *modernajām šķirņām tā nenotiek.*

however modern.DAT.PL.F variety.DAT.PL.F so not_happen.PRS.3

‘Old varieties of cucumbers would turn bitter in dry and hot conditions, modern varieties, however, do not.’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)

d. *tomēr* ‘nevertheless, still, yet’

*Pilsēta bija tukša, kā jau dienas vidū.*

*Tomēr* *tā bija moderna un cerīga vieta.*

still that.NOM.F be.COP.PST.3 modern.NOM.F and hopeful.NOM.F place.NOM.F

‘The city was empty, as might be expected at noon. Still it was a modern place, full of hope.’ (A. Eglītis)

e. *turpretī* ‘whereas, on the contrary’

*Uzņēmēji esot aicinājuši ministru prezidentu uz tikšanos.*

*Turpretī* *premjera preses sekretāre to noliedza.*

whereas prime_minister.GEN.M press.GEN.F secretary.NOM.F to deny.PST.3

‘Business owners apparently proposed a meeting with the prime minister. The prime minister’s press secretary, however, denies this.’ (Diena)

3) disjunctive

(2.9.7) a. *vai* ‘or’

*Ir pilnīgi skaids,*

*ka tas [fotogrāfijā redzamais siluets]*

that that.NOM.M [photograph visible figure]

*nav alnis, briedis vai stirna.*

not_be.COP.PRS.3 moose.NOM.M stag.NOM.M or doe.NOM.F

‘It’s quite clear that this [a figure in a photograph] is not a moose, stag, or doe.’ (P. Bankovskis)
b. vai – vai ‘whether ... or, no matter ...’

Vai bija ziema, vai vasara,
whether be.PST.3 winter.NOM.F or summer.NOM.F
skujenī slejas kā mūris.
‘Winter or summer, the conifers stood like a wall.’ (Diena)

c. vai nu – vai ‘either ... or’

Es dzīvoju vai nu tikai nākotnē, vai
I.NOM live.PRS.1SG either only future.LOC.F or
past.LOC.F
‘I live either entirely in the future, or in the past.’ (C)

d. te – te ‘now... now...’

Jūra viļņojās te tumši zila, te
sea.NOM.F wave.PST.3 now dark blue.NOM.F now
unusually green.NOM.F
‘The waves came now dark blue, now unusually green.’ (C)

e. drīz – drīz ‘now... now..., at one moment ... at the next ...’

Skālu strazdu bars apsēž
loud.GEN.PL.M blackbird.GEN.PL.M flock.NOM.M sit.PRS.3
pamestā dārzā drīz
canceled.LOC.M garden.LOC.M one.MOM one.ACC.M
abandoned.LOC.M garden.LOC.M one момент one.ACC.M
drīz otro ķiršu koku.
ext.MOM second.ACC.M cherry.GEN.PL.M tree.ACC.M
‘At one moment a flock of loud blackbirds in the abandoned garden sits
on one cherry-tree, at the next – on another.’ (C)

f. nevis – bet ‘rather than, not... but...’

Durvis veras nevis uz āru,
door.NOM.PL.F open.PRS.3 not towards outside.ACC.M
bet uz iekšpusi.
but towards interior.ACC.F
‘The door opens inwards rather than outwards.’ (C)

4) explanatory

(2.9.8) jeb ‘or (a.k.a.)’

Vasaras saulgrieze jeb saulespuke
summer.GEN.F helianthus.NOM.F or sunflower.NOM.F
ir kurvijziežu dzimtas lakstaugas.
be.COP.PRS.3 daisy.GEN.PL.M family.GEN.F herbaceous.NOM.M
‘Helianthus annuus, or the sunflower, is a herbaceous plant of the daisy
family.’ (Latvijas Avize)
In Latvian, the coordinating conjunctions *vai* ‘or’ and *jeb* ‘or (a.k.a.)’ have different functions and, therefore, should not be used interchangeably: the conjunction *vai* is disjunctive (2.9.9a), whereas *jeb* is explanatory (2.9.9b).

(2.9.9)

a. *diena vai naks* ‘day or night’

b. *kadiķis jeb paeglis* ‘Juniperus communis, or common juniper’

Likewise, the conjunction *jeb* is not synonymous with the somewhat outdated subordinating conjunction *jebšu* ‘although, despite’.

(2.9.10)

\[\begin{aligned}
\text{Vīņš ir pagarš, plecigs un,} \\
\text{he.NOM be.COP.PRS.3 tallish.NOM.M broad_shouldered.NOM.M and} \\
\text{jebšu (\emph{\textit{//} kaut gan}) jau students, tomēr visai} \\
\text{despite (\emph{\textit{//}despite}) already student.NOM.M yet rather} \\
\text{vienkāršs \([\text{jauneklis}]\).} \\
\text{simple.NOM.M \[young\_man\]} \\
\text{‘He is tallish, broad-shouldered and, despite already being a student, \[a\] rather simple \[young\_man].’ (www.letonika.lv)}
\end{aligned}\]

However, in mass media and other contemporary texts, the conjunction *jebšu* ‘although, despite’ is sometimes used instead of the conjunction *jeb* ‘or (a.k.a.)’ (and also instead of *vai* ‘or’), possibly because it is seen as an interesting, unusual means of expression, i.e., a stylistic device.

(2.9.11)

\[\begin{aligned}
\text{Nauda kāzu dāvanā} \\
\text{money.NOM.F wedding.GEN.PL.F gift.LOC.F or} \\
\text{[kāzu viesiem] palika bēdīgi.} \\
\text{[wedding guest] become.pst.3 sad} \\
\text{‘Money as a wedding gift or this made us \[the\_guests\] sad.’ (www.precos.lv)}
\end{aligned}\]

**Subordinating conjunctions** are used to connect a subordinate clause to the main clause of a sentence (2.9.12a-b) or to join one or several dependent clauses to an independent clause (which may be the main clause of a sentence or another subordinate clause) (2.9.12c) (Skujiņa 2007: 273).

(2.9.12)

a. *Man šķīta, ka tas nav iespējams.*

I.DAT seem.pst.3 that it.NOM.M not_be.COP.PRS.3 possible

‘I didn’t think it was possible.’ (Diena)

b. *Ja būvzraugs nebūtu apjucis, if construction\_supervisor.NOM.M not_be.AUX.COND confused

viņš varētu man samelot,

\[\begin{aligned}
\text{ka tieši tajā \[ēkas apšuvuma\] vietā} \\
\text{that exactly that.LOC.F \[building paneling\] spot.LOC.F} \\
\text{tehnisku iemeslu dēl vienai} \\
\text{technical.GEN.PL.M reason.GEN.PL.M because_of one.DAT.F} \\
\text{plāksnei mala šaurāka. panel.DAT.F edge.NOM.F narrow.NOM.CMP.F} \\
\text{‘If it weren’t for the confusion, the construction supervisor could have} \\
\text{lied to me that one of the panels having a narrower edge in that particular} \\
\text{spot \[of the façade paneling\] was a technical necessity.’ (A. Eglītis)}
\end{aligned}\]

371
c. *Lai gan* nevar *sacīt, ka tas* [stāsts]
*although* not_be_able.PRS.3 *say-INF that* it.NOM.M [story]
*būtu bijis literārs*
be.AUX.COND be.COP.PTCP.NOM.M literary.NOM.M
*sacerējums ar augstu vērtību, composition.NOM.M with high.INS.F value.INS.F
muižas īpašniekam piemita raita stāstītāja dotumi.*

‘Although it [the story] could not be said to be a work of great literary merit, the lord of the manor had the makings of a fluent storyteller.’

(P. Bankovskis)

Subordinating conjunctions can express the following meanings (Paegle 2003: 219–220):

1) purpose

(2.9.13) *lai ‘in order that, so as to, so that’*
*Emocijas jāpazīst,*
*lai tās klūtu vieglāk kontrolējamas.*
*so that it.NOM.PL.F become.COP.COND easier control.PTCP.NOM.PL.F*

‘One should learn about one’s emotions so that they become easier to control.’ (C)

2) condition

(2.9.14) *ja ‘if, unless, provided that’*
*Ja bērnu ved pirmo reizi klausīties*
*if child.ACC.M take.PRS.3 first.ACC.DEF.F time.ACC.F listen.INF*
*opera,*
*opera.ACC.F*
*tai jābūt ļoti augstā izpildījumā.*
‘If you take a child to the opera for the first time, it should be a really sublime performance.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

3) cause

(2.9.15) a. *tā kā ‘since, as’*
*Tā kā tuvojās sēdes beigas,*
*so as get_nearer.PST.3 meeting.GEN.F end.NOM.F*
*deputāti nebija noskaņoti turpināt diskutēšanu.*
‘Since the meeting was nearing its end, the MPs didn’t seem disposed to continue the discussion.’ (C)

b. *tāpēc ka, tādēļ ka ‘because’*
*Šie cilvēki neprāto par zemākām [dzīvokļu] cenām nākotnē,*
*tāpēc ka ipašums viņiem vajadzīgs*
*because property.NOM.M they.DAT.M needed.NOM.M*
*dzīvošanai tūlīt.*
*living.DAT.F right_now*

‘These people don’t speculate about lower [apartment] prices in the future, because they need somewhere to live right now.’ (C)
Šo [darba plānošanas] kļūdu ir nepieciešams labot, 

because it.NOM.F not_be.COP.PRS.3 only technical.NOM.F 

‘This [task planning] error ought to be corrected, because it’s not just a technicality.’ (C)

4) consequence

(2.9.16) tā ka ‘therefore, hence, so’

Vārti [dārzam] ir gana plati,

so that also large.NOM.M lorry.NOM.M be_able.FUT.3 

get.INF inside.LOC.F 

‘The [garden] gates are wide enough, so that even the large lorry will be able to get inside.’ (C)

5) reason, justification

(2.9.17) jo ‘as, for the reason that’

as I.ACC always fascinate.PTCP.NOM.PL.M countryside.NOM.PL.M 

‘I wasn’t sorry to leave the capital, as I have always been fascinated by the countryside.’ (C)

6) concession

(2.9.18) a. kaut ‘even though’, kaut gan ‘although, though’, kaut ari ‘even if’

Sniega šogad nav,

even approach.PRS.3 already Christmas.NOM.PL.M 

‘There is no snow this year, even though Christmas is just around the corner.’ (C)

Bieži esmu neizlēmīgs,

kaut gan no malas tā nešķiet. 

even_thought from side.gen.f so not_seem.PRS.3 

‘I am often indecisive, although it is not apparent to others.’ (C)

Taču kritiens,

kaut ari no neliela augstuma, 

even_if from not_large.gen.m height.gen.m 

bija diezgan neveiksmīgs. 

‘However, it was a rather unfortunate fall, even if not from a great height.’ (C)
b. *lai gan* ‘although, despite’, *lai arī* ‘although, despite’

*Lai gan* acis ir ciet, *although* eye.NOM.PL.F be.PRS.3 closed
*miegs tomēr vēl nenāk.*

‘Although my eyes are closed, I’m still not tired.’ (C)

*Tēvs, lai arī svešzemnieks,*

father.NOM.M even_though foreigner.NOM.M
*bija loti cienits ārsts.*

‘My father, despite being a foreigner, was a very well-respected doctor.’ (C)

7) comparison

(2.9.19) *jo – jo* ‘the … the’

*Jo ātrāk mēs tiekam no šejienes projām,*

conj sooner we.NOM get.PRS.1PL of here.GEN.F away
*jo labāk.*

conj better

‘The sooner we get out of here, the better.’ (A. Eglītis)

The subordinating conjunctions *ka, lai, vai* are considered to be semantically neutral when they are used to introduce the following types of subordinate clauses:

1) attributive clauses

(2.9.20) *Žanis bija secinājis ka vislabāk*

Žanis.NOM.M be.AUX.PST.3 conclude.PTCP.NOM.M that best
*ir dzīvi iedalit posmos,*

be.COP.PRS life.ACC.F divide.INF stage.LOC.PL.M
*kas sākas un beidzas.*

‘Žanis had concluded that life was best divided into stages, each with a beginning and an end.’ (Jaunā Gaita)

2) object clauses

(2.9.21) a. *Šajā brīdī sapratu,*

*ka atpakaļceļa vairs nav.*

that return.GEN.M anymore not_be.PRS.3

‘At that moment I realized that there was no going back.’ (C)

b. *Es negribu, lai jūs domājat,*

I.NOM not_want.PRS.1SG SUB you.NOM.PL think.PRS.2PL
*ka izliekos.*

‘I don’t want you to think that I am pretending.’ (www.arterritory.com)

c. *Dodoties prom un nezinot,*

*vai kādreiz vēl atgriezišos [dzimtenē],*

whether ever still return.FUT.1SG [faherland]
*es gribēju apciemot vecākus.*

‘Going away and not knowing whether I was ever going to come back [to my country], I wanted to visit my parents.’ (P. Bankovskis)
3) subject clauses

(2.9.22) *Iespējams, ka jums taisnība.*
possible.NOM.M that you.DAT.PL truth.NOM.F
‘You may be right.’ (C)

In addition, the conjunction *ka* ‘that’ can be used to express the cause of something being a certain way:

(2.9.23) *Labi, ka darba kolektīvs jauks un atbalstošs.*
well that work GEN.M collective NOM.M nice NOM.M and supportive PTCP NOM.M
‘It’s a good thing that the staff are nice and supportive.’ (C)

When introducing subordinate clauses, the adverb *kad* ‘when’ should not be confused with, i.e., used instead of, the subordinating conjunction *ka* ‘that’:

(2.9.24) a. *Nu gadās,*

    *kad* (correct: *ka*) [dēls] aizmirst piezvanīt ...  
    *when* (correct: that) [son] forget.PRS.3 call.INF
‘Well, there are times when [my son] forgets to call …’ (C)

b. *Es, protams, ļoti atvainojos,*

    *kad* (correct: *ka*) aiskavēju jūsu uzmanību.  
    *when* (correct: that) keep.PRS.1SG you GEN.PL attention ACC.F
‘I am, of course, very sorry to have kept your attention [for so long].’ (C)

*Kad* ‘when’ is an adverb of time and it therefore usually introduces subordinate clauses of time (2.9.25), whereas the conjunction *ka* ‘that’ is used for attributive, object, subject, and other subordinate clauses (see examples (2.9.21)–(2.9.23)).

(2.9.25) a. *Ko darīt, kad ārā list?*

    what do INF when outside rain.PRS.3
‘What to do when it’s raining outside?’ (www.tvnet.lv)

b. *Kad Mintauts neko neteica,*

    *when* Mintauts NOM.M nothing ACC not say PST.3
professors runāja vien tālāk.
‘When Mintauts didn’t say anything the professor just kept on talking.’
(A. Eglītis)

In Latvian, a conjunction may consist of a single word (*un* ‘and’, *bet* ‘but’, *ja* ‘if’, *ka* ‘that’, *lai* ‘in order to, so’, *jo* ‘as’), a correlative pair (*gan – gan* ‘both … and’, *ne – ne* ‘(n)either … (n)or’, *jo – jo* ‘the … the …’, *nedz – nedz* ‘(n)either … (n)or’) or of several words (*kā arī* ‘and also, as well as’, *kaut arī* ‘even if’, *lai gan* ‘although, despite’, *tāpēc ka* ‘because’, *tā ka* ‘therefore, hence, so’, *ne vien – bet arī* ‘not only / not just … but also’, *tiklab – kā arī* ‘equally well’).
In addition, some particles may function as coordinating (2.9.26) or subordinating (2.9.27) conjunctions, e.g.:

(2.9.26) a. tikai ‘only’

\[ \text{Jezups nekad nebija juties piederīgs pie šīs dzīves,} \]
\[ \text{tikai} \quad \text{Marcela} \quad \text{samierināja} \quad \text{viņu} \quad \text{ar} \]
\[ \text{only} \quad \text{Marcela.NOM.F} \quad \text{reconcile.PST.3} \quad \text{he.ACC} \quad \text{with} \]
\[ \text{ikdienu. everyday.INS.F} \]

‘Jezups had never felt like he belonged in this life, only Marcela was able to reconcile him with everyday existence.’ (I. Ābele)

b. toties ‘but, at the same time’

\[ \text{Šķiedrvielas nedod kalorijas,} \]
\[ \text{toties} \quad \text{izdara} \quad \text{daudz} \quad \text{ko} \quad \text{citu} \]
\[ \text{but} \quad \text{do.PRS.3} \quad \text{many} \quad \text{what.ACC} \quad \text{other.ACC.M} \]
\[ \text{noderīgu. useful.ACC.M} \]

‘Fiber has no caloric value but it does many other useful things.’ (www.delfi.lv)

c. vienigi

\[ \text{Vecmāmiņa ir laipna,} \]
\[ \text{vienigi} \quad \text{melnā} \quad \text{kleita} \quad \text{un} \]
\[ \text{only} \quad \text{black.NOM.F} \quad \text{dress.NOM.F} \quad \text{and} \]
\[ \text{mežģīnu aube padara viņu ļoti} \quad \text{lo ti} \]
\[ \text{lace.GEN.PL.F} \quad \text{bonnet.NOM.F} \quad \text{make.PRS.3} \quad \text{she.ACC} \quad \text{very} \]
\[ \text{cienīgu. dignified.ACC.F} \]

‘The grandmother is kind, only the black dress and the lace bonnet give her a very dignified look.’ (A. Žīgure)

(2.9.27) it kā, itin kā ‘as if, as though’

\[ \text{Vējš viņiem pūta mugurā,} \]
\[ \text{it kā} \quad \text{kaut kur} \quad \text{dzitu.} \]
\[ \text{as if} \quad \text{somewhere} \quad \text{chase.COND} \]

‘The wind was blowing on their backs, as if chasing them away.’ (C)

Finally, the relative pronouns \text{kas} ‘who, what, which, that’, \text{kurš} ‘who, which, that (M SG)’, and \text{kāds} ‘which (M SG)’ (see Section 2.7.6), as well as a number of adverbs, such as \text{kad} ‘when’, \text{kur} ‘where’, \text{kā} ‘how’, \text{cik} ‘how much’, can be used as subordinating conjunctions (see Section 2.9; for details on conjunction words see 3.5.2).
2.10 INTERJECTIONS

Interjections are lexical units used to communicate the speaker’s emotions (2.10.1a), volition (2.10.1b), or to express (reproduce) the sounds of the world (2.10.1c) (Kalnača 2011a: 95).

(2.10.1) a. **Ai,** *jasmins uzziedējis!*
   - jasmins.NOM.M bloom.PTCP.NOM.M
   - ‘Ah, the jasmine has bloomed!’ (C)

   b. **Ei!** *Pagaidi!*
   - hey wait.IMP.2SG
   - ‘Hey! Wait!’ (C)

   c. **Apčī!** *Apčī! – Tobias škaudīja gandrīz pēc katra soļa.*
   - Tobias.NOM.M sneeze.PST.3 almost
   - ‘Achoo! Achoo! – Tobias sneezed almost after every step.’ (C)

The class of interjections also covers greetings and polite expressions such as *labrīt* ‘good morning!’, *labdien* ‘good afternoon!’, *labvakar* ‘good evening!’, *ar labu nakti* ‘good night!’, *svēki* ‘hello!’, *svēcināti* ‘how do you do?’, *uz redzēšanos* ‘bye!’, *visu labu* ‘all the best!’, *ardievu* ‘farewell!’, *atā* ‘so long!, ta-ta!’, *lūdzu* ‘please’, *paldies* ‘thanks!’, *pateicos* ‘thank you!’, *tencinu* ‘thank you!’, *atvainojos* ‘I’m sorry!’, *atvainojiet* ‘excuse me!’, *piedod* ‘sorry!’, *piedodiet* ‘I beg your pardon!, (please) forgive me!’.

(2.10.2) a. **Labrīt** *vēl jūlijā!*
   - good_morning still July.LOC.M
   - ‘Good morning while it’s still July!’ (Diena)

   b. **Es tas esmu.** *Labvakar!*
   - I.NOM that.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.1SG good_evening
   - ‘That’d be me. Good evening!’ (M. Zīverts)

   c. **Sveiki, kā jums klājas?**
   - hello how you.DAT.PL do.PRS.3
   - ‘Hello, how do you do?’ (www.lsm.lv)

   d. **Ardievu, Laine.**
   - farewell Laine.NOM.F
   - ‘Farewell, Laine.’ (M. Zālīte)

   e. **Atā, cīsiņi!**
   - so_long sausage.NOM.PL.M
   - ‘So long, sausages!’ (Diena)

   f. **Pastāstiet, lūdzu, sikāk par šo projektu.**
   - tell.IMP.2PL please in_more_detail about this.ACC.M project.ACC.M
   - ‘Please, tell [us] more about this project.’ (C)

   g. **Paldies par uzmanību!**
   - thank_you for attention.ACC.F
   - ‘Thank you for your attention!’ (C)
Generally, interjections do not inflect and are not involved in the syntactic structure of sentences. Interjections function as discourse markers and are always stressed and separated by a pause in oral speech or delimited by a comma (2.10.3a), dash (2.10.3b), or an exclamation mark (2.10.3c) in writing.

(2.10.3) a. Atā, tēt.
   ta-ta dad.VOC.M
   ‘Ta-ta, daddy.’ (C)

   half.DAT.PL.F lay.PST.3 on floor.NOM.F
   ‘And then – bang – the tureen, having cracked in half, lay on the floor.’ (CW)

c. Ā! Tas esat jūs! Labvakar!
   a-ha it.NOM.M be.COP.2.PL you.NOM.PL good_evening
   A-ha! It’s you! Good evening!’ (A. Eglītis)

Semantically, interjections are closely linked to the speech or writing (rhetorical) situation in which they occur. That is to say, one and the same interjection can be used to express very different meanings depending on the speaker’s feelings. For instance, the interjection ai ‘oh’ may convey pleasure (2.10.4a), surprise (2.10.4b), or disbelief (2.10.4c).

(2.10.4) a. Ai, ai, cik tad bija labi!
   oh oh how then be.COP.PST.3 good
   ‘Oh, oh, what great times those were!’ (C)

b. Paskatījos uz savām kājām,
   ai, es biju piebradājis
   oh I.NOM be.AUX.PST.1SG trample_down.PTCP.NOM.M
   balto, pūkaino gridsegū.
   white.ACC.F fluffy.ACC.F carpet.ACC.F
   ‘I looked at my feet, oh, I had left footprints on the white, fluffy carpet.’ (C)

c. Ai, nu ko tu tur
   eh PTCL what.ACC you.NOM.SG PTCL
   runā?
   say.PRS.2SG
   ‘Eh, why do you say that?’ (C)
On the whole, interjections can express four kinds of meanings:

1) emotions and sensations

(2.10.5) a. Joprojām esmu bez ziemas jakas. Brr!
still be.PRS.1SG without winter.GEN.F jacket.GEN.F brr
‘I still don’t have a winter jacket. Brr!’ (C)

b. Ehē, tie taču kokosrieksti!
aha that.NOM.PL.M PTCL coconut.NOM.PL.M
‘Aha, if those aren’t coconuts!’ (C)

2) attitude, evaluation

(2.10.6) a. Piecas meitas [ir mūsu ģimenē].
Re, kā dzivē gadās!
look how life.LOC.F happen.PRS.3
‘Five daughters [in our family]. Look, how things go in life!’ (I. Ābele)

b. Vai dienīŋ, kas tik mūžā
oh day.VOC.F what.NOM PTCL lifetime.LOC.M
nav darīts!
not_be.AUX.PRS.3 do.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Dear me, I’ve done all kinds of things in my life!’ (R. Ezera)

3) volition

(2.10.7) a. Labī, es keros pie darba [gridu
ok I.NOM get_down_to.PRS.1SG to work.GEN.M [floor
krāsōšanas].
painting]
‘OK, I’m getting to work [painting the floor].’ (G. Priede)

b. Kad no sētas puses atskanēja:
when from backyard.GEN.F side.GEN.F sound.PST.3
– U-ū-ū! –, vajadzēja dzīt govis mājās.
– o-o-o– have_TO.PST.3 drive.INF cow.ACC.PL.M home.LOC.PL.M
‘O-o-oo!’ coming from the backyard meant that the cows had to be
driven home.’ (V. Belševica)

4) sound imitation, or onomatopoeia – unlike other types of interjections, imitative interjections are basically monosemous and are used to depict (reproduce) specific sounds occurring in nature or produced by humans or animals

snap, swish, swoosh’, žvīks ‘zing’

a. – Phe! – nicīgi izsaucās vecais kungs.
pshaw scornfully exclaim.PST.3 old.NOM.M gentleman.NOM.M
‘– Pshaw! – the old gentleman scornfully exclaimed.’ (I. Ābele)
b. – **Nau!** – teica *kakis, baltgalvitis.*
   meow say.PST.3 cat.NOM.M white_head.NOM.M
   ‘– Meow! – the white-headed cat said.’ (C)

c. – **Bē!** – *Jērīniš* teica un paskurināja *lipu.*
   baa lamb.NOM.M say.PST.3 and wag.PST.3 tail.ACC.F
   ‘– Baa! – said the lamb and wagged its tail.’ (V. Belševica)

d. **Paldies** jums, vegāni, saka *gotiņas.*
   moo moo thank you.DAT.PL vegan.NOM.PL.M say.PRS.3 cow.NOM.PL.F
   *Mū mū!*

   ‘Thank you, vegans, the cows say. Moo moo!’ (C)

e. **Bladāc,** piezemējos *sniega kaudzē.*
   bam land.PST.1SG snow.GEN.M pile.LOC.F
   ‘Bam, I landed in a pile of snow.’ (C)

f. **Un** *dažbrīd* pagriezienos [vilciena riteņi] and sometimes turn.LOC.PL.M [train wheel]
   *īeskanas. Šņirkt, Šņirkt.* resound.PRS.3 clack clack
   ‘And sometimes, at turns, [the wheels of the train] would clack.
   Clickety-clack.’ (C)

Interjections usually occur at the beginning of a sentence or text as an introductory element, i.e., as a semantically and grammatically undifferentiated sentence expressing, on a very generic level, the speaker’s emotions or reaction to a previous event or remark. The text that follows, then, provides more specific, elaborate information.

(2.10.9) a. **Vai,** *kāds skaists kakis!*
   aww what_kind beautiful.NOM.M cat.NOM.M
   ‘Aww, what an adorable cat!’ (C)

   b. **Pag,** kas *tā par skaņu?*
   hey what.NOM that.NOM.F of sound.ACC.F
   ‘Hey, what’s that sound?’ (R. Ezera)

c. – **Re,** *ka tev bail!*
   see PTCL you.DAT.SG afraid
   – *smējās Anita [kad Bille bija nokāpusi no koka].*
   ‘See, you are afraid, after all! – Anita laughed [when Bille had climbed down from the tree].’ (V. Belševica)

Interjections can also be used to evaluate and summarize, in which case they are placed at the end of a sentence or text.

(2.10.10) a. **Tur** ir *durvis, lūduz!* there be.PRS.3 door.NOM.PL.F here_you_are
   ‘The door is right there, help yourself!’ (G. Priede)
b. Tikai vēsturnieki to [valdnieka vārdu]
only historian.NOM.PL.M that.ACC.M [ruler name]

aceras. Tā, lūk.
remember.PRS.3 so look
‘Only historians remember it [the ruler’s name]. That’s how the story goes.’ (C)

c. Ūdenī viņš met mazus
water.LOC.M he.NOM throw.PRS.3 small.ACC.PL.M

akmentinus. Plunkš, plunkš, plunkš.
pebble.ACC.PL.M plop plop plop

‘He throws pebbles into the water. Plop, plop, plop.’ (C)

When used in the middle of a sentence, interjections function a bit like particles, either adding modality-related shades of meaning to the content of an utterance or emphasizing information that might be important to the speaker or the addressee.

(2.10.11) a. Kumoss pa kumosam un, skat, jau
bite.NOM.M by bite.DAT.M and look already

esi pārēdies ..
be.AUX.PRS.2SG overeat.PTCP.NOM.M
‘Bite by bite and, there you are, you have already eaten too much ..’ (C)

b. Te pēkšni viņam ieniezējās deguns un
here suddenly he.DAT itch.PST.3 nose.NOM.M and

viņš – apēt! – nošķaudījās.
he.NOM achoo sneeze.PST.3

‘He suddenly felt a tickling sensation in his nose and – achoo! – sneezed.’ (C)

c. Kā, Dievs pasargi, viņi ar
how God.NOM.M protect.IMP.2SG they.NOM.M with
to [parāda atmaksu] tiks
that.INS.F [debt repayment] get.FUT.3
galā?
end.LOC.M

‘And how, God forbid, will they manage [to repay the debt]?’ (C)

Etymologically, interjections can be classified into several groups.


(2.10.12) a. Ak, mēs malači!
yay we.NOM successful_person.NOM.PL.M
‘Yay, we did great!’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. Ei, vai te kāds ir?
hey Q here anybody.NOM.M be.PRS.3
‘Hey, is there anybody here?’ (C)
c. *Skropstu tuša – ū, super, kāda*

eyelash.gen.pl.m mascara.nom.f wow super what.nom.f

lika birstile!
curved.nom.f brush.nom.f

‘Mascara – wow, super, what a curved brush!’ (C)

d. *Ē, bet varbūt viņš var nokaipt*

er but maybe he.nom be_able.prs.3 go_down.inf

pagraba paskatities,
basement.loc.m look.inf

kāpēc nav ūdens.

‘Er, maybe he can go down to the basement and check why there is no water.’ (C)

e. *Ai ai, tomēr tu esi divkosis!*

tut tut yet you.nom.sg be.cop.prs.2sg hypocrite.nom.m

‘Tut-tut, you are a hypocrite, after all.’ (C)

2) secondary interjections formed by zero-derivation from certain forms of content words (often, from the vocative form of a noun (2.10.13a) or its nominative form functioning as the vocative (2.10.13b), also from the 2SG (2.10.14a-b), 2PL (2.10.14c) imperative and other forms of a verb (2.10.14d), or the nominative form of an adjective (2.10.15)), as well as from adverbs (2.10.16) and word groups (2.10.17).

(2.10.13) a. *Jēziņ, nu kas te notiek?*

jez ptcl what.nom here happen.prs.3

‘Jeez, what’s happening here?’ (Diena)

b. *Ak kungs, kā Nellija uztraucas!*

oh lord.nom.m how nellija.nom.f worry.prs.3

‘Oh my Lord, Nellija looks so nervous!’ (C)

(2.10.14) a. *Klau, man ir nepieciešama tava look I.dat be.cop.prs necessary.ptcp.nom.f your.nom.f palidziba.*

help.nom.f

‘Look, I need your help.’ (C)

b. *Redzi, bērns, dzīvi skaistu see child.nom.m life.acc.f beautiful.acc.f
dara atklātība*

make.prs.3 openness.nom.f

un godīgums.
and honesty.nom.m

‘You see, child, openness and honesty are what make this life beautiful.’ (G. Priede)

c. *Piedodiet, skolotāj!*

forgive teacher.voc.m

‘Forgive me, teacher.’ (V. Belševica)
d. **Lūdzu, parādiet dokumentus!**
   please show.IMP.2PL document.ACC.PL.M
   ‘Show me your documents, please!’ (C)

(2.10.15) a. **Flilip! Sveiks!**
   Philip.VOC.M howdy
   ‘Philip! Howdy!’ (A. Eglītis)

   b. **Vesels, brāl!**
   cheers brother.VOC.M
   Daudz laimes!
   ‘Cheers, brother! Congratulations!’ (www.draugiem.lv)

(2.10.16) a. **Tikai nesāc kildu, labi!**
   just not_start.imp.2sg fight.acc.f ok
   ‘Just don’t start a fight, OK!’ (M. Zīverts)

   b. **Žēl, bet atpakalceļa vairs**
   unfortunately but return.gen.m anymore
   nav.
   not_be.PRS.3
   ‘Unfortunately, there’s no turning back.’ (G. Priede)

(2.10.17) a. **Jūs atkal traucē Sibilla Švirkste, labdien.**
   you.acc.pl again disturb.prs.3 Sibilla.nom.f Švirkste.nom.f hello
   ‘It’s Sibilla Švirkste intruding on you again, good afternoon.’
   (G. Priede)

   b. **Pie joda, kur tu staigā?**
   bloody_hell where you.nom.sg wander.prs.2sg
   ‘Bloody hell, where have you been wandering?’ (I. Ābele)

   c. **Ak tu debestīn! Bille iemācīsies good_heavens**
   Bille.nom.f learn.fut.3
   [vācu valodu] one.nom and two.nom
   viņai viegla galva.
   ‘Good heavens! Bille will master [German] in no time, she has a good
   head for it.’ (V. Belševica)

   d. **Neapmierināts klientis, velns parāvis.**
   not_satisfy.ptcp.nom.m customer.nom.m damn_it
   ‘A dissatisfied customer, damn it.’ (C)

Some interjections may have undergone articulatorily motivated changes—shortening (clipping) (2.10.18) or shortening with subsequent merging, i.e., compounding (2.10.19), e.g.:

(2.10.18) a. **klau ‘look!, listen!, look here!’ < klausies ‘listen’** (IMP 2SG)

   b. **paga ‘hey!, wait!’ < pagaidi ‘wait’** (IMP 2SG)
(2.10.19)  a. *eku* ‘look!, there it goes!’ < *redzi* ‘see’ (IMP 2SG) + *kur* ‘where’
   ‘do you know?’
   b. *vaizi* ‘you know’ < *vai* ‘if, whether’ + *zini* ‘know’ (IND 2SG)
   ‘do you know?’
   c. *vadzi* ‘listen!, look here!’ < *vai* ‘if, whether’ + *dzirdi* ‘hear’ (IND 2SG)
   ‘do you hear?’
   d. *āre* ‘aha, you see!’ < *ā* ‘ah!’ + *redzi* ‘see’ (IMP 2SG)
   e. *paldies* ‘thanks!’ < *palidzi* ‘help’ (IMP 2SG) + *Dievs* ‘God’ (NOM SG)
   f. *labdien* ‘good afternoon!’ < *labu dienu* ‘good afternoon’ (INS)

Finally, there are a number of borrowed interjections, such as *marš* ‘go!, off you go!, mil. march!, forward!, *kuš* ‘shh!, *urrā* ‘hurrah!, hooray!’ (2.10.20). Some borrowed interjections are mostly used in colloquial speech, e.g., *opsā* ‘meaning is highly context-dependent, e.g., uh-oh!, whoops!, but also alley-oop!, čau ‘hi!, bye!, ciao!’, *davai* ‘come on!, let’s [do it]!, bring it on!’ (2.10.21):

(2.10.20)  a. *Un* **tagad,** **marš,** **klasē!**
   ‘And now, off you go to the classroom!’ (C)
 b. **Sveicieni** Lainei 2 **gadu**
   ‘Greetings to Laine on her second birthday!! Hurrah!!!’ (C)
 c. **Kuš!** Tūlit runās prezidente!
   ‘Shh! The president is about to speak!’ (C)

(2.10.21)  a. **Opsā...** Visai sarežģīta situācija.
   ‘Uh-oh… That’s quite a complicated situation.’ (CW)
 b. **Dairī,** ēca!
   ‘Dairis, hi!’ (G. Priede)
 c. **Davai,** kaut ko darām!
   ‘Come on, let’s do something!’ (C)
3. SYNTAX

3.0 Introductory remarks

3.0.1 Syntactic subsystems

The system of syntax can be divided into three subsystems: the simple sentence, the composite sentence, and text. Latvian research into syntax also proposes that word syntax (Kārkliņš 1976: 9) and phrase syntax be treated as separate subfields or levels of syntax (Ahero et al. 1962: IX–X). Nevertheless, the word or the word form is a component of the minimal syntactic unit or an element of a syntactic unit, as these do not act as units of syntax by themselves. The phrase, in its turn, is a non-predicative syntactic unit, as it cannot accomplish the function of communication on its own. It reflects the relationships between the realia, but it is not connected to the speech situation or the speaker’s judgment of the situation, therefore its main function is to provide the building material for the sentence. The role of the phrase in the development of a sentence will be discussed in the chapters dealing with the extenders of the simple sentence.

The main subsystem of syntax is the syntax of the simple sentence. The simple sentence is a predicative syntactic unit, developed on the basis of several syntactically connected word forms, or a single word form based on a specific model (Skujiņa 2007: 447). The composite sentence is a combination of several predicative units formed on the basis of a syntactic relation or a polypredicative unit (Skujiņa 2007: 341). The basis of a composite sentence is also a specific model. Text is a logically structured conceptually connected body of utterances, aimed at achieving a communicative goal (Skujiņa 2007: 392). Text syntax establishes the units of the text, namely the utterances and the phrasal units, studies their structural changes in reaction to the context and the communicative situation as well as the syntactic and contextual relations developing between the textual units.
3.0.2 Syntactic relations

Syntactic units usually consist of several components. Although a simple sentence can be based on a single component, it can also be expanded, thus every sentence is a potentially multi-componential unit.

A syntactic relation describes a relation between word forms, words, and predicative units (sentences or clauses) that form the bases of the syntactical unit: the sentence, the phrase, the text (Skujiņa 2007: 359).

Syntactic relations have their formal and informal indicators. To establish the existence of the syntactic relations between word forms or predicative units, the formal indicator is the safest criterion. Nevertheless, we cannot say that syntactic relations are solely based on formal indicators, as syntactic relations can exist also without any formal indications in syntactic units – sentences and phrases.

The means for expressing the syntactic relations in Latvian are as follows:

1) word forms (for example, the case forms of nouns; the gender, number, and case forms of adjectives; the person and number of the verb);
2) prepositions;
3) conjunctions and conjunctive words – the functional substitutes of the conjunctions;
4) word order in the cases when the same grammatical form can accomplish different syntactic functions, for example, the subject of the sentence in the dative precedes the object:

(3.0.1) a. *Kas man jums jāiedod?*

what.NOM I.DAT you.DAT.PL DEB.give

‘What do I have to give you?’ (A. Kolbergs)

b. *Tev rīt būs man jāiedod savs numurs.*

you.DAT.SG tomorrow be.AUX.FUT.3 I.DAT DEB.give own.NOM.M number.NOM.M

‘Tomorrow you will have to give me your number.’ (P. Bankovskis)

The noun in the nominative can take on different syntactic functions depending on word order:

(3.0.2) *Māksla kā pretošanās un pretošanās art.NOM.F as resistance.NOM.F and resistance.NOM.F kā māksla.*

as art.NOM.F

‘Art as a form resistance and resistance as a form of art.’

(www.barikades.lv)

The word order, as the indicator of syntactic relations, is signaled by the fact that the syntactically related word forms are positioned in the sentence next to each other, especially in the cases when there are no other formal indicators of the syntactic relations.
5) in spoken text – syntagmatic parsing connects syntactically related word forms in one syntagm or intonationally separated unit; this is shown using punctuation marks in a written text, compare (3.0.3a) and (3.0.3b):

(3.0.3) a. Kārtīgs latvju puika dzied, proper. NOM.M Latvian.GEN.PL.M guy.NOM.M sing.PRS.3
labi, sporto un dejo!
well do_sports.PRS.3 and dance.PRS.3
‘A proper Latvian guy sings, does well in sports, and dances!’
(www.jaunjelgavasvidusskola.lv)
b. Kārtīgs latvju puika dzied
proper.NOM.M Latvian.GEN.PL.M guy.NOM.M sing.PRS.3
labi, sporto un dejo!
well do_sports.PRS.3 and dance.PRS.3
‘A proper Latvian guy sings well, does sports, and dances!’

Different paradigmatic criteria can be used to establish syntactic relations, for example, the analogy of the syntactic position. If in the sentence (3.0.4a), the word gaidīšana ‘waiting’ is the subject of the sentence, analogically the same function will be accomplished by the infinitive form in the sentence (3.0.4b):

(3.0.4) a. Reizēm gaidīšana ir labākais.
sometimes waiting.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 good.NOM.SPL.M
‘Sometimes waiting is the best part.’ (www.delfi.lv)
b. Reizēm gaidīt ir labākais.
sometimes wait.INF be.COP.PRS.3 good.NOM.SPL.M
‘Sometimes it is best to wait.’

The principle of analogy is used also in the cases when not only the subject of the sentence, but also the predicate is formally changed, but keep the same semantic function. The bolded forms in examples (3.0.5) to (3.0.6) are the subject of the sentence:

(3.0.5) a. Pusaudžu nodarbināšana ir pieļaujama.
teenager.GEN.PL.M employment.NOM.F be.AUX.PRS.3
allow.PTCP.NOM.F
‘Employment of teenagers is allowed.’ (www.lm.gov.lv)
b. Nodarbināt pusaudžus ir pieļaujams.
employ.INF teenager.ACC.PL.M be.AUX.PRS.3 allow.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It is allowed to employ teenagers.’

(3.0.6) a. Pie mums ir sniegs.
at we.DAT be.PRS.3 snow.NOM.M
‘We have snow here.’ (www.facebook.com)
b. Pie mums sniega nav.
at we.DAT snow.GEN.M not_be.PRS.3
‘We do not have any snow here.’
The types of syntactic relations

The predicative relation exists between the subject and the predicate of the sentence; it forms the basic syntactic unit – the simple sentence (Skujina 2007: 307). The predicative nucleus of the sentence is the predicate, as its grammatical categories – tense and modality – express the predicativity. Several syntactic theories consider the predicate as the main semantic unit of the sentence, with the subject of the sentence being one of the arguments of the predicate. However, there are several reasons to consider the subject of the sentence as a part of the syntactic center.

Firstly, the subject of the sentence is a compulsory extension of the predicative nucleus in the sentences with a bipartite structure.

Secondly, the distinction between the subject of the sentence and the other arguments is signaled by the agreement between the forms of the subject and predicate in most cases. The formal dependence between the subject and the predicate of the sentence is two-directional: the subject of the sentence determines the gender, number, and person of the predicate, but the predicate demands the subject of the sentence be in a particular case.

The form of the predicate thus depends on the form of the subject of the sentence, but not on the direct extralinguistic reality:

(3.0.7) a. *Es esmu rakstījis par to*
   I.NOM be.AUX.PRS.1SG write.PTCP.NOM.M about it.ACC.M
   jau iepriekš.
   already before
   ‘I already have written about this before.’ (A. Dripe)

b. *Organizācijas ir rakstījušas valdībai vēstules.*
   organization.NOM.PL.F be.AUX.PRS.3 write.PTCP.NOM.PL.F
   government.DAT.F letter.ACC.PL.F
   ‘Organizations have written letters to the government.’ (www.providus.lv)

The case of the subject of the sentence, in its turn, depends on the lexicogrammatical nature and grammatical form of the predicate. Three-person verbs occur with the nominative case, in contrast to impersonal verbs, which cannot occur with the nominative case:

(3.0.8) *Es gribu pateikt paldies.*
I.NOM want.PRS.1SG say.INF thank_you
‘I would like to say thank you.’ (www.draugiem.lv)

(3.0.9) *Man gribas lidot.*
I.DAT want.PRS.3 fly.INF
‘I want to fly.’ (www.dziesmas.lv)

The nominative case does not occur with the infinitive:

(3.0.10) *Tev to nesaprst.*
you.DAT.SG it.ACC.M not_understand.INF
‘You would not understand.’ (www.dziesmas.lv)
There are several verbs for which the subject of the sentence is in the genitive case:

(3.0.11) a. Šeit tevis nav.
 here you.GEN.SG not.be.PRS.3
 ‘You are not here.’ (www.dziesmas.lv)

b. Man tevis nepietiek.
 I.DAT you.GEN.SG not_be_enough.PRS.3
 ‘I have not had enough of you.’ (www.dziesmas.lv)

Thus, on the basis of the agreement between the forms, the predicative agreement is two-directional. We can also say that it is the subject of the sentence that is in control of agreement, and the predicate that is in control of the semantic and grammatical categories of the sentence.

The secondary predicative and adjunctive relations are the syntactic relations, on the basis of which the extenders can join the simple sentence. Both types of syntactic relations are similar, as the dependent word form is joined not to a single word, but to a predicative unit or a phrase. The secondary predicate joins the sentence on the basis of the secondary predicative relation, but the adjuncts join the sentence on the basis of the adjunctive relation or relation of sentence determination. In sentence (3.0.12), the secondary predicate miglains ‘foggy’ joins the predicative unit rīts atausa ‘dawn broke’.

(3.0.12) Pārgājiena rīts atausa miglains.
 hike.GEN.M morning.NOM.M break.PST.3 foggy.NOM.M
 ‘The dawn broke foggy on the day of the hike.’ (Z. Ērgle)

In (3.0.13), the secondary predicate par vadītāju ‘as manager’ is related to both the components of the phrase iecēlt viņu ‘to appoint her’ simultaneously.

(3.0.13) Šodien domes deputāti
 today council.GEN.F member_of_council.NOM.PL.M
 iecēla viņu par bērnuārza
 appoint.PST.3 she.ACC PREP kindergarten.GEN.M
 vadītāju.
 manager.ACC.F
 ‘Today the members of the local council appointed her as manager of the kindergarten.’ (www.aprinkis.lv)

The secondary predicate possesses an additional or secondary predication, i.e., the meaning of tense and modality, and this can be transformed into a separate predicative unit:

(3.0.14) Rīts atausa + Rīts
 morning.NOM.M break.PST.3 morning.NOM.M
 bija miglains.
 be.COP.PST.3 foggy.NOM.M
 ‘The day broke + The morning was foggy.’
Thus, the characteristic feature of the secondary predicate is its capability to form a second, hidden syntactic center.

The adjuncts or sentence determiners (see Mel’chuk 1995: 139; Skujiņa 2007: 86) are the so called free sentence extenders: the parts of the sentence that are not related syntactically to any word in the sentence, but refer to the sentence as a whole. For example, the adverbial modifiers (mostly those of time and place) can refer to the whole sentence, especially if positioned at the beginning of the sentence:

(3.0.15) *Vakarpusē* vēja brāzmas pierims.

evening.LOC.F wind.GEN.M gust.NOM.PL.F subside.FUT.3

‘In the evening, the gusts of wind will subside.’ (www.nra.lv)

**Subordination and coordination** form a traditional opposition in syntactic research. **In subordination**, the dependent component is joined to the independent one, thus, their functions in the sentence are different (Skujiņa 2007: 273). For example, if a subordinate phrase is introduced into the sentence, the independent component cannot be dismissed without the dependent word, compare (3.0.16a) and (3.0.16b):

(3.0.16) a. *Igaunī* ir pieņēmuši

Estonian.NOM.PL.M be.AUX.PRS.3 accept.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

labus lēmumus.

good.ACC.PL.M decision.ACC.PL.M

‘The Estonians have made good decisions.’ (www.delfi.lv)

b. *Igaunī* ir pieņēmuši

Estonian.NOM.PL.M be.AUX.PRS.3 accept.PTCP.NOM.PL.M

labus.

good.ACC.PL.M

‘The Estonians have made good...’

**In coordination**, the components are syntactically equal, thus they have the same functions in the sentence (Skujiņa 2007: 335). If a coordinative phrase or its components are introduced in a sentence, they adopt the same syntactic position and we can dismiss any of them:

(3.0.17) *Jauks un patikams vīrietis*

nice.NOM.M and pleasant.NOM.M man.NOM.M

meklē draudzeni.

look_for.PRS.3 girlfriend.ACC.F

‘A nice and pleasant man is looking for a girlfriend.’ (www.viss.lv)

Both subordination and coordination are implemented in several syntactic subsystems. Phrases, which function in simple sentences, are built on the basis of subordination and coordination. Subordination and coordination dominate in the relations of a composite sentence.
3.1 The simple sentence as a mono-predicative syntactic unit

3.1.1 The main features of the simple sentence

The simple sentence is the main unit of syntax, and the syntax of the simple sentence is the most important subsystem of syntax.

The two characteristic features of the simple sentence are its communicative function and a certain structural organization pattern. The simple sentence can be defined as a minimal predicative unit formed by a single word form, or several syntactically related word forms, based on a particular model (Valdmanis 1985: 69).

Thus, firstly, every single sentence informs about something, as it is a communicative unit. Secondly, every simple sentence is based on a generalized, abstract pattern, on the basis of which the particular sentence is built. The sentence reflects in a generalized way a real, typified situation. The sentence is independent from the context or the communicative situation, thus it is both structurally and semantically complete. The abstract pattern or the model of the sentence can be described using formal and semantic features, thus we can speak about its formal structure and semantic structure.

To indicate a particular sentence, the term utterance is used. The utterance as a speech unit possesses not only formal and semantic structures, but also a particular communicative structure. The utterance is aimed at a particular speech situation and it is integrated into the context (Skujiņa 2007: 173). The essential features of the utterance are, for example, the particular word order and, in the spoken text, its intonation. Therefore, the structure of the simple sentence can be discussed with respect to three aspects: its formal structure, its semantic structure, and its communicative structure.

3.1.2 Predicativity as the main grammatical feature of the simple sentence

Predicativity is the main grammatical meaning of the sentence, which relates the sentence to the speech situation and makes it a unit of communication. Predicativity is an obligatory feature of the simple sentence. It shows the attitude of the contents to reality and expresses itself as the unity of the two obligatory sentence categories: the syntactic tense and the syntactic modality (Skujiņa 2007: 307). Namely, every particular sentence describes the particular situation simultaneously assessing it from the point of view of reality/irreality and placing it in time with regard to the time of the speech event. The simple sentence has a single predicative nucleus; therefore it is a mono-predicative unit.

The predicative relation is only one of the ways in which predicativity manifests. The sentence possesses predicativity even if there is no overt subject, as in (3.1.1) and (3.1.2), or no overt predicate, as in (3.1.3):

(3.1.1) Tur taču ir tumšs!
there however be.cop.prs.3 dark.nom.m
‘But it is dark there!’ (C)
Sometimes just need to be happy, too.’ (C)

‘Rehearsals every day.’ (Diena)

Syntactic expression of tense

The category of syntactic tense is connected to the morphological tense category of the verb (see Section 2.5.3); however, the two are not identical. Syntactic tense is a broader term than morphological tense, as the sentence can have a tense even when there is no overt predicate present, as in (3.1.4):

‘The surprise in mother’s dark green eyes.’ (I. Ābele)

The syntactic tense can be expressed by lexical means, i.e., the adverbial modifiers of time, as in (3.1.5):

‘I am going to Paris tomorrow.’ (C)

The syntactic tense opposition is a three-member opposition: present – past – future. To establish the syntactic tense of the event reflected in the sentence, it is important to establish the relationship between the time of the event in relation to the speech time, regardless of the finite form of the verb. Thus, for example, (3.1.5) is in the syntactic future.

Syntactic modality

The meaning of the modality as well as the meaning of the tense is related to the speech situation and expresses the attitude of the contents of the sentence towards reality from the point of view of the speaker or as assessed by the speaker.

Syntactic modality is based on the concept of reality/irreality, thus the syntactic modality is a binary opposition: realis – irrealis. The irrealis meanings can differ: expressing a need, wish, possibility, order, suggestion, etc.

The basis of syntactic modality is formed by the morphological mood category of the verb (see Section 2.5.4), but both of these categories are not identical. The verb form system participates in the expression of the syntactic modality: the realis modality is expressed with the help of the indicative mood, the irrealis modality with the help of all the other moods (Freimane 1985: 17). Nevertheless, the realis modality is also present in sentences where there is no overt predicate:
Modal verbs and modal particles also participate in the expression of the syntactic modality. (3.1.7) and (3.1.8) are in the irrealis syntactic modality, although the predicative nucleus contains a finite verb form in the indicative mood:

\[(3.1.7) \text{Viņa laikam grib naudu.} \]
\[\text{she.nom probably want.prs.3 money.acc.f} \]
\[\text{‘She may want some money.’ (C)} \]

\[(3.1.8) \text{Nāksies likt lietā mazu viltībīnu.} \]
\[\text{must.fut.3 put.inf to_use little.acc.f cunning.acc.f} \]
\[\text{‘We will have to be a little cunning here.’ (C)} \]

**Syntactic person**

The main word form in the sentence is the finite form of the verb, therefore, in Latvian linguistics, it is often defined as the form that embodies the grammatical category of the person (Kalnača 2013c: 459). From this we can conclude that the syntactic person should be an obligatory sentence category. Nevertheless, the conception of the syntactic person is problematic.

At present, the syntactic person is perceived in two ways: it can be considered as 1) the grammatical subject of the sentence or 2) any word representing some agent (Freimane 2008: 85).

If the person’s conception is semantic, namely, if the syntactic person is the word representing the agent or the experiencer, then the person is not an obligatory trait of the sentence, as there are many kinds of sentence patterns, which do not contain either the agent or the experiencer, as in (3.1.9) to (3.1.11):

\[(3.1.9) \text{Barga ziema.} \]
\[\text{harsh.nom.f winter.nom.f} \]
\[\text{‘A harsh winter.’ (C)} \]

\[(3.1.10) \text{Jau viegli krēslo.} \]
\[\text{already lightly dusk.prs.3} \]
\[\text{‘Dusk is already falling.’ (C)} \]

\[(3.1.11) \text{Saule būs silta un maiga.} \]
\[\text{sun.nom.f be.cop.fut.3 warm.nom.f and gentle.nom.f} \]
\[\text{‘The sun will be warm and gentle.’ (C)} \]

If we consider the subject of the sentence as the syntactic person, even then the person is not an obligatory feature of the sentence, as in (3.1.12) and (3.1.13):

\[(3.1.12) \text{Ik pa brīdim puteņo.} \]
\[\text{Ptcl prep while snow.prs.3} \]
\[\text{‘Every few moments there is a snow flurry.’ (C)} \]
Thus, whichever conception of the person we presume, it is an optional feature of the sentence.

The meaning of the person (in contrast with the tense and mood) is not contained only in the finite verb, but also in the personal pronoun. Therefore, the sentence can express meanings of several persons. The syntactic person can contrast with the morphological person (see Section 2.5.2), for example:

(3.1.14) Bet vai tev vajag eksperimentēt?
        But Q you.DAT.SG need.PRS.3 experiment.INF
        ‘But do you need to experiment?’ (C)

The verb vajag ‘need’ in (3.1.14) is in its third person form, but the sentence itself has a syntactic second person meaning. (3.1.15) has a syntactic third person meaning, although the predicate is in the infinitive, which does not have the meaning of a person:

(3.1.15) Visiem stāt!
        everyone.DAT.PL stop.INF
        ‘Everyone stop!’ (www.delfi.lv)

Thus, the meaning of the person is not part of the complex that forms the predicativity.

### 3.2 Formal structure of the simple sentence

#### 3.2.0 Introductory remarks

The description of the formal structure of the simple sentence is based on the study of the typical pattern, which forms the basis of any sentence structure. The formal organization of the simple sentence involves the system of the sentence forms or its paradigm, and the types of sentence expansion. In the description of the formal structure of the sentence, however, one cannot completely ignore the semantics of the sentence and its components.

#### 3.2.1 Simple sentence patterns

The sentence is formed by word forms. The word form separately or together with another word form is part of a sentence. The pattern of the simple sentence is a generalized and abstract model, formed by the necessary minimum of the components. The sentence pattern is part of every speaker’s consciousness and is materialized in the communications process with the help of the words of the particular lexical meanings and the particular morphological forms (Freimane 1985: 21).
The aim of sentence pattern theory is to establish the necessary minimum of components for particular sentence types, so that these sentences can perform their main functions: communication and expression of thought also outside of their immediate context (Valdmanis 1987: 73).

In the description of the simple sentence pattern it is useful to distinguish between the minimal pattern or the predicative minimum and the expanded pattern or the semantic minimum (Skujina 2007: 445). The predicative and the semantic minimum can be considered as separate stages in the process of the development of the sentence structure.

The minimal pattern of the simple sentence

The predicative minimum is necessary so that the sentence could be a syntactically formed predicative unit. At this level of high abstraction, it is not important if this structural minimum can form a complete communicative unit. Thus, for example, (3.2.1) and (3.2.2), formed on the basis of the minimal pattern, are complete in the semantic sense:

(3.2.1)  

Un iestājas nakts.  
and set.in.PRS.3 night.NOM.F  
‘And night sets in.’ (www.facebook.com)

(3.2.2)  

Krēslo.  
dusk.PRS.3  
‘Dusk is falling.’ (C)

(3.2.3), formed on the basis of the minimal pattern, is not semantically complete and cannot function as an independent communicative unit.

(3.2.3)  

Lūdzu, atnes!  
please bring.IMP.2SG  
‘Could you please bring it here!’ (www.twitter.com)

The principal parts of the sentence – the subject and the predicate – are the components of the predicative minimum. A sentence formed only by the components of the minimal pattern is traditionally called the simple unexpanded sentence (Skujina 2007: 446).

On the basis of quantity, we can distinguish two types of syntactic centers:

1) the unexpanded syntactic center and 2) the expanded syntactic center. In the unexpanded syntactic center there is only one sentence subject and sentence predicate. In the expanded syntactic center there are several coordinated subjects (3.2.4) or predicates (3.2.5 and 3.2.6) in a coordinated relationship (Freimane 1985: 22–23):

(3.2.4)  

Nedz es, nedz kāds cīts nezina,  
neither I.NOM nor anybody.NOM.M else.NOM.M not.know.PRS.3  
vai Dievs man lēmis atgriešanos.  
if god.NOM.M I.DAT decide.PTCP.PST.3 return.ACC.F  
‘Neither I nor anybody else knows if God has destined me to return.’  
(G. Berelis)
(3.2.5) Viņa nebija un arī negribēja
she.NOM not_be.COP.PST.3 and also not_want.PST.3
būt raudīga.
be.COP.INF tearful.NOM.F
‘She was not and did not want to be tearful.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.2.6) Ausainē bija silti un labi.
fur_hat.LOC.F be.COP.PST.3 warm and nice
‘It was nice and warm in the fur hat.’ (C)

There are different possibilities for forming real sentences or semantically complete communication units on the basis of minimal patterns. Firstly, there are patterns which permit free development of complete, context independent unexpanded sentences with different lexical means of implementation where the co-occurrence of the words depends mostly on extralinguistic factors. For example, on the basis of the $N_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{fin,cop}} \text{ADJ}$ pattern, one can form different sentences without semantic limitations:

(3.2.7) Seja ir sarkana.
face.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 red.NOM.F
‘The face is red.’ (C)

(3.2.8) Pamazām laiks kļūst siltāks.
slowly weather.NOM.M become.COP.PRS.3 warmer
‘The weather is slowly warming up.’ (C)

Secondly, there are patterns, on the basis of which one can form unexpanded sentences only with words from particular semantic groups. For example, the pattern $N_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{fin}}$ permits unexpanded sentences if the predicate is an intransitive verb. If the verb is transitive, the pattern has to be expanded with the name of the object in the accusative:

(3.2.9) Mana puķe pazaudēja vienu
my.NOM.F flower.NOM.F lost.PST.3 one.ACC.M
ērķķi.
thorn.ACC.M
‘My flower lost one thorn.’ (C)

Thirdly, there are minimal patterns which do not permit unexpanded sentences, thus, extenders are an obligatory condition of sentence formation in such cases. For example, the sentences based on the single component pattern $V_{\text{fin}3}$, naming the phenomena connected with auditory or gustatory perception, involve an extender with an adverbial meaning:

(3.2.10) Pie durvīm zvana.
at door.DAT.PL.F ring.PRS.3
‘Someone is ringing at the door.’ (C)
The sentences based on the same pattern describing a state involve extenders describing the experiencer:

(3.2.12) **Man** Šausmīgi salst.
**I.DAT** terribly be_cold.PRS.3
‘I am terribly cold.’ (C)

(3.2.13) **Kur** tev sāp?
where **you.DAT** hurt.PRS.3
‘Where does it hurt?’ (C)

(3.2.14) **Tagad** veicas tikai tirgoņiem.
**now** fare.PRS.3 only **trader.DAT.PL.M**
‘Now it is only traders who are in luck.’ (C)

Therefore, the question of the necessary expanded model or the issue of semantic completeness is an important question with regard to the syntax of the simple sentence.

**Expanded pattern of the simple sentence**

The components that are necessary to make the sentence into a semantically complete communication unit are part of the expanded simple sentence pattern. From this point of view, all the informationally necessary components are considered to be substantial and, thus, an obligatory part of the pattern (see Freimane 1985, 2008; Kārkliņš 1974, 1976; Lagzdiņa 1997; Lokmane 2004; Valdmanis 1987, 1989). In contrast, the optional non-obligatory extenders express meanings that are not crucial components in the expression of the conceptual structure of the sentence. They do enrich the meaning of the sentence, but do not participate in the formation of the semantic type of the sentence.

Obligatory extenders do not differ from optional extenders either with respect to formal characteristics or their semantic relation to the predicate. Nevertheless, the non-obligatory extenders have more variability in both their formal and semantic features.

The grammatical minimum together with the obligatory extenders form the **semantic minimum**. The degree of abstraction of the expanded pattern is lesser, therefore, the lexical semantics of the verb gain more importance. The degree of obligation for having extenders depends on different factors. Firstly, it can depend on the general semantic features which form the meaning of the verb (rarely, other parts of speech), for example, transitivity, movement, or the particularities of the semantics of the lexeme. Secondly, the degree of obligation is dependent on
the semantics of the arguments involved, that is their semantic roles have different
degrees of importance. The most important or the central semantic roles (for example,
agent and patient) are syntactically obligatory more often than the less important
or more peripheral roles (Lokmane 2004). Thirdly, the degree of obligation can
depend on the peculiarities of the syntactic center, especially, if it consists of a single
component, for example:

(3.2.15) Pretiniekam pašam ir bail.
opponent.DAT.M self.DAT.M be.COP.PRS.3 afraid
‘The opponent is himself afraid.’ (C)

(3.2.16) Uz melniem celgaliem – baltas
on black.DAT.PL.M knee.DAT.PL.M white.NOM.PL.F
stiegrinas plaukstas.
sinuous.NOM.PL.F palm.NOM.PL.F
‘The white, sinuous palms on the black knees.’ (Diena)

It is the direct object in the accusative that is obligatory in combination with
the transitive verbs (see Section 2.5.6). Usually, it has the role of the patient (3.2.17),
but it can also have other roles, for example, the role of the percept (3.2.18) or
content (3.2.19):

(3.2.17) Nocirtām lielu, vecu meža
cut_down. PST.1PL big.ACC.F old.ACC.F forest.GEN.M
ābeli.
apple_tree.ACC.F
‘We cut down a big, old crab apple tree.’ (C)

(3.2.18) Viņš apskatīja senču dzimtās
he.NOM view.PST.3 ancestor.GEN.PL.M native.ACC.PL.F
vietas.
place.ACC.PL.F
‘He visited the native places of his ancestors.’ (C)

(3.2.19) Šo stāstu izdomāja indiāņi
this.ACC.M story.ACC.M invent.PST.3 Indian.NOM.PL.M
‘This story was invented by the Indians.’ (C)

Transitive verbs with the meaning of ‘to be able to carry out a particular activity’ are
used without the accusative, but the sentence is usually expanded with the help of
an adverbial modifier:

(3.2.20) Mani abi bērni
my.NOM.PL.M both.NOM.PL.M child.NOM.PL.M
peld jau pāris gadus.
swim.PRS.3 already couple.NOM.PL.M year.ACC.PL.M
‘Both of my children have been swimming already for a couple of years.’
(www.bdaugava.lv)
If the object is generic, adverbial modifiers are characteristic extenders of the sentence, too:

(3.2.21) *Es lasīju ilgi, lēni un pamatīgi.*

I.nom read.pst.1sg long slowly and thoroughly

‘I was reading for a long time, slowly, and thoroughly.’ (A. Kolbergs)

The roles of the direct object in linguistic communication are very important, as there are many actions that are carried out with the help of different objects and cannot be accomplished without them. As the direct objects can be of various kinds, they are not obvious or deducible from the meaning of the verb, thus, the addressee can not identify them unless they are verbalized or named.

The obligatory indirect object is the extender in the dative, which usually has the semantic role of the beneficiary:

(3.2.22) *Vai tev palīdzēja kādi eksperti?*

Q you.DAT.SG help.pst.3 any.NOM.PL.M expert.NOM.PL.M

‘Did you get help from any experts?’ (C)

Usually the indirect object is obligatory when the direct object is absent from the sentence.

An obligatory component with an adverbial meaning expresses place (3.2.23), time (3.2.24), or the type of action (3.2.25):

(3.2.23) *Prezidents atrodas ārpus valsts.*

president.nom.m be_located.prs.3 outside country.gen.f

‘The President is outside the country.’ (C)

(3.2.24) *Nu tā nopļāpājām līdz pusnaktij.*

so prattle.pst.1pl until midnight.DAT.F

‘Well then, we have prattled until midnight.’ (C)

(3.2.25) *Suns uzvedās kārtīgi.*

dog.nom.m behave.pst.3 orderly

‘The dog was behaving itself.’ (C)

The obligatory presence of the components with an adverbial meaning in the sentence usually depends on the lexical semantics of the predicate, as in (3.2.26) and (3.2.27):

(3.2.26) *Viņi apmetās pie kupla bērza. with_dense_foliage.gen.m birch_tree.gen.m*

they.NOM.PL.M settle_down.pst.3 by with_dense_foliage.gen.m birch_tree.gen.m

‘They settled down by the birch tree with dense foliage.’ (C)

(3.2.27) *Rucavieši rīkojās prātīgāk.*

inhabitant_of_Rucava.NOM.PL.M act.pst.3 sensibly.cmp

‘The inhabitants of Rucava acted in a more sensible way.’ (C)
The obligatory use of adverbs in subjectless sentences can be dictated not by the single lexeme, but by the pattern of the sentence itself. For example, the characteristics of a place are often needed in describing a state:

(3.2.28) **Tur ir kluss un mierigs.**
\*there be.COP.PRS.3 quiet.NOM.M and calm.NOM.M*

‘It is calm and quiet there.’ (C)

(3.2.29) **Ārā sāka krēslot.**
\*outside start.PST.3 dusk.INF*

‘The dusk began to fall outside.’ (C)

An obligatory extender describing a place, suggests that the name of the agent should not be searched for in this context, as it is evident or is not important:

(3.2.30) **Visapkārt brīkšķēja un šalca, kauca un gauzoja.**
\*all_around crackle.PST.3 and rustle.PST.3 howl.PST.3 and wail.PST.3*

‘It was crackling and rustling, howling and wailing all around us.’

(maxima-library.org)

If the action has an animate agent not mentioned in the sentence, the adverb assigns a grammatically unequivocal meaning to the form of the verb, i.e., that of a generic person (Freimane 1985: 21):

(3.2.31) **Šeit runā daudzas nesaprotamas lietas.**
\*here speak.PRS.3 many.ACC.PL.F incomprehensible.ACC.PL.F thing.ACC.PL.F*

‘Here people talk about many puzzling things.’ (C)

Characterization of the place is obligatory in most potentially verbal sentences:

(3.2.32) **Turpat arī Didžejs, skaists un bistams un bīstams cilvēks.**
\*there also Deejay.NOM.M handsome.NOM.M and dangerous.NOM.M person.NOM.M*

‘Deejay was there too, a handsome and a dangerous person.’ (J. Joņevs)

The dative-marked adjunct with the meaning of the experiencer is obligatory in (3.2.33):

(3.2.33) **Jums veicas.**
\*you.DAT.PL do_well.PRS.3*

‘You are lucky.’ (C)

In a communicative situation, the role of the experiencer is among the most substantial. If the state experienced by somebody is named, then it is important also to name the experiencer, unless it is clear from the situation or the context. Naming the experiencer depends not so much on the lexical meaning of the verb (or some
other word), as on the situation being described and the structure of the sentence in general, as the experienced states can be expressed not only in verbal, but also in adverbial and nominal sentences:

(3.2.34) Šoreiz vecākiem būs interesanti.
this_time parent.DAT.PL.M be.COP.FUT.3 interesting
‘This time it will be interesting for the parents.’ (C)

(3.2.35) Man ir silts.
I.DAT be.COP.PRS.3 warm.NOM.M
‘I am warm.’ (C)

There are sentences where the presence of one of the two possible extenders is obligatory. In these cases, we can apply the concept of quasi-obligation (see Freimane 1983: 47), for example:

(3.2.36) Ausīs /auss džinkst.
ear.LOC.PL.F/NOM.F ring.PRS.3
‘There is ringing in the ears.’ (www.dzivei.lv)

(3.2.37) Galvā /galva dun.
head.LOC.F/NOM.F boom.PRS.3
‘There is booming in the head.’ (www.termorelax.com)

In some cases, both extenders can be implemented simultaneously, but it is not obligatory:

(3.2.38) Tehnika kalpo ilgi / for_a_long_time kā kredīta garants.
technology.NOM.F serve.PRS.3 as loan.GEN.M guarantee.NOM.M
‘The technology serves as security for the loan / for a long time.’ (C)

(3.2.39) Viņa samaksāja par maizes / loaf.acc.f bargu naudu / harsh.acc.f vietējam fermerim.
she.NOM pay.PST.3 for bread.GEN.F for local.DAT.M farmer.DAT.M
‘She paid the local farmer / a huge sum of money / for the loaf of bread.’ (C)

Quasi-obligatory extenders can be found in sentences naming states:

(3.2.40) Visiem / te ir interesanti.
everyone.DAT.PL.M here be.COP.PRS.3 interesting
‘For everyone / it interesting here.’ (www.vaduguns.lv)

(3.2.41) Man / istabā ir karsti.
I.DAT room.LOC.F be.COP.PRS.3 hot
‘For me / it is hot in the room.’ (www.calis.delfi.lv)

Thus, we can conclude that from the perspective of efficiency of communication, it is important not to overdo the verbalization of the components. If one is named,
the others are either known to the addressee, are obvious or not important, or can be partly deduced from the named component. Therefore, the number of obligatory extenders does not exceed one.

Presenting a complete list of the expanded patterns is not possible at the current stage of study of Latvian syntax, due to several reasons. Firstly, syntactic obligatoriness cannot be analyzed as a sentence category independently of the context or situation. The speaker chooses to verbalize the most important components of the situation, but the components that are deducible from the situation do not need to be verbalized. Thus, obligatoriness mainly depends on the communicative situation: the aim of the speaker, the addressee’s knowledge and capability to identify the participants of the situation. The absence of certain components makes us interpret the sentence as one which is closely related to the communicative situation:

(3.2.42) *Salst.*
freeze.PRS.3
'It is cold [to the speaker].' (C)

(3.2.43) *Ir labi un mierīgi.*
be.COP.PRS.3 good and quiet
'It is good and quiet [to the speaker].' (C)

(3.2.44) *Bet ir silts.*
be.COP.PRS.3 warm.NOM.M
'But it is warm [here].' (C)

(3.2.45) *Viņa ir tālu.*
she.NOM be.COP.PRS.3 far
'She is far away [from the speaker].’ (S. Kaldupe)

(3.2.42) to (3.2.45), however, cannot be considered as semantically incomplete. Thus, secondly, the syntactic obligation has different levels; we cannot speak of a binary opposition: obligatory – non-obligatory. The level of obligation depends on the nature of the situation described (which is generally reflected in the language through the verb meanings and sentence types), but mostly it depends on the speaker’s interpretation of the needs of communication. Thirdly, because of the low level of abstraction of the sentence patterns, their number would be exceedingly large.

A list of simple sentence patterns in Latvian is given in Section 3.2.7 as a summary of a detailed description of basic predicate and subject types.

### 3.2.2 Basic sentence types

The basic sentence type characterizes the contents of the minimal pattern of a simple sentence. There are two basic sentence types in Latvian: the canonical bipartite sentence and the single-component subjectless sentence.

The bipartite sentence minimum consists of a subject and a predicate (Skujina 2007: 96). The predicate is the more important component as it expresses predicativity.
Typically, the predicate is formed by a finite verb form with its tense and modality directly related to the expression of predicativity.

The bipartite sentence predicate is syntactically related to the subject of the sentence in a predicative relation. As stated before, the special status of the subject in a sentence is derived from the fact that in most cases it agrees with the predicate, therefore, the subject participates in the formation of the syntactic center of the sentence. If none of the word forms agree with the predicate, then semantic and paradigmatic criteria are used to establish the syntactic center of the sentence. As the bipartite sentence is the main sentence type in Latvian, it will be discussed in detail in later sections focused on morphological sentence types.

A subjectless sentence consists of one main part of the sentence without any formal reference to the second possible part of the syntactic center (Skujiņa 2007: 447). The single component pattern is formed with invariable word forms, which are strictly predetermined from the point of view of person, number, gender, and case. The subjectless pattern is a common, although less characteristic, type of pattern in Latvian. Subjectless sentences are used to describe states and processes occurring of their own accord, without an agent, and the causes of which are unknown or unimportant to the speaker. The main semantic domains of subjectless sentences are natural phenomena, spontaneous bodily functions, or phenomena associated with one's inner world.

On the basis of the semantic and formal differences among predicates and their typical extenders, the following subjectless sentence types have been established for Latvian.

1) Sentences describing different natural processes (astronomical and meteorological phenomena):

(3.2.46) *Pēdējoreiz* lija *krietni* pirms.
last_time rain.PST.3 considerably before
*Cāniem.*
Midsummer’s_Day.DAT.PL.M
‘The last time it rained was long before Midsummer’s Day.’ (C)

(3.2.47) *Tā milīgi* miglo.
so tenderly become_misty.PRS.3
‘The mist is gently descending.’ (C)

(3.2.48) *Laukā jau krēsloja.*
outside already darken.PST.3
‘It was already twilight outside.’ (C)

2) Sentences describing phenomena perceived through hearing (3.2.49), smell (3.2.50), and, less often, vision (3.2.51, 3.2.52):

(3.2.49) *Visapkārt* dun, rīb un dārd.
all_around boom.PRS.3 ramble.PRS.3 and roll.PRS.3
‘It is booming, rambling, and rolling all around.’ (C)
(3.2.50) Gaisā smaržo pēc Havannas likiera.

‘There is a scent of Havana liqueur in the air.’ (C)

(3.2.51) Kaut kur pie Smiltenes gaisos nozibsnīja balti.

‘Somewhere near Smiltene there was a white flash in the air.’

(L. Muktupāvela)

(3.2.52) Tai mājā spokojas.

‘That house is haunted.’ (C)

3) Sentences describing physical sensations or mental states:

(3.2.53) Galvā dunēja.

‘(His) head was booming.’ (C)

(3.2.54) Gurnos dīvaini kņudēja.

‘There was a strange tingling in (his) loins.’ (C)

(3.2.55) Man jau bērnībā bija bail no zirgiem.

‘I have been afraid of horses since childhood.’ (C)

4) Sentences describing involuntary processes connected with human existence:

(3.2.56) Man vienkārši laimējās.

‘I was just lucky.’ (C)

(3.2.57) Kā tev, draudziņ, klājas?

‘How are you, my friend?’ (C)

5) Sentences with a generic or unspecified agent and a predicate in the passive voice:

(3.2.58) Skolas koncertā tika dejots labāk nekā rajona skatē.

‘There was better dancing at the school concert than in the regional competition.’ (C)
Šajā gadā tiks aktīvi strādāts.
‘There will be a lot of hard work done this year.’ (C)

Uz koncertiem nav būts.
‘One has not been to any concerts at all lately.’

Sentences with a generic or unspecified agent and a predicate in the third person are borderline cases between subjectless and bipartite sentences:

Priekšā runā citādi kā aiz muguras.
‘They say things differently in front of you than behind your back.’ (C)

No tālienes var dzirdēt vilciena svilpšanu.
‘One can hear the train’s whistling from a distance.’ (C)

Tā to dara jau 3500 gadu.
‘It has been done this way already for 3500 years.’ (C)

In this type of sentence, just as in the previously discussed sentences with predicates in the passive voice, attention is directed towards an action abstracted from the agent. Nevertheless, the sentence structure could formally be supplemented with the name of the agent in a certain grammatical form:

Priekšā [visi, cilvēki] runā citādi kā aiz muguras.
‘[Everyone, people] say(s) things differently in front of you than behind your back.’ (www.epupa.valoda.lv)

No [ikviens, jebkurš] var dzirdēt vilciena svilpšanu.
‘[Everyone, anyone] can hear the train’s whistling from a distance.’ (www.valoda.ailab.lv)
This allows one also to consider this type of sentence as an incompletely realized bipartite pattern sentence.

The same can be said about sentences containing a predicate in the infinitive:

(3.2.63) a. **Stāt!**

   **stop-INF**

   ‘Stop!’ (C)

(3.2.64) a. **Zvanīt** pēc pulksten 17.00.

   **call-INF** after o’clock 5_p.m.

   ‘Call after 5 o’clock!’ (C)

(3.2.65) a. **Kā atrisināt drošības**

   how **resolve-INF** security.GEN.F

   problēmas?

   problem.ACC.PL.F

   ‘How to resolve security problems?’ (C)

If the agent is generic, these sentences can be formally supplemented with an agent in the dative:

(3.2.63) b. [**Ikvienam,** visiem] **Stāt!**

   [everyone.DAT.M all.DAT.M] **stop-INF**

   ‘[Everyone,] stop!’

(3.2.64) b. [**Ikvienam,** visiem] **Zvanīt** pēc pulksten 17.00.

   [everyone.DAT.M all.DAT.M] **call-INF** after o’clock 5_p.m.

   ‘[Everyone,] call after 5 o’clock!’

Semantically, subjectless sentences can be potentially equivalent to potentially verbal bipartite sentences describing natural phenomena and weather conditions:

(3.2.66) **Vietām īslaicīgs lietus.**

   here_and_there short_term.NOM.M rain.NOM.M

   ‘Sporadic showers here and there.’ (C)

(3.2.67) **Visu laiku troksnis no tilta puses.**

   all.ACC.M time.ACC.M noise.NOM.M from bridge.GEN.M side.GEN.F

   ‘Constant noise from the direction of the bridge.’ (C)

### 3.2.3 Verbal sentences

The morphological type of a sentence depends on the part of speech used in the predicate. In verbal, nominal, and adverbial sentences, the predicate is a verb, nominal (noun or adjective), or adverb, respectively. If a verbal sentence does not
formally contain the predicate, that is, the full lexical verb būt ‘to be’, then this is considered a potentially verbal sentence (see, e.g., (3.1.3, 3.1.4) and (3.2.66, 3.2.67)).

In most cases, the function of the predicate is taken on by just the finite verb or together with another word form or several word forms. If the predicate is formed by the full lexical verb, it is a verbal predicate (Skujiņa 2007: 441). If the predicate is formed by a functional verb expressing only or mostly a grammatical meaning, it is considered to be a copula, which is used together with a nominal or an adverb to form a nominal or adverbial predicate.

**Simple verbal predicates in bipartite sentences**

A simple verbal predicate is usually formed by a verb in a finite form (see, e.g., (3.2.17–3.2.27)).

A simple verbal predicate in the infinitive is found in three communicatively and semantically different types of sentences.

First of all, in categorical command sentences:

(3.2.68) **Visiem gulēt!**

everyone.DAT.PL.M sleep.INF

‘Everyone to bed!’ (www.spoki.lv)

Second of all, in interrogative sentences with a modal meaning indicating necessity or possibility:

(3.2.69) **Ko man jautās darba intervijā un ko man atbildēt?**

what.ACC I.DAT ask.FUT.3 job.GEN.M interview.LOC.F

‘What will they ask in the job interview, and what should I answer?’

(www.workingday.lv)

Third of all, in sentences describing an impossible action:

(3.2.70) **Kur nu man līdzināties jaunajiem ar viņu izglītību un zināšanām.**

where PTCL I.DAT be_like.INF young_one.DAT.PL.M

with he.GEN.PL.M education.INS.F and knowledge.INS.PL.F

‘How could I measure up to those young ones with their education and knowledge!’ (www.procesilatvija.lv)

(3.2.71) **Man uz atpūtu necerēt ...**

I.DAT for rest.ACC.F not_hope.INF

‘No hope for any rest for me ...’ (D. Zigmonte)

These sentences contain an irrealis modal meaning, which can be deduced from the syntactic construction as a whole, rather than from any particular grammatical form.
Compound verbal predicates in bipartite sentences

The compound verbal predicate is formed by a copula and an infinitive:

(3.2.72) *Taisnīgā cīnā krist ir tomēr uzvarēt.*

just.loc.f fight.loc.f fall.inf be.cop.prs.3 still

be_victorious.inf

‘Dying in a just battle is still a victory.’ (C)

In this type of sentence, the infinitive also functions as the subject, therefore, the syntactic function of the word depends on the word order, i.e., the predicate follows the subject of the sentence. These sentences have the meaning of aphorisms, therefore, they often do not possess all the paradigmatic tense forms and the copula is used in the present tense.

In addition to the verb *būt* ‘to be’, the verb *nozīmēt* ‘to mean’ can also be used in the function of a copula:

(3.2.72) *Dzimto zemi mīlēt nozīmē arī to apstrādāt.*

native.acc.f land.acc.f love.inf mean.prs.3 also it.acc.f cultivate.inf

‘Love for one’s native land means its cultivation, too.’ (*Lubānas Ziņas*)

The compound verbal predicate is used in sentences containing a copula in the past or future tense form, as the present tense form of the copula is impossible in such sentences. Interrogative sentences have the meaning of necessity or possibility:

(3.2.73) *Ko citu man bija teikt?*

what.acc else.acc.m I.dat be.cop.pst.3 say.inf

‘What else could I say?’ (C)

(3.2.74) *Vai man būs tevi aizlaist?*

Q I.dat be.cop.fut.3 you.acc.sg let go.inf

‘Shall I let you go?’ (I. Šķipsna)

Imperative sentences express necessity:

(3.2.75) *Jums būs darīt tā un ne citādi.*

you.dat.pl be.cop.fut.3 do.inf thus and not otherwise

‘You are to do it exactly like this and not otherwise.’ (C)

(3.2.76) *Te tad nu arī mums būs palikt.*

here then ptcl also we.dat be.cop.fut.3 stay.inf

‘This is where we stay.’ (P. Bankovskis)

In the function of the subject of the sentence, we can encounter not only the speaker or the addressee, but also the name of an inanimate object:

(3.2.77) *Dāvanai būs būt!*

present.dat.f be.cop.fut.3 be.inf

‘There shall be presents!’ (*Mans Mazais*)
Negative sentences mostly express prohibition:

(3.2.78) Tev *nebūs* par mani visu

you.DAT.SG not_be.COP.FUT.3 about I.ACC all.ACC.M

*zināt!*

know.INF

‘You are not to know everything about me.’ (www.apollo.lv)

Thus, first, the formally implemented copula is not possible in the present; second, sentences with and without copulas are semantically different, therefore, a fully formed system in the present, past, and future tenses in many cases is impossible; and third, sentences with a copula (especially in the future tense) are stylistically expressive. This allows us to presume that sentences with and without copulas form two different sentence types (for more on this see Lokmane 2014a, 2016).

**Complex verbal predicates in bipartite sentences**

The complex verbal predicate is formed with a finite modal or aspectual verb in an auxiliary meaning together with an infinitive. The finite form expresses the modal and aspectual (therefore, grammatical) meanings, while the action itself is described by the lexical verb in its infinitive form:

(3.2.79) Mazais *noteikti* *gribēja* *gulēt.*

little.NOM.M definitely want.PST.3 sleep.INF

‘The little one must have been sleepy.’ (C)

(3.2.80) Mēs *sākām* *runāt* par Raini.

we.NOM start.PST.1PL talk.INF about Rainis.ACC.M

‘We started talking about Rainis.’ (C)

(3.2.81) Viņai *izdevās* *pagriezt* atslēgu.

she.DAT manage.PST.3 turn.INF key.ACC.F

‘She managed to turn the key.’ (C)

The verb in the infinitive has the main function in the sentence both semantically and from the point of view of argument structure. The auxiliary only adds semantic nuance to the action described in the sentence.

However, in some cases the argument structure is determined not only by the infinitive but also by a modal or aspectual auxiliary which proves that the predicate is indeed a complex one. First of all, this can be seen when the sentence is transformed into the passive voice, with the object of the infinitive turning into the subject in the nominative case that agrees with the aspectual auxiliary:

(3.2.82) a. *Pils* ir *sākta* būvēt

castle.NOM.F be.AUX.PRS.3 begin.PTCP.NOM.F build.INF

1214. gadā.

1214 year.LOC.M

‘The construction of the castle began in 1214.’ (www.travelnews.lv)
A similar sentence in the passive with the modal auxiliary:

(3.2.83) a. Zinātniskie pētījumi pat nav mēģināti izskaidrot.
scientific.nom.pl.m research.nom.pl.m even not_be.aux.prs.3 attempt.ptcp.nom.pl.m explain.inf 'There was not even an attempt to explain the scientific research.'

(3.2.82) b. Pili ir sākts būvēt 1214. gadā.
castle.acc.f be.aux.prs.3 begin.ptcp.nom.m build.inf 1214 year.loc 'The construction of the castle began in 1214.'

Second of all, another argument that would argue in favor of the complex nature of the predicate is offered by sentences that have their modal or aspectual auxiliary in the debitive but the object of the infinitive – in the nominative. Although language policy requires one to use the object in the accusative if it follows an infinitive, it is not infrequent to find sentences like (3.2.84) and (3.2.85) which show that speakers perceive the predicate as a complex unit and use the nominative just like in the other cases where the predicate is in the debitive mood:

(3.2.84) Tas jāsāk darīt tieši tagad.
it.nom.m deb.start do.inf exactly now 'It must be started now.' (C)

(3.2.85) Valsts institūcijām ir jāspēj sasniegt mērķis.
state.gen.f institution.dat.pl.f be.aux.prs.3 deb.be_able reach.inf objective.nom.m 'State institutions must be able to reach their objective.' (C)

Third of all, in sentences with a negated modal auxiliary, the object of the infinitive, i.e., the negative pronoun, is in the genitive case. The use of the genitive in this case is licensed by the negated auxiliary rather than the infinitive:

(3.2.86) Bet tur nekā nevar darīt.
But there nothing.gen not.can.prs.3 do.inf 'But there is nothing one can do about it.' (C)
The modal meaning of the auxiliary can be combined with other lexico-semantic elements. The infinitive can be used after several verbs, which have a modal element in their meaning. The modal meaning of these words is not as important as their lexical meaning, therefore, they can be used as full lexical verbs, as well. In Latvian, these words are as follows: *atzit* ‘to recognize’, *gatavoties* ‘to get ready’, *taisīties* ‘to prepare’, *nodomāt* ‘to intend’, *nolemt* ‘to decide’, *mēgt* ‘to be in the habit of’, *nevižot* ‘to not care’, *neklatīties* ‘to not fare’, *dergties* ‘to be disgusted’, *patikt* ‘to like’, *pierast* ‘to get used to’, *mācēt* ‘to know’, *prast* ‘to know how’, *iemācīties* ‘to learn’, *baidīties* ‘to be afraid’, *kautrēties* ‘to be shy’, and others. The modal meaning is enhanced in co-occurrence with the infinitive:

(3.2.87) *Izaugusi tepat jūrmalā, viņa*

`grow.ptcp.nom.f right_here seaside.loc.f she.nom`

`kopš bērniņas pierada justies`

`since childhood.gen.f get_used_to.pst.3 feel.INF`

`kā zīvs ūdenī.`

`like fish.nom.f water.loc.m`

‘Having grown up right here at the seaside, she was used to feeling like a fish in water.’ (L. Bridaka)

(3.2.88) *Filmas skatīties viņš atzina*

`film.acc.pl.f watch.inf he.nom admit.pst.3`

`tikai svētdienās un savus ieradumus`

`only Sunday.loc.pl.f and own.acc.pl.m habit.acc.pl.m`

`reti kad mainīja.`

`rarely when change.pst.3`

‘He would admit to watching films only on Sundays and he rarely changed his habits.’ (I. Grebzde)

**Verbal predicates in subjectless sentences**

The verbal predicate in a subjectless sentence is formed with a verb in the third person. Most often these are impersonal verbs that describe natural phenomena:

(3.2.89) *Bija kārtīgi uzsalis.*

`be.aux.pst.3 thoroughly freeze.ptcp.nom.m`

‘It had frozen all over.’ (C)

Verbal predicates are formed using auditory or visual perception verbs if the source of the sound or smell is not mentioned in the sentence, due to it not being known or not being important to the speaker:

(3.2.90) *Būdā burbulojā, sprakšķēja, gruzdēja.*

`hut.loc.f bubble.pst.3 crackle.pst.3 smolder.pst.3`

`vīra, čurķstēja.`

`boil.pst.3 sizzle.pst.3`

‘It was bubbling, crackling, smoldering, boiling, sizzling in the hut.’ (N. Ikstena)
Zem kokiem smaržo pēc trūdošām lapām. leaf.DAT.PL.F 'It smells of moldering leaves under the trees.' (C)

The function of the predicate can be taken on by the verbs naming the visual percept:

Man jau dubultojas. I.DAT already double.PRS.3 'I have started seeing double already.' (C)

Liepāja naktīs spokojas. Liepāja.LOC.F night.LOC.PL.F haunt.PRS.3 'Liepāja is haunted at night.' (C)

Acīs miglojās. eye.LOC.PL.F be_mist.PST.3 'My eyes misted over.' (C)

As can be seen in (3.2.92–3.2.97), this type of expansion is usually taken on by the name of the experiencer in the dative case and the extender in the locative, which provides more precise information about the particular organ or part of the body where the feeling is localized. Similarly, we can also form bipartite constructions where the part of the body takes on the function of the subject of the sentence:

No nepatīkamajām pārdomām iesāpējās galva. from unpleasant.DAT.PL.F contemplation.DAT.PL.F ache.PST.3 head.NOM.F 'The unpleasant thoughts prompted a headache.' (C)

The nominative case indicates that the entire body is involved, while the locative case signals partial involvement. The nominative and locative arguments are
quasi-compulsory syntactic elements. The indefinite pronouns *kas* ‘what, who’, *kaut kas* ‘something’ are frequently used as substitutes for an unknown source of a process or state:

(3.2.99) *Manī kaut kas smeldz.*

I.LOC something **ache**.PRS.3

‘Something is aching inside of me.’ (www.sargs.lv)

Some modal verbs can be used as full lexical verbs with the function of a predicate, signifying the accidental nature of the action:

(3.2.100) *Vispār visu ko gribas.*

generally all.ACC.M what.ACC **want**.PRS.3

‘Just in general, one wants all sorts of things.’ (C)

(3.2.101) *Šoreiz laimējās.*

this_time **have**.LACK.PST.3

‘This time (we) were lucky.’ (C)

Three-person verbs can function as predicates when they can take on the name of the agent in bipartite sentences, if the agent is generic or unspecified. The predicate is formed by the verb in the passive:

(3.2.102) *Ar mašīnīti diezgan ripināts pa noziedzīgiem ceļiem.*

with car.ins.f *enough roll**.PTCP.NOM.M along criminal.DAT.PL.M road.DAT.PL.M

‘The car has been involved in many a crime.’ (A. Bels)

An infinitive verbal predicate can occur in subjectless sentences with a necessitative or imperative meaning:

(3.2.103) *Kā atrast īstu mīlestību?*

how **find**.INF true.ACC.F love.ACC.F

‘How to find true love?’ (C)

(3.2.104) *Ievērot klušumu!*

**observe**.INF silence.ACC.M

‘Silence is to be observed!’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)

### 3.2.4 Nominal sentences

The nominal predicate is usually a compound predicate, formed by a copula and a nominal or its substitute – a noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, or declinable participle (Skujina 2007: 257). A copula is the finite form of a verb expressing its grammatical meaning. For this reason, it has a leading role in expressing predicativity. With respect to lexical meaning, the nominal part of the predicate plays the more important role.
In bipartite sentences, a declinable participle can form either a verbal or nominal predicate depending on whether it primarily describes the result of an action (verbal) or the characteristics of an action (adjectival). The nominal predicate is usually formed by the present declinable participle. This can be partly explained by the fact that these participles do not form analytical forms of the verb (see Section 2.5.1):

(3.2.106) Lēmums ir galīgs un nepārsūdzams.
‘The decision is final and non-appealable.’ (C)

The nominal predicate can be formed also by the past declinable participle, if it is functioning as an adjective. Whether it is used as an adjective or not, depends on the semantics of the verb and its distribution:

(3.2.107) Bērns ir uztraukts un nemierīgs.
‘The child is worried and agitated.’ (www.mammamuntetiem.lv)

The predicates formed by the present declinable participle with a modal meaning are borderline cases between the verbal and nominal predicate types:

(3.2.108) Te nekas vairs nav līdzams.
‘Nothing can be done here.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

The finite form of the verb būt ‘to be’, which expresses the grammatical meanings, is most often used to form the copula. In modern Latvian, the verb kļūt ‘to become’ can also be used as a copula:

(3.2.109) Meistari kļuva domīgi.
‘The repairmen became puzzled.’ (C)

In specific environments, several different linking verbs can take on the function of a copula. Elsewhere, these verbs can also be used as full or lexical verbs (Freimane 1985: 56).

First of all, these are verbs describing the characteristics of the subject (as is done by the copula būt ‘to be’): izdoties ‘to succeed’, padoties ‘to excel at’, iznākt ‘to end up’, izrādīties ‘to turn out’, justies ‘to feel’, palikt ‘to stay’, stāvēt ‘to stand’, turēties ‘to hold on’, pieturēties ‘to remain’, nesties ‘to rush’.
‘Athletes will be athletes.’ (C)

‘The tree stands quiet and shimmering.’ (B. Veisberga)

‘Dinner is going to be ready soon.’ (www.pictame.com)

‘The night is getting dark.’ (www.jaunagaita.net)

‘This kind of answer seems strange.’ (C)

‘Both pictures look alike.’ (C)

‘Ķurzēns remained frozen, all quiet and speechless.’ (A. Eglītis)
Second, the syntactic function of the words preceding and following the verb must be taken into account. In (3.2.117), the verb gulēt ‘to stay in bed’ does not have an important informative meaning, as it is not unusual for people who are sick to be lying down. For this reason, it can be considered to be functioning as a copula. On the other hand, in (3.2.118), the same verb is used with its full lexical meaning and forms a collocation gulēt mājās ‘to stay at home’. The word slims ‘ill’ fulfills the function of a secondary predicate in this example.

(3.2.117)  
**Vectēvs** gulī loti slims.  
grandfather.nom.m stay_in_bed.cop.prs.3 very ill.nom.m  
‘Grandfather is in bed, very sick.’ (www.spoki.lv)

(3.2.118)  
**Bērns** atkal divas nedēļas gulī mājās slims.  
child.nom.m again two.acc.pl.f week.acc.pl.f stay_in_bed.cop.prs.3 home.loc.pl.m ill.nom.m  
‘The child has stayed at home sick again for two weeks.’  
(www.mammamunetiem.lv)

The zero form of the copula does not change the type of the compound nominal predicate:

(3.2.119)  
Zeme [ir] stingra, gan neiegrims.  
ground.nom.f [be.cop.prs.3] firm.nom.f surely not_cave_in.fut.3  
‘The ground is firm, it will surely not cave in.’ (C)

Quite often the declinable forms of the words depending on the nominal (noun or pronoun) can also form part of the nominal predicate. In this case, the predicate does not agree with the subject of the sentence, thus, there is no formal marker of the predicative relationship. Nouns are found in this function in the genitive, instrumental, and locative cases. The locative is the most productive in this regard, which can be explained by the tendency of the locative to adverbalize:

(3.2.120)  
Vairums dejotāju bija kostīmos un maskās.  
majority.nom.m dancer.gen.pl be.cop.pst.3 costume.loc.pl.m and mask.loc.pl.f  
‘The majority of the dancers wore costumes and masks.’ (A. Eglītis)

If the predicate contains a locative describing the state of the subject, the sentence is marginally adverbial, but if the noun has the full paradigm, it can be considered nominal:

(3.2.121)  
Valsts ir pārādā policistiem.  
state.nom.f be.cop.prs.3 debt.loc.m policeman.dat.pl.m  
‘The state is in debt to the policemen.’ (C)
(3.2.122) *Abi vienmēr ir badā.*

both.NOM.PL.M constantly be.COP.PRS.3 hunger.LOC.M

‘They are both constantly hungry.’ (C)

The genitive or compound genitive, which describes a characteristic feature of the subject of the sentence, can have the function of a nominal predicate:

(3.2.123) *Korpuss ir plastmasas vai vieglmetāla.*

body.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 plastic.GEN.F or light металл.GEN.M

‘The body is made of plastic or light alloy.’ (C)

(3.2.124) *Piegāde ir bezmaksas.*

delivery.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 free.GEN.F

‘Delivery is free.’ (C)

The instrumental case functions as part of the nominal predicate:

(3.2.125) *Bokseris ir ar raksturu.*

boxer.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 with character.INS.M

‘The boxer has character.’ (C)

(3.2.126) *No ielas puses nams ir ar diviem stāviem.*

from street.GEN.F side.GEN.F building.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 with two.INS.PL.M floor.INS.PL.M

‘From the street side, the building has two floors.’ (C)

A nominal predicate can be formed by a prepositional phrase:

(3.2.127) *Tagad sēnes ir bez tārpiem.*

now mushroom.NOM.PL.F be.COP.PRS.3 without worm.DAT.PL.M

‘Now the mushrooms are without worms.’ (C)

(3.2.128) *Industrija ir kļuvusi par zinātnes mērķi un tās attaisnojumu.*

industry.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 become.PTCP.NOM.F PREP science.GEN.F target.ACC.M and it.GEN.F existence.GEN.F reason.ACC.M

‘The industry has become a target of science and its reason for existence.’
(R. Mūks)

A nominal predicate can contain a comparative phrase:

(3.2.129) *Viņš ir kā zibensnovedējs gan ģimenē, gan skolā.*

he.NOM be.COP.PRS.3 like lightning_rod.NOM.M family.LOC.F CONJ school.LOC.F

‘He is like a lighting rod both at home and at school.’ (C)
A nominal predicate containing a modal or aspectual auxiliary is a complex nominal predicate:

(3.2.130) Viņa grib būt tieši
she.NOM want.PRS.3 be.COP.INF precisely
operas režisore.
opera.Gen.F director.NOM.F
‘She wants to be precisely an opera stage manager.’ (C)

**In a subjectless sentence, a nominal predicate** is formed by an adjective in the nominative case and a copula.

These predicates describe natural phenomena, which are climatic or meteorological in character as well as those connected with the change between day and night, seasons, and so on:

(3.2.131) Tur taču ir tumšs!
there however be.COP.PRS.3 dark.NOM.M
‘But it is really dark there!’ (C)

(3.2.132) Nedēļas otrajā pusē atkal kļuva siltāks.
week.Gen.F second.LOC.F half.LOC.F again become.COP.PST.3 warm.CMP.NOM.M
‘In the second half of the week, it became warmer again.’ (C)

The zero form of the copula does not change the predicate type:

(3.2.133) Mājā [ir] tumšs.
house.LOC.F [be.COP.PRS.3] dark.NOM.M
‘It is dark inside the house.’ (C)

Just like in bipartite sentences, the modal or aspectual auxiliaries can form a part of the predicate, changing it into a complex predicate:

(3.2.134) Sāk kļūt siltāks.
start.PRS.3 become.COP.INF warm.CMP.NOM.M
‘It is starting to become warmer.’ (C)

### 3.2.5 Adverbial sentences

The adverbial predicate is usually a compound predicate, formed by a copula and an adverb (Skujiņa 2007: 17). The capacity of the adverb to form the predicate is semantically limited. Only those adverbs (predicative adverbs of state verbs), which have meanings related to the meanings of the words used as predicates (verbs and adjectives), can typically form the predicate.

(3.2.135) Tev tas ir vienalga.
you.DAT.SG it.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 indifferent
‘It does not matter to you.’ (C)
These predicates can be formed by adverbs, which express an evaluation or a physical or psychological state:

(3.2.136) \( \text{Tas} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{garlaicīgi.} \)
\[ \text{that.NOM.M} \quad \text{be.COP.PRS.3} \quad \text{boring} \]
‘That is boring.’ (C)

Adverbs of degree:

(3.2.137) \( \text{Ogu} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{maz.} \)
\[ \text{berry.GEN.PL.F} \quad \text{be.COP.PRS.3} \quad \text{few} \]
‘There are few berries.’ (C)

And some adverbs of manner:

(3.2.138) \( \text{Te} \quad \text{viss} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{godīgi.} \)
\[ \text{here everything.NOM.M} \quad \text{be.COP.PRS.3} \quad \text{honestly} \]
‘Everything is done honestly here.’ (C)

Not all word types can function as subjects in adverbial sentences. Subjects most often are indefinite pronouns describing the entire situation (\( \text{tas} \) ‘that’, \( \text{viss} \) ‘everything’), as in (3.2.136) and (3.2.138), or by a verb in the infinitive:

(3.2.139) \( \text{Strādāt} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{droši.} \)
\[ \text{work.INF} \quad \text{be.COP.PRS.3} \quad \text{safe} \]
‘It is safe to work.’ (C)

A noun can be the subject of a sentence if the adverb describes a state:

(3.2.140) \( \text{Nu} \quad \text{viss} \quad \text{darbs} \quad \text{bija} \quad \text{pagalam.} \)
\[ \text{now all.NOM.M} \quad \text{work.NOM.M} \quad \text{be.COP.PST.3} \quad \text{lost} \]
‘Now the whole job was in vain.’ (C)

These types of sentences can be considered to be on the borderline with nominal sentences if the predicate contains a noun form describing a state and if this form has also partly adverbialized:

(3.2.141) \( \text{Esmu} \quad \text{pilnīgā} \quad \text{sajūsmā.} \)
\[ \text{be.COP.PRS.1} \quad \text{complete.LOC.F} \quad \text{delight.LOC.F} \]
‘I am completely delighted.’ (C)

An adverbial clause can also contain a copula in its zero form, which does not change the predicate type:

(3.2.142) \( \text{Un} \quad \text{tomēr} \quad \text{viss} \quad \text{[ir]} \quad \text{citādi.} \)
\[ \text{and still everything.NOM.M} \quad \text{[be.COP.PRS.3]} \quad \text{different} \]
‘And still, everything has changed.’ (C)

If an adverbial predicate attracts a modal or aspectual auxiliary, it forms a complex adverbial predicate:

(3.2.143) \( \text{Nākošnedēl} \quad \text{viss} \quad \text{var} \quad \text{būt} \quad \text{citādi.} \)
\[ \text{next_week everything.NOM.M} \quad \text{be.able.PRS.3} \quad \text{be.COP.INF} \quad \text{different} \]
‘Next week everything may be different.’ (C)
An adverbial predicate in a subjectless sentence describes physical sensations or mental states:

(3.2.144) Saulītē jau ir silti.

sun.loc.f already be.cop.prs.3 warm

‘It is already warm in the sunshine.’ (C)

(3.2.145) Ar viņiem vienkārši nebija interesanti.

with they.ins.pl.m just not_be.cop.pst.3 interesting

‘Being with them was just not interesting.’ (V. Freimane)

### 3.2.6 Simple sentence subjects

A subject of a sentence is normally a noun or its substitute (an adjective, numeral, pronoun, or declinable participle) in a particular case (Skujīna 2007: 390). Subjects are typically in the nominative case; however, in Latvian it is also possible for subjects to be in several oblique cases.

The subject of a sentence is the genitive case form of a noun or its substitute in sentences with the verb *nebūt* ‘to not be’ or the verbs *trūkt* ‘to lack’, *pietikt* ‘to suffice’ in the predicate:

(3.2.146) Konkrētu plānu man nebija.

concrete.gen.pl.m plan.gen.pl.m I.dat not_be.pst.3

‘I did not have any concrete plans.’ (C)

(3.2.147) Vai tad Rīgas policijai trūkst darba?

Q really Rīga.gen.f police.dat.f lack.prs.3 work.gen.m

‘Do the Rīga police really not have enough work?’ (C)

(3.2.148) Vietas pietiek visiem.

space.gen.f suffice.prs.3 everyone.dat.m

‘There is enough space for everyone.’ (C)

The subject of a sentence is the dative case form of a noun or its substitute in three different types of sentences. First of all, in sentences with a predicate in the debitive mood:

(3.2.149) Lēmumam jābūt motivētam.

decision.dat.m deb.be.aux. justify.ptcp.dat.m

‘The decision has to be justified.’ (C)

Second of all, in sentences with a complex predicate, containing a modal or aspectual auxiliary:

(3.2.150) Man iepatikās stāstīt par savu dzīvi.

I.dat start_enjoying.pst.3 tell.inf about own.acc.f life.acc.f

‘I started to enjoy talking about my life.’ (C)
Third of all, in sentences containing a predicate in the infinitive:

(3.2.151) Laikam jau man
to
perhaps already I.DAT this.ACC.M
nesaprast.
not_understand.INF
‘Perhaps this is not for me to understand.’ (C)

The reasons for treating dative forms as grammatical subjects of sentences, are as follows:

1) semantic reasons, that is, these dative forms have an agent meaning,
2) formal agreement with the nominal predicate,
3) paradigmatic criteria.

If we recognize the debitive mood as part of the morphological paradigm of the verb form, then, syntactically, sentences in the indicative mood and the debitive mood belong to one and the same sentence pattern. In the oblique forms of this syntactic paradigm, all the arguments maintain their original functions (for discussion of differential or non-canonical subject marking in Latvian see Fennells 1995; Holvoet 2013; Holvoet & Grzybowska 2014; Holvoet & Nau 2014a; Seržant 2013).

Occasionally, the subject position is occupied by a prepositional phrase with pa ‘along, by’ expressing a distributive meaning or rare/dispersed occurrence (see also Holvoet 2011b, 18):

(3.2.152) Tas ļautu iebaudīt pa
to
that.NOM.M allow.COND enjoy.INF PREP
glāzītei.
glass.DAT.F.
‘That would allow one to enjoy a fine glass of alcohol.’ (C)

Infinitive forms are used as sentence subjects quite often. Instead of just identifying the separate realia, an infinitive together with its arguments (if any) describes the entire situation, while the predicate expresses an evaluation or qualification of the situation. Use of the infinitive as a sentence subject occurs in four different types of sentences.

First of all, an infinitive can function as a subject in verbal sentences where the compound predicate is formed by a copula together with an infinitive:

(3.2.153) Mīlēt ir atdot sevi pilnibā.
love.INF be.COP.PRS.3 surrender.INF self.ACC fully
‘To love is to surrender oneself fully.’ (C)

Second of all, an infinitive functioning as a subject can be found in verbal sentences with a simple predicate in its passive form:

(3.2.154) Šeit peldēties ir aizliegs.
here swim.INF be.AUX.PRS.3 forbid.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It is forbidden to swim here.’ (C)
Third of all, subjects containing infinitives can be found in nominal sentences, if the predicate is formed by a copula with a nominal, which is most often a noun, less often an adjective in the superlative degree:

(3.2.155) \[ \text{Toties } \text{ģimnāzijā } \text{strādāt } \text{ir } \text{viens prieks.} \]
however high.school.LOC.F work.INF be.COP.PRS.3 one.NOM.M delight.NOM.M
‘Working at the high school, however, is a delight.’ (C)

(3.2.156) \[ \text{Visgrūtākais } \text{ir } \text{izlikties } \text{un } \text{klusēt.} \]
difficult.SPL.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 pretend.INF and be_quiet.INF
‘The most difficult thing is to pretend and stay quiet.’ (www.dziesmas.lv)

Fourth of all, infinitives functioning as sentence subjects are possible in adverbial sentences formed by a copula and an adverb:

(3.2.157) \[ \text{Garāžā } \text{dzīvot } \text{ir jautri.} \]
garage.LOC.F live.INF be.COP.PRS.3 cheerfully
‘Living in the garage is fun.’ (C)

If an infinitive functions as a subject, the predicate will have an evaluative meaning in nominal as well as adverbial sentences. Additionally, this evaluation will refer to the experiencer or agent, stating that something for that individual is easy or difficult, good or bad, etc.

An infinitive sentence subject can also marginally function as a secondary predicate, if that sentence has a modal meaning:

(3.2.158) \[ \text{Audzēkņiem } \text{ir } \text{pienākums } \text{atbildēt } \text{par savu rīcību.} \]
student.DAT.PL.M be.COP.PRS.3 responsibility.NOM.M answer.INF for own.ACC.F action.ACC.F
‘The students have the responsibility to answer for their actions.’ (C)

It is also possible to develop a compound subject for a sentence formed by a copula in the infinitive and a dative or a prepositional phrase:

(3.2.159) \[ \text{Būt } \text{cilvēkam } \text{grūti.} \]
be.COP.INF human.DAT.M difficult
‘It is difficult to be human.’ (C)

(3.2.160) \[ \text{Būt } \text{par } \text{upuri } \text{dažreiz } \text{ir } \text{loti } \text{izdevīgi.} \]
be.COP.INF as victim.ACC.M sometimes be.COP.PRS.3 very convenient
‘To be a victim is sometimes very convenient.’ (C)
Sentences containing an infinitive can also be considered verbal sentences with a complex predicate and an unrealized sentence subject in the dative case:

(3.2.161) *Troksni [ikvienam] ir grūti strādāt.*

noise.LOC.M [everybody.DAT] be.COP.PRS.3 hard work.INF

‘It is hard (for anyone) to work in a noisy environment.’ (C)

The subject of this sentence type is understood as either a generic agent or experiencer, or, alternatively, it may be deduced from context.

### 3.2.7 A list of basic simple sentence patterns

Sentence patterns can be depicted with symbols denoting the part of speech and morphological form of the subject and predicate. If necessary, the pattern can also contain some generalized semantic features (ANIM ‘animate’, MOD ‘modal’, QUANT ‘having a quantitative meaning’). If the pattern contains only some specific lexemes, these can also be indicated.

Not all minimal patterns can be used with equal flexibility for sentence development. There are some patterns that can be realized quite freely, limited only by the rules of semantic compatibility. Other patterns can be realized only if their components belong to specific semantic groups. There are also patterns that can be realized only with specific lexemes.

The sentence pattern depicts only the basic form of the paradigm. If necessary, the symbolic depiction can be made more concrete, for example, the generalized pattern $\text{NM}_{\text{NOM}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}}$ can be made more specific using its concrete version $\text{N}_{\text{NOM}}^{\text{ANIM}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}}$ or $\text{N}_{\text{NOM}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}3}$. By specifying the generalized pattern, we can develop the variants of the pattern. It is possible to develop patterns and their variants, if necessary, also the subvariants, with a different level of abstraction. The sequence of components depicts the so-called direct word order, which in informative sentences is stylistically and emotionally neutral.

A dash is placed between the symbols representing the components of the sentence in the minimal two-component patterns: $\text{NM}_{\text{NOM}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}}$. If a component is formed by an indivisible word group, the + sign is used.

**Bipartite sentences**

**Verbal sentences**

$\text{NM}_{\text{NOM}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}}$

(3.2.162) *Talkas notika arī pirms tam.*

joint.work.NOM.PL.F happen.PST.3 also before that.DAT.M

‘People used to help each other also in the past.’ (C)

$\text{NM}_{\text{GEN}} - \text{v}_{\text{FIN}3}$ [nebūt ‘to not be’, (ne)trūkt ‘to (not) lack’, (ne)pietikt ‘to (not) suffice’]

(3.2.163) *Appēmības notrūkst.*

determination.NOM.F not_lack.PRS.3

‘There is no shortage of determination here.’ (C)
(3.2.164) Vietas pietiek visiem.

There is enough space for everyone.’ (C)

(3.2.165) Konkrētu plānu man nebija.

‘I did not have any concrete plans.’ (C)

(3.2.166) Tik un tā ir ko darīt.

‘Even so, there is enough to do.’ (C)

(3.2.167) Pagaidām pietiek ko darīt.

‘For now there is enough to do.’ (C)

(3.2.168) Dzīvot ir ciest.

‘To live is to suffer.’ (C)

(3.2.169) Par to domāt nebija

‘Thinking about it was not permitted.’ (C)

(3.2.170) Kā mums reaģēt?

‘How do we react?’ (C)

Nominal sentences

Pattern 1

This pattern can have several variants and subvariants.

Variant 1

Further subvariants can be identified according to the case of the noun used in the formation of the predicate.
NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} N\textsubscript{nom}

(3.2.171) *Students visos laikos ir*

\textit{student.nom.m all.loc.pl.m time.loc.pl.m be.cop.prs.3 students.}

‘The student will always be a student.’ (C)

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} N\textsubscript{gen}

(3.2.171) *Grīda barakās ir*

\textit{floor.nom.f barrack.loc.pl.f be.cop.prs.3 koka.}

‘The floor in the barracks is made of wood.’ (C)

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} N\textsubscript{loc}

(3.2.172) *Bērns ir nomodā.*

\textit{child.nom.m be.cop.prs.3 awake.loc.m}

‘The child is awake.’ (C)

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} PREP N

(3.2.173) *Siliņš droši vien būtu klūvis*

\textit{Siliņš.nom.m probably be.aux.cond become.ptcp.nom.m par skolotāju.}

PREP teacher.acc.m

‘Siliņš probably would have become a teacher.’ (C)

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} PTCL [kā ‘like’] + NM\textsubscript{nom}

(3.2.174) *Zeme ir kā ripa.*

\textit{Earth.nom.f be.cop.prs.3 like disc.nom.f}

‘The Earth is like a disc.’ (C)

Variant 2

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} ADJ

The subalternatives of variant 2:

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} ADJ\textsubscript{nom}

(3.2.175) *Naktis klūva vēsākas.*

\textit{night.nom.pl.f become.cop.pst.3 cool.nom.pl.f}

‘The nights were getting cooler.’ (C)

NM\textsubscript{nom} - V\textsubscript{fin, cop} PREP ADJ

(3.2.176) *Publika tur būs par jaunu.*

\textit{audience.nom.pl.f there be.cop.fut.3 prep young.acc.f}

‘The audience will be too young there.’ (C)
Variant 3

\[ NM_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{PTCP}_{\text{nom}} \]

(3.2.177) Šis albums nav zemē
this.NOM.M album.NOM.M not_be.COP.PRS.3 ground.LOC.F
metams.
throw.PTCP.NOM.M
‘This album is not bad.’ (C)

Variant 4

\[ NM_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{PRON}_{\text{nom}} \]

(3.2.178) Tas arī ir viss.
that.NOM.M also be.COP.PRS.3 all.NOM.M
‘That is all.’ (C)

Variant 5

\[ NM_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{NUM}_{\text{nom}} \]

(3.2.179) Spēlētāji bija četri.
player.NOM.PL.M be.COP.PST.3 four.NOM.PL.M
‘There were four players.’ (C)

Pattern 2

\[ NM_{\text{gen}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{NM}_{\text{quant}} \]

(3.2.180) Sarežģītu situāciju nebija
complicated.GEN.PL.F situation.GEN.PL.F not_be.COP.PST.3
mazums.
shortage.NOM.M
‘There was no shortage of complicated situations.’ (C)

Pattern 3

\[ V_{\text{inf}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{NM} \]

Variant 1

\[ V_{\text{inf}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{N}_{\text{nom}} \]

(3.2.181) Tagad tavs pienākums ir
now your.NOM.M duty.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3
mācīt dzīvit citiem.
teach.INF live.INF other.DAT.PL.M
‘Now it is your duty to teach others how to live.’ (D. Zigmone)

Variant 2

\[ V_{\text{inf}} - V_{\text{fin}, \text{cop}} \text{ADJ}_{\text{nom}} \]

(3.2.182) Galvenais ir sākt.
important.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 begin.INF
‘The most important thing is to begin.’ (C)
Variant 3

$$V_{\text{INF}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP PRON}}\text{ NOM}$$

(3.2.183)  Pārpeldēt pāri Daugavai viņam
swim_across.INF across Daugava.DAT.F he.DAT.M
nav nekas.
not_be.PRS.3 nothing.NOM.M
‘Swimming across the River Daugava is nothing to him.’
(Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze)

Variant 4

$$V_{\text{INF}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP PTCP}}\text{ NOM}$$

(3.2.184)  Kaitināt viņus nav ieteicams.
annoy.INF they.ACC.M not_be.COP.PRS.3 advise.PTCP.NOM.M
‘It is not advisable to annoy them.’ (C)

Variant 5

$$V_{\text{INF}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP PREP N}}$$

(3.2.185)  Jautāt sev būs kļuvis par
ask.INF self.DAT be.AUX.FUT.3 become.PTCP.NOM.M PREP
ieradumu.
habit.ACC.M
‘To question oneself will have become a habit.’ (C)

Pattern 4

$$\text{PRON}\text{ NOM} - V_{\text{FIN, COP PRON PREP}}\text{ NM}$$

(3.2.186)  Kas tā būs par brangu
what.NOM that.NOM.F be.COP.FUT.3 PREP jolly_good.ACC.F
saimnieci!
hostess.ACC.F
‘What a jolly good hostess she will be!’ (C)

Adverbial sentences

Pattern 1

$$\text{PRON}\text{ NOM} - V_{\text{FIN, COP ADV}}$$

(3.2.187)  Mums tas likās smieklīgi.
we.DAT it.NOM.M seem.PST.3 ridiculous
‘It seemed ridiculous to us.’ (C)

Pattern 2

$$V_{\text{INF}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP ADV}}$$

(3.2.188)  Bija skaisti un labi dzīvot.
be.COP.PST.3 beautifully and well live.INF
‘It was nice and good to live (there).’ (D. Zigmonte)
Pattern 3

$N_{\text{nom}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP}} \text{ ADV}$

(3.2.189) *Maisam gals ir valā.*

sack.DAT.M end.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 open

‘Here comes the deluge. (lit. The end of the sack is open.)’ (C)

Pattern 4

$N_{\text{gen}} - V_{\text{FIN, COP}} \text{ ADV}^{\text{QUANT}}$

(3.2.190) *Ogu ir maz.*

berry.GEN.PL.F be.COP.PRS.3 few

‘There are few berries.’ (C)

Subjectless sentences

Verbal sentences

$V_{\text{FIN3}}$

(3.2.191) *Ik pa brīdim puteño.*

PTCL PREP moment.DAT.M be_snowstorm.PRS.3

‘Snowstorms come and go.’ (C)

(3.2.192) *Limbažu rajonā uzbrukts pasta mašīnai.*

Limbaži.GEN.PL district.LOC.M attack.PTCP.PASS.NOM.M post.GEN.M car.DAT.M

‘The postman’s car has been attacked in Limbaži District.’ (LNT)

$V_{\text{INF}}$

(3.2.193) *Ko nu tur daudz runāt un stāstit!*

what.ACC well there much say.INF and tell.INF

‘There is not much to say or tell!’ (www.facebook.com)

Nominal sentences

$V_{\text{FIN3, COP}} \text{ ADJ}_{\text{nom}}$

(3.2.194) *Klūst siltāks un gaišāks.*

become.COP.PRS.3 warm.CMP.NOM.M and light.CMP.NOM.M

‘It is getting warmer and lighter.’ (C)

$V_{\text{FIN3, COP}} \text{ PREP N}$

(3.2.195) *Bija pāri pusnaktī.*

be.COP.PST.3 over midnight.DAT.F

‘It was after midnight.’ (C)
Adverbial sentences

\( V_{\text{FIN3, cop}} \text{ ADV} \)

(3.2.196) Šodien ir gana.

\begin{align*}
\text{today} & \quad \text{be.}\text{cop.}\text{prs.3} & \quad \text{enough} \\
\end{align*}

‘Enough for today.’ (C)

### 3.2.8 Paradigm of the simple sentence

Using a paradigmatic approach in viewing the phenomena of syntax allows us to implement the systemic principle, that is simplifying the system of syntax, thereby making it more understandable while unifying an endless variety of utterances into specific types and subtypes. The paradigmatic approach is based on the supposition that the sentence structural pattern is not set in stone, that it is variable within certain limits. Thus the simple sentence, just like the word in morphology, possesses a system of forms or a paradigm.

Each paradigm has a basic form – which is the sentence in the syntactic indicative active voice form of the present indefinite.

The paradigmatic approach facilitates the classification of the parts of the sentence in cases when the form and contents of the utterance are in an asymmetric relationship, i.e., when its formal features contradict its semantic features and neither, therefore, allow us to establish the function of a part of the sentence (for example, sentences with the predicate in the debitive mood).

The two distinct approaches that are used in the study of language, the formal and the semantic, allow us to distinguish the formal paradigm relations from the semantic paradigm relations. The formal paradigm implementation allows us to omit some formal component without changing the semantics of the sentence. The semantic implementation can be seen in how the change of the meaning leads to the formal changes of the utterance.

**The formal aspect of the syntactic paradigm**

Bipartite sentences permit the regular zero form of the subject or the predicate of the sentence. The full or partial realization of the forms can be considered parts of the same paradigm. The meaning of the sentence does not change, although its stylistic or emotional expressiveness can be affected.

Two partial realization forms have been established for Latvian. First, the zero form of the subject of the sentence can occur in sentences with the predicate in the first or second person:

(3.2.197) \[ \text{[Es]} \quad \text{Neesmu ticis pie} \text{ [I]} \quad \text{not_be.aux.prs.1sg get.ptcp.nom.m prep} \text{ savas lauku mājas.} \text{ [own.gen.f country.gen.pl.m house.gen.f]} \quad \text{[I]} \quad \text{Have never gotten my own country home.’ (C)} \]
Second, the zero form of the predicate is possible in sentences containing the verb *būt* ‘to be’ in its full lexical meaning (or a synonymous verb). These sentences can be considered to be potentially verbal according to their morphological type. Potentially verbal sentences contain the unrealized verb *būt* ‘to be’ in all three lexical meanings – existential (3.2.198), locative (3.2.199) and possessive (3.2.200):

(3.2.198)  
\[
\text{Šogad [ir] tā siltā ziema.} \\
\text{this_year [be.PRS.3] that.NOM.F warm.NOM.F winter.NOM.F} \\
\text{‘This year (it is) that warm winter.’ (C)}
\]

(3.2.199)  
\[
\text{Viņam tagad ozoli [ir] tepat aiz meža.} \\
\text{he.DAT now oak.NOM.PL.M [be.PRS.3] right_here behind forest.GEN.M} \\
\text{‘Now he has oak trees right behind the forest.’ (C)}
\]

(3.2.200)  
\[
\text{Viņiem [ir] labi bīti un teksti.} \\
\text{they.DAT.PL.M [be.PRS.3] good.NOM.PL.M beat.NOM.PL.M and text.NOM.PL.M} \\
\text{‘Their beats and lyrics are good.’ (C)}
\]

The adjunct is a typical means for sentence expansion. If there is no adjunct, the noun in the nominative case will be expanded with the help of attributes:

(3.2.201)  
\[
\text{Burvīgs un dūmakains rīts.} \\
\text{charming.NOM.M and misty.NOM.M morning.NOM.M} \\
\text{‘It is a magical and misty morning.’ (C)}
\]

Potentially verbal sentences are paradigmatically limited, as they exist only in the simple present of the indicative mood.

When assessing the realization of the incomplete form, we need to take into account the possibility of the parallel use of the complete form. In the imperative mood the full form is normally not used, unless we want to sound more emphatic, or to single out the agent of the action from among other subjects:

(3.2.202)  
\[
\text{Nu nāciet jūs citi un ziņojiet!} \\
\text{well come.IMP.2PL you.NOM.PL other.NOM.PL.M and report.IMP.2PL} \\
\text{‘Come on you others, and deliver your news!’ (C)}
\]

Thus, the presence of the subject in the imperative sentence is not freely controllable.

**The semantic aspect of the syntactic paradigm**

According to the narrow meaning of the paradigm, the sentence is a system of forms that is connected with the expression of predicativity. It is only the tense and the modality – the grammatical meanings which turn the sentence into a unit of communication – that can change within the paradigm (Skujiņa 2007: 445).
The paradigm is based on the morphological form of the verb. The form of the verb can change only in tense and mood categories, but the subject of the sentence can change the form of its case. The full paradigm is formed by the five modal meanings and all tense forms possible for each mood (see Sections 2.5.3 and 2.5.4).

According to the broad concept of the syntactic paradigm, it contains not only the different tense and modal forms of the sentence, but also the so-called regular semantic realization forms (Lokmane 2013: 735). The semantic realization is the variability of the structural sentence pattern within specific limits: the denotative contents of the sentence do not change, although some of the grammatical or closely-related meanings do change as they are expressed with a specific lexeme instead of the verb form (as in the narrow meaning of the paradigm). The auxiliary verb is added to the sentence adding the meaning of modality, aspect, or unintentionality.

Nevertheless, the limitations of the paradigmatic change are not obvious, as they are set differently in different authors’ writing. It would be more useful to consider only those changes as paradigmatic, where neither the sentence proposition, nor the word class of its components, nor their syntactic function changes. The changes do not affect the meanings that refer to the propositional contents of the sentence, but rather the meanings that connect the utterance to the speech situation, thus changing the meaning of the time or modality (it could express the speaker’s opinion of the credibility of the contents).

If the auxiliary in the finite form is included in the structural sentence pattern, the verb of the predicate changes its form to the infinitive. Nevertheless, it keeps the main function in the sentence both structurally and from the point of view of its range of co-occurrence:

(3.2.203) Deputātam neklājas šādā parlamentarian.DAT.M not_befit.PRS.3 such.LOC.M veidā runāt. way.LOC.M speak.INF
‘Members of parliament should not be speaking in this way.’ (C)

Having become a part of the sentence, the auxiliary can change the form of the subject of the sentence, thus replacing its nominative case with the dative (while keeping its meaning and the function of the subject of the sentence):

(3.2.204) Man reiz gadijās redzēt sava I.DAT once happen.PST.3 see.INF own.GEN.M kaķa rotaļu ar peli. cat.GEN.M game.ACC.F with mouse.INS.F
‘Once I stumbled upon my cat playing with a mouse.’ (C)

(3.2.205) Man pietika tikai uzmest I.DAT be_enough.PST.3 only throw.INF kādam no tiem aci somebody.DAT.M of that.DAT.PL.M eye.ACC.F
‘It was enough for me to get a glimpse of one of them.’ (C)
It is not necessary to be able to deduce all the possible paradigmatic forms of the specific sentence pattern. The possibilities will depend on the lexical meanings of the words and the entire content of the sentence, namely, the real situation as described by the sentence.

### 3.2.9 The secondary predicate

Dependong on the syntactic relations, we can distinguish two types of means for sentence expansion: the extenders of the relations of the word and the extenders of the relations of the sentence (Lokmane 2013: 740–741).

The extenders of the word are connected with the particular word of the sentence. They can be taken on in subordination (as dependent components of the phrases with the meaning of the attribute, object, subject, or an adverbial) or on a formally equivalent basis (the extenders with the meaning of the apposition). The extenders of the sentence, however, are related not to one particular word, but the entire predicative unit – the sentence – or a phrase. Thus, they are incorporated into the sentence independently of the word relations – straight into the second-level syntactic relations – on the basis of the relations of secondary predication and sentence determination (Lokmane 2013: 741–742).

The simple sentence can be expanded by parts of speech which form a latent, supplementary syntactic center of the sentence, which expresses additional or secondary predication (Skujina 2007: 346). The fact that these parts of speech can be easily transformed into primary predicates also suggests their supplementary or partial predicativity:

(3.2.206) *Pa laipu iedams, neskaties*  
prep plank-way.acc.f walk.ptcp.nom.m not_look.imp.2sg  
zvaigznēš!  
star.loc.pl.f  
‘Don’t look at the stars while walking on a plank-way.’ (C)

(3.2.207) *Uzreiz sajutām jaunus*  
right.away feel.pst.1pl fresh.acc.pl.m  
vējus pūšam no Liepājas puses  
wind.acc.pl.m blow.ptcp from Liepāja.gen.f side.gen.f  
‘Right away we felt fresh winds coming from Liepāja.’ (C)

Thus, secondary predication has a certain similarity with primary predication, that is, the components of secondary predication possess the meaning of the tense and modality.

The expression of the meaning of the *tense* can be different for different types of secondary predicates (Lokmane 2013: 742–743).

The characteristics that are given in the secondary predicate are mostly limited to the time period mentioned within the predicate:
Dzintars skraida apkārt vesels
Dzintars.NOM.M run.PRS.3 around fit.NOM.M
kā rutks.
as black_radish.NOM.M
‘Dzintars is running around as fit as a fiddle.’ (C)

It is possible that the secondary predicate has its own explicit time reference:

Citā reizē viņu sastapis,
another.LOC.F time.LOC.F he.ACC meet.PTCP.NOM.M
es sūdzējos par savu neveiksmi.
I.NOM complain.PST.1SG about own.ACC.F mishap.ACC.F
‘The next time I met him, I complained about my mishap.’ (A. Eglītis)

Sometimes secondary predicates are semantically related to adverbials – this depends on the lexical meaning of the word and is possible in situations when the named characteristic can describe the realia themselves and also the process:

Spuldžu gaisma vairs nešķiedās
light_bulb.GEN.PL.F light.NOM.F anymore not_scatter.PST.3
ārā, bet aptinās istabai
outside but wind_around.PST.3 room.DAT.F
silti un milīgi.
warmly and gently
‘The lighting did not spill outside anymore, but warmly embraced the room’. (I. Šķipsna)

The secondary predicate can contain the meaning of the result, that is, it names the characteristic that was not there before the action described by the predicate, but which appeared as a result of that action:

Tas mani kā ārstu darīja
that.NOM.M I.ACC as doctor.ACC.M make.PST.3
uzmanīgu.
cautious.ACC.M
‘As a doctor, this made me cautious.’ (C)

The secondary predicate also possesses a modal meaning, which depends on the modality of the predicate.

The secondary predication is less important than the primary predication and can be realized only on its basis. Predication expresses the relation between the subject and its characteristics, just like the attributive relation, but contrary to it, here the characteristic is attributed to the subject during the speech act (in the sentence itself), that is, the relation is named by the speaker and as such it is accepted as a given (Lokmane 2013: 743–744). The attributive relation is realized in the nominal phrase, it is taken ready-made into the sentence, while the secondary predication is realized in the sentence itself. The adjective forming the attribute can be either in its definite or indefinite form, but the adjective in the function
of the secondary predicate can be only in its indefinite form, as it delivers new information.

From the point of view of the semantic structure, there are several propositions in sentences with secondary predicates. New additional conceptual relations can appear between these propositions, for example, the relations of cause and effect:

(3.2.211)  
\[ Es \ sēdēju \ zem \ loga \ un \ ismisis \ raudāju. \]  
\[ I.NOM \ sit.PST.1SG \ under \ window.GEN.M \ and \ despair.PTCP.NOM.M \ cry.PST.1SG \]  
‘I was sitting under the window and crying my heart out.’ (C)

(3.2.212)  
\[ Viņš, nepatikami pārsteigts, \]  
\[ he.NOM \ unpleasantly \ surprise.PTCP.NOM.M \]  
‘He cried out unpleasantly surprised.’ (C)

In relation to the secondary predicate, the issue of the main and auxiliary meaning of the verb arises. Sometimes the appearance of the secondary predicate reduces the meaning of the primary predicate, downgrading it to a copula (Freimane 1985: 74). This creates a nominal compound predicate:

(3.2.213)  
\[ Ziemā šis vienistabas dzīvoklis parasti stāv tukšs. \]  
\[ winter.LOC.F \ this.NOM.M \ single_room.GEN.M \ apartment.NOM.M \ normally \ remain.COP.PRS.3 \ empty.NOM.M \]  
‘During winter this single room apartment is normally vacant.’ (H. Gulbis)

If the verb has been used in its full lexical meaning, then two statements have been expressed, that is, the sentence is based on two propositions:

(3.2.214)  
\[ Knēvelis šaušalīgi lepns stāv rasainā ritā uz mājas lievena. \]  
\[ youngster.NOM.M \ ghastly \ proud.NOM.M \ stand.PRS.3 \ dewy.LOC.M \ morning.LOC.M \ on \ house.GEN.F \]  
‘The little whippersnapper is standing on the porch incredibly proud of himself.’ (C)

Secondary predicates can be characterized by several features.

First, according to their function in the nuclear sentence, secondary predicates can be divided into two groups – secondary predicates (the predicates in the nuclear sentence) and secondary subjects (the subject of the nuclear sentence). The majority of secondary predicates during the sentence transformation obtain the function of the predicate (see examples 3.2.211–3.2.214).
The type of secondary predicates that obtain the function of the sentence subject are less frequent. Since they do not have a formal agreement with any of the members of the syntactic center, they are placed into the periphery of the secondary predicates:

(3.2.215) Viņš nosēd pie televizora
he.nom sit_about.prs.3 by television.gen.m
ar drūmu izbrīnu acīs.
with dismal.ins.m surprise.ins.m eye.loc.pl.f

‘He remains sitting by the television with a dismally stunned look in his eyes.’ (A. Liepa)

Secondly, secondary predicates can be characterized according to the presence or absence of the formal agreement with their controller. The controller of the secondary predicate is usually the subject or object of the sentence.

The controller for subject-oriented secondary predicates is the subject of the sentence:

(3.2.216) Pieticīgie grieķi, no unpretentious.nom.pl.m Greek.nom.pl.m PREP
rita piecēlušies, rise.ptcp.nom.pl.m blanket.acc.f
pārvērtī piecēlušies, rise.ptcp.nom.pl.m blanket.acc.f
pārvērtī piecēlušies, rise.ptcp.nom.pl.m blanket.acc.f

‘The unpretentious Greeks, rising in the morning, changed their blanket into a toga and walked into the city easily and wisely.’ (I. Šķipsna)

The controller for the object-oriented secondary predicate is the object of the sentence:

(3.2.217) Mani dara uzmanīgu šī pieeja
I.acc make.prs.3 cautious.acc this.nom.f approach.nom.f
zinātnei.
science.dat.f

‘This approach to science makes me cautious.’ (C)

Third, secondary predicates can be characterized by their (in)dispensability. Secondary predicates are usually dispensable, but there are verbs whose meaning can be realized in the sentence only with the help of a secondary predicate:

(3.2.218) Atcerēties mēs mēdzam
remember.inf we.nom be_accustomed.prs.1pl
 tikai to, ko vēlākie
only that.acc.m that.acc later.nom.pl.m
notikumi padarījušī svariigu.
event.nom.pl.m make.ptcp.nom.pl.m important.acc.m

‘We usually remember only those events that have turned out to be important afterwards.’ (I. Šķipsna)
Fourth, the part of the speech is also important in the realization of secondary predicates. It is possible to distinguish two groups:

1) nominals in the function of secondary predicates;
2) verbs in the function of secondary predicates.

**Nominal forms as secondary predicates**

**The adjective** or its substitute (adjectivized participle, numeral), or less frequently a noun in the nominative, can be used in the function of the secondary predicate:

(3.2.219) *Jezga apkārt brāzmoja pamatīga.*

hustle.NOM.F around storm.PST.3 ample.NOM.F

‘There was ample hustle and bustle around us.’ (Z. Skujiņš)

**The adjective** or its substitute in the accusative is the object-oriented secondary predicate:

(3.2.220) *Tas viņa sirdi dara priecīgu.*

it.NOM.M he.GEN heart.ACC.F make.PRS.3 joyful.ACC.F

‘It makes his heart joyful.’ (C)

The form of the **prepositional nominal** with the preposition *par* in the function of the secondary predicate is possible with verbs whose meaning incorporates the meaning of ‘doing something to convert something into something else’ or ‘considering that something is something else’: *norikot* ‘to appoint’, *iekārtot* ‘to arrange’, *ievēlēt* ‘to elect’, *atzit* ‘to recognize’, *uzskatīt* ‘to consider’, *nosaukt* ‘to name’, etc. All these object-oriented secondary predicates are compulsory in the sentence:

(3.2.221) *Pēteris šos vārdus atzina par ļoti prātīgiem.*

Peter.NOM.M this.ACC.PL.M word.ACC.PL.M consider.PST.3 PREP very wise.DAT.PL.M

‘Pēteris considered these words as very wise.’ (C)

The secondary predicative function can be carried out by the **instrumental case** with the meaning of a type or characteristic feature. The instrumental can name a characteristic feature of the agent, which describes the agent during the action named by the predicate:

(3.2.222) *Mārtiņa vakarā meitas ar aissietām acim un izplestām cover.PTCP.INS.PL.F eye.INS.PL.F and outstrech.PTCP.INS.PL.F

rokām skrejot uz sētu.*

hand.INS.PL.F run.PTCP to courtyard.ACC.F

‘On Martinmas Eve the young women run to the courtyard with their eyes covered and their hands outstretched. (While the young women are running to the courtyard, their eyes are covered and their hands are outstretched).’ (C)
More frequently, however, the instrumental names the characteristics that are constant for the agent:

(3.2.223) Manā virzienā nāk kāda

māj.loc.m direction.loc.m come.prs.3 some.nom.f

jauka būtne ne pārāk gariem

nice.nom.f creature.nom.f not too long.ins.pl.m

matiem.

hair.ins.pl.m

‘A beautiful creature with medium-length hair is walking in my direction.’

The instrumental in the function of the secondary predicate does not formally agree with its controller, and as we can see, the meaning of the tense is not so evident either or sometimes can be absent altogether. Thus, we can consider these forms as secondary predicates because of the transformations which are enabled, and secondly because they do not have subordinate relations with any of the words in the sentence.

The instrumental zero prepositional phrase is often used in the function of the secondary predicate:

(3.2.224) Resns vīrietis raibu cepuri

fat.nom.m man.nom.m multi-colored.ins.f hat.ins.f

galvā izrīkoja darbiniekus.

head.loc.f order.pst.3 worker.acc.pl.m

‘A fat man wearing a multi-colored hat was ordering the workers around.’

Nearly always when the instrumental case describing the characteristic feature is used in the function of the secondary predicate, it demands an attribute, which presents the new information.

The locative case which describes a characteristic feature functions similarly to the instrumental case:

(3.2.225) Puiku izlaiduši ziemas laikā

boy.acc.m let.ptcp.nom.pl.m winter.gen.f weather.loc.m

vienā kreklā.

one.loc.m shirt.loc.m

‘The boy has been let out into the wintery weather, wearing only a shirt.’

Detached secondary predicates can also be expressed with the help of nominal forms, which in Latvian linguistics have traditionally been considered to be detached attributes or appositions. Detachment in Latvian grammar is defined as a specifically stressed part of the sentence or a phrase that has been attributed with a certain syntactic independence and intonational distinction (Nītiņa & Grigorjevs 2013: 810–811). This is most often achieved by moving that part of the sentence to an
unusual position, for example, the attribute is placed after the word it qualifies. In those cases, the syntactic function of the controlling word does not matter. Undetached attributes and detachments describe a characteristic feature as one that has been known before, but the detached attributes express new information which the author considers to be particularly important. Here is an example of a detached attribute:

(3.2.226) Acīm paveras akmeņu
   eye.DAT.PL.F open_up.PRS.3 stone.GEN.PL.M
muguras, tik lielas un lēzenas
   back.NOM.PL.M so big.NOM.PL.F and smooth.NOM.PL.F
kā jūra.
   as sea.NOM.F
‘The backs of the stones stretch out before one’s eyes, as big and as smooth as the sea itself.’ (C)

Detached attributes are distinctly different from undetached attributes.

First of all, they can easily form coordinative phrases regardless of the number of attributes in the sentence:

(3.2.227) Viņa skatās lielām, pelēkām
   she.NOM gaze.PRS.3 large.INS.PL.F grey.INS.PL.F
acīm, ļoti nopietnām, ļoti
   eye.INS.PL.F very serious.INS.PL.F very
uzmanīgām.
   attentive.INS.PL.F
‘She is gazing with her very serious and very attentive large grey eyes.’
   (D. Zigmonte)

Second of all, the detached attribute and apposition can be used next to a pronoun:

(3.2.228) Tas bija visapkārt – caurspidīgās un
   it.NOM.M be.PST.3 everywhere transparent.NOM.M and
sāļs.
   salty.NOM.M
‘It was everywhere – transparent and salty.’ (N. Ikstena)

Third of all, the detached attribute or apposition group can include the adverbial modifier of time (or some other kind of modifier), which enhances the predicativity of the phrase, as modifiers function as extenders of the predicative unit:

(3.2.229) Nācija sastāvēja no daudzām dažādām
   nation.NOM.F consist.PST.3 of many.DAT.F different.DAT.PL.F
tautībām, lielākoties rupjām,
   ethnic_group.DAT.PL.F mostly brutal.DAT.PL.F
kareivīgām un necivilizētām.
   warmongering.DAT.PL.F and uncivilized.DAT.PL.F
‘The nation consisted of many different ethnic groups, mostly brutal, warmongering, and uncivilized.’ (C)
Fourth of all, the detached attributes and appositions in particular surroundings can be perceived as predicates, which form the boundary cases between simple and complex sentences:

\[(3.2.230)\]

\[Tā bija bulļa seja – pietiekami svaiga, veselīgu, sārtu iedegumu, fresh nom.F healthy nom.M rosy nom.M suntan nom.M sparīgiem vaibstiem.\]

‘It was the face of a bull – sufficiently fresh, healthy, rosy from the sun, and sporting vigorous features’. (I. Šķipsna)

Fifth of all, the detached attributes, appositions and their groups are detached from the rest of the sentence with the help of the intonation, which in written language is depicted with the help of punctuation marks:

\[(3.2.231)\]

\[Tāds paliks kalns mūsu atminā – skaists un auksts.\]

‘This is how the mountain will remain in our memory – beautiful and cold.’ (C)

All the abovementioned features suggest that these types of extenders can easily become part of a complex sentence. Therefore, they can be considered to be secondary predicates and are not positional attributes or types of appositions.

Secondary predicativity is also a characteristic feature of address forms. These obtain the function of secondary predicate in cases where they describe the addressee:

\[(3.2.232)\]

\[Tu nelieti, tu bastards nositīšu.\]

‘You bastard, you monster, I will kill you.’ (C)

Even in cases where the addressee is only named, the address form should be considered a secondary predicate, as its transformation (3.2.233 a. and b.) is possible:

\[(3.2.233)\] a. \[Kungi, man jūsu neaugligais gentleman nom.PL.M I.DAT you nom.PL fruitless nom.M strīds jau ir apnicis.\]

‘Gentlemen, I am tired of your fruitless quarrel.’ (C)

\[(3.2.233)\] b. \[Jūs [uzrunātie] esat kungi. you nom.PL [addressee] be nom.PL.2PL gentleman nom.PL.M\]

‘You, that is the addressees, are gentlemen.’
Verbal forms as secondary predicates

In a sentence the function of the secondary predicate can be carried out by all Latvian participles (see Section 2.5.9).

The meaning of the relative tense is inherent in the form of the participle itself – in relation to the action named by the finite form of the verb, it is either simultaneous with the action or precedes the action.

Declinable present participles are rarely found functioning as secondary predicates as they function just like adjectives and mostly name the feature and not the parallel action; therefore, they are considered to be substitutes of adjectives:

(3.2.234) **Tualetes** | galdinām | abās | malās
--- | --- | --- | ---
**toilet**.GEN.F | table.DAT.M | both.LOC.F | side.LOC.PL.F
**bīja** | spoguļi, | **grozāmi** | **kā**
be.COP.PST.3 | mirror.NOM.PL.M | adjust.PTCP.NOM.PL.M | like
wing.NOM.PL.M

‘The dressing table had mirrors on both sides, which could be adjusted like wings.’ (I. Šķipsna)

(3.2.235) **Labais** | stils | ir | **airanu**
--- | --- | --- | ---
**good**.NOM.M | **style**.NOM.M | be.COP.PRS.3 | ayran.ACC.M
**pasniegt** | **putejošu.**
serve.INF | froth.PTCP.ACC.M

‘It is good practice to serve the ayran frothy.’ (L. Kota)

In contrast, declinable past participles are often found functioning as secondary predicates. They can either substitute the nominal or function as the central components of the participial clause:

(3.2.236) **Nama** | vidū | **apgaismota**
--- | --- | ---
**building**.GEN.M | middle.LOC.M | lit_up.PTCP.NOM.F
**laistījās** | milzīga | **ambrāzūra.**
shine.PST.3 | huge.NOM.F | embrasure.NOM.F
‘In the middle of the building there was a huge embrasure, all shiny and lit up.’ (A. Eglitis)

(3.2.237) **Bim-bomm,** | **pulkstenis** | **Katoļu** | ielā
--- | --- | --- | ---
**ding_dong** | **clock**.NOM.M | Katoļu.GEN.PL.M | street.LOC.F
**aizsmacis** | **nodun.**
be_hoarse.PTCP.NOM.M | resound.PRS.3
‘Ding-dong, the clock on Katoļu Street resounded heavily.’ (I. Ābele)

The semi-declinable participle has a very narrow semantics (it only names the accompanying action) and only one syntactic function, that is, it is always the secondary predicate:
Nezinādama, vilcinādamās mana not_know.PTCP.NOM.F linger.PTCP.NOM.F my.NOM.F roka beidzot iegrima mitrajā hand.NOM.F finally sink.PST.3 damp.LOC.F masā. mass.LOC.F

‘Not knowing, lingering, my hand finally sank into the damp mass.’
(I. Šķipsna)

Similarly, indeclinable participles also function only as secondary predicates. In cases where they function as subject-oriented secondary predicates, the subject of the sentence becomes the agent of both the finite form and the form named by the participle.

Participles with the ending -am are found with verbs describing psychological states:

(3.2.239) Ar degsmi un prieku daru tikai to, ko [es] apsinos darām what.ACC [I.NOM] perceive.PRS.1SG do.PTCP
vai zinām labāk nekā citi. or know.PTCP better than other.NOM.PL.M

‘I can carry out only those actions with joy and passion that I perceive as being capable of doing or knowing better than others.’ (V. Freimane)

The indeclinable participle with the ending -am is often used together with the verbs šķist, likties ‘to seem’. In this case we can observe the raised subject construction where the agent of the action named by the participle becomes the subject of the sentence, but the patient of the state named by the predicate is either generalized or deducible from the context:

(3.2.240) Smadzenes šķiet neizjūtam brain.NOM.PL.F seem.PRS.3 not_distinguish.PTCP atšķirību starp reālo un difference.ACC.F between real.ACC.M and iedomāto. imagine.PTCP.ACC.M

‘The brain seemingly fails to distinguish the real from the imagined.’ (C)

(3.2.241) Krāsns mute likās žāvājamies furnace.GEN.F mouth.NOM.F seem.PST.3 yawn.PTCP aiz garlaicības. from boredom.GEN.F

‘The mouth of the furnace seemed to be yawning from boredom.’
(D. Zigmonte)

Participles ending with -ot functioning as subject-oriented secondary predicates are mostly found in participial clauses:
Lasot vēstuli, Oto bija gar.

While reading the letter, Oto had sunk down along the wall and was squatting in a sitting position. (L. Muktupāvela)

The agent can be generalized, thereby remaining syntactically unrealized:

(Tu) jutīsies labi, darot ko pozitīvu.

You will feel good doing something positive. (C)

Sometimes the agent of the action described by a participle ending in -ot is different than the subject of the sentence, and can be deduced from context or general knowledge:

Skatoties uz viņiem no Vidzemes augstienes, viņi izskatās tāli un sīki.

Looking at them from the Vidzeme Upland, they all seem distant and tiny. (A. Līce)

Indeclinable participles, especially the participles ending in -am, can also act as object-oriented secondary predicates, that is, the agent of the action named by the participle is the object of the sentence:

Ik rudeni viņš gaidīja uzkrītam pirmo sniegu.

Every autumn he was looking forward to the falling of the first snow. (D. Zigmonte)

It is also possible that syntactically the participle is subject-oriented, but semantically object-oriented, because it characterizes the patient of the action named by the predicate:

Vēl ceturtien “Eolikas” četrotne bija manāma draudzīgi uz skatuves.

Just this Thursday, the four members of the group «Eolika» could be seen being friendly on the stage. (www.nra.lv)
Used together with the transitive reflexive verbs teikties ‘to claim’, sacīties ‘to claim’ the participle is semantically syncretic, because the subject and the object are coreferential:

(3.2.247) Vēl pirmdien abas puses teicās
just Monday both.NOM.PL.F side.NOM.PL.F claim.PST.3
par kandidātiem neko nezinām.
about candidate.DAT.PL.M nothing.ACC. not_know.PTCP

‘Just this Monday both sides were claiming not to know anything about their candidates.’ (LNT)

An indeclinable participle ending in -ot can be used together with the name of a separate agent in its dative form in the absolute dative construction:

(3.2.248) Ķekatnieki aizlaidās puteņainajā naktī,
mummer.NOM.PL.M leave.PST.3 blizzardy.LOC.F night.LOC.F
kamanu zvārgulien škindot.
sleigh.GEN.PL.F bell.DAT.PL.M jingle.PTCP

‘With the jingle of sleigh bells, the mummers disappeared into the blizzardy night.’ (D. Zigmont)

The infinitive form of the verb can be used in the sentence in different functions (see Sections 3.2.3 and 3.2.6), but the function of the secondary predicate is the most characteristic one.

The subject infinitive names the action carried out by the person named by the subject, therefore, it is the subject-oriented secondary predicate.

The infinitive of the subject describing the purpose is found after verbs of direction:

(3.2.249) Iešu salikt mantas.
go.FUT.1SG pack.INF belonging.ACC.PL.F
‘I will go pack.’ (C)

The object infinitive describes an action carried out by the object of the sentence, thus, in the sentence it has the function of the object-oriented secondary predicate. In Latvian, the object infinitive is used together with verbs that have meanings relating to encouragement or prohibition – aicināt ‘to invite’, ieteikt ‘to suggest’, likt ‘to force, make’, liegt ‘to forbid’, lūgt ‘to ask’, mācīt ‘to teach’, mudināt ‘to encourage’, pavēlēt ‘to order’, piesacīt ‘to admonish’, prasīt ‘to demand’, pierunāt ‘to persuade’ (Freimane 1985: 72):

(3.2.250) Ar pogām man ļāva spēlēties.
with button.INS.PL.F I.DAT allow.PST.3 play.INF

‘I was allowed to play with buttons.’ (C)

The object infinitive can be compulsory depending on the lexical meaning of the matrix verb.

(3.2.251) Viņa ķermeni caurdūra alkas meiteni sākert.

‘His body was pierced by the desire to catch the girl.’ (G. Repše)

(3.2.252) Viņa paklausīja aicinājumam aizvizināt līdz pašām namdurvīm.

‘She gave in to the request to take (the passenger) all the way to the actual door.’ (I. Grebzde)

The majority of these nouns and adjectives are derived from verbs and their semantics are very close to the semantics of verbs used as auxiliaries.

The infinitive can be taken on by other nouns (and adjectives) with an abstract meaning relating to the outcome of a thought process, emotional state, or ethical concept (prieks ‘joy’, kauns ‘shame’, tiesības ‘rights’, bailes ‘fear’, drosme ‘courage’, jēga ‘sense’, iemesls ‘reason’, nozīme ‘meaning’, and so on).

(3.2.253) Man vairs nav iemesla par kaut ko šaubīties.

‘I have no reason to doubt anything anymore.’ (C)

(3.2.254) Nav nozīmes kaut ko atstāt bērniem.

‘There is no sense in leaving anything for the children.’ (C)

(3.2.255) Tagad vecmāmiņai istais laiks paskatīties izbrīnā.

‘Now is just the time for the granny to look up in surprise.’ (D. Zigmonte)

Typically, nouns (and adjectives) are part of the syntactic center of the sentence, thus it is the predicative use of the word that implements the meaning of the modality or
evaluation. It suggests that the infinitive is part of the predicative complex instead of just describing the noun.

This is one of the reasons why infinitive forms used after the noun or adjective should be considered secondary predicates and not dependent components of nominal phrases. The other reason is the fact that the lexical meaning of the noun does not suggest the need for an extender in the meaning of the object of the sentence which is in the form of the infinitive. The infinitive used after the noun differs from the attribute, because the attribute describes a characteristic feature of the noun, but in the sentence, e.g., (3.2.256), the infinitive does not describe the noun *doma* ‘thought, idea’, but characterizes the action while pointing to its agent.

(3.2.256)  
Kā tev radās doma kļūt  
how you.DAT arise.PST.3 idea.NOM.F become.IND  
par modes mākslinieci?  
PREP fashion.GEN.F designer.ACC.F  
‘How did it occur to you to become a fashion designer?’ (C)

A **compound secondary predicate** is formed by a copula together with a nominal or its substitute, and the secondary predicate also aligns its form with that of the primary predicate:

(3.2.257)  
Kā jūs to varat panākt,  
how you.NOM.PL.M that.ACC be Able.PRS.2PL achieve.IND  
mācitājs būdams?  
priest.NOM.M be.COP.PTCP.NOM.M  
‘How can you achieve that being a priest?’ (C)

(3.2.258)  
Tās bija divas dienas, kas mums lika būt  
that.NOM.PL.F be.COP.PTCP.3 two.NOM.PL.F that.WE.DAT made.PST.3 be.COP.INF  
laimīgiem.  
happy.DAT.PL.M  
‘Those were two days that made us happy.’ (C)

If a secondary predicate or its phrase precedes its controller, the sentence will contain the zero form of the copula *būdams* ‘being’:

(3.2.259)  
[Būdama] dzīves likstu  
[be.COP.PTCP] life.GEN.F misfortune.GEN.PL.F  
nomākta, saimniece vairs  
deject.PTCP.NOM.F mistress.NOM.F anymore  
nemācēja pasmaidit.  
not_know.how.PST.3 smile.INF  
‘Having succumbed to the misfortunes of her life, the mistress of the house would not smile anymore.’ (D. Zigmonte)
The copula in the form of the indeclinable participle can be found in different types of syntactic constructions:

(3.2.260) Zemledus makšķernieki izrādījušies
under_ice.GEN.M fisherman.NOM.PL.M turn_out.PTCP.NOM.PL.M
esam glābējēģeļi tieši nelaimēs
be.COP.PTCP guardian_angel.NOM.PL.M just accident.GEN.F
vietā.
place.LOC.F
‘The ice fishermen turned out to be guardian angels right at the location of the accident.’ (Diena)

Second, the object-oriented secondary predicate can be found in the form of the indeclinable participle:

(3.2.261) Žurnālisti iedomājās sevi
journalist.NOM.PL.M imagine.pst.3 self.ACC
esam rakstnieces uzticības personas.
be.COP.PTCP writer.GEN.F loyalty.GEN.F person.ACC.PL.M
‘The journalists see themselves as the confidantes of the writer.’
(G. Repše)

Third, when used together with the reflexive verbs teikties ‘to claim’, dēvēties ‘to call oneself’, sacīties ‘to claim’, domāties ‘to think’, sajusties ‘to feel’ the compound secondary predicate is object-oriented according to its form, and syncretic according to its meaning:

(3.2.262) Viņš sakās esam
he.NOM suggest.prs.3 be.COP.PTCP
trakoti norūpējies par
go_wild concern.PTCP.NOM.M about
tiesiskumu valsti.
justice.ACC.M country.LOC.F
‘He is suggesting being madly concerned about the situation of justice in this country.’ (www.delfi.lv)

(3.2.263) Vai viņš ir tas, kas
q he.NOM be.COP.PR.S.3 that.NOM.M who.NOM
domājās esam?
think.pst.3 be.COP.PTCP
‘Is he really the person he thinks he is?’ (A. Neiburga)

A copula in the infinitive form together with a nominal in the dative is part of the object-oriented secondary predicate. The controller is the name of the object in the dative:

(3.2.264) Lauj vinam būt laimigam.
let.IMP.PR.S.2SG he.DAT be.COP.INF happy.DAT.M
‘Let him be happy.’ (C)
The secondary predicate, just like the primary predicate, can contain a modal or aspectual auxiliary. In this case it forms a compound secondary predicate:

(3.2.265)  

Tagad bija laiks sākt mācīties dzīvi.  

‘Now was time to start learning how to live.’ (I. Šķipsna)

(3.2.266)  

Viņš man vēstules rakstīja, pielabināties gribēdams.  

‘He was writing letters to me hoping to get into my good graces.’ (C)

The comparative clause in the function of the secondary predicate

In a simple sentence, the secondary predicate is formed by the comparative clause. If the comparative clause contains a noun, it is most often a secondary subject:

(3.2.267)  

Viņu pareģojumi izšķīduši kā ziepju burbuļi.  

‘Their predictions have burst like soap bubbles.’ (C)

If the comparative clause contains a noun in the dative, it is a secondary predicate:

(3.2.268)  

Kā jau domātājam, Ziedonim ļoti as PTCL thinker.DAT.M Ziedonis.DAT.M very svarīgs ir cēla important.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 road.GEN.M jēdziens. concept.NOM.M  

‘As can be expected from a thinker, the concept of the road was very important for Ziedonis.’ (G. Berelis)

If the comparative clause contains a verb form, then the verb is a secondary predicate:

(3.2.269)  

Visi ziņojumi tika atzīmēti kā izlasīti.  

‘All the reports got marked as read.’ (C)

When comparing, it is difficult to differentiate between secondary predication in a simple sentence and ellipsis in the clause of a complex sentence. This is an objective difficulty, as sentences with a comparative clause can be expanded into several core
sentences. The number of extenders and their types could serve as a criterion for establishing the type of sentence, for example:

(3.2.270) Vieglie lido kā spalviņas
light.NOM.PL.M fly.PRS.3 like feather.NOM.PL.F
viļņa galotnē.
wave.GEN.M top.LOC.F
‘The light ones fly like feathers at the top of a wave.’ (C)

The extender with an adverbial meaning galotnē ‘at the top’, suggests that the comparative phrase could form a clause (flying like feathers fly at the top of a wave).

3.2.10 Adjuncts

Adjuncts are free extenders of a sentence, which are valency-independent and whose form and semantics are independent of the predicate. They possess syntactic autonomy and they modify the entire sentence – not only the predicate, but also the parts of the sentence that are connected to it – the subject of the sentence and the sentence extenders, if they are present (Skujīna 2007: 86). Adjuncts can be found in different types of sentences usually situated at the beginning of the sentence.

A dative-marked adjunct with the meaning of an experiencer (3.2.271, 3.2.272) or a possessor (3.2.273) usually names a person or another living being:

(3.2.271) Lai tev veicas visās dzives jomās!
may you.DAT.SG succeed.PRS.3 all.LOC.PL.F life.GEN.F area.LOC.PL.F
‘Good luck in all areas of your life!’ (www.nra.lv)

(3.2.272) Zivīm slāpst.
fish.DAT.PL.F suffocate.PRS.3
‘The fish are suffocating.’ (www.spoki.lv)

(3.2.273) Mums ir jauna mājas lapa.
we.DAT be.PRS.3 new.NOM.F home.GEN.F page.NOM.F
‘We have a new homepage.’ (www.facebook.com)

Latvian syntax has conceptualized the experiencer or the dative of possession in different ways. Ozols (1967: 202) considers the dative of experiencer or possession to function as the so-called indirect subject of the sentence. Thus, he proposes a three-member syntactic center for the sentence, formed by the verb, the direct subject of the sentence in the nominative, and the indirect subject of the sentence in the dative. In addition, the dative is not considered to have any additional syntactic function, if the sentence does not contain the direct subject of the sentence. In cases where the dative has a syncretic indirect subject and object function, it is proposed that the dative form should be considered the object-subject of the sentence (Ozols 1967: 181).
Kārkliņš (1968: 295) offers a similar solution, proposing a complex syntactic center for the sentence. He points out that the predication is implemented in two simultaneous aspects: the predicative personal aspect, expressed by the dative and the impersonal predicative aspect, expressed by the nominative. The function of the subject of the sentence, according to Kārkliņš (1968: 291), can be based on the fact that the dative expresses the meaning of person, and the name of the person is always the subject of the sentence. However, the proposed model of a three-member syntactic center for the sentence did not gain wider support.

According to Freimane (1984: 56), the dative of the experiencer and possession should be considered a free sentence extender – an adjunct. It is a part of the sentence, which is not subordinated to any word, and remains loosely connected to the whole sentence. Thus, the attribution of the meaning to the whole structural basis of the sentence and the lack of a direct connection to any particular word in the sentence has to be considered the main characteristic feature of the dative-marked adjunct (Freimane 1984: 58–59). Rozenbergs (1970: 56), in turn, suggested that adjuncts are the parts of the sentence that are not conditioned by the valency of the predicate, nevertheless, they form the basic structure of the sentence.

The other words of the sentence do not form the relation of subordination with the dative of the experiencer or possession. The head of a phrase usually is a lexeme which can be used in any grammatical form, however, e.g., the infinitive forms of the verbs in the examples (3.2.271–3.2.273) veikties ‘to succeed’, slāpt ‘to suffocate’, būt ‘to be’ are not compatible with the dative of the experiencer or possession.

An important feature of the adjunct is its place at the beginning of the sentence. Although word order in Latvian is rather free and is mostly used to express information structure, it is nevertheless often related to the type of syntactic relations and semantics of a particular part of a sentence, for example, the sentences (3.2.274 and 3.2.275) have completely different meanings:

(3.2.274) Viņam tas viss ir.
he.DAT it.NOM.M all.NOM.M be.PRS.3
‘He has it all.’ (www.apollo.lv)
*(Viņam is the dative of possession, thus the adjunct.)*

(3.2.275) Tas viss ir viņam.
that.NOM.M all.NOM.M be.PRS.3 he.DAT
‘All that is for him.’
*(Viņam is the dative of the beneficiary, thus it is a component of the phrase.)*

The dative-marked adjunct can often be compulsory in the sentence, as the sentence cannot function as an independent communicative unit without it. The dative-marked adjunct can be found in different types of sentences, although it will mostly occur in the following distribution.
First of all, the dative of the experiencer can be found in verbal sentences where the predicate or the main part of the sentence is an impersonal verb naming a state or a matter of chance:

(3.2.276) **Tev**  [nepatik]  [baritons?]

*you.DAT.SG  not_like.PRS.3  baritone.NOM.M*

‘Don’t you like baritone?’ (I. Šķipsna)

Second of all, the dative of the experiencer can be found in adverbial sentences where the predicate names some state:

(3.2.277) **Tas**  [būs]  [interesanti]  [ikvienam.]

*it.NOM.M  be.COP.FUT.3  interesting  anyone.DAT.M*

‘It will be interesting for anyone.’ (www.fenikssfun.com)

Third of all, the dative of possession can be found in verbal sentences with the verb būt ‘to be’ or nebūt ‘not to be’ as a full lexical verb in the predicate:

(3.2.278) **Tagad**  [mums]  [ir]  [vairāki]

*now  we.DAT  be.PRS.3  several.NOM.PL.M*

*drošības  dienesti.*

‘Now we have several security services.’ (A. Kolbergs)

A possessive meaning can be also seen in the cases where the adjunct and the subject of the sentence stand in relation to the part and the whole or when they describe characteristic features:

(3.2.279) **Gara**  [pasaulei]  [nav]  [robežu.]

*spirit.GEN.M  world.DAT.F  not_be.PRS.3  border.GEN.PL.F*

‘The spiritual world does not have any borders.’ (Z. Mauriņa)

Būt ‘to be’ can be also used in its zero form in potentially verbal sentences:

(3.2.280) **Kādas**  [jums]  [te]  [ir]

*what_kind.NOM.PL.F  you.DAT.PL  here  be.PRS.3*

*divainas  metaforas ...*

*strange.NOM.PL.F  metaphor.NOM.PL.F*

‘What strange metaphors you have here!’ (S. Kaldupe)

The dative in the sentences (3.2.281) and (3.2.282) can also be considered an adjunct:

(3.2.281) **Tūristiem**  [Ventspili]  [būs]  [ko]  [darīt.]

*tourist.DAT.PL.M  Ventspils.LOC.F  be.FUT.3  what.ACC  do.INF*

‘The tourists in Ventspils will have something to do.’ (www.ventspils.lv)

(3.2.282) **Man**  [viņām]  [nav]  [ko]

*I.DAT  she.DAT.PL.F  not_be.PRS.3  what.ACC*

*pārimest.*

‘I have nothing to reprimand them for.’ (A. Kolbergs)
Such sentences in modern Latvian are considered to be simple (see also 3.5.2).

Fourth of all, dative-marked adjuncts with the combined meaning of the possessor and experiencer can be rather freely situated in the sentence – their distribution does not have any formal or semantic limitations:

(3.2.283) Man sirds top smaga.
I.DAT heart.NOM.F get.COP.PRS.3 heavy.NOM.F
'My heart feels heavy.' (V. Jākobsons)

(3.2.284) Šodien man nav darāmā diena.
today I.DAT not_be.PRS.3 do.PTCP.NOM.F day.NOM.F
'Today is not my day of action.' (V. Jākobsons)

(3.2.285) Lielākoties man izrādījās taisnība.
mostly I.DAT turn_out.PST.3 truth.NOM.F
'Most of the time, I turned out to be right.' (V. Freimane)

When the dative expresses a possessive meaning it competes with the genitive; however, there are some semantic differences between the two case forms. The dative stresses the existence of possessive relations at the moment of utterance, while the possessive genitive does not imply this meaning (Lokmane 2014b).

Fifth of all, the dative when used together with the present passive participle as the predicate has the meaning of the agent. Usually, the verb is transitive; the object is named in the nominative, and thus carries out the function of the subject of the sentence. Therefore, the dative functions as an adjunct:

(3.2.286) Man vēl viens darbinš darāms.
I.DAT still one.NOM.M job.NOM.M do.PTCP.NOM.M
'I have one more job to do.' (www.maminuklubs.lv)

If the participle is formed from an intransitive verb, the meaning of the agent is even stronger. Nevertheless, due to systemic assumptions, the dative is still to be considered an adjunct:

(3.2.287) Mums bija caur uguni ejams.
we.DAT be.COP.PST.3 through fire.ACC.F go.PTCP.NOM.M
'We were to go through the fire.' (I. Indrāne)

Adverbial adjuncts, like dative-marked adjuncts, expand the sentence regardless of the relations between the words, thus they are not part of any phrase (Freimane 1985: 83). Usually they refer to the sentence as a whole and are placed at the beginning of the sentence:

(3.2.288) Pirkstos mirdzēja smalkas sidraba rotas.
finger.LOC.PL.M glitter.PST.3 fine.NOM.PL.F silver.GEN.M
jewelry.NOM.PL.F
'Fine silver jewelry glittered on the fingers.' (L. Muktupāvela)
The sentence can start with several locative adjuncts used in parallel:

(3.2.289) **Augšā** aiz mākoņiem lido
high.LOC.F behind cloud.DAT.PL.M fly.PRS.3
melnās pīles.
black.NOM.PL.F duck.NOM.PL.F
‘The black ducks fly high up above the clouds.’ (A. Bels)

The adverbial adjunct usually expresses the meaning of the place or time, but there are also other adverbial adjuncts, for example, those with the meaning of the cause:

(3.2.290) **Naktī,** vējā smiltīm ir
night.LOC.F wind.LOC.M sand.DAT.PL.F be.PRS.3
balss.
voice.NOM.F
‘At night, in the wind, the sand has a voice.’ (A. Bels)

In the sentences with adverbial adjuncts, the predicate is often placed before the subject of the sentence:

(3.2.291) **Barā** tomēr bija stingra
crowd.LOC.M however be.PST.3 strict.NOM.F
kārtība.
order.NOM.F
‘There was, however, a strict order in the crowd.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.2.292) **Virs** galvas šalca putnu spārni.
above head.GEN.F rustle.PST.3 bird.GEN.PL.M wing.NOM.PL.M
‘The wings of the birds rustled overhead.’ (A. Bels)

The adverbial adjunct can also be an obligatory sentence extender, especially in potentially verbal sentences:

(3.2.293) **Uz** vārtņiem vējrādītājs
on gate.DAT.PL.M weather_vane.NOM.M
ķēmiga putna izskatā.
freakish.GEN.M bird.GEN.M look.LOC.M
‘There was a freakish birdlike weather vane on the gate.’ (S. Kaldupe)

Often there is both an adverbial and a dative-marked adjunct at the beginning of the sentence:

(3.2.294) **Viņam** kājās tie paši
he.DAT foot.LOC.PL.F that.NOM.PL.M same.NOM.PL.M
jau divdesmit piecus gadus
already twenty five.ACC.PL.M year.ACC.PL.M
valkātie zābaki.
wear.PTCP.NOM.PL.M boot.NOM.PL.M
‘His feet were covered by the same boots that he had been wearing for twenty-five years.’ (Z. Mauriņa)
If the predicate is not verbal, identification of the adjunct does not cause any difficulties, since there is no verb to subordi- nate the adverb (Freimane 1984: 59). In verbal sentences, however, the detection of adjuncts can be problematic. Although, if the adver- bial does not depend on the valency of the predicate, then there is no doubt that it is an adjunct as it will not be part of any verbal phrase:

(3.2.295) Trešajā dienā vairs nesāp.
third.LOC.F day.LOC.F anymore not_hurt.PRS.3
‘On the third day it does not hurt anymore.’ (A. Līce)

There is a view in Latvian syntax, that any adverb, positioned at the beginning of the sentence, has the potential to refer to the whole sentence regardless of the lexical meaning of the predicate (Freimane 1984: 64).

(3.2.296) Manī kaut kas sabrieda, sasparojās,
I.LOC something swell.PST.3 brace_up.PST.3
sadīga, ieriesās un atvērās.
sprout.PST.3 germinate.PST.3 and open_up.PST.3
‘Something swelled and braced up, sprouted, germinated and opened up within me.’ (L. Muktpāvela)

The opening position in the sentence (or in a clause of a composite sentence) is the most characteristic feature of the adjunct, as the components of phrases are usually found on the right side of the predicate.

Adverbials that follow the noun and are not subordinated to any word in the sentence should also be considered adjuncts:

(3.2.297) a. Lielais zālājs aiz loga
large.NOM.M lawn.NOM.M behind window.GEN.M
vēl bija krēslā.
still be.COP.PST.3 dusk.LOC.F
‘The large lawn behind the window was still in the dusk.’ (I. Šķipsna)

The lexical meaning of the word zālājs ‘lawn’ does not require the characterization of its place, (zālājs aiz loga ‘the lawn behind the window’ is not a phrase), therefore we can transform the sentence into two predicative units:

(3.2.297) b. Lielais zālājs, kas ir loga
large.NOM.M lawn.NOM.M which.NOM be.PRS.3
aiz loga, vēl
behind window.GEN.M still
bija krēslā.
be.COP.PST.3 dusk.LOC.F
‘The large lawn, which was behind the window, was still in the dusk.’

This signals the implicit predicativity of this adjunct. The structure of this sentence has been condensed to such a level, that neither the subject, nor the predicate of the proposition have been realized, thus formally there is only an adverbial.
An adverbial positioned after the secondary predicate also represents a separate proposition and should be considered an adjunct:

(3.2.298) Viņš nosēd pie televizora
drūmu izbrīnu acīs.

‘He stays in front of the TV screen, with a gloomy astonishment in his eyes.’ (A. Liepa)

3.2.11 Subordination in the simple sentence

The extenders standing in relation to a separate word are incorporated into sentences by means of subordination. Subordinative relations between words are forged by the word as a lexico-grammatical unit (Lokmane 2013: 761). The relations create phrases with lexical units as their heads, in some rare cases the head can also be a word form. Regardless of the grammatical form of the head, the phrase does not collapse, which suggests that the phrase has its own paradigm, which is based on the form system of the head (its morphological paradigm), for example, lasīt ogas ‘to pick berries’, lasu ogas ‘I am picking berries’, lasījām ogas ‘we were picking berries’, lasot ogas ‘while picking berries’, etc.

The subordinated extenders can function as an object, attribute, adverbial, or apposition. They can also have the meaning of an agent.

Objects

Extenders functioning as objects have traditionally been called complements and most often are arguments of the verb (Skujiņa 2007: 278). The object is a generalization, which can be made more concrete depending on the grammatical form used to express the object, thus creating different kinds of objects.

The direct object can be expressed by a noun or its substitute in the accusative, which usually has the meaning of a patient (3.2.299) or percept (3.2.300):

(3.2.299) Tu visu vari ēst?
you.NOM.SG all.ACC.M be_able.PRS.2SG eat.INF
‘Can you eat anything?’ (C)

(3.2.300) Es redzēju briesmigu sapni.
I.NOM see.PST.1SG terrible.ACC.M dream.ACC.M
‘I saw a terrible dream.’ (C)

The indirect object can be expressed by a noun or its substitute in the dative, which usually has the meaning of an addressee or a beneficiary:

(3.2.301) Viņš stāstija man savu sapni.
he.NOM tell.PST.3 I.DAT own.ACC.M dream.ACC.M
‘He told me his dream.’ (C)
Next to the indirect object, the phrase can also contain the direct object in the accusative:

(3.2.302) Tēt, nopērc man sunī.
dad.VOC.M buy.IMP.2SG I.DAT dog.ACC.M
‘Dad, buy me a dog!’ (T. Zeltiņš)

Only the indirect object without the direct object can be subordinated to the verb:

(3.2.303) Tu driksti viņiem pieskarti.
you.NOM.SG be_allowed.PRS.2SG they.DAT.M touch.INF
‘You can touch them.’ (C)

The dative-marked object can also have the syncretic meaning of the experiencer and possessor, if the sentence contains a name of a body part of the object:

(3.2.304) Cauna man iekoda rokā.
marten.NOM.F I.DAT bite.PST.3 hand.LOC.F
‘The marten bit my hand. (C)

The direct object can be expressed by a noun or its substitute in the instrumental with the meaning of an instrument or companion:

(3.2.305) Piedāvājumā rokām darināti un offer.LOC.M hand.INS.PL.F make.PTCP.NOM.PL.M and
rūpnieciski austi paklāji.
industrially weave.PTCP.NOM.PL.M carpet.NOM.PL.M
‘Offering handmade and industrially woven carpets.’ (C)

(3.2.306) Kā tu varēji dzīvit ar manī?
how you.NOM.SG be_able.PST.2SG live.INF with I.INS
‘How could you live with me?’ (C)

The indirect object can be expressed by a prepositional phrase with a variety of meanings depending on the semantics of the preposition:

(3.2.307) Katra meitene sapno par
every.NOM.F girl.NOM.F dream.PRS.3 about
baltu kleitu.
white.ACC.F dress.ACC.F
‘Every girl dreams of a white dress.’ (C)

(3.2.308) No klāvas taisa cirvja kātus.
of maple.GEN.F make.PRS.3 axe.GEN.M handle.ACC.PL.M
‘Axe handles are made from maple.’ (C)

The nouns and their substitutes in the nominative together with the predicate in the debitive mood can also be considered subordinated, namely, as objects.
In such sentences the function of the subject is expressed by the dative, whereas the nominative has the semantics typical of an object:

(3.2.309) *Dzīvokļos bija jātaisa remonts.*

‘The flats had to be renovated.’ (C)

Although the syntactic function of the nominative in sentences with the debitive is problematic (see Holvoet & Grzybowska 2014; Holvoet & Nau 2014a for more), an additional semantic criterion to support its object function is the fact that the first and second person pronouns in the standard language are in the accusative (see also Fennells 1995: 46):

(3.2.310) *Man tevi jāsauc īstajā vārdā.*

‘I have to call you by your real name.’ (C)

(3.2.311) *Viņiem būtu jāredz mani šeit.*

‘They should have seen me here.’ (C)

In spoken language and less formal standard language, the accusative form of the object can substitute for the nominative:

(3.2.312) *To jāredz katram.*

‘This must be seen by everybody.’ (C)

The object can be subordinated to a deverbal noun. In this case, the object can be expressed with a genitive or a prepositional phrase:

(3.2.313) *Lasīšanas kāre bija mazliet apmierināta.*

‘The desire to read had been partially satisfied.’ (C)

(3.2.314) *Kādi ir iebildumi pret šādu sadarbību?* cooperation.NOM.PL.M

‘What are the objections against this kind of cooperation?’ (C)

If the noun which co-occurs with an object is not derived from a verb, the phrase still has the meaning of the action:

(3.2.315) *vēstule dēlam* letter.NOM.F son.DAT.M

‘a letter to the son’
(3.2.316) *pateicības vārdi mūsu draugam*

gratitude.gen.f word.nom.pl.m we.gen friend.dat.m

‘words of gratitude to our friend’

Speakers know that the letters are written and the words are said, thus we can postulate the implicit components of the phrase: *dēlam [uzrakstīta] vēstule* ‘a letter [written] to the son’; *draugam [pateikti] pateicības vārdi* ‘words [said to] a friend’.

The object in the genitive or a prepositional object can be subordinated to an adjective:

(3.2.317) *Teksts paskumjš un pilns pārdomu.*

text.nom.m slightly_sad.nom.m and full.nom.m reflection.gen.pl.f

‘A slightly sad text filled with reflections.’ (C)

(3.2.318) *Tīmeklis ir pilns ar muļķībām.*

internet.nom.m full.nom.m with nonsense.ins.pl.f

‘The internet is full of nonsense.’ (C)

The objects are subordinated to an adjective in the comparative degree:

(3.2.319) *Klusēšana ir labāka par runāšanu.*

silence.nom.f better.nom.f than talking.acc.f

‘Keeping silent is better than talking.’ (C)

**Extenders functioning as agents**

An extender as a component of a subordinative phrase functioning as an agent, is expressed in the form of a noun or its substitute in the genitive case (Lokmane 2013: 763). The head of the phrase can be a noun derived from a verb:

(3.2.320) *Divaino noskaņu pastiprināja vēja kaukšana.*

weird.acc.f ambience.acc.f enhance.pst.3 wind.gen.m

‘The weird ambience was enhanced by the howling of the wind.’ (C)

(3.2.321) *Vecu sievu tenkas noraidit!*

old.gen.pl.f wife.gen.pl.f gossip.acc.pl.f reject.imp.2sg

‘Disregard old wives’ tales!’ (C)
The head of the phrase can be expressed by the past passive participle:

\[(3.2.323)\quad \text{Manis} \quad \text{radiītie} \quad \text{projekti}\]
\[\text{I.Gen} \quad \text{create.ptcp.nom.pl.m} \quad \text{project.nom.pl.m}\]
\[\text{ir} \quad \text{daudz} \quad \text{apjomīgāki}.
\]
\[\text{be.cop.prs.3} \quad \text{more} \quad \text{ambitious.nom.pl.m}\]

‘The projects created by me are more ambitious.’ (C)

A participle with the subordinate agentive genitive can take the position of the predicate with the auxiliary \(būt\). In such cases, a specific kind of passive construction is created which names the agent and describes the result instead of the process of the action (see Holvoet 2011b: 22):

\[(3.2.324)\quad \text{Daudz kas} \quad \text{ir} \quad \text{paša}\]
\[\text{much} \quad \text{be.aux.prs.3} \quad \text{self.gen.f}\]
\[\text{roku} \quad \text{darināts},
\]
\[\text{hand.gen.pl.f} \quad \text{make.ptcp.nom.m}\]

‘Much has been made with his own hands.’ (C)

Attributes

Extenders with an attributive function that are subordinated to the noun are mostly adjectives or their substitutes (declinable participles or pronouns) or nouns in the genitive case (Skujiņa 2007: 42). The relationship between two nominals is considered to be attributive, and in the widest sense it can be considered as the relationship between a realia and its features. The attributive relationship is a generalization that can be specified. The attributive relations can be of different types, for example:

- Characteristic features:
  \[(3.2.325)\quad \text{Būs} \quad \text{vēls} \quad \text{un} \quad \text{silts}\]
  \[\text{be.cop.fut.3} \quad \text{late.nom.m} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{warm.nom.m}\]
  \[\text{rudens}.\]
  \[\text{autumn.nom.m}\]

‘It will be a late and warm autumn.’ (C)

- The relationship of a whole and its parts:
  \[(3.2.326)\quad \text{Numurs} \quad \text{izvietots} \quad \text{uz} \quad \text{krekla}\]
  \[\text{number.nom.m} \quad \text{place.ptcp.nom.m} \quad \text{on} \quad \text{shirt.gen.m}\]
  \[\text{piedurknes}.
\]
  \[\text{sleeve.gen.f}\]

‘The number is marked on the sleeve of the shirt.’ (C)
• Possession:

(3.2.327) 
\[ \text{Tiek meklēta Daigas pazudusi cepure.} \]

‘Daiga’s lost hat is being searched for.’ (C)

• Material or substance:

(3.2.328) 
\[ \text{Kreklu sasprauda ar mazu sudraba saktiņu.} \]

‘The shirt was fastened with a small silver brooch.’ (C)

• The “inverted” relation of the object where the head of the phrase names the object of the action expressed by a passive participle:

(3.2.329) 
\[ \text{Bet tā ir labojama kaite.} \]

‘That, however, is a repairable problem.’ (C)

Here, the dependent component can be considered to name a characteristic feature of the head, because the passive participle can form a coordinative phrase with an adjective:

(3.2.330) 
\[ \text{Grūti lasāms un neskaidrs teksts.} \]

‘A difficult to read and unclear text.’ (C)

The attributive relations can border with the adverbial ones. Borderline relations such as these result from the lexical meaning of the dependent component.

• Purpose or usefulness:

(3.2.331) 
\[ \text{Ēkas foajē ir novietota ziedojumu kaste.} \]

‘There is a collection box in the lobby of the building.’ (C)

• Place:

(3.2.332) 
\[ \text{Policija saista zelta pārdevējus ar liecelu krāpiniekami.} \]

‘The police link gold vendors with highway criminals.’ (C)
Time:

(3.2.333) Marta vējš un aprīla lietus
March.gen.m wind.nom.m and April.gen.m rain.nom.m
nes mājā lielu svētību.
bring.prs.3 home.loc.f great.acc.f blessing.acc.f
‘The March wind and April rain bring home great benefits.’ (C)

The obligatory attributes are to some extent similar to predicates. These attributes are mostly compulsory, if they are subordinated to the term for a part of the body:

(3.2.334) Viņš bij skaists cilvēks
he.nom be.pst.3 handsome.nom.m man.nom.m
ar platiem zilām,
with broad.ins.pl.m shoulder.ins.pl.m blue.ins.pl.f
miļām acim un gaišiem matiem.
loving.ins.pl.f eye.ins.pl. and light.ins.pl.m hair.ins.pl.m
‘He was a handsome man with broad shoulders, loving blue eyes, and light hair.’ (C)

Attributes are compulsory if related to the cognate object:

(3.2.335) Viņš smaidīja savu plato
he.nom smile.pst.3 own.acc.m wide.acc.m
sirmgalva smaidu.
old_man.gen.m smile.acc.m
‘The old man was smiling his wide smile.’ (C)

In the sentences with the lexical verb nebūt ‘not to be’, the attribute can be closer to the predicate:

(3.2.336) Šobrīd tam visam nav īstais laiks.
now it.dat.m all.dat.m not_be.cop.prs.3
istais time.nom.m
‘This is not the right moment for it.’ (C)

Sentence (3.2.336) cannot contain a subject in the genitive case (*šobrīd tam visam nav istā laika), therefore the function of the attribute of the word form īstais ‘the real one’ is doubtful.

The predicative meaning of the attribute is also enhanced by adding an adverbial of time:

(3.2.337) Man ir liela pieredze un
I.dat be.prs.3 large.nom.f experience.nom.f and
pagaidām vēl diezgan nesabojāta
for_now still fairly not_damage.ptcp.nom.f
atmiņa.
memory.nom.f
‘I have a lot of experience and, for now, still a fairly intact memory.’ (C)
Adverbial modifiers
Extenders with an adverbial function are subordinated to a verb and can be expressed with the help of different parts of speech in different grammatical forms – different case forms of nouns (mostly locative, instrumental, and dative), prepositional phrases, and adverbs (Skujiņa 2007: 39). The adverbial meaning is also a generalization, which can be specified:

- Manner:

  (3.2.338) *Uzvedies kārtīgi!*
  behave.IMP.2SG  properly
  ‘Behave yourself!’ (C)

- Degree:

  (3.2.339) *Vēl drusku liņāja.*
  still slightly drizzle.PST.3
  ‘It was still drizzling slightly.’ (C)

- Cause:

  (3.2.340) *Sēžu, bailēs sarāvusies.*
  sit.PRS.1SG fear.LOC.PL.F shrink.PTCP.NOM.F
  ‘I am sitting shrunken with fear.’ (C)

- The meaning of location. As was mentioned earlier, the extenders with the meaning of a location can be adjuncts, if they are placed at the beginning of the sentence or directly after the noun. The adverbial modifiers of place can be considered to be subordinated if they depend on the valency of the verb, usually in the function of a predicate, and are normally placed to the right of the verb in sentences with a neutral word order:

  (3.2.341) *Viņa iekāpa trolejbusā un apsēdās pie loga.*
  she.NOM get_in.PST.3 trolleybus.LOC.M and sit_down.PST.3 next_to window.GEN.M
  ‘She got on the bus and sat down next to a window.’ (C)

- Time. Extenders with time-related or temporal meanings are most often adjuncts. Nevertheless, they can be subordinated to a verb, if a verb requires (3.2.342) or can optionally be expanded (3.2.343) with a temporal adverbial:

  (3.2.342) *Es nemāku nokrist pludmalē un nogulēt tur septiņas dienas.*
  I.NOM not_know_how.PRS.1SG fall_down.INF beach.LOC.F and sleep.INF there seven.ACC.PL.F
  ‘I don’t know how to fall down onto the beach and lay there for seven days.’ (C)
Appositions

The syntactic relationship that exists between an apposition and the word it describes (its head) can be considered to be a word relation. However, this does not form a real phrase, as both the apposition and its head are nouns of the same case, therefore the syntactic link between the words is weaker than subordination. Descriptions of Latvian syntax contain different views on apposition: Valdmanis (1989: 21) states that since an apposition agrees with its head, it is subordinated to it, Freimane (1985: 102), however, considers that the apposition within a sentence is a determiner on the basis of formal equivalence, but is not subordinated to it. The apposition also has been ascribed a predicative relationship with the head noun (Ahero et. al. 1962: 273; Holvoet 2011b: 15–16).

Appositions can be situated both in front of the head noun (3.2.345) as well as after it (3.2.344). An apposition and a head noun are co-referential, therefore their main distinguishing feature lies in their semantics, as the apposition can describe a characteristic feature of a head noun (3.2.344) as well as relatedness (3.2.345), ethnicity (3.2.346), or occupation (3.2.347):

(3.2.344) Viņu visu laiku uzskatija par puiku palaidni.

‘He was always considered a mischievous boy.’ (C)

(3.2.345) Māsa Dace bija ļoti maiga rakstura.

‘(His/Her/Their/etc.) sister Dace was of an extremely gentle character.’ (C)

(3.2.346) Uzvarēja igaunis Raimo Kulli.

‘An Estonian, Raimo Kulli, won.’ (C)

(3.2.347) Bija ataicināts dakteris Pūpolītis.

‘Doctor Pussy-willow had been invited.’ (C)
An apposition and its head noun can also have the relationship of a more general notion and its subtype:

(3.2.348) Par kandidātu var būt ārsts anestezioķs vai ārsts doktors anestezioķs vai ārsts stažieris.

‘A physician anesthesiologist or a trainee doctor can apply for the position.’ (C)

### 3.3 The communicative structure of a simple sentence

#### 3.3.0 Introductory remarks

The communicative structure of a sentence closely reflects the functions of a sentence in communication, either written or oral. Communicative structure encompasses various communicative features expressed both grammatically (forms of verbs in various moods, particular syntactic constructions, word order) and lexically (particles, interjections) and also phonetically (emphasis and intonation). This chapter will examine the communicative types and information structure of sentences in Latvian.

The communicative type of a sentence shows the communicative purpose of an utterance and is closely connected with the type of the speech act (Austin 1962; Searle 1969: Levinson 1983). All speech act types and communicative types of utterances are best revealed in a dialogue, namely, in a conversational situation involving both a sender and an addressee. Since this work refers to written language (texts), the communicative types will be exemplified mainly from written sources. In spoken language, the communicative type is signaled by the intonation of the phrase, partly reflected in the punctuation of the written phrase. Therefore, the punctuation – especially in the absence of any grammatical or lexical marking – can be regarded as a formal indicator of the communicative type. If the communicative type of the phrase is marked grammatically, the punctuation is secondary and in most cases is not decisive for the definition of the communicative type. In combination with grammatical means, the communicative type is also indicated by the presence of separate lexical units (particles, interjections, certain lexical verbs).

In some types of speech acts, utterances with limited or no predication are used, for instance, in expressive or directive speech acts, as well as in certain standardized communication situations, for example, greetings or farewells:

(3.3.1) **Lieliski!**

splendid

‘Splendid!’ (C)
3.3.1 Declarative sentences

Declarative sentences are used mainly in representative speech acts that aim at providing information (Skujina 2007: 373):

(3.3.5) Visu laiku list.
all.ACC.M time.ACC.M rain.PRS.3
'It is raining all the time.' (C)

The declarative sentence is different from all other communicative types because its main function is informative, while the communicative purpose of other communicative types is related to emotional expression and to verbal influence upon speech actors. Therefore, the declarative construction – as the most neutral structure in a given context and communicative situation – can acquire different functions, for example, the interrogative function or the expressive function. In the case of a written text, only the punctuation functions as the marker of the communicative type:

(3.3.6) Tu taču nedomā mani tā atstāt?
you.NOM.SG PTCL not_think.PRS.2SG I.ACC like_that
leave.INF
'You’re not thinking of leaving me like that?' (C)

(3.3.7) Te notiek kaut kas ārkārtējs!
happen.PRS.3 something.NOM extraordinary.NOM.M
' Something extraordinary is going on here!' (C)

If declarative sentences contain certain performative verbs, they are also used in declarative speech acts so that the utterance corresponds to some action:

(3.3.8) Saeimas ārkārtas sēdi pasludinu
Saeima.GEN.F extraordinary.GEN.F session.ACC.F declare.PRS.1SG
as open.PTCP.ACC.F
'I hereby declare the extraordinary session of the Saeima open.' (C)
Declarative sentences are also used in commissive speech acts by which the speaker takes on some future obligations, for instance, by promising or threatening something:

(3.3.10) **Es drīz nākšu pie tevis.**
I.NOM soon come.FUT.1SG to youGEN.SG 'I will soon come to you.' (C)

(3.3.11) **Lieliski, es būšu pēc kādas stundas, labi?**
great I.NOM be.FUT.1SG after some.GEN.F hour.GEN.F okay 'Great, I will be there in an hour or so, okay?' (C)

(3.3.12) **Tu tikai pamēģini neizēst zupas Šķīvi!**
you.NOM.SG just try.IMP.2SG not.eat.up.INF soup.GEN.F plate.ACC.M 'You just try leaving your soup unfinished!' (C)

### 3.3.2 Exhortative sentences

Exhortative sentences are used in directive speech acts. Such speech acts are used to encourage the hearer or some third party to perform some action (Skujiņa 2007: 277). Exhortative utterances normally are grammatically marked because they typically feature the use of the verb in the imperative mood, mainly in the second person of the singular or plural:

(3.3.13) **Ej, atgulies gultā.**
go.IMP.2SG lie.down.IMP.2SG bed.LOC.F 'Go, lie down in bed.' (C)

(3.3.14) **Nāciet man līdzi!**
come.IMP.2PL I.DAT with 'Come with me.' (C)

The addressee of the exhortative sentences usually remains unnamed except for particularly emphatic uses where it is stated that only the addressee and no one else must perform the action in question:

(3.3.15) **Nē, tu atbildi skaidri un nebij: būs naktsmājas man pie tevis vai nebūs?**
no you.NOM.SG answer.IMP.2SG clearly and brightly be.FUT.3 night's.shelter.NOM.F I.DAT pie tevis vai neibuS?
with you.GEN.SG or not.be.FUT.3 'Hey, will you give me a clear answer – may I stay overnight at your place or not?' (C)
(3.3.16) **Tad nu arī jūs kādreiz uzņemieties**

then PTCL too you.NOM.PL someday assume.IMP.2PL

šo politisko atbildibu.

this.acc.f political.acc.f responsibility.acc.f

‘You too will assume this political responsibility someday.’ (C)

Often the emphasis is further reinforced by a marked word-order where the subject is adjacent to the predicate, or by means of a particle:

(3.3.17) **Tad atbildiet jūs par to!**

then be_responsible.imp.2pl you.NOM.PL for that.acc

‘Then you be responsible for that!’ (C)

(3.3.18) **Nezinu. Saki tu.**

not_know.prs.1sg say.imp.2sg you.NOM.sg

‘I don’t know. You tell (me).’ (C)

(3.3.19) **Ejiet arī jūs pie zemnieku organizācijām!**

go.imp.2pl too you.NOM.PL to farmer.gen.pl.m organization.dat.pl.f

‘Why don’t you also go to the farmers’ organizations!’ (C)

In broad terms, the sentences with the addressee in the third person singular or the first person plural are also considered exhortative sentences. In order to encourage use of the third person, the modal particle *lai* is used in Latvian. The verb in such sentences is in the first or third person of the present indicative (see the paradigm of the imperative in Latvian in Section 2.5.4):

(3.3.20) **Nē, lai viņš saka!**

no PTCL he.NOM say.prs.3

‘No, let him speak!’ (C)

(3.3.21) **Lai viņas vairs nebaidās precēties!**

PTCL they.NOM.f anymore not_be_afraid.prs.3 get_married.inf

‘Let them not be afraid to get married!’ (C)

(3.3.22) **Lai mēs no akmeņiem nekārojam maizi, nedz pasaulīgās lietās meklētu savu prieku!**

PTCL we.NOM from stone.dat.pl.m not_desire.prs.1pl bread.acc.f nor worldly.loc.pl.f matter.loc.pl.f seekCOND own.acc.m joy.acc.m

‘Let us not covet bread from stones, nor seek joy in worldly matters!’ (C)

The modal marker *lai* stems from the particle found in the exhortative sentences (Holvoet 2001: 196), but it can also function as a subordinating conjunction.
Thus the encouragements addressed to a third party can contain explicit performative verbs in the main clause with an object clause introduced by *lai*:

(3.3.23) *Palūdziet, lai viņš izveido objektīvu.*

*ask.IMP.2PL CONJ he.NOM develop.PRS.3 objective.ACC.M*

and *saprātīgu vērtējumu.*

*reasonable.ACC.M assessment.ACC.M*

‘Ask him to develop an objective and reasonable assessment.’ (C)

(3.3.24) *Es teicu, lai viņš tā dara.*

*I.NOM say.PST.1SG CONJ he.NOM so do.PRS.3*

‘I told him to do so.’ (C)

Encouragements addressed to a third party border on permission or wishing:

(3.3.25) *Lai viņš visu risina.*

*PTCL he.NOM everything.ACC solve.PRS.3*

‘Let him solve everything.’ (C)

(3.3.26) *Lai viņš ņem to būdu.*

*PTCL he.NOM take.PRS.3 that.ACC.F shack.ACC.F*

‘Let him take the shack.’ (C)

(3.3.27) *Bērnam liec mieru, lai bērns gul!*

*child.DAT.M leave.IMP.2SG peace.ACC.M PTCL child.NOM.M sleep.PRS.3*

‘Leave the child alone, let the child sleep!’ (C)

(3.3.28) *Lai jums izdodas atrast savu.*

*PTCL you.DAT.PL accomplish.PRS.3 find.INF own.ACC.F*

‘May you find your place in life and fulfil your dreams!’ (C)

Permission and wishing can also be signaled by explicit performatives in the main clause along with an object clause introduced by *lai*:

(3.3.29) *Lauj, lai viss rit savu gaitu.*

*let.IMP.2SG CONJ everything.NOM flow.PRS.3 own.ACC.F pace.ACC.F*

‘Let everything go with the flow.’ (C)

(3.3.30) *Vēlos, lai viņa mani ari nākamgad.*

*wish.PRS.1SG CONJ she.NOM I.ACC too next_year carry.PRS.3 on arm.DAT.PL.F*

‘I want her to court me next year too.’ (C)
In order to extend the encouragement to the group containing the speaker, the first person plural of the present or future tense is used. In this case, the addressee is not explicitly named:

(3.3.31) *Braucam!*

`go.prs.1pl`

‘Let’s go!’ (C)

(3.3.32) *Labi, iesim laukā no kēķa.*

`okay go.fut.1pl outside from kitchen.gen.m`

‘Okay, let’s leave the kitchen.’ (C)

Encouragement is expressed by sentences with the predicate in the infinitive but the addressee, if present, is either in the vocative or in the dative case:

(3.3.33) *Gulties! Komanda gulties!*

`lie_down.inf order.nom.f lie_down.inf`

‘Lie down! Lie down, it’s an order!’ (C)

(3.3.34) *Un tā visiem gulēt ar rokām virs galvas līdz nākamajai komandai!*

`and so everyone.dat.pl.m lie.inf with hand.ins.pl.f above head.gen.f until next.dat.f order.dat.f`

‘And everyone keep their hands above their heads like so until I give the next order.’ (C)

The verb in the infinitive can convey encouragement as well as an injunction or instruction, as is frequently the case in formal style:

(3.3.35) *Atzīt par spēku zaudējušu Alternatīvā dienesta likumu.*

`acknowledge.inf as power.acc.m lose.ptcp.acc.m alternative.gen.m service.gen.m law.acc.m`

‘The Alternative Service Law shall be declared invalid.’ (www.likumi.lv)

(3.3.36) *Veicināt lauku kultūrvides atjaunošanu. Sekmēt zinātnes attistibu valsts politikas līmeni.*

`advance.inf rural.gen.pl.m cultural_environment.gen.f revival.acc.f promote.inf science.gen.f development.acc.f state.gen.f policy.gen.f level.loc.m`

‘The rural cultural environment shall be revived. The development of science shall be promoted at the state policy level.’ (www.cvk.lv)

In directive speech acts, sentences appear in the imperative along with the particle *ja* or a desemanticized adverb *labi* at the end of the utterance. Although such sentences
normally end with a question mark, their main function is encouragement or even a rather categorical order, and the imperative mood is consistently used:

(3.3.37) *Izbeidz, ja?*  
stop.imp.2sg okay  
‘Stop it, will you?’ (C)

(3.3.38) *Un nemēģini aizmigt, ja?*  
and not_try.imp.2sg fall_asleep.inf  
okay  
‘Don’t you dare fall asleep, okay?’ (C)

(3.3.39) *Turies, labi?*  
hold_on.imp.2sg okay  
‘Be brave, okay?’ (C)

(3.3.40) *Piedod, labi?*  
forgive.imp.2sg okay  
‘Forgive me, will you?’ (C)

(3.3.41) *Tu paklusē, labi?*  
you.nom.sg be_silent.imp.2sg okay  
‘Shut up, will you?’ (C)

Such encouragement can be addressed to the group containing the speaker him- or herself:

(3.3.42) *Iesim visi uz istabu, labi?*  
go.fut.1pl everybody.nom.m to room.acc.f okay  
‘Let’s all go to that room, okay?’ (C)

Exhortative sentences can also contain direct address and the interjection *lūdzu*:

(3.3.43) *Tikai neuztraucies, tēt.*  
just not_worry.imp.2sg dad.voc.m  
‘Just don’t worry, dad.’ (C)

(3.3.44) *Lūdzu, sēdiet mierīgi!*  
please sit.imp.2pl calmly  
‘Please, sit and be quiet!’ (C)

It should be noted that *lūgt* in exhortative sentences can also be a finite lexical verb. In this case, it is normally followed by the infinitive or a noun phrase in the accusative:

(3.3.45) *Lūdzu pieņemt likumprojektu pirmajā lasījumā.*  
ask.prs.1sg pass.inf bill.acc.m first.loc.m reading.loc.m  
‘I ask for the bill to be passed in the first reading.’ (C)
Encouragement is often expressed by means of utterances with limited or no predication:

(3.3.48) **Marš, uz durvīm!**
interj to door.DAT.PL.f

‘Go, to the door!’ (C)

(3.3.49) **Stop!**
interj

‘Stop!’ (C)

### 3.3.3 Interrogative sentences

Interrogative sentences are used in interrogative speech acts where the speaker is attempting to obtain information from the addressee (Skujiņa 2007: 175).

**Polar questions** presuppose affirmative or negative answers. In Latvian, such questions can be marked with the interrogative particle at the beginning of a sentence:

(3.3.50) **Vai viņš ir greizsirdīgs?**
Q he.nom be.cop.prs.3 jealous.nom.m

‘Is he jealous?’ (C)

Polar interrogative sentences often lack an explicit means for expressing the communicative type and a question is only marked (in speech) by intonation and (in writing) with a question mark generally at the end of the sentence. With regard to word order, interrogative sentences do not differ from declarative ones:

(3.3.51) **Jūs dzersiet tēju?**
you.nom.pl drink.fut.2pl tea.acc.f

‘Would you like some tea?’ (C)

The interrogative particle can also be located at the end of the sentence. Such sentences also convey the doubts or dissatisfaction of the speaker and therefore must also be considered as expressive speech acts:

(3.3.52) **Viņš dzimteni pārdod, vai?!**
he.nom motherland.acc.f sell.prs.3 Q

‘He is selling his motherland, is he?!’ (C)

(3.3.53) **Slikti, vai Nepatik?**
badly Q not_like.prs.3

‘It’s bad, huh? Don’t you like it?’ (C)
(3.3.54) Ko no skolotāja var ņemt?
what.ACC from teacher.GEN.M be_able.PRS.3 take.INF
Grāmatas, vai?
book.ACC.PL.F Q
‘What can we take from a teacher? Books, huh?’ (C)

If a speaker wishes to ascertain whether his or her thoughts are correct and expects an acknowledgment from the addressee, the word combination vai ne or, more seldom, vai jā, as well as the particles ne and ja can be used at the end of the declarative sentence:

(3.3.55) Dzīve taču ir skaista,
life.NOM.F PTCL be.COP.PRS.3 beautiful.NOM.F
vai ne?
Q PTCL
‘Life is beautiful though, isn’t it?’ (C)

(3.3.56) Tu taču esi nopircis
you.NOM.SG PTCL be.AUX.PRS.2SG buy.PTCP.NOM.M
šokolādes kūciņas, vai jā?
chocolate.GEN.F cake.ACC.PL.F Q PTCL
‘You bought some chocolate cakes though, didn’t you?’ (C)

(3.3.57) Tagad tak būsit visu
now PTCL be.AUX.FUT.2PL everything.ACC
paspējušas, ne?
manage.PTCP.NOM.PL.F PTCL
‘Now you’ll have managed to do everything, right?’ (C)

(3.3.58) Tu sevi māni, ja?
you.NOM.SG self.ACC deceive.PRS.2SG PTCL
‘You are deceiving yourself, aren’t you?’ (C)

Declarative sentences marked with the particles taču, tad, varbūt are also used to perform a polar interrogative function. In this case the particle expresses a certain degree of assurance concerning the sentence content and provides an indication as to the type of answer expected:

(3.3.59) Tu taču nebrauksi ar viņu?
you.NOM.SG PTCL not_go.FUT.2SG with he.INS
‘You’re not going with him, are you?’ (C)

(3.3.60) Tad tu neiebilsti?
PTCL you.NOM.SG not_object.PRS.2SG
‘So you don’t object?’ (C)

(3.3.61) Varbūt tomēr citādi jāizvieto mēbeles?
maybe PTCL differently DEB.place furniture.NOM.PL.F
‘Perhaps we should place the furniture differently?’ (C)
If the desemanticized adverb *labi* ‘well’ is used at the end of a declarative sentence along with a question mark, the speaker does not really seek to obtain information but rather asks permission with regard to some action and expects the addressee to grant it:

(3.3.62)  
\[ \text{Es ieliešu, labi?} \]  
I.NOM pour.FUT.1SG okay  
‘I’ll pour some, okay?’ (C)

(3.3.63)  
\[ \text{Es visu uzsaucu, labi?} \]  
I.NOM everything.ACC pay.PRS.1SG okay  
‘I’ll pay for everything, okay?’ (C)

(3.3.64)  
\[ \text{Es varu un gribu katru dienu iet uz skolu un braukt mājās, labi?} \]  
I.NOM be_able.PRS.1SG and want.PRS.1SG every.ACC.F go.INF to school.ACC.F and go.INF home.LOC.PL.F okay  
‘I can and want to go to school and back home every day, okay?’ (C)

Polar interrogative sentences are also used in directive speech acts. Most often such sentences are marked by modal words, the conditional mood, negation, or a combination of the above:

(3.3.65)  
\[ \text{Vai tu vari palikt mierīga un negrozīties?} \]  
Q you.NOM.SG be_able.PRS.2SG stay.INF still.NOM.F and not_move.INF  
‘Could you sit still and not fidget?’ (C)

(3.3.66)  
\[ \text{Negribi pafilmēt?} \]  
not_want.PRS.2SG record.INF  
‘Would you like to record it?’ (C)

(3.3.67)  
\[ \text{Godātie kolēģi, vai jūs varētu mazliet klusāk?} \]  
honorable.NOM.PL.M colleague.NOM.PL.M Q you.NOM.PL be_able.COND a_little quietly  
‘Dear colleagues, could you keep the volume a little down?’ (C)

(3.3.68)  
\[ \text{Vai jūs man neatvērtu durvis?} \]  
Q you.NOM.PL I.DAT not_open.COND door.ACC.PL.F  
‘Could you open the door for me?’ (celoju.draugiem.lv)

Directive speech acts can also include interrogative sentences with the verb in the future tense:

(3.3.69)  
\[ \text{Cukuru padosi?} \]  
sugar.ACC.M pass.FUT.2SG  
‘Could you pass me some sugar?’ (C)
Special questions are introduced using the pronouns kas ‘who, what’, kurš ‘who, which’, kāds ‘what’ or adverbs (for instance, kā ‘how’, kur ‘where’, kad ‘when’, cik ‘how many, how much’, kāpēc ‘why’) and these presuppose a more informative contribution. Special questions are used when the speaker wishes the listener to reveal or specify some particular item of information topicalized by the question:

(3.3.71) Kas tad paliek pāri?
what.NOM then be_left.prs.3 over
‘What is left over then?’ (C)

(3.3.72) Kurš cits viņu atbalstīs?
who.NOM.M another.NOM.M he.ACC support.fut.3
‘Who else will support him?’ (C)

(3.3.73) Kādi ir eiro ieviešanas main_principle.nom.pl.m be.cop.prs.3 euro introduction.gen.f
‘What are the main principles for the introduction of the euro?’ (C)

(3.3.74) Kāpēc paliku?
why stay.pst.1sg
‘Why did I stay?’ (C)

(3.3.75) Cik droši varam justies blakus
how safe be_able.prs.1pl feel.inf beside
jaunajiem vaditājiem?
new.dat.pl.m manager.dat.pl.m
‘How safe can we feel with our new managers?’ (C)

A particular special question type in Latvian is represented by the construction kas ... par along with a noun phrase in the accusative:

(3.3.76) Un kas par lietu?
and what.NOM PREP matter.ACC.F
‘And what’s the matter?’ (C)

(3.3.77) Kas tas par vārdu?
what.NOM that.NOM.M PREP name.ACC.M
‘What kind of name is that?’ (C)

(3.3.78) Kas tas ir par signālu?
what.NOM that.NOM.M be.cop.prs.3 PREP signal.ACC.M
‘What kind of signal is that?’ (C)
Alternative questions require one to choose from several options. Alternative questions can formally appear both as polar and special questions. The possible options within this type of question are bound by the conjunction vai:

(3.3.79) Tu paliec vai kāp?
you.NOM.SG stay.PRS.2SG or climb.PRS.2SG
‘Are you staying or climbing?’ (C)

(3.3.80) Ko tu dzersi – tēju vai
what.ACC you.NOM.SG drink.FUT.2SG tea.ACC.F or
kafiju?
coffee.ACC.F
‘What are you having – tea or coffee?’ (C)

If the question contains two predicates, one of them can be negated:

(3.3.81) Ņemsit vai neņemsit?
take.FUT.2PL or not_take.FUT.2PL
‘Are you taking it or not taking it?’ (C)

(3.3.82) Vai tad tu nāksi vai nenāksi
Q PTCL you.NOM.SG come.FUT.2SG or not_come.FUT.2SG
pie briežiem palīgā?
to deer.DAT.PL.M to_aid
‘Are you coming or not coming to rescue the deer?’ (C)

3.3.4 Exclamative sentences

Exclamative sentences are used in expressive speech acts and convey the speaker’s attitude or emotions (Skujiņa 2007: 171). Since exclamative sentences in their structure often resemble declarative sentences, they do not contain specific markers of the communicative type. The main purpose of an exclamative sentence is to express emotional content which is shown by the exclamation mark at the end of the sentence:

(3.3.83) Bet es nemaz negribu viņu
but I.NOM not_at_all not_want.PRS.1SG he.ACC
precē!
marry.INF
‘But I don’t even want to marry him!’ (C)

In exclamative sentences a variety of emotionally expressive lexical means, especially interjections and particles, can occur:

(3.3.84) Ak, laime, cik tu biji
oh happiness.NOM.F how you.NOM.SG be.COP.PST.2SG
isa!
brief.NOM.F
‘Oh happiness, how brief you were!’ (C)
In expressive speech acts, sentences can be used that formally resemble the special interrogative sentences. They can be introduced by the pronoun kāds ‘what’ or by the quantitative adverb cik ‘how much, how many’. Both the content of the sentence – an emphatic statement rather than a question – and the punctuation at the end of the sentence indicate an expressive speech act:

(3.3.87) Kāds spēks ir šajos jauniešos! 
what.NOM.M strength.NOM.M be.prs.3 this.LOC.PL.M young_person.LOC.PL.M
‘These young people have such strength!’ (C)

(3.3.88) Cik viņš bija neveikls un smieklīgs!
how he.NOM be.cop.pst.3 clumsy.NOM.M and funny.NOM.M
‘How clumsy and funny he was!’ (C)

The interrogative construction kas ... par along with a noun phrase in the accusative can also acquire an expressive function:

(3.3.89) Kas par kaunu!
what.NOM PREP shame.ACC.M
‘How shamefull!’ (C)

(3.3.90) Kas tas bija par braucienu!
what.NOM that.NOM.M be.cop.pst.3 PREP ride.ACC.M
‘What a ride that was!’ (C)

(3.3.91) Kas tas bija par skatu!
what.NOM that.NOM.M be.cop.pst.3 PREP spectacle.ACC.M
‘What a spectacle that was!’ (C)

Exclamative sentences introduced by a question-word may be elliptical if they describe an item or a situation that can be identified in the communicative context or situation:

(3.3.92) Jasmine: Reku tavs spieķis, vecmamm... 
Jasmine.NOM.F look_here your.NOM.SG cane.NOM.M granny.VOC.F
Ģertrūde: Kāda laime!
Ģertrūde.NOM.F what.NOM.F luck.NOM.F
‘Jasmine: Look, your cane, granny... 
Ģertrūde: What luck!’ (C)
3.3.5 Optative sentences

Optative sentences can be used in optative speech acts and are used for expressing wishes or desires (Skujiņa 2007: 440). These sentences typically are grammatically marked – they feature the verb in the conditional mood and the particles kaut ‘may’ or lai ‘let, may’. A desire expressed in this type of sentence mainly relates to some action or state relating to the speaker:

(3.3.94) Kaut būtu vēl tumšāks, kaut
PTCL be.COP.COND more dark.CMP.NOM.M PTCL
varētu paslēpties tumsā…
be_able.COND hide.INF dark.LOC.F
‘If only it were even darker, if only I could hide in the dark…’ (C)

A wish is normally addressed to an interlocutor or any other person in question. Most often, an optative sentence contains the particle lai and a verb in the third person present indicative. A wish mentions the addressee, usually in the dative case:

(3.3.95) Lai jums izdodas!
PTCL you.DAT.PL succeed.PRS.3
‘Good luck to you!’ (C)

The addressee can also be expressed by a pronoun in the third person singular or the first person plural:

(3.3.96) Lai viņam ilgs mūžs.
PTCL he.DAT long.NOM.M life.NOM.M
‘May he have a long life!’ (C)

(3.3.97) Lai mums visiem veiksmīga nedēļa.
PTCL we.DAT all.DAT.PL successful.NOM.F
week.NOM.F
‘May we all have a successful week!’ (C)

A wish can also be expressed using a verb in the conditional mood:

(3.3.98) Lai mums būtu panākumi darbā un liels progress
PTCL we.DAT be.COND success.NOM.PL.M work.LOC.M and great.NOM.M progress.NOM.M studijās!
study.LOC.PL.F
‘May our work be successful and may we have great progress in our studies!’ (C)
Let the teachers have an angelic sense of time and angelic patience!’ (C)

Optative speech acts more often than other types of speech acts contain explicit performatives in the main clause along with the object clause, introduced by the particles lai or kaut functioning as conjunctions:

I wish there was a skatepark in Aizkraukle.’ (C)

‘We care that every bank employee should feel good.’ (C)

‘I wish it would happen immediately.’ (C)

‘As a child Rita wished she could live in an apartment instead.’ (C)

Wishes can also contain the explicit finite verb vēlēt or novēlēt ‘wish’, followed by the infinitive or a direct object:

‘I wish for all of this year’s graduates to never stop learning!’ (C)

‘I wish you a good trip!’ (C)
Novēlu tautai mīlestību un ticību.

‘I wish our nation love and faith!’ (C)

Such sentences have given rise to elliptical wishes:

Laimīgu ceļu jums visiem!

‘Have a good trip everyone!’ (C)

Daudz laimes, Latvija!

‘Happy birthday, Latvia!’ (C)

3.4 Word order in simple sentences

3.4.0 Introductory remarks

In Latvian, word order has three types of functions:

1) a grammatical function: word order shows the grammatical relation between word forms (if the order is changed, the grammatical structure of the sentence changes, too),

2) a communicative function: word order reveals the information structure of the sentence (if the order is changed, the grammatical structure of the sentence does not change),

3) a stylistic function: word order conveys added stylistic and/or emotional information (if the order is changed, the grammatical structure of the sentence remains unchanged).

For the purposes of this study, “a neutral or direct word order” refers to an order that expresses the notional content without any added information, namely, it is stylistically and emotionally neutral, context-independent, and unrelated to any special communicative purpose or emphatic use (Skujiņa 2007: 403). Conversely, “an indirect word order” indicates one that carries added stylistic and/or emotional information or implies a special communicative purpose (Skujiņa 2007: 254).

The word order in a sentence can be examined in two ways:

1) The word order in the sentence as a whole, or the absolute word order. For instance, in Latvian, the predicate in interrogative sentences is mostly at the absolute end of the sentence (3.4.1), while the adjuncts are usually at the beginning of the sentence (3.4.2):

Kur tad es paliktu?

‘Where would I go?’ (C)
Yesterday at the restaurant we eagerly ate charcoal-grilled pork with vegetables.’ (C)

2) Two or more word forms occur in relation to one another, or the relative word order. Typologically, Latvian belongs to the SVO languages with the following basic word order: the subject comes first, the verb second, and the object third. Latvian shows all six possible subject/verb/object distributions, the least common types being VSO and VOS (Valkovska 2016a: 41). SVO is the most common type and can be found in various sentence constructions and sentence communicative types. The second most common type is OVS, typically occurring with the direct object and its phrase at the beginning of the sentence, most often it is contextually-bound and expresses information that is already known:

‘This fact is referred to by authors of similar studies.’ (C)

The SOV order is most typical of sentences with a pronoun functioning as the object:

‘Where did you learn to make these thatched roofs?’ (C)

The object can also be a semantically independent word; such sequences are most often found in the mass media:

‘Most of the MPs didn’t support the idea.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)
In OSV sentences, the object mainly has the function of an interrogative word or a conjunction in subclauses:

(3.4.7) \( Ko \quad es \quad tev \quad samācīju? \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{what.ACC} & \quad \text{I.NOM} & \quad \text{you.DAT.SG} & \quad \text{teach.PST.1SG} \\
\text{‘What did I teach you?’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

(3.4.8) \( Tu \quad klausies, \quad ko \quad es \quad tev \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{you.NOM.SG} & \quad \text{listen.PRS.2SG} & \quad \text{what.ACC} & \quad \text{I.NOM} & \quad \text{you.DAT.SG} & \quad \text{say.PRS.1SG} \\
\text{‘Are you listening to what I am saying to you?’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

In OSV sentences, the object can be an emphasized pronoun (3.4.9), sometimes also a contextually-bound semantically independent word or phrase (3.4.10):

(3.4.9) \( To \quad viņi \quad mums \quad nekad \quad nepiedeva. \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{that.ACC} & \quad \text{they.NOM.M} & \quad \text{we.DAT} & \quad \text{never} & \quad \text{not_forgive.PST.3} \\
\text{‘They never forgave us that.’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

(3.4.10) \( Visus \quad šos \quad gadalaikus \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{all.ACC.PL.M} & \quad \text{this.ACC.PL.M} & \quad \text{season.ACC.PL.M} \\
\text{bērni} & \quad \text{atainoja} & \quad \text{savos} \\
\text{child.NOM.PL.M} & \quad \text{portray.PST.3} & \quad \text{own.LOC.PL.M} \\
\text{zimējumos} & \quad \text{drawing.LOC.PL.M} \\
\text{‘The children portrayed all these seasons in their drawings.’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

VSO (3.4.11 and 3.4.12) and VOS (3.4.13) types are very expressive and are mostly found in subclauses and in fiction or poetry when colloquial speech is portrayed (Valkovska 2016a: 42–44):

(3.4.11) \( Bet \quad pēkšni \quad Stefans \quad saka: \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{but} & \quad \text{suddenly} & \quad \text{Stefans.NOM.M} & \quad \text{say.PRS.3} \\
\text{Pērc} & \quad \text{tu} & \quad \text{to} & \quad \text{sev.} \\
\text{buy.IMP.2SG} & \quad \text{you.NOM.SG} & \quad \text{that.ACC} & \quad \text{self.DAT} \\
\text{‘But suddenly Stefans says: - Buy it for yourself.’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

(3.4.12) \( Vārdsakot, \quad pārdeva \quad viņi \quad čīgānam \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{in_short} & \quad \text{sell.PST.3} & \quad \text{they.NOM} & \quad \text{gypsy.DAT.M} \\
\text{vilku} & \quad \text{par} & \quad \text{teļu.} \\
\text{wolf.ACC.M} & \quad \text{for} & \quad \text{calf.ACC.M} \\
\text{‘In short, they sold the gypsy the wolf as a calf.’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]

(3.4.13) \( Pie \quad galda \quad sēž \quad un \quad dzer \quad tēju \)
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{at} & \quad \text{table.GEN.M} & \quad \text{sit.PRS.3} & \quad \text{and} & \quad \text{drink.PRS.3} & \quad \text{tea.ACC.F} \\
\text{divas} & \quad \text{sievietes} & \quad \text{Elīza} & \quad \text{un} & \quad \text{Sabine.} \\
\text{two.NOM.F} & \quad \text{woman.NOM.PL.F} & \quad \text{Elīza.NOM.F} & \quad \text{and} & \quad \text{Sabine.NOM.F} \\
\text{‘Two women sit and drink tea at the table, Elīza and Sabine.’ (C)}
\end{align*}
\]
If we only look at the sequence of two components – the subject and the predicate – the SV order appears neutral in Latvian. However, in a number of cases with a neutral word order, the subject occurs after the predicate. For example, in sentences with sentence-initial adverbial adjuncts, the neutral order is one where the predicate is first and is followed by the subject, if the subject is the rhyme:

(3.4.14) Kādā dienā priekšā pavērās plašs
    some.LOC.F day.LOC.F ahead.LOC.F open_up.PST.3 vast.NOM.M
    ahead.loc.f open_up.pst.3 field.NOM.M
‘One day a vast field opened up.’ (C)

(3.4.15) Dārzā labi jūtas skujiņi,
    garden.LOC.M well feel.PRS.3 conifer.NOM.PL.M hortenzijas.
    hortensia.NOM.PL.F
‘Conifers and hortensia fit well in the garden.’ (C)

(3.4.16) Šodien lija jauks lietutiņš.
    today rain.PST.3 nice.NOM.M drizzling_rain.NOM.M
‘Today there was a nice, drizzling rain.’ (C)

The VS order is neutral also in sentences which contain only the rhyme and describe a state:

(3.4.17) Iezvanījās mobilais telefons.
    ring.PST.3 mobile.NOM.M phone.NOM.M
‘The mobile phone rang.’ (C)

(3.4.18) Bija silta augusta nakts.
    be.PST.3 warm.NOM.F August.gen.m night.NOM.F
‘It was a warm August night.’ (C)

Sentences with an SV order usually are bipartite from the point of view of information structure, and changing the word order makes it possible to avoid this. This is also important in sentences with an adjunct functioning as the theme. In addition, the SV order is more often used in dynamic narration, while the VS order is more common in descriptions of states. This is because the verb is more important in narration and therefore is placed at the end of the sentence, but in descriptions of states the noun carries more weight.

Also, in Latvian, the relative word order in phrases tends to be fixed, especially in noun phrases. Attributes normally precede the noun. Those that follow it are numerical attributes expressing an approximate amount:

(3.4.19) Vāzē liktas tās [dālijas]
    vase.LOC.F put.PTCP.NOM.PL.F that.NOM.PL.F [dahlias]
    put.ptcp.nom.pl.f that.nom.pl.f
nostāv dienas trīs.
    stand.PRS.3 day.NOM.PL.F three.NOM.F
‘Dahlias, when put in a vase, stay fresh for about three days.’ (C)
(3.4.20) Mēs nebijām redzējušās gadus piecus.
‘We hadn’t seen each other for about five years.’ (C)

The noun is followed by an object:
(3.4.21) Vīratēvs uzdod jautājumu par Šekspīru.
‘Father-in-law asks questions about Shakespeare.’ (C)

(3.4.22) Tā ir Lieldienu dāvana draugiem.
‘It is an Easter gift for friends.’ (C)

The placement of parallel subordinated attributes in the phrase depends on the formal type of subordination. The governed component (a noun in the genitive) in most cases is located closer to the noun than the adjective agreeing with the noun:
(3.4.23) Darbnīcā sagādātas aromātiskas vaska plāksnes.
‘In the workshops there are aromatic wax plates.’ (C)

However, the adjective may be placed closer to the noun than the governed component, especially if the adjective is definite:
(3.4.24) Šāda siena būs istabas skaistais akcents.
‘Such a wall will be the beautiful highlight of your room.’ (C)

If there are several governed components in parallel, the sequence depends on which of them is semantically more related to the noun:
(3.4.25) Meistars kopš laika gali dedzināja tikai baznicas vaska sveces.
‘The master has always burned only wax candles from the church.’ [wax candles is a more semantically related phrase than church candles] (C)
If several agreeing components are subordinated in parallel, the word order is determined both by the closeness of the semantic relations and the part of speech of the components (Valkovska 2016a: 110–111), for example, pronouns (3.4.26) and numerals (3.4.27) are usually placed further away from the noun:

(3.4.26)  
Tu esi mans labākais  
you.NOM.SG be.COP.PRS.2SG my.NOM.M best.NOM.M  
draugs. friend.NOM.M  
‘You are my best friend.’ (C)

(3.4.27)  
Tas ir pirmais nopietnais  
it.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 first.NOM.M serious.NOM.M  
solis tavā karjerā. step.NOM.M your.LOC.SG.F career.LOC.F  
‘This is the first serious step in your career.’ (C)

In modern Latvian (especially in the mass media), the relative order of words in strings of attributes is unstable and results in deviations from literary language norms. First of all, such deviations can be found in phrases containing viens no:

(3.4.28)  
Šis ir mūsu partijas vēlēšanu  
this.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 we.GEN party.GEN.F election.GEN.PL.F  
kampaņas viens no elementiem. campaign.GEN.F one.NOM.M of element.DAT.PL.M  
[according to the norm –  
viens no mūsu partijas vēlēšanu  
one.NOM.M of we.GEN party.GEN.F election.GEN.PL.F  
kampaņas elementiem  
campaign.GEN.F element.DAT.PL.M]  
‘This is one of the elements of our party election campaign.’ (Diena)

The reason for this tendency could be an attempt to avoid the preposition no being too distant from its specifier, the noun.

Secondly, there are deviations with regard to the placement of indefinite agreeing attributes, they are placed between the phrase head and the governed dependent component:

(3.4.29)  
Dziesmas izpildis šībrīža  
song.NOM.PL.F perform.FUT.3 present_moment.GEN.M  
populāri dziedātāji. popular.NOM.PL.M singer.NOM.PL.M  
[according to the norm –  
populāri šībrīža dziedātāji  
popular.NOM.PL.M present_moment.GEN.M singer.NOM.PL.M]  
‘The songs will be performed by currently popular singers.’ (www.delfi.lv)
Such a tendency could be explained by the desire to avoid homoforms that could give rise to misunderstandings, for example, in the string *pozitīva uzņēmuma tēla veidošana* ‘creation of a positive image for a company’ one can see the phrase *pozitīvs uzņēmums* ‘a positive company’ and also *pozitīvs tēls* ‘a positive image’, thus, to avoid a misunderstanding, the order *uzņēmuma pozitīva tēla veidošana* was chosen. The word order can also be influenced by the speaker’s opinion on the closeness of the semantic relations between words:

(3.4.30) **Zāļu nepamatota lietošana**
drug.GEN.PL.F unfounded.NOM.F use.NOM.F

*ir kaitīga veselībai.*

be.COP.PRS.3 harmful.NOM.F health.DAT.F

‘Misuse of drugs is harmful to your health.’ (www.vi.gov.lv)

In an adjectival phrase, the dependent component is usually placed before the adjective (*loti labs* ‘very good’, *gaiši zils* ‘light blue’, *pavisam auksts* ‘very cold’). Also, in an adverbial phrase the dependent component is usually placed before the adverb (*samērā bīstami* ‘somewhat dangerously’, *diezgan droši* ‘fairly safely’).

In a verbal phrase, the positioning of the components is looser. In phrases with a neutral word order, objects are most often placed after the verb:

(3.4.31) **Uzvara dos bērniem**
victory.NOM.F give.FUT.3 child.DAT.PL.M

*iespēju par brīvu apmeklēt radošo studiju.*

opportunity.ACC.F for free.ACC visit.INF creative.ACC.F studio.ACC.F

‘The victory will give children the opportunity to visit the creative studio for free.’ (C)

However, the placement of objects can be influenced by various factors, the sentence structure type, the presence of other sentence components, context as well as the object lexeme (Valkovska 2016a: 118). Complements of type and measure as well as those creating conditions that modify the verb may be found in different places in the sentence; their placement mainly depends on the information structure (see Section 3.4.2):

(3.4.31) **Tas iet pavisam ātri.**
it.NOM.M go.PRS.3 very fast

‘It goes very fast.’ (C)

(3.4.32) **Kur tik ātri ķemja jaunu kleitu?**
where so quickly find.FUT.3 new.ACC.F

dress.ACC.F

‘Where will a new dress be found so quickly?’ (C)
3.4.1 The grammatical function of word order

Since syntactic relations between word forms in Latvian are usually expressed by means of inflections, word order in a sentence is relatively free. However, there are situations where word order determines the syntactic function of word forms.

In sentences with homoforms, the subject precedes the object:

(3.4.33) a. Lidakas sāk ēst
pike.NOM.PL.F begin.PRS.3 eat.INF
citas zīvis.
other.ACC.PL.F fish.ACC.PL.F
‘The pikes begin eating other fish.’ (www.copeslietas.lv)
b. Citas zīvis sāk ēst
other.NOM.PL.F fish.NOM.PL.F begin.PRS.3 eat.INF
lidakas.
pike.ACC.PL.F
‘Other fish start eating the pikes.’

The subject of (3.4.33a) is lidakas, but that of (3.4.33b) is zīvis.

If a word form can perform different syntactic functions, the sequence of words is crucial in distinguishing between these functions. A noun in the nominative may be the subject or part of the predicate:

(3.4.34) a. Māksla ir radišana.
art.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 creation.NOM.F
‘Art is creation.’ (C)
b. Radišana ir māksla.
creation.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 art.NOM.F
‘Creation is art.’

In example (3.4.34a), the subject is māksla, but in (3.4.34b), the subject is radišana; the sentences have different semantics. Changing word order and the semantics of the sentence are used as artistic devices in example (3.4.35):

(3.4.35) Spēlēfilmā režisors ir dievs.
film.LOC.F director.NOM.M be.COP.PRS.3 God.NOM.M
Dokumentālajā kino dievs
documentary.LOC.DEF.M cinema.M God.NOM.M
ir režisors.
be.COP.PRS.3 director.NOM.M
‘In a film, the director is God. In documentary cinema, God is the director.’
(National Film Awards ceremony “Lielaik Kristaps”)

However, it should be noted that in many cases it is not the placement of the nominative that matters, but lexical semantics. In example (3.4.36b), semantics do not allow the interpretation of the word prece as the subject, because the subject is usually used to identify the topic of speech, while the predicate has an attributive role (see also Lokmane 2009):
Therefore, sentence (3.4.36b) is either completely semantically unacceptable or is only conceivable in a very expressive context. If the semantics of the sentence preclude the relevant interpretation, the word order is not decisive.

An adjective in the nominative, depending on its placement in the sentence, may be an attribute (3.4.37b, 3.4.38b, 3.4.39a), a predicate (3.4.37a, 3.4.39b), or a secondary predicate (3.4.38a):

(3.4.37) a. Vakars ir tīri jaiks.
    evening.nom.m be.cop.prs.3 rather nice.nom.m
    ‘The evening is rather nice.’ (C)

(3.4.38) a. Saule rietēja iesarkana.
    sun.nom.f set.pst.3 fairly_red.nom.f
    ‘The sun was fairly red as it was setting. [lit. The sun was setting fairly red.]’ (C)

(3.4.39) a. Tradicijām ir liela
    tradition.dat.pl.f be.prs.3 great.nom.f
    vērtība.
    value.nom.f
    ‘Traditions are of great value.’ (C)

A noun (in examples (3.4.40) the noun is substituted by a pronoun) in the dative can be either the subject or the object depending on the placement:

(3.4.40) a. Man jums kas
    I.dat you.dat.pl something.nom
    vēstāms.
    tell.ptcp.nom.m
    ‘I have something to tell you.’ (C)
b. *Jums man kas*
you.DAT.PL I.DAT something.NOM
vēstāms.
tell.PTCP.NOM.M
‘You have something to tell me.’

In example (3.4.40a), the subject is *man*, but in example (3.4.40b), the subject is *jums*, and the sentences have different semantics. However, in some cases, when the object is contextually bound, it may precede the subject (Valkovska 2016b):

(3.4.41) *Par Griekiju tu sāki runāt.*
Manuprāt, viņiem mums tiešām
in_my_opinion they.DAT.M we.DAT really
nav jāpalīdz.
not_be.AUX.PRS.3 DEB.help
‘You started talking about Greece. I do not think we really need to help them.’ (twitter.com)

The dative that follows the predicate is the object (3.4.42a), but the dative placed at the beginning of the sentence is an adjunct (3.4.42b):

(3.4.42) a. *Svētki ir jums.*
celebration.NOM.PL.M be.PRS.3 you.DAT.PL
‘The celebration is for you.’ (C)
b. *Jums ir svētki.*
you.DAT.PL be.PRS.3 celebration.NOM.PL.M
‘You have a celebration.’

The verb in the infinitive, depending on its placement in the sentence, may be the subject or the predicate:

(3.4.43) a. *Mīlēt ir dot.*
love.INF be.COP.PRS.3 give.INF
‘To love is to give.’ (C)
b. *Dot ir mīlēt.*
give.INF be.COP.PRS.3 love.INF
‘To give is to love.’

(3.4.44) a. *Mīlēt nozīmē saprast.*
love.INF mean.PRS.3 understand.INF
‘To love means to understand.’ (C)
b. *Saprast nozīmē mīlēt.*
understand.INF mean.PRS.3 love.INF
‘To understand means to love.’

In examples (3.4.43a, 3.4.44a), the subject is *mīlēt*, but in examples (3.4.43b, 3.4.44b), it is part of the predicate.

The placement in the sentence may testify to the closeness of the bond and thus also to the type of syntactic relations between the components. If the phrase-dependent
component is placed at the absolute beginning of the sentence, it is more independent and able to relate to the whole sentence, becoming an adjunct:

(3.4.45) **Patiesībā viņiem bija dota**

in_fact they.DAT.M be.AUX.PST.3 give.PTCP.NOM.F

komanda tikai identificē lidaparātu un
command.NOM.F only identify.INF aircraft.ACC.M and

sekot tam.
follow.INF it.DAT.M

‘In fact, they were only given the command to identify the aircraft and follow it.’ (C)

(3.4.46) **Profesorei spēku dod darbs ar studentiem.**

professor.DAT.F strength.ACC.M give.PRS.3 work.NOM.M with student.INS.PL.M

‘Work with students gives the professor strength.’ (www.rsu.lv)

In sentence (3.4.45), the dative can be considered an adjunct because of its placement, although the phrase *dot viņiem komandu* ‘to give them a command’ is also possible. Similarly, in sentence (3.4.46), the phrase *dot profesorei spēku* ‘to give the professor strength’ is also possible, but the placement of the dative at the beginning of the sentence gives it the meaning of the experiencer, and it can be considered an adjunct.

An adverbial adjunct, placed at the beginning of the sentence, relates to the whole sentence (3.4.47a), but the same adjunct, placed after the noun, is related only to this word (3.4.47b):

(3.4.47) a. **Mežā viņus pārsteidz nakts.**

forest.LOC.M they.ACC.M surprise.PRS.3 night.NOM.F

‘In the forest, they are surprised by the night.’ (C)

b. **Viņus pārsteidz nakts mežā.**

they.ACC.M surprise.PRS.3 night.NOM.F forest.LOC.M

‘They are surprised by the night in the forest.’

### 3.4.2 The communicative function of word order

The communicative function of word order in Latvian is related to information structure, namely, the division of the utterance into the theme and the rheme. The topical division is binary in nature and consists of dividing a sentence into topical and less topical information (Skujiņa 2007: 388). It should also be noted that there are communicatively indivisible sentences in Latvian where it is not possible to distinguish between the units of information structure.
The theme and the rheme have been extensively examined in linguistics; in reviewing all approaches, the following features of the relevant division of components can be mentioned:

1) the theme is information known to the receiver, or the given; in contrast, the rheme is new, unknown (in which case the theme is usually contextually bound);
2) the theme is less important information that can be new to the receiver, but the rheme is important information, the main content of the statement (in this case, an important feature of the rheme in the oral text is the sentence emphasis);
3) the theme is the topic of the speech or the outset of the message, the rheme is the content of the message, or what is said about the object (in which case it is always placed at the beginning of the utterance).

These three aspects can be correlated (the given is also less important information and the topic of the speech), therefore, we can talk about a canonical or unmarked theme. However, quite often these aspects do not coincide, so there are problems with distinguishing between the theme and the rheme. For instance, an item known to the addressee can also be topicalized, emphasizing its importance:

(3.4.48) \text{Vēlāk} \quad \text{tieši} \quad \text{Jānis} \quad \text{izvīzija} \quad \text{savu}
\text{later} \quad \text{exactly} \quad \text{Jānis.NOM.M} \quad \text{put.PST.3} \quad \text{own.ACC.F}
\text{komandu} \quad \text{vadībā.}
\text{team.ACC.F} \quad \text{lead.LOC.F}

‘Later it was exactly Jānis who put his team in the lead.’ (C)

And conversely, new information can also be the topic of the speech:

(3.4.49) \text{Kāda} \quad \text{meitene} \quad \text{iznāca} \quad \text{no}
\text{some.NOM.F} \quad \text{girl.NOM.F} \quad \text{come_out.PST.3} \quad \text{from}
\text{uzgaidāmās} \quad \text{tpelas.}
\text{waiting.GEN.F} \quad \text{room.GEN.F}

‘A girl came out of the waiting room.’ (C)

If the theme possesses less characteristic features, one should speak of a non-canonical or marked theme. A marked theme may be contextually unbound, it may carry a characteristic intonational emphasis, often there is an accompanying particle:

(3.4.50) \text{Pat} \quad \text{lāci} \quad \text{var} \quad \text{iemācit} \quad \text{dejot.}
\text{even} \quad \text{bear.ACC.M} \quad \text{can.PRS.3} \quad \text{teach.INF} \quad \text{dance.INF}

‘Even a bear can be taught to dance.’ (C)

Information structure is closely related to the prosody of the sentence. Usually, in a speech, there is a pause between the theme and the rheme, so each of these units forms its own intonational phrase. Each intonational phrase is also characterized by emphasis highlighting a word in the intonation unit. In a sentence with several intonational phrases, the rheme is most often marked by more intense stress, which should be considered sentence stress (Valkovska 2016b). As the stress can be
clearly identified only in speech and, in Latvian, it bears no direct relation to word order – namely, the same word order may have a different sentence stress – this work considers the theme to be the outset of the message, which always occurs at the beginning of the sentence (see also Valkovska 2016b). So, the theme is the first component of the sentence and the rest of the sentence is considered the rheme (Thompson 2004: 143).

Information structure is related to the syntactic structure of the sentence. For example, the theme is most often expressed by a noun or by a noun phrase, especially when functioning as the subject of the sentence. The predicate, in turn, along with its attributes typically functions as the rheme. The role played by information structure can vary across types of syntactic relations. Therefore, different types of syntactic relations and sentence components along with their relationship with information structure will be discussed below.

The least significant role with regard to information structure is played by the noun phrase. As was previously stated, the word order in a phrase is determined by the closeness of the semantic relations among components.

Generally, a syntactic unit – a phrase – forms one component in a topical division. When the components of a noun phrase are placed at a distance from each other, one may belong to the theme, the other to the rheme (Valkovska 2016b: 28–29). Examples (3.4.51–3.4.53) stress the attribute, but the head of the phrase functions as the theme:

(3.4.51) Birojus uzņēmēji gribēja ekstluzīvus.
office.ACC.PL.M businessman.NOM.PL.M want.PST.3 exclusive.ACC.PL.M
‘As for the offices, the businessmen wanted them to be exclusive.’ (Ir)

(3.4.52) Runātāja es esmu diža.
speaker.NOM.F I.NOM be.COP.PRS.1SG great.NOM.F
‘As a speaker, I am great.’ (twitter.com)

(3.4.53) Troksnis sacelts liels.
fuss.NOM.M kick_up.PTCP.NOM.M huge.NOM.M
‘The fuss that is kicked up, is huge.’ (Latvijas Avīze)

Although the attributes (3.4.51–3.4.53) are placed in a position that is typical of a secondary predicate site, they do not bear any relation to the real predicate and do not have the temporal or modal meanings characteristic of a secondary predicate or a predicative adjunct.

In a verb phrase, the role played by information structure is greater. Objects (both direct and indirect) are usually placed after the predicate, and the indirect object in the dative is usually closer to the verb:

(3.4.54) Aktieris nemitīgi sūta aktīrsei SMS.
actor.NOM.M constantly send.PRS.3 actress.DAT.F SMS
‘The actor constantly texts the actress.’ (C)
However, for the purpose of topicalization, this word order can be easily changed:

(3.4.55) *Presidents sūta sveicienus*

president.NOM.M send.PRS.3 greeting.ACC.PL.M

visām Latvijas mātēm.

all.DAT.PL.F Latvia.GEN.F mother.DAT.PL.F

‘The president sends greetings to all mothers in Latvia.’ (C)

Pronominal objects are usually to the left of the predicate:

(3.4.56) *Es viņam visu godprātiņi*

I.NOM he.DAT everything.ACC.M in_good_faith

izklāstīju.

tell.PST.1SG

‘I told him everything in good faith.’ (C)

(3.4.57) *Mums sūtīja apsveikumus un ziedus.*

we.DAT send.PST.3 greeting.ACC.PL.M and

flower.ACC.PL.M

‘We were sent greetings and flowers.’ (C)

An indirect object, if it is a semantically independent word, functions relatively infrequently as the theme, mainly in media language:

(3.4.58) *Nacionālās apvienibas izvirzītajai kandidatūrai šodien atbalstu izteica koalīcijas partijas.*

national.GEN.DEF.F union.GEN.F move_forward.PTCP.DAT.F
candidacy.DAT.F today support.ACC.M express.PST.3

coalition.GEN.F party.NOM.PL.F

‘The coalition parties today supported the candidate nominated by the “Nacionālā apvieniba”.’ (Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze)

It is more common for the direct object to function as the theme:

(3.4.59) *Tāpēc profesionālos politikus aicinu pieņemt profesionāli politiskus lēmumus.*

therefore professional.ACC.PL.M politician.ACC.PL.M

call.PRS.1SG take.INF professionally

political.ACC.PL.M decision.ACC.PL.M

‘Therefore, I call on professional politicians to make professional political decisions.’ (C)

(3.4.60) *Bet Kaliforniju zinājām visi.*

but California.ACC.F know.PST.1PL all.NOM.PL.M

‘But we all knew of California.’ (A. Eglitis)
The object often plays the role of the theme in subjectless sentences with a generalized or indeterminate agent; in such cases this order can be considered neutral:

\[(3.4.61)\]

\[\text{Ziemeļu skujkoku mežus} \]

north.gen.pl.m conifer.gen.pl.m forest.acc.pl.m

\[\text{sauc} \ ari \ par \ boreālajiem} \]

call.prs.3 also prep boreal.dat.pl.m

\[\text{mežiem.} \]

forest.dat.pl.m

‘Northern coniferous forests are also called boreal forests.’ (C)

\[(3.4.62)\]

\[\text{Mežus atjauno vai nu māksli,} \]

forest.acc.pl.m restore.prs.3 conj part artificially

\[\text{tos stādot un sējot, vai} \]

it.acc.pl.m plant.ptcp and sow.ptcp conj

\[\text{arī izcirstajām teritorijām} \]

part cut.ptcp.dat.pl.f area.dat.pl.f let.prs.3

\[\text{let prieku.} \]

renew.inf naturally

‘The forests are restored either artificially by planting and sowing, or the cut areas are left to grow naturally.’ (C)

The object constitutes the theme with the subject in the infinitive:

\[(3.4.63)\]

\[\text{Brīvību regulēt no augšas} \]

freedom.acc.f regulate.inf from above.gen.f

\[\text{nav iespējams.} \]

not.be.cop.prs.3 possible.ptcp.nom.m

‘It is not possible to regulate freedom from above.’ (Ir)

\[(3.4.64)\]

\[\text{Bērnu audzināt nav grūti.} \]

child.acc.m raise.inf not.be.cop.prs.3 difficult

‘It is not difficult to raise a child.’ (C)

An object functioning as the theme in a bipartite sentence often results in a VS order in both verbal (3.4.65), nominal (3.4.66), and adverbial (3.4.67) sentences:

\[(3.4.65)\]

\[\text{Šo parādību veicina} \]

this.acc.f phenomenon.acc.f encourage.prs.3

\[\text{legālo medikamentu tirgotāji.} \]

legal.gen.pl.f drug.gen.pl.m trader.nom.pl.m

‘This phenomenon is encouraged by sellers of legal drugs.’ (C)

\[(3.4.66)\]

\[\text{Režisora izdarīto ir} \]

director.gen.m do.ptcp.acc.m be.cop.prs.3

\[\text{pamats aprinot.} \]

reason.nom.m admire.inf

‘There is a reason to admire the director’s achievement.’ (Ir)
'Cennini’s recipes were not easy to use.' (A. Eglits)

The position of adverbial modifiers is not strictly determined. They can occur both before and after the predicate, and their position is mainly determined by information structure.

Alternatively, adverbials of manner, measure, and cause – when functioning as the theme – usually occur as a marked theme:

'Slowly but inevitably, the dented chunk travels toward the sea.' (C)

'The ice cream didn’t cost that much.' (C)

'In her sadness, the Great Bride ate a lot of black henbane.' (C)

'Fearfully red and black, the sunset blazed behind the forests.' (C)

'I greet the other members gladly.' (C)

'A secondary predicate can only precede the subject if the subject is a pronoun or proper noun because they do not bind attributes:

'When boiled, they usually are dry and airy.' (www.cetrasszonas.lv)
(3.4.74) **Pārsteigts** Radziņš piecēlās gultā 
**surprise.**PTCP.NOM.M Radziņš.NOM.M get_up.PST.3 bed.LOC.F 
sēdus. seated 
‘Surprised, Radziņš sat up in his bed.’ (C)

The subject is the most typical means for expressing an unmarked theme. If occurring with a particle, a subject can be a marked theme:

(3.4.75) **Arī** vārds daudz ko nozīmē. 
also word.NOM.M a_lot what.ACC mean.PRS.3 
‘A word, too, means a lot.’ (A. Eglītis)

A **verbal predicate** rarely functions as the theme, because most sentences beginning with a predicate are communicatively indivisible (see 3.4.102, 3.4.103). A verbal predicate functions as a marked theme in the following examples:

(3.4.76) **Pat** ēdam mēs istabā. 
even eat.PRS.1PL we.NOM room.LOC.F 
‘We even eat in the room.’ (delfi.lv)

(3.4.77) **Arī** ēd viņi citādi. 
also eat.PRS.3 they.NOM.M differently 
‘They eat differently, too.’ (C)

The semantics of these sentences could be rephrased as follows: ‘with regard to eating, we do it in the room (just like many other things)’ (3.4.76), or ‘with regard to eating, they do it differently (like many other things)’ (3.4.77) therefore the predicates should be considered the theme.

**Nominal predicates** functioning as the theme are more common. In nominal (noun) sentences, where the subject of the sentence is also a noun, the word order usually performs a grammatical function (see Section 3.4.1). However, in cases where the semantics of the word forms or the context precludes interpreting them as SV, the predicate is the theme:

(3.4.78) Mikla nav diktators – puzzle.NOM.F not_be.COP.PRS.3 dictator.NOM.M 
mīkla ir cilvēki. puzzle.NOM.F be.COP.PRS.3 person.NOM.PL.M 
‘The puzzle is not dictator, the puzzle is people.’ (C)

(3.4.79) Lotī iejūtīgi audzinātāji bija 
very sensitive.NOM.PL.M teacher.NOM.PL.M be.COP.PST.3 
am Valdis Kiršteins, Valdis 
ari Valdis.Kiršteins, Valdis 
also Valdis.NOM.M Kiršteins.NOM.M Valdis.NOM.M 
Užāns un daudzi citi. Užāns.NOM.M and many.NOM.M other.NOM.PL.M 
‘Very sensitive teachers also included Valdis Kiršteins, Valdis Užāns, and many others.’ (A. Dripe)
If the subject and the predicate belong to different parts of speech, the predicate is advanced to the function of the theme to topicalize the subject of the sentence. The predicate can be both nominal (noun) (3.4.80) and adjectival (3.4.81):

(3.4.80) *Viņa mūža sapnis un apsēstība bija vadīt cilvēkus.*

‘His lifelong dream and obsession was to lead people.’ (A. Tīfentāle)

(3.4.81) *Svarīgs ir arī draugu atbalsts.*

‘Support from friends is also important.’ (C)

The subject in an adjectival sentence with a marked theme may be placed between the parts of the predicate:

(3.4.82) *Politkorekta Zālīte ir bijusi tikai pret savu mammu.*

‘Zālīte was politically correct only with her mom.’ (Diena)

(3.4.83) *Tik pilns, tik brīvs un piepeši tik priečīgs viņš savu mūžu nebija juties.*

‘Never in his life had he felt so full, so free, and suddenly also so happy.’ (C)

An adverbial predicate often plays the role of an unmarked theme if the subject is an infinitive, especially when it comes to a particular person or area:

(3.4.84) *Tik grūti ir būt vienai.*

‘It’s so hard to be alone.’ (C)

(3.4.85) *Vispareizāk šai gadijumā būtu runāt par praktisku materiālismu.*

‘In this case, it would be best to speak about practical materialism.’ (R. Mūks)
If an adverbial sentence expresses a general statement, the word order is usually direct, namely, SV (Valkovska 2016b: 41):

(3.4.86) *Ar roku to darīt ir sarežģīti.*

with hand.INS.F it.ACC.M do.INF be.COP.PRS.3 difficult

‘It is difficult to do it by hand.’ (C)

(3.4.87) *Skolā strādāt ir ērti.*

school.LOC.F work.INF be.COP.PRS.3 convenient

‘It is convenient to work at school.’ (C)

**Place and time adjuncts** are among the most typical unmarked themes in Latvian. They bind the sentence to the context or to a particular speech situation, and tend to be at the beginning of the utterance:

(3.4.88) *Pie griestiem dega spoža divsimtvatu spuldze.*

at ceiling.DAT.PL.M burn.PST.3 bright.NOM.F two-hundred_watt.GEN.PL.M light_bulb.NOM.F

‘A bright two-hundred-watt light bulb was shining on the ceiling.’ (A. Puriņš)

(3.4.89) *Vakaros parasti sanākuši kopā dažādu tautību jaunieši.*

evening.LOC.PL.M usually come.PTCP.PL.M.NOM.M together different.NOM.PL.F nationality.NOM.PL.F young_person.NOM.PL.M

‘In the evenings, young people of different nationalities used to come together.’ (E. Veidemane)

Particularly frequent are adverbial adjuncts functioning as the theme in subjectless sentences (3.4.90) and potentially verbal sentences (3.4.91). The fewer actants (arguments) there are in the semantic structure of the verb, the more likely it is that adjuncts will play a major role in the communicative structure (Valkovska 2016b: 13).

(3.4.90) *Trīs nedēļas nebija lijis.*

three.ACC.F week.ACC.PL.F not_be.AUX.PST.3 rain.PTCP.PL.M

‘It hadn’t rained for three weeks.’ (C)

(3.4.91) *Aiz loga tikai mežs.*

beyond window.GEN.M only forest.NOM.M

‘Outside the window, only forest.’ (C)

Often several adjuncts are used in parallel as the theme:

(3.4.92) *Vidzemē jau list.*

Vidzeme.LOC.F already rain.PRS.3

‘It is already raining in Vidzeme.’ (C)

(3.4.93) *Atceļā pāri mums snieg.*

way_back.LOC.M over we.DAT snow.PRS.3

‘On the way back it snowed on us.’ (C)
An adjunct in the dative is a typical unmarked theme:

(3.4.94) **Maizei** bija *rudzu ziedu un bread.DAT.F be.PST.3 rye.GEN.PL.M flower.GEN.PL.M and* 
*rudens kļavlapu smarža.*

‘The bread had the smell of rye flowers and autumn.NOM maple leaves.’

(S. Kaldupe)

(3.4.95) **Mums** pat nebija pazistama
*we.DAT even not_be.COP.PST.3 know.PTCP.NOM.F* 
*šī izjūta: “piegriezies”…* 
*this.NOM feeling.NOM dead_bored* 

‘We didn’t even know the feeling: “dead bored”…’ (E. Veidemane)

As was mentioned earlier, VS order is common in bipartite sentences where an adjunct is functioning as the theme:

(3.4.96) **Vispirms** gruva tuvāko mājēļu
*first collapse.PST.3 closest.GEN.F house.GEN.PL.F* 
*jumti un žogi.*

‘The roofs and fences of the closest houses collapsed first.’ (L. Ķuzāne)

(3.4.97) **Un** tam laikam piemit
*and that.DAT.M time.DAT.M characterize_by.PRS.3* 
*alkas pēc kaut kā tāla,* 
*craving.NOM.PL.F for something.GEN distant.GEN.M* 
*skaista, ipaša.*

‘And that time was characterized by a craving for something distant, beautiful, special.’ (E. Veidemane)

(3.4.98) **Bērniem** patik mājiņas,
*child.DAT.PL.M like.PRS.3 toy_house.NOM.PL.F* 
*kluciši, tornīši.*

‘Children love toy houses, blocks, towers.’ (C)

The SV order is found mainly in cases where the subject is contextually bound:

(3.4.99) **Vakaros** viņi sēdēja virtuvē pie
*evening.LOC.PL.M they.NOM.M sit.PST.3 kitchen.LOC.F at* 
*lielā galda.*

‘In the evenings, they were sitting in the kitchen at the large table.’ (C)
Communicatively indivisible sentences

Communicatively indivisible sentences are utterances that announce an event, without noting the starting point of that event (Beloshapkova 1999: 798). What matters most here is the basic structural type of the sentence, the valency, and the semantic type of the predicate; for example, sentences using predicates with zero valency, or impersonal sentences, are often communicatively indivisible (Valkovska 2016b: 13). Generally, such sentences are made up of verbs that describe different processes in nature.

(3.4.100) *Smaržo* pēc *piparmētru* konfektēm un *jūras.*

smell.prs.3 like peppermint.gen.pl.f candy.dat.pl.f and sea.gen.f

'It smells like peppermint candy and the sea.’ (C)

(3.4.101) *Snīga* jau trešo dienu no *vietas.*

snow.pst.3 already third.acc.f day.acc.f prep place.gen.f

'It was snowing for the third day in a row.’ (C)

The majority of predicate-initial bipartite sentences are considered to be indivisible. These sentences describe a situation or an event as a whole, and all the information is usually new:

(3.4.102) *Sākās* mans ģimenei un jaunatnes audzināšanai publicistikas laiks.

begin.pst.3 my.nom.m family.dat.f and youth.gen.f education.dat.f dedicate.ptcp.gen.f journalism.gen.f time.nom.m

‘Thus began the period of journalism I dedicated to the family and to youth education.’ (A. Dripe)

(3.4.103) *Piebrauca* kāds vīrs ar *čīkstošu velosipēdu.*

drive_up.pst.3 some.nom.m man.nom.m with creak.ptcp.ins.m bicycle.ins.m

‘A man with a creaking bicycle pedalled up.’ (C)

(3.4.104) *Nebūs* vairs mūsu Liepājas.

not.be.fut.3 no_more we.gen Liepāja.gen.f

‘Our Liepāja will be no more.’ (L. Ķuzāne)

Sentences with only a rheme and in which the implicit theme has to be determined from context, can border on contextually bound utterances.
3.4.3 The stylistic function of word order

One can speak of the stylistic function of word order when a particular word order type is used only in a certain style. For example, in colloquial language, the adverbial of measure tends to be placed after an adjective (Valkovska 2016a: 107):

(3.4.105) \textit{Esi} \textit{jau} \textit{liels} \textit{diezgan}.
\text{be.COP.PRS.2SG} \text{already} \text{big.NOM.M} \text{enough}
‘You are big enough already.’ (C)

(3.4.106) \textit{Mazs} \textit{pavisam} \textit{biju}.
\text{small.NOM.M} \text{so} \text{be.COP.PST.1SG}
‘I was so small (young).’ (C)

The placement of the attribute after the noun is typical of both poetic language ((3.4.107, 3.4.108) and colloquial language (3.4.109):

(3.4.107) \textit{Mākoņi} \textit{melni} \textit{pa} \textit{istabu}
\text{cloud.NOM.PL.M} \text{black.NOM.PL.M} \text{around} \text{room.ACC.F}
\text{šaudās}.
‘Black clouds are swirling around the room.’ (C)

(3.4.108) \textit{Oga} \textit{saldā,} \textit{oga} \textit{sūrā,}
\text{berry.NOM.F} \text{sweet.NOM.F} \text{berry.NOM.F} \text{sour.NOM.F}
\text{kuru roku izvēlies?}
\text{which.ACC.F} \text{hand.ACC.F} \text{choose.PRS.2SG}
‘Berry sweet, berry sour, which hand do you choose?’ (www.dziesmas.lv)

(3.4.109) \textit{Pat ne sapnis,} \textit{murgs}
\text{even not} \text{dream.NOM.M} \text{nightmare.NOM.M}
\text{gatavais}.
\text{ready.NOM.M}
‘Not even a dream, a real nightmare.’ (C)

The stylistic function often combines with the communicative one, because the change in the placement of the components not only expresses added stylistic information, but also adds topicalization, for instance, in the following sentences in the colloquial register:

(3.4.110) \textit{Paldies liels!}
\text{thank_you} \text{big.NOM.M}
‘Thank you so much!’ (C)

(3.4.111) \textit{Nu necieš viņš to puiku ne}
\text{well} \text{hate.PRS.3} \text{he.NOM} \text{that.ACC.M} \text{boy.ACC.M} \text{PTCL}
\text{acu galā!}
\text{eye.GEN.PL.F} \text{end.LOC.M}
‘Well, he can’t stand that boy at all!’ (A. Puriņš)
3.5 Composite sentences

3.5.0 Introductory remarks

Composite sentences are a combination of several predicative units based on certain syntactic relations. They are formed following a generalized pattern or scheme and function as a communicative whole (Skujiņa 2007: 341). The parts of composite sentences are modeled on simple sentences, but this pattern does not always appear in full:

(3.5.1) Daļa kristiešu Ziemassvētkus atzīmē 24. un 25. decembrī, bet daļa – janvārī.
   ‘Some Christians celebrate Christmas on December 24 and 25, but some – in January.’ (C)

(3.5.2) Es vismaz jutos to [viesmīlību] pelnījis, bet viņi!? 
   ‘I at least felt I deserved it [hospitality], but them!?’ (C)

In examples (3.5.1) and (3.5.2), the second part of the sentence shows clause reduction.

Thus, the parts of a composite sentence have the formal and conceptual structure of a simple sentence, but do not have communicative autonomy. The parts of a composite sentence may also have other structural features which are determined by their inclusion in a larger communicative unit, for example, they may include linking words and may have a specific word order:

(3.5.3) Redzēsiet, ko cilvēki var izdarīt ar domas spēku.
   ‘You will see what people can achieve with the power of thought.’ (C)

In the sentence (3.5.3), the pronoun kas ‘what’ (in the accusative, ko) is both the linking word and the object, therefore, it is located at the beginning of this part of the sentence.

The number of parts in a composite sentence can vary, thus, the most important feature that makes a composite sentence a communicative whole is its intonational unity. The sentence intonation in oral text denotes the boundaries of a composite sentence; in written texts this role is played by sentence-final punctuation marks.

A composite sentence is usually polypropositive, that is, it announces a number of events, but it can also be monopropositive, for example, when a composite sentence structure includes the means of expressing information structure:

(3.5.4) Atminas .. bija tās, kurus uzvedināja mani rakstīt šo dziesmu. (C)
   ‘Memories... were the ones that led me to write this song.’

It is also possible that a part of the sentence (usually the main clause) expresses an epistemic modal meaning without propositional content:

(3.5.5) Liekas, ka ir iestājies pārākāda brīdis.
   ‘It seems that a moment of transformation has come.’ (C)

In a composite sentence, predicative units are joined on the basis of the syntactic relations of coordination and subordination. According to these syntactic relations,
the parts of compound sentences are coordinated (3.5.6), while the parts of complex sentences are subordinated (3.5.7):

(3.5.6) **Skārdi būkšķēja un stikli šķindēja gandrīz katru dienu.**  
‘Tin plates clanged and glasses clinked almost every day.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.7) **Dari, kā pašam ienāk prātā.**  
‘Do as you think.’ (Ē. Hānbergs)

In Latvian syntax, a third type of sentence is traditionally distinguished – the mixed composite sentence, in which coordination is the dominant relation, but where at least one main clause has a subclause bound by the relation of subordination:

(3.5.8) **Tas bija ļoti labi audzināts kaķis, viņš visu laiku izlikās, ka ziņkārīgi seko manai nodarbībai.**  
‘It was a very well-behaved cat, it always pretended to be curious about my actions.’ (A. Eglītis)

However, since mixed composite sentences are, in fact, a combination of complex and compound sentences, they do not differ from complex and compound sentences in terms of their syntactic relations and will not be further examined in this work.

The parts of a composite sentence can be joined with or without linking words. Various parts of speech can function as linking words: conjunctions, pronouns, adverbs, particles. At times it can be difficult to determine the syntactic relation, if the parts of a sentence are joined without a linking word (i.e., asyndetically). Such cases can be described as syncretic realization of coordination or subordination, or as a non-differentiated syntactic relation:

(3.5.9) **Mīlestība ir kā brīvība – tā vienmēr no jauna jāatrod un vienmēr jāatdod.**  
‘Love is like freedom – it must always be rediscovered and always returned.’ (I. Šķipsna)

The relationship between the parts of a sentence (3.5.9) can be understood as unitive – which is characteristic of coordination – as well as motivational – which pertains to subordination.

However, in most cases, the syntactic relationship between the parts of a sentence in an asyndetic situation can be determined on the basis of their semantic relationship to be either coordination (3.5.10) or subordination (3.5.11):

(3.5.10) **Tiem blakām drīz vien paceļas lieli, moderni veikali, jauns, pārdrošo projektēts kino izslej savu naktīs mirdzošo torni.**  
‘Modern shops soon rise next to them, a new, daringly designed cinema raises its tower, luminous at night.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.11) **Tagad es zinu: es nemeklēju īstajā virzienā.** (C)  
‘Now I know: I’m not looking in the right direction.’
A single sentence can combine both asyndetic and syndetic means for joining its parts. This is possible in both compound (3.5.12), complex (3.5.13), and mixed composite sentences (3.5.14):

(3.5.12) **Varbūt viņš nav iekrājis ne centa, varbūt viņam ir tikai brangi parādi, bet katrā zinā viņam ir spēkrati.**

‘Maybe he hasn’t saved a penny, maybe he only has huge debts, but in any case he has a car.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.13) **Viņš nosmaidījis sacīja, ka sabiedriskajā transportā pieradis dot vietu padzīvojušām sievietēm, tā esot audzināts.**

‘He smiled and said that he was used to giving his seat to elderly ladies, he had been brought up that way.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.14) **Losandželosa ir liela; daži saka: trīsdesmit jūdzes caurmērā, citi apgalvo, ka septiņdesmit, bet tā, saprotams, nav nekāda nelaime.**

‘Los Angeles is huge; some say thirty miles on average, others say seventy, but that, of course, is no big deal.’ (A. Eglītis)

The order of the parts in a composite sentence can be fixed or varied. For example, the causal subclause, introduced by tā kā ‘since, as’, always precedes the main clause:

(3.5.15) **Tā kā tā bija izeja, durvis varēja atvērt tikai no iekšpuses.**

‘As it was the exit, the door could only be opened from inside.’ (C)

If the order of the parts is free, their placement is usually related to the information structure of the the contextual and communicative situation in which the sentence is used, for example, the placement of an object subclause before the main clause:

(3.5.16) **Vai tas ir pieņemami, es nezinu.**

‘Whether it is acceptable, I don’t know.’ (C)

### 3.5.1 Compound sentences

A compound sentence consists of two or more parts joined by coordination (Skujiņa 2007: 340). The semantic relations between the parts of a compound sentence are closely related to the linking words which join the parts. The parts can be joined by the conjunctions un ‘and’, bet ‘but’, turpreti (turpretim) ‘on the other hand’, ne – ne ‘neither – nor’, vai ari ‘or’, vai nu – vai (ari) ‘either – or’, te – te ‘here – here’, the particles taču ‘however, yet’, tomēr ‘still, yet’, ari ‘also, as well’, toties ‘but, in return’, tikai ‘only, but’, pat ‘even’, the adverbs tādēļ ‘therefore, hence’, tāpēc ‘therefore, hence’, tālab ‘therefore, hence’, citādi ‘otherwise’, tālabdēji ‘thus, thereby’. The introductory words piemēram ‘for example’, proti ‘namely’, tas ir ‘that is, namely’, respektīvi ‘or rather, namely’ can also function as linking words.

The unitive relation is most often expressed by the conjunction un ‘and’ or, less often, by the particles ari ‘also’ or pat ‘even’ functioning as conjunctions:

(3.5.17) **Nepaiet ne nedēļa, un esmu atpakal.**

‘Not even a week goes by, and I am back.’ (C)
(3.5.18) **Aizturētajam .. nebija .. neviena dokumenta, arī nevienu viņa radinieku pilsētā neizdevās atrast.**

‘The detainee ... didn’t have ... a single document, nor did anyone manage to find a relative of his in the city.’ (C)

(3.5.19) **Visi nu apjukusi un tādi kā nelaimīgi skatījās uz Billi, pat Olga apalās mutes kaktīni uz leju.**

‘Everyone was confused now and looked at Bille in a sort of unhappy way, even the corners of Olga’s round mouth drooped.’ (C)

As the particles used in this way also retain their particle-specific semantics, sentences whose parts are joined using the particles arī ‘also’ and pat ‘even’ border on being asyndetic. This is also shown by the frequent use of a combination of two linking words:

(3.5.20) **Mēs, Marit, dzīvojam nenormālā laikā, un arī mūsu dzīves nav īsti normālas.**

‘We, Marita, live in abnormal times, and our lives are not really normal either.’ (C)

(3.5.21) **Kājas viņam bija basas, un pat nagi kāju pirkstiem bija apgriezti.**

‘His feet were bare, and even his toes had their nails clipped.’ (C)

The negation of the unitive relation is expressed with the reduplicative conjunction ne – ne ‘neither - nor’:

(3.5.23) **Vienā rakstā M bija salīdzinājis cilvēkus ar putniem – ne tie sēj, ne tie plauj, ne kaut ko krāj, un pati daba tos baro.**

‘In an article, M had compared people with birds – they neither sow, nor plough, nor save anything, and nature itself feeds them.’ (C)

(3.5.24) **Viņa var iet ieskrieties; ne tu viņai esi vajadzīgs, ne viņa tev.**

‘She can take a hike; she neither needs you, nor do you need her.’ (C)

In an asyndetic compound sentence, the unitive relation is the most common:

(3.5.25) **Bet laiks gāja, es tā arī neko nespēju izdomāt ..**

‘But time went by, and so I never was able to figure out anything ...’ (C)

The cause and effect relations are expressed by the adverbs tādēļ ‘therefore, hence’, tāpēc ‘therefore, hence’, tālab ‘therefore, hence’, tādējādi ‘thus, thereby’ (the latter mainly in business texts and scientific discourse) functioning as conjunctions:

(3.5.26) **Pavisam 2. klasē bija ap četrdesmit skolnieku, tāpēc tika izveidotas divas paralēlklases.**

‘In total, there were approximately forty students in grade 2, therefore two parallel classes were created.’ (C)

(3.5.27) **Bet tās [domas] bija brivas, tādēl mana interese par viņas tekstiem neviltota.**

‘But those [thoughts] were free, so my interest in her texts was genuine.’ (C)
(3.5.28) Bija pilnīša, tālab varēja viegli izvairīties no svaigī uzraktajām puku dobēm.
‘There was a full moon, so it was easy to avoid the freshly dug flower beds.’ (C)

(3.5.29) Turklāt praksē nereti auditorijas vēlmes ir īstermiņa, tādējādi šāda nekritiska sekosana auditorijas vēlēm varētu nākotnē radīt negatīvas sekas.
‘Besides, in practice, the audience’s wishes are often short-term, therefore, a non-critical bending to the audience’s wishes could have negative effects in the future.’ (C)

These relations can be combined with the unitive relation and, therefore, tend to be considered a subtype of the unitive relation:

(3.5.30) Latvijai jūrā nav salu, un tāpēc Sāmsala šķiet brinumaina, noslēpumaina un droša miera osta.
‘Latvia doesn’t have any sea islands, and, therefore, Saaremaa seems a wondrous, mysterious, and safe peaceful harbor.’ (C)

(3.5.31) Nekas tāds vēl nav redzēts, un tādēl man tas jāizdar.
‘Nothing like that has been seen before, and so I have to do it.’ (C)

(3.5.32) Attīstītākās valstis izmanto abas pieejas vienlaicīgi, un tādējādi tās pārklājas.
‘The most advanced countries use both approaches simultaneously and, therefore, they overlap.’ (C)

The contrastive relation is expressed using the conjunctions bet ‘but’, turpreti (turpretim) ‘on the other hand’. The content of the second part of such sentences is the opposite of what could be expected based on the content of their first part:

(3.5.33) Kaut kas manī iekšā tiecās uz debesīm, bet kermenī bija tik loti smags.
‘Something inside me longed for heaven, but my body was so heavy.’ (C)

(3.5.34) Viņš lielo lomu guva sacensību pirmajā dienā, turpretim otrās dienas sacensības nebija vairs tik veiksmīgas..
‘He got the big catch on the first day of the competition; however, the second day of the competition was not quite as successful.’ (C)

Rhetorical or difficult-to-answer questions are more common in compound sentences whose parts are joined using the conjunction bet ‘but’, than in other composite sentence types:

(3.5.35) To jau mēs visu laiku esam zinājuši, bet vai jūs mūs klausījāt?
‘We have known this all along, but did you listen to us?’ (C)

(3.5.36) Bagātību vēlas iegūt ikviens, bet kāpēc visiem neizdodas?
‘Everyone wants to be wealthy but why doesn’t everyone succeed?’ (C)

(3.5.37) Skumji, bet ko darit?
‘Sad, but what can one do?’ (C)
As contrastive conjunctions, the contrastive particles *tomēr* ‘still, yet’ and *taču* ‘however, yet’ are semantically close to the conjunction *bet* ‘but’:

(3.5.38) **Romānists ir nodevējs, tomēr neviens viņu netiesā.**
   ‘The novelist is a traitor, but no one judges him.’ (C)

(3.5.39) **Tumsā nebija viegli atrast savus zirgus, taču bez tiem nekāds tālākais celš nebija iedomājams.**
   ‘It was not easy to find one’s horses in the dark, but without them there was no way forward.’ (C)

Functioning as a coordinating conjunction, the particle *toties* ‘but, in return’ indicates that the content of the second part of the sentence compensates somewhat for what is mentioned in the first part:

(3.5.40) **Mājās augu dienu valda krietna krēsla, toties tās [ādas] lieliski pasargā no nežēligi kveldējošiem saules stariem.**
   ‘At home, all day long twilight reigns, but those [skins] perfectly protect against the sunlight relentlessly beating down.’ (C)

Functioning as a conjunction, the meaning of the particle *tikai* ‘only’ retains a quality of restriction and indicates that, in the given situation, only what is mentioned in the second part of the sentence matters:

(3.5.41) **Es samaksāšu, brālīt, tikai tu piestādi rēķinu.**
   ‘I’ll pay, bro, you just bring the bill.’ (C)

The particle *tikai* ‘only’ can also indicate that the content of the second part of the sentence is to some extent an exception to what is mentioned in the first part:

(3.5.42) **Dievs mūs visus ir līdzīgi apdāvinājis, tikai daži no mums šīs dāvanas prot izmantot labāk nekā pārējie.**
   ‘God has gifted us all alike, only a few of us can use these gifts better than others.’ (C)

The adverb *citādi* ‘otherwise’ can also be used as a conjunction. In such sentences, there is a conditional and consequential relation between parts, namely, the second part of the sentence refers to the consequences that would be possible, unless the condition referred to in the first part was satisfied:

(3.5.43) **Mammucis izskrēja pretī, citādi pa to tumsu neatradīs īstās durvis.**
   ‘Mommy ran to meet [us], otherwise there’s no way of finding the right door in the dark.’ (C)

One also finds the combination of two synonymous or semantically close linking words *bet tomēr* and *bet toties* that reinforces the contrastive relation:

(3.5.44) **Mas tas līdz, bet tomēr kaut kas darīts.**
   ‘It is of little use, but still something has been done.’ (C)

(3.5.45) **Par viņu es nezinu neko, bet toties par tevi visu.**
   ‘I don’t know anything about him, but about you I know everything.’ (C)
In contrast, the particles *tikai* ‘only’ and *taču* ‘however, yet’ co-occur with the contrastive conjunction *bet* ‘but’, but retain their characteristic semantics of restriction or reinforcement:

(3.5.46) *Viņus ieraugot, cilvēks piecēlās, bet tikai piēris solu atstatumā Agra beidsot atpazina Kārli.*

‘When he saw them, the man got up, but only a few steps away did Agra finally recognize Kārlis.’ (C)

(3.5.47) *.. pa starpu – dažādi iespraudumi un piebildumi, bet taču neraisās stāsts.*

‘... in between – several insertions and comments, but the story does not unfold.’ (C)

However, the contrastive linking word *tomēr* ‘still, yet’ can be combined with the coordinating conjunction *un* ‘and’, and even in this case, the particle retains the semantics of ‘contrary to the expectations’ or ‘in spite of the obstacles’:

(3.5.48) *Anglijā jums gāja labi, un tomēr jūs riskējāt ar dzīvību, atgriezdamies Padomju Savienībā.*

‘In England you fared well, and yet you risked your life by returning to the Soviet Union.’ (C)

Disjunctive relations in a compound sentence are expressed by *vai ari* ‘or’, *vai nu – vai (ari)* ‘either – or’:

(3.5.49) *Tagad laikam tik briesmīgi nebija, vai ari Olga pieradusi, viņa vairs neģība, Billī redzēdama ..*

‘Now apparently it was not so terrible, or Olga had grown accustomed, she no longer fainted, seeing Bille.’ (C)

(3.5.50) *Abas nozīmes var īstenoties sinkrētiski, vai ari atkarībā no izteikuma semantikas kāda no nozīmēm var dominē.*

‘Both meanings can be realized in a syncrétic fashion, or, depending on the semantics of the utterance, one of the meanings can prevail.’ (C)

(3.5.51) *Vai nu viņai sala, vai ari tas nāca no spēcīgās nervu spriedzes.*

‘Either she was freezing, or it came from strong nervous tension.’ (C)

(3.5.52) *Vai nu jumtiņš sašķiebies, vai dīkdienība prātā.*

‘Either they were going nuts, or their minds were idle.’ (C)

Cases where coordination was made using the coordinated (combined) conjunctions *vai – vai* ‘either – or’ or *vai – vai ari* ‘either – or’ were not found, because in such cases, the first *vai* in each combination corresponds either to a subordinating conjunction (3.5.53, 3.5.54) or to the interrogative particle (3.5.55):

(3.5.53) *Vienalga, vai rīts vai vakars, vai list vai zibeņo.*

‘It’s all the same, whether it’s morning or evening, whether it’s raining or thundering.’ (C)
(3.5.54) *Protams, nevar jau uzminēt, vai viņi tur patiesīs strādā līdz agram ritam, vai arī pie iedēgtām lampām viņiem labāk nāk miegs.*

‘Of course, you can’t guess whether they really work there until dawn, or whether by leaving the lights on they get a better night’s sleep.’ (C)

(3.5.55) *Nez vai Šmits savai ārstēšanas metodei tādus izmanto, vai arī Edžus vecumdienās pārāk daudz greznumlietu sācis valkāt.*

‘I wonder if Šmits uses them as a method of treatment, or Edžus has started to wear too much jewelry in his old age.’ (C)

The conjunction *jeb vai ‘or’* can function as a coordinating conjunction in cases where the first part of the sentence is introduced by the interrogative particle *vai*:

(3.5.56) **Vai tu darīsi brīnumus mirušo vidū, jeb vai palikušie celsies tevi godā?**

‘Will you perform miracles among the dead, or will the living rise up to honor you?’ (C)

Less common is the disjunctive relation in a compound sentence, which is expressed using *te – te ‘here – here’*:

(3.5.57) **Te vilku piemin, te vilks klāt.**

‘Once you mention the wolf, it comes.’ (www.garamantas.lv)

(3.5.58) **Te viens nosists, te cits nodurts, te nošauts beigts, te vēl kāds izvarots ..**

‘Here one is beaten to death, here another is stabbed, here another is shot, here someone else is raped ..’ (C)

The relations of clarification or interpretation between parts of a compound sentence are expressed by the words *piemēram ‘for example’, proti ‘namely’, tas ir ‘that is, namely’, respektīvi ‘or rather, namely’*:

(3.5.59) **Pasaule izpletnēcēju nav daudz, un vēl mazāk ir pilotu – piemēram, Amerikā ir mazāk nekā pusmiljons licencētu pilotu.**

‘There are not many parachutists in the world, and even fewer pilots – for example, there are less than half a million licensed pilots in America.’ (C)

(3.5.60) **A. Hermana izrādes ir atvērtas, tas ir, tajās milzīga nozīme ir skatītāju aktivitātei.**

‘Alvis Hermanis’ performances are open, that is, audience activity is of great importance in them.’ (C)

(3.5.61) **Un atkal man prātā nāk Kurta Fridrihsona teiktais par mākslu, proti – mākslā galvenais ir – maigums un distance.**

‘And again, Kurts Fridrihsons’ words about art come to my mind, namely, the main thing in art is tenderness and distance.’ (C)

(3.5.62) **Trasē jauniešus sagaidīja seši uzdevumi, respektīvi, katrs komandas dalībnieks bija sagatavots tikai vienam no šiem pārbaudījumiem.**

‘Six tasks were prepared for the youths on the track, that is to say, each team member was prepared for only one of these tests.’ (C)
The parts of a compound sentence can have shared components – most often adverbial adjuncts (3.5.63) or dative adjuncts (3.5.64), rarely other sentence components, for instance, objects (3.5.65):

(3.5.63) **Pēc brīža** vinš atkal parādījās lūkā un **viņam pakal uzvijās smalka dūmu strūkļina.**
   ‘After a while, he reappeared in the hatch, and he was followed by a fine trail of smoke.’ (C)

(3.5.64) **Man vienā rokā ir vesels pīrāgs un otrā ir pīrāga gals.**
   ‘I had a whole pie in one hand, and in the other – the tip of a pie.’ (V. Jākobsons)

(3.5.65) **Par vēršu cīnām isnāk grāmata pēc grāmatas, romāns pēc romāna un, saprotams, parādās arī daudzas filmas.**
   ‘Book after book, novel after novel are published about bullfighting and, of course, it appears in many films, too.’ (A. Eglītis)

Interestingly, the adverbial adjuncts shared by the parts of a compound sentence may even be raised before the first part of the double conjunction, which unmistakably indicates that they belong to both parts of the sentence:

(3.5.66) **Tāpat bieži pēdējos gados veiktos eksperimentos vai nu tiek pētīti paši fotojonizācijas procesi vai arī šie procesi tiek izmantoti atomu detektēšanai.**
   ‘Similarly, in the experiments frequently conducted in recent years, photoionization processes are either studied or these processes are used to detect atoms.’ (C)

The parts of a compound sentence can be reduced. Reduced parts are those in which a structurally significant component, such as a predicate (3.5.67) or a predicate along with the subject (3.5.68, 3.5.69), is not realized or is omitted due to the context, namely, the first part of the sentence:

(3.5.67) **Viņa Lejasruļos jau bijusi, toties Rodrigo pat laukos nekad [nav bijis].**
   ‘She has already been to Lejasruļi, but Rodrigo [has not] even [been] to the countryside.’ (C)

(3.5.68) **Gar Sanfrancisko plūst okeāna aukstā straume, gar Losandželosu – [plūst okeāna] siltā [straume].**
   ‘The cold ocean current flows along San Francisco, along Los Angeles – [flows] the warm [ocean current].’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.69) **Nekādu Anniņu neviens neesot ne acīs redzējis, toties direktora kundzi pašu pirkumus no tirgus stiepjam [kāds ir redzējis] vai ik mīlu dienu.**
   ‘No one had ever seen any Anniņa; however, [someone had seen] the director’s lady dragging their own purchases back from the market each and every day.’ (C)

The order of the parts in a compound sentence is usually fixed and cannot be changed because it implies a logical progression of thought.
A compound sentence can have a closed or open structure. Closed structure sentences contain only two parts and in this sense they are similar to complex sentences (3.5.70), but in open structure sentences the number of parts is unlimited and can be increased (3.5.71, 3.5.72):

(3.5.70) **Vajadzētu aiziet, tomēr nevairos, neaizeju.**
‘I should leave, still, I don’t shy away, I don’t leave.’ (C)

(3.5.71) **Krūtis sažņaudzās sāpēs, priekšā izplēnēja kāpnes, pasauļe sagriezās kamolā.**
‘[His] chest clenched in pain, the stairs evaporated ahead [of him], the world started spinning around.’ (A. Heniņš)

(3.5.72) **Ne vinai kas ir, ne vina pēc kā izskatās.**
‘She neither has anything, nor does she look any good.’ (C)

In open structure sentences, one can have conjunctive or disjunctive relations. It is not important by which means the parts are conjoined, the mere fact that parts of the same type are joined produces notional relations. Conjunctions only emphasize the notional identity of the parts and perform expressive function rather than function as mere conjunctions:

(3.5.73) **Un deviņas dienas šos maisus ārdīju, un deviņas naktīs pavedienus šķetināju.**
‘And for nine days I tore up these sacks, and for nine nights I untangled the threads.’ (C)

However, in open structure sentences with disjunctive relations the lexical items that join the parts are important because it is by means of these items that the particular modal meaning of possibility is expressed:

(3.5.74) **Atbilde ir vienkārša – vai kāds to lidz šim nav vēlējies darīt, vai kādam ir kas slēpjams no sabiedrības.**
‘The answer is simple – either someone did not wish to do it up until now or someone has something to hide from society.’ (C)

In compound sentences with an open structure, the modal and temporal meanings of the parts are identical, the communicative types of these parts, too, are identical:

(3.5.75) **Te nogurums pēc garas darba dienas, te prieks par sasniegumiem.**
‘At times, fatigue after a long day of work, at times, joy about achievements.’ (C)

(3.5.76) **Vai nu zivju toreiz bijis vairāk, vai livu viri bijuši stiprāki.**
‘Either there were more fish back then, or the Livonian men were stronger.’ (C)

In closed structure sentences, there may be differences in the modal and temporal meanings of the parts (3.5.77, 3.5.78), also the parts themselves may belong to various communicative types (3.5.79):

(3.5.77) **Mēs neko daudz nerunājām arī agrāk, bet tagad tas ir citādi.**
‘Even before we didn’t talk much, but now it’s different.’ (C)
(3.5.78) *Visi grib būt lоgiski un sakarigi, bet arī tas viņiem neizdodas!*
‘Everyone wants to be logical and coherent, but they don’t manage even that!’ (C)

(3.5.79) *Tūdaļ vajadzēja piesteigties pārējiem rūkiem, bet kāpēc tos nemanīja?*
‘The other dwarves should have rushed up right away, but why were they nowhere to be seen?’ (C)

In compound sentences with more than two parts, there might be a combination of open and closed structures. In example (3.5.80), the first two parts constitute a shared open structure, while the third part relates to the former one as a closed structure.

(3.5.80) *Man palika kauns, es jutos vainīgs, tomēr man vajadzēja pierādīt savu patiesību.*
‘I was ashamed, I felt guilty, but I needed to prove that I was right.’ (C)

### 3.5.2 Complex sentences

A complex sentence is a main clause (or an independent part) which, by means of the relation of subordination, connects a subclause (or a dependent part) to it (Skujina 2007: 340). The minimal structure of a complex sentence can be expanded so as to include several subclauses that might be connected to the main clause both by direct (3.5.81) and gradual (3.5.82) subordination:

(3.5.81) *Kad cena nolaidās līdz pieciem latiem, Klāvs iedomājās, ka jaunos zābakus nepieciešami apslacīt, un kaulējās vēl, lai atlicinātu kortelītim.*
‘When the price dropped to five lats, Klāvs imagined that the new boots needed to be celebrated and negotiated to save some cash for a small bottle of vodka.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.82) *Izrādījās, ka biju apbruņota tālākajiem pārbaudījumiem, ko slēpa nezināma nākotne.*
‘It turned out that I was well armed for the subsequent tests hidden in the unknown future.’ (V. Freimane)

It is also possible to combine direct and gradual subordination in a single complex clause:

(3.5.83) *Ja bijāt bikls, nekas jūs netraucēja viņai sekot un noskaidrot dzīvesvietu, lai tad pavismam lēnā garā izlemtu, ko darīt tālāk.*
‘If you were shy, you could very well follow her and find out where she lived and then, undisturbed, decide on how to proceed.’ (A. Eglītis)

The parts of a complex sentence are called predicative units; however, these can also be formed according to specific patterns that are not typical of simple sentences, e.g., a subjectless subordinate clause with a predicate in the conditional mood:
Valdībām nekad nav īstais laiks, lai izdarītu kaut ko konkretū.

CONJ do.COND something.ACC.M concrete.ACC.M

‘It is never the right time for governments, to do something concrete.’ (C)

The subordinate relationship between the parts of a complex sentence is either similar to the subordinate relationship in a phrase or specific. However, the means of expressing subordination in a complex sentence are always different from the means of expressing subordination in a phrase. In the latter, they are word forms or prepositions, but in the former they are subordinators. Unlike coordinators, subordinators belong to a subclause and form a structural element of that clause. Subordinators are movable together with the subclause to which they belong, while coordinators are not as movable, their place in the clause is fixed.


Some of the subordinators are autosemantic, that is, they themselves express the semantic relationships between the main clause and the subclause and determine its semantic type (for example, ja, jo, tā ka, tā kā, tāpēc ka, kaut gan, it kā). Synsemantic subordinators can introduce different types of subclauses (such as ka, lai).

In a complex sentence, just as in a compound sentence, parts might be connected without a conjunction, most often in sentences with complement clauses:

(3.5.84) Anete teica, tev jābūt stipram.

‘Anete said you have to be strong.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.86) Stāvu un, dzīlī ievelkot elpu, jūtu – rudens ari manā dzīves dārzā.

‘I stand and, taking a deep breath, I feel autumn in my garden of life, too.’

(Ē. Kūlis)

**Principles of classification of complex sentences**

Complex sentences can be grouped by analogy with the models of syntactic relations in a simple sentence. Subordination in a complex sentence may, first of all, be analogous to subordination in a phrase, second of all, it may be analogous to a predicative relationship between the subject of the sentence and its predicate, and, third of all, it may be analogous to an adjunctive syntactic relation in a simple sentence.

Subclauses can also be grouped depending on the semantic relationships between the support word in the sentence or the whole main clause, on the one hand, and the subclause, on the other (for example, an attributive, object, or adverbial clause).
Subordination that is analogous to the relationship between a word and its dependent word form in a complex sentence is determined by the valency of the word (in the example (3.5.87), the verb gaidīt ‘to wait’):

(3.5.87) Viņš jau bija iedarbinājis mašīnu un
    gaidīja, līdz tā iesilst.
  wait.PST.3 until it.NOM.F warm_up.PRS.3
‘He had started the car and waited for it to warm up.’ (C)

The subclauses of this type like the dependent components of the phrases are subordinated to a word in the main clause that would be referred to as a support word. Such a support word could also be a particular grammatical form, for instance, a comparative:

(3.5.88) ... vīriešos es orientējos pat
    labāk, nekā varētu vēlēties …
  better than be_able.COND wish.INF
‘... I understand men even better than I would like to…’ (C)

The possibilities of binding a subclause, similarly to the head of a phrase, can depend on both the part of speech of the support word (for instance, any noun is able to bind an attributive clause) and the semantic group to which it belongs. In (3.5.89), the possibility of binding a subclause is determined by the fact that the support word is the noun prieks ‘happiness’, while in (3.5.90), the semantic group of the support word is what matters: nouns of intellectual or emotional evaluation, and similar words belonging to other parts of speech (for instance, the verb priecāties ‘to be happy’ or the adjective priecīgs ‘happy’) are able to bind the same subclause:

(3.5.89) Vai ir kāds prieks, kuru neietekmē visi šie ārējie apstākļi?
  ‘Is there such joy that is not affected by all these external circumstances?’
  (www.vilande.lv)

(3.5.90) Patiess prieks, ka esat ar mums!
  ‘It’s a real pleasure that you are with us!’ (www.facebook.com)

Subclauses that are subordinated to one word are always introduced by synsemantic subordinators. Their role is to show the dependence of the subclause on the support word, but they do not in themselves express the semantic relationship between the subclause and the main clause. These are conjunctions (in (3.5.91) and (3.5.92)), relative pronouns (3.5.93), and adverbs (3.5.94):

(3.5.91) Un iegaumēju, ka nav spēcīgāka ieroča par savaldību, mieru un tiešu, runātīgu skatienu.
  ‘And I noticed that there was no stronger weapon than restraint, peace, and a direct, eloquent gaze.’ (V. Freimane)

(3.5.92) Viņš nespēja izšķirt, vai tā veļas augšup vai lejup.
  ‘He could not tell whether it was tumbling up or down.’ (A. Heniņš)
(3.5.93) *Es nezināju, ko viņam atbildēt.*
‘I didn’t know what to answer him.’ (C)

(3.5.94) *Brīdi, kad nolaidāmies, kaut kā uzreiz paškārāmies.*
‘At the moment (when) we landed, we somehow immediately parted.’
(P. Bankovskis)

Pronouns and adverbs as subordinators have generalized meanings: they express
the subject (*kas* ‘what, who’), attribute (*kāds* ‘what’, *kā* ‘how’), quantity (*cik* ‘how
many, how much’, *kurš* ‘who, which’), place (*kur* ‘where’), time (*kad* ‘when’), cause
or purpose (*kāpēc, kādēļ, kālab* ‘why, for what reason’). However, if the subclause is
subordinated to one word, these meanings are not essential in shaping the semantic
relation. The main function of these subordinators is to indicate a grammatical
dependence on the support word in the main clause.

Subordination that is analogous to a predicative relation in a simple sentence
arises when the function of the subject (3.5.95) or, more seldom, the predicate
(3.5.96), is performed by a subclause rather than a separate word form:

(3.5.95) *Labi vien ir, ka to neizdarīju.*
‘It is just as good that I did not do that.’ (C)

(3.5.96) *Sākotnējā informācija bija, ka avarējusi lidmašīna.*
‘The initial information was that a plane has crashed.’ (C)

Subordination that is analogous to an adjunctive relation arises when the subclause is
subordinated to the whole main clause rather than a single support word in the main
clause. Such subclauses do not depend on the valency of the word and are introduced
by autosemantic subordinators (*jo, ja, lai, tā ka, tā kā, lai gan*, etc.) – their function is
to express the semantic relations between the main clause and the subclause:

(3.5.97) *Pirms turpinu stāstijumu, man jūs jāiepazīstina ar šo interesanto cilvēku.*
‘Before I continue, I should introduce this interesting person to you.’ (C)

Correlative elements are sometimes involved in shaping the relation of subordination,
namely, the main clause has an anaphoric element (an antecedent) which is a deictic
word signaling a following subclause:

(3.5.98) *Runā tikai to, ko vajag! what.ACC need.PRS.3*
‘Say only what is required!’ (A. Heniņš)
Such an anaphoric element may be optional and might reinforce the relation between the main clause and the subclause:

(3.5.99) Dari [tā], kā pašam ienāk prātā.
‘Do as you see fit.’ (Ē. Hānbergs)

(3.5.100) Taču tā ir veicinājusi arī dažas [tādas] ipašības, ko atzīstu par zināmu trūkumu, par savām vājībām.
‘However, it has also contributed to [certain] qualities which I consider as a certain drawback, as my shortcomings.’ (V. Freimane)

(3.5.101) Kad telpas izkūpināja, [tad] kadiķi sāka smaržot pēc cilvēka klātbūtnes.
‘When the rooms were fumigated, [then] the junipers began to smell of the presence of man.’ (Ē. Hānbergs)

It may also be the case that it is not possible to add a subclause without a correlative element. In this case, a syntactic relation is formed between a deictic word in the main clause and the subclause:

(3.5.102) Es nevaru izlabot to, kas bijis.
‘I can’t correct what has been.’ (C)

(3.5.103) Visam, kas bijis līdz iestāšanās brīdim klosterī, vairs nav nozīmes.
‘Anything that existed before joining the monastery does not matter anymore.’ (C)

(3.5.104) Tā nav, ka uz teātri neaizeju.
‘It’s not that I don’t go to the theater.’
(L. Brīdaka)

Both pronouns and deictic adverbs that are associated with semantically relevant subordinators may function as anaphoric elements: tas – kas, tur – kur, tad – kad, and so on. Some anaphoric elements may also associate themselves with conjunctions, especially the conjunction ka:

(3.5.105) Pat Pontontilts bijis tik augstu pacelts, ka uzbrauktu un uzkāpt bijis bistami.
‘Even the Pontoon Bridge had been lifted up so high that it was dangerous to drive or climb onto it.’ (A. Heniņš)

(3.5.106) Nelaimī ir tāda, ka no tās nolādētās bedres tu vienkārši vairs nespēj aizlaisties.
‘The problem is [such] that you just can’t get out of that damn pit anymore.’ (P. Bankovskis)

In the following, the types of subclauses will be examined in more detail, looking at both the peculiarities of the subordination relationship and the semantic relations between the parts of the sentence.
Semantic types of subordinate clauses

Attributive or relative clauses are subordinated to the noun and usually immediately follow that noun (Skujiņa 2007: 41–42):

(3.5.107) *Joprojām jūtos lepna par uzvaru, kas nenāca viegli.*
‘I still feel proud of the victory, which did not come easily.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.108) *Diemžēl maz lugu, kurš gribētos noskatīties.*
‘Unfortunately, there are few plays [which] I would like to watch.’
(L. Bridaka)

In attributive clauses, the subordinators most often are relative pronouns *kas, kurš, kāds*. These are anaphoric elements because they are semantically related to the support word in the sentence. At the same time, they are also parts of the sentence in the subclause, therefore they must be used in different case forms:

(3.5.109) *Pietrūka uzticības, ko vīrs reiz viņai zvērēja.*
‘She missed the faithfulness that her husband once swore to her.’
(L. Bridaka)

(3.5.110) *Viņa nometa jaunās kurpes, ar kurām tik apgrūtinoši staigāt.*
‘She kicked off the new shoes, which were so difficult to walk with.’
(L. Bridaka)

The above attributive clauses can specify a noun of any semantics, but the use of other subordinators in such clauses depends on the lexical semantics of the support word.

Adverbs of place can be used as subordinators in attributive clauses, if the support word has a lexical meaning of place:

(3.5.111) *Ir rajoni, kur klusuma gresnība pieaug lidz fantastiskam krāšnumam.*
‘There are neighborhoods where the luxury of silence rises to fantastic splendor.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.112) *Ir savādi būt vietā, kur daba, parādot savu spēku, izdzēš cilvēka radītos nospiedumus.*
‘It is strange to be in a place where nature, showing its power, erases the imprints left by man.’ (C)

If the support word in the main clause functions as an adverb of place, the meaning of the subclause nears that of an adverbial clause of place:

(3.5.113) *Vietā, kur sākas melnais kultūrslānis, ir tādas kā gulbūves atliekas.*
‘There is something like the remains of a log building [in the place] where the black cultural layer begins.’ (C)

(3.5.114) *Viesiem patikusi nakts ekskursija mežā, kur bija jāpārvar dažādi šķēršļi.*
‘Guests enjoyed the night excursion in the woods, where they had to overcome various obstacles.’ (C)
Adverbs of manner can be used as subordinators in attributive clauses, if the subclause is subordinated to a noun that has a lexical meaning of manner. In the following subclauses, the predicate is the infinitive and the subclause has an irrealis modal meaning:

\[3.5.115\]
\[
\text{Grāmatu lasīšana ir izcils veids, kā relaksēties.}
\]
\['Reading books is a great way to relax.’ (C)\]

\[3.5.116\]
\[
\text{Izlasi par paņēmieniem, kā tērēt mazāk!}
\]
\['Read about techniques on how to spend less!’ (C)\]

Adverbs of time can be used as subordinators in attributive clauses, if the subclause is subordinated to a noun that has a lexical meaning of time:

\[3.5.117\]
\[
\text{Jā, bija reiz šodien, kad es biju krietni aktīvāks un apsviedīgāks nekā šodien.}
\]
\['Yes, there was a time when I was much more active and skilled than today.’ (C)\]

\[3.5.118\]
\[
\text{Ļoti iespējams, ka nu ir tas rīts, kad viņa domā.}
\]
\['It is quite possible that this is the morning when she thinks.’ (C)\]

If the support word in the main clause functions as an adverb of time, the meaning of the subclause nears that of an adverbial clause of time:

\[3.5.119\]
\[
\text{Jau pirmajā rītā, kad visi sēdējām pie kafijas galda, ģimenes vecmāmiņa man kaut ko jautāja.}
\]
\['Already on the first morning, when we were all sitting at the coffee table, the grandmother of the family asked me something.’ (C)\]

The conjunction \(\text{ka}\) may introduce an attributive clause, if the support word is a noun with the meaning of cognition or speaking (for instance, \text{doma ‘thought’, ideja ‘idea’, ilūzija ‘illusion’, iespaids ‘impression’, cerība ‘hope’, vārdi ‘words’, draudi ‘threats’, etc.)

\[3.5.120\]
\[
\text{Es loloju sevī domu, kad šī dziesma izskanēs tikai viņam.}
\]
\['I cherish the idea that this song will play only for him.’ (C)\]

\[3.5.121\]
\[
\text{Atmiņā pavīdēja kāda sacitais, ka jebkurš cilvēks ticot savai nemirstībai.}
\]
\['I vaguely remembered that someone said that everyone believes in their own immortality.’ (C)\]

\[3.5.122\]
\[
\text{Ļaudis spārnoja cerība, ka brīvba tiem tūlit atmešis labāku dzīvi.}
\]
\['People were lifted by the hope that freedom would immediately bring them a better life.’ (C)\]
Because the support word refers to a process or condition, the attributive clauses (3.5.120–3.5.122) are semantically close to the complement clauses. If the support word has a different semantics, the conjunction *ka* in the subclause requires an anaphoric element *tāds* ‘such’ in the main clause:

(3.5.123) Par tik zinīgiem viesiem man bija **tāds prieks**, *ka lūdzu tos pienākt ne tikai svētkos vien.*
'I was so glad about such knowledgeable guests that I asked them to come not just on holidays.' (C)

An attributive clause can be placed both after the main clause (see, for example, 3.5.107–3.5.110) or in the middle of it:

(3.5.124) Kabatas naudu, *ko būtu varējusi tēvam izvilināt daudz lielāku ..*, tērēju tikai grāmatām, kino apmeklējumiem un saldiem niekiem.
'My pocket money, [of which] I could have gotten much more from my father, I only spent on books, movies, and candy.’ (V. Freimane)

(3.5.125) Oregonā, *kur lietus nepārtraukti līst gandrīz pilnus sešus mēnešus, daudzi vietēji lietusmēteļu nemaz nebija.*
'In Oregon, where it rains continuously for almost six whole months, many locals did not have raincoats at all.’ (A. Eglītis)

**Object or complement clauses** are subordinated to a verb that can bind an object (Skujiņa 2007: 277–278):

(3.5.126) Cilvēks plašā mītnē *nezina, ko iesākt.*
‘A person in a large residence does not know what to do.’
(Ē. Hānbergs)

Complement clauses can be introduced by relative pronouns (3.5.127), conjunctions (3.5.128, 3.5.129), and adverbs of various semantic classes (3.5.130, 3.5.131):

(3.5.127) Kādu laiciņu neviens nevarēja saprast, *kas nu būs.*
‘For a while no one could understand what was going to happen.’
(A. Heniņš)

(3.5.128) Pat dzimuši losandželosieši apgalvo, *ka nereti uzdurties pilnīgi nepazīstamiem apvidiem.*
‘Even natives of Los Angeles claim that they often encounter completely unfamiliar areas.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.129) Viņš domā, *vai vina prāts un jūtas ir spējīgi radīt kaut ko lielu.*
‘He wonders if his mind and feelings are capable of creating something great.’ (C)

(3.5.130) Eiropietim dažkārt jāpabrīnās, *cik loti civilizējušies Amerikas suni.*
‘Europeans sometimes are amazed how civilized American dogs are.’
(A. Eglītis)
Support verbs can be not only in a finite form but also appear in a non-finite form, e.g., a participle:

(3.5.132) **Nemaldiniet tautu, teikdams, ka nevarat nosaukt savu cenu.**

‘Do not mislead the people by saying that you cannot name your price.’ (C)

(3.5.133) **Viņa skatījās uz to pusi, gaidot, kad bālā parādība atkārtosies.**

‘She looked to that side, waiting for the pale apparition to reappear.’

(L. Stumbre)

Usually, the complement clause is placed immediately after its subordinating word but there may be other words between the subclause and the support word:

(3.5.134) **Pasaki, Sem, ko mums tagad darīt?**

‘Tell me, Sems, what do we do now?’ (C)

The position of the complement clause is free. It is usually placed after the main clause (3.5.127–3.5.131), but it can also be in the middle of the main clause (3.5.135) or be preposed to it (3.5.136, 3.5.137):

(3.5.135) **Par to, ka Kristaps Porziņģis kļuvis par populārāko Latvijas basketbolistu,**

‘No one has any doubt [about the fact] that Kristaps Porziņģis has become the most popular Latvian basketball player.’ (jauns.lv)

(3.5.136) **Vai Rīgas zaudētāji kļūs par jaunajiem uzvarētājiem – to mēs vēl redzēsim.**

‘Will the losers of Riga become the new winners – it remains to be seen.’ (C)

(3.5.137) **Kā būs turpmāk – nezinu.**

‘What will happen next – I do not know.’ (C)

A complement clause can also have an anaphoric element in the main clause, especially when the subclause is placed in the middle of the main clause (3.5.135) or in front of it (3.5.136).

**Subject clauses** perform the function of the subject in the main clause (Skujina 2007: 390). A number of different subordinators are possible: most often it is the subordinate conjunction **ka** (3.5.138), but conjunctions **vai, lai** (3.5.139), the pronoun **kas** (3.5.140), the adverbs **kur, kad, kā, cik**, etc. are also possible.

(3.5.138) **Skaidrs, ka par izvēli nav daudz ko prātot.**

‘It is clear that with this choice there is not much to think about.’

(A. Eglītis)

(3.5.139) **Galvenais, lai mums ir labi.**

‘The main thing is that we are fine.’ (C)

(3.5.140) **Kas bijis, pagājis.**

‘Let bygones be bygones.’ (C)
In sentences with subject clauses, the main clause is characterized by a certain formal composition and a certain semantics. Very often the predicate of the main clause is a verb of appearance *likties* ‘to seem’, *šķist* ‘to seem’, *izrādīties* ‘to prove, to turn out’, *iskskatīties* ‘to appear, to resemble’, etc. in its third-person form. Such sentences require a mandatory subclause:

(3.5.141) \[ \text{Bet man likās,} \]
\[ \text{but I/dat seem.pst.3} \]
\[ \text{ka ar to nepietiek.} \]
\[ \text{that with that.ins not.suffice.prs.3} \]

‘But it seemed to me that that was not enough.’ (C)

The predicate of the main clause can have the meaning of probability or chance:

(3.5.142) *Nereti gadās, ka vientuļi bagātnieki novēl savus miljonus suņu hospitāliem.*

‘It is not uncommon for lonely rich people to leave their millions to dog hospitals.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.143) *Var būt, ka es sāku saredzēt lietas no vēsturiskās perspektīvas.*

‘It may be that I’m beginning to see things from a historical perspective.’ (C)

Quite often the predicate of the main clause can have, regardless of the part of speech, evaluative meaning:

(3.5.144) *…žēl tikai, ka mēs visi nevaram būt arī miljonāri…* 

‘… it’s just a pity that we can’t all be millionaires too…’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.145) *Labi vien ir, ka viss sanācis, kā sanācis.*

‘It’s just as good that everything happened the way it did.’ (C)

(3.5.146) *Nav nekāds brīnumš, ka vinš vēl ir tik jauns un jau tik slavens.*

‘It’s no wonder that he is still so young and already so famous.’ (C)

A subject clause can be added if the verbal predicate is a transitive verb in the passive:

(3.5.147) *Tādējādi uzreiz redzams, vai paliks vieta vēl kādam skapītīm.*

‘Thus, it can be seen right away if there is room for another locker.’ (C)

(3.5.148) *Sākumā bija domāts, ka darbosies tikai puikas.*

‘Initially, it was thought that only the boys would participate.’ (C)

The placement of the subject clause is free, it can be placed in front of the main clause (3.5.140), after it (3.5.141–3.5.143), or in the middle of it (3.5.149):

(3.5.149) *Tas, kam bija jānotiek, jau bija noticis.*

‘What had to happen had already happened.’ (C)

**Predicate clauses** are only possible in Latvian when there is a copula in the main clause and when the subclause functions as part of the nominal predicate (Skujiņa 2007: 172). The predicate clause typically has an anaphoric element – the pronouns *tas* ‘that’, *tāds* ‘such’ – as part of the nominal predicate in the main clause:
Sajūta ir tāda, ka vai nu uzceljam šo naminu tagad vai nekad.
‘My feeling is that either we build this house now or we never do it.’ (C)

Tikai nelaimė [ir] tā, ka pie labā pierod daudz ātrāk un ātrāk aizmirst.
‘The problem just is that we get used to good things sooner and forget about them sooner.’ (C)

If there is no anaphoric element, the subject in the main clause has a particular form and semantics – typically, it is a noun that refers to cognitive activity or communication: noteikums ‘condition’, pārmetums ‘reproach’, arguments ‘argument’, atbilde ‘answer’, secinājums ‘conclusion’, informācija ‘information’, uzskats ‘opinion’, viedoklis ‘stance, position’, ziņa ‘message’, vēstījums ‘message’, fakts ‘fact’, and so forth:

Noteikums bija, ka mašīna tiks reģistrēta uz mammas vārda.
‘The agreement was that the car will be registered in mother’s name.’ (C)

Atbilde bija, ka par tik zemu cenu labu zupu uzvārīt nevar.
‘The answer was that it is impossible to make a good soup at such a low cost.’ (C)

Mednieku viedoklis ir, ka viņi skatīsies pēc reālās situācijas.
‘The hunters’ opinion is that they will decide according to the actual situation.’ (C)

The copula is usually present in the main clause (3.5.152–3.5.154) but in rare cases it can be absent:

Viena lieta, ka esam saraduši kā cimds ar roku.
‘The thing is, we have become as used to each other as a hand and glove.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

The predicate clause always follows the main clause.

It should be noted that in nominal simple sentences, where both the subject and predicate of the sentence contain nouns, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between the syntactic functions of these two categories, so the predicate clause actually borders on the subject clause:
If an anaphoric element were added to the main clause, two different structures could be obtained:

b. Problēma ir tāda, ka maz gūstam vārtus.
   ‘The problem is that we score too few goals.’ (predicate clause)

c. Tas, ka maz gūstam vārtus, ir problēma.
   ‘The small number of goals we score is a problem.’ (subject clause)

Adverbial clauses express various adverbial meanings – those of time, place, manner, measure, cause, purpose, etc. These subclauses can be subordinated to one word or to the whole main clause. It should be emphasized that it is not always easy to determine whether a subclause is bound to a single support word or the whole main clause, just as, in a simple sentence, it is sometimes hard to distinguish between arguments and adjuncts (see 3.2.10).

The following criteria can be used to determine the specificity of the syntactic relationship. First of all, the valency of the support word – if the subclause of a certain semantics follows from the valency of the verb, then it is subordinated to one word. Second of all, position in the sentence – if the adverbial clause is placed immediately after the support word, it is subordinated to that word. Third of all, if there is a semantic or contextual subordinator – given that, in most cases, adverbial clauses are introduced by semantic subordinators, they are likely to relate to the whole subclause.

Adverbial clauses of time or temporal clauses express the time of the process named in the main clause (Skujiņa 2007: 202) and are introduced by the semantic conjunctions kamēr, līdz, līdzko, kolīdz, līdz kamēr, tiklīdz, tiklīdz kā, tikko, tikko kā, iekams, kopš, pirms and the adverb of time kad, as well as the word group pēc tam kad.

(3.5.157) Mana mamma ir laba, kad es viņu nekaitinu.
   ‘My mom is good when I don’t get her angry.’ (C)

(3.5.158) Paiet labs laiks, iekams tu sādūšojies kustē.
   ‘It takes quite some time before you pluck up courage to start moving.’ (C)

(3.5.159) Bet, lidzko iekoptajā krastā sākuši pacelties pirmie bagātnieku savrupnami, pamatus rokot, atrasta nafta!
   ‘But, as soon as the first villas of the rich appeared along the developed coast, they struck oil while digging the foundations!’ (A. Eglītis)

Similarly to the adverbials of time, i.e., adjuncts (see 3.2.10), the adverbial clause of time mostly relates to the whole subclause. Such subclauses, the support word of which obligatorily or optionally requires a description of time, could be considered subordinated to one word:
(3.5.160) **Reizēm viņa .. nogulēja, lidz no skolas pārradās brālis un māsa.**

‘Sometimes she slept in until her siblings came back from school.’ (C)

(3.5.161) **Tagad mums ir jāpaspēj, kamēr vēl ir maza ķīlēns, ar smago mašīnu pārvest granti pāri.**

‘We have to manage, while the water is still low, to transport the gravel across with the lorry.’ (C)

The need to describe time can result from the semantics of the complex predicate in general:

(3.5.162) **Vajag paspēt iekārtoties darbā, kamēr ir tāda iespēja, paspēt pastrādāt, kamēr nav izdzinuši.**

‘You need to manage to find a job, while that’s a possibility, manage to work a bit, before they throw you out.’ (C)

However, in most cases, time describes the whole event, not just a specific verb, so adverbial clauses of time can typically be considered to be bound to the entire main clause:

(3.5.162) **Kad telpas izkūpināja, kadiķi sāka smaržot pēc cilvēka klātbūtnes.**

‘When the rooms were fumigated, the junipers began smelling of human presence.’ (Ē. Hānbergs)

Adverbial clauses of time can have various anaphoric elements in the main clause – deictic adverbs mainly with a temporal meaning (3.5.163–3.5.165), less often – with a meaning of manner (3.5.166):

(3.5.163) **Arī tad, kad acīs spīdēja prieks, smaids palika skumjš.**

‘Even [then] when (their) eyes shone with joy, (their) smile remained sad.’ (C)

(3.5.164) **Tagad, kopš daudzus gadus esmu pensijā, man pat avīzes vairs nav nepieciešamas.**

‘Now that I’ve been retired for many years, I don’t even need newspapers anymore.’ (C)

(3.5.165) **.. es bravūrigi saucu un nerimu tikmēr, lidz kamēr man nebija piebiedrojies visu musu šķību kāsis.**

‘I shouted with bravado and didn’t stop [so long] until our whole weird bunch had joined in.’ (P. Bankovskis)

(3.5.166) **Tiklīdz es nolieku ēdamos uz galda, tā Baiba mani raušus aizrauj uz vannas istabu.**

‘As soon as I put food on the table [so] Baiba literally dragged me to the bathroom.’ (V. Jākobsons)

Adverbial clauses of time can be placed in all three positions – after the main clause (3.5.157, 3.5.158), in front of it (3.5.162), and in the middle of it (3.5.163, 3.5.164).
Adverbial clauses of place indicate the place of the event mentioned in the main clause (Skujiņa 2007: 451) and are introduced by the adverbs of place kur, kurp. Subclauses subordinated to one word are related to a verb of direction (3.5.167, 3.5.168) or location (3.5.169, 3.5.170), the valency of which requires the description of the place: doties ‘to go’, ceļot ‘to travel’, iet ‘to go’, stāvēt ‘to stand’, atrasties ‘to be located’, etc.

(3.5.167) Viņš iet, kur vinam liek.
‘He goes where he is told to go.’ (C)

(3.5.168) [Zemes] gars šos cilvēkus stingri netur un laiž vaļā doties, kurp tie vēlas.
‘The spirit [of the Earth] doesn’t hold these people back and lets them go wherever they wish.’ (C)

(3.5.169) .. saini ar dārglietām atrodas, kur paslēpti.
‘The packages with the valuables are located where they were hidden.’
(C)

(3.5.170) Viņi palika stāvam, kur stāvējuši.
‘They remained standing where they were.’ (C)

Subclauses subordinated to a noun with the semantics of place are similar to attributive clauses:

(3.5.171) Bet ko lai saka nabaga cilvēki pilsētā, kur mašīnu vairāk nekā saprašanas?
‘But what should those poor people in the city say where there are more cars than the mind can grasp?’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.172) Cik savādāk bija vecajā, atpalikušajā Eiropā, kur visi staigājām kājam.
‘How very different it all was in old, backward Europe where everybody was still going around on foot.’ (A. Eglītis)

In most cases, the adverbial clause of place is related to the whole sentence:

(3.5.173) Kur vien skaties – visi apklusuši.
‘Wherever you look, everybody has fallen silent.’ (C)

The adverbial clause of place can have anaphoric elements in the main clause – deictic adverbs of place tur ‘there’, turp ‘(to) there’, visur ‘everywhere’, citur ‘elsewhere’, šeit ‘here’, etc.:

(3.5.174) Mums jādodas turp, kur mūs gaida vismazāk.
‘We must go [there] where we are least expected.’ (C)

(3.5.175) Kopumā visur, kur esam bijuši, latviešus uzņem kā savējos.
‘In general, wherever we have been, Latvians are always welcomed as locals.’ (C)

The prepositional phrases no kurienes ‘from where’, uz kurieni ‘(to) where’ can introduce an adverbial clause of place only if the main clause contains an anaphoric element:
(3.5.176) *Un jums jāatgriežas tur, no kuriennes esat nākuši, – pišļos.*  
‘And you must return [there] where you came from – to dust.’ (C)

The adverbial clause of place can follow the main clause (3.5.167–3.5.170), be in front of it (3.5.173), or in the middle of it (3.5.175).

**Adverbial clauses of manner** refer to the manner of the process described by the main clause (Skujiņa 2007: 439) and are usually introduced by the adverb of manner *kā*:

(3.5.177) *Var regulēt [sēdekļus], kā vien ienāk prātā.*  
‘You can adjust [the seats] however you like.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of manner in most cases has an anaphoric element *tā* in the main clause, but it can be introduced also by other subordinators:

(3.5.178) *Nevar jau aiziet uz televīziju intervēties, mierīgi atsēsties un pļāpāt tā, ka ne silts, ne auksts.*  
‘One cannot go to the TV (station) for an interview, sit there relaxed and chat as if nothing has happened.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of manner introduced by the conjunction *lai* will have a purpose meaning:

(3.5.179) *Apsēdos tā, lai varētu redzēt viesnīcas ieeju.*  
‘I sat down so that I could see the hotel entrance.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of manner introduced by the conjunction *it kā* will have a comparative meaning:

(3.5.180) *Tu runā tā, it kā tos nebūtu iespējams.*  
‘You are speaking [so] as if it were not possible.’ (C)

The adverbial clause of manner is usually placed after the main clause (3.5.177–3.5.180), but it can also be in front of it (3.5.181), or in the middle of it (3.5.182):

(3.5.181) *Kā mežā sauc, tā atskan!*  
‘What goes around, comes around.’ (lit: ‘As you shout into the woods, so it echoes.’) (www.la.lv)

(3.5.182) *Bet tā, kā Agra gribēja, šo dziesmu varēja nodziedāt tikai viņš.*  
‘Only he was able to sing the song the way Agra liked.’ (C)

The adverbial clauses of manner are semantically close to the adverbial clauses of degree.

**Adverbial clauses of degree** indicate the measure of process or action expressed in the main clause (Skujiņa 2007: 229) and are usually introduced by the adverb of measure *cik*:

(3.5.183) *Cik vien varam, darām paši.*  
‘As much as we can, we do ourselves.’ (C)
(3.5.184) **Kādēl nepelni tik, cik gribētu?**

‘Why don’t you earn as much as you would like?’ (C)

An adverbial clause of degree usually also has anaphoric elements in the main clause – deictic adverbs with the meaning of degree tik ‘so’, tā ‘to such an extent’, in which case the subclause can also be introduced by other subordinators:

(3.5.185) **Un neviens nekad mūžā nav sevi ienīdis tik ļoti, kā es sevi tagad.**

‘Nobody has ever hated himself as much as I do now.’ (P. Bankovskis)

(3.5.186) **Lai viņi stāv tik ilgi, kamēr brūni un sausi paliek.**

‘Let them remain here [so long] until they turn brown and dry.’ (C)

(3.5.187) **Losandželosietis ir tā saradis ar spēkratiem, ka bez tiem jūtas kā bez kājām.**

‘An Angeleno is so used to a car that without one he feels as if he’d lost his legs.’ (A. Eglītis)

The adverbial clause of degree typically follows the main clause (3.5.184–3.5.187), but it can also be in front of it (3.5.183).

**Adverbial clauses of purpose** express the purpose of the process or action expressed in the main clause and are introduced by the semantic conjunction of purpose lai (Skuja 2007: 256):

(3.5.188) **Varbūt Askolds tā runāja, lai sevi mierinātu.**

‘Maybe Askolds spoke like this to comfort himself.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.189) **Tiek jau nu gan darīts viss, lai mazbērnus iemīdzinātu.**

‘Everything possible is being done to lull the grandchildren to sleep.’

(A. Eglītis)

An adverbial clause of purpose can have an anaphoric element in the main clause – the adverbs tāpēc, tādēļ:

(3.5.190) **Mums nav jāataisa projekti tāpēc, lai izdzīvotu.**

CONJ survive.COND

‘We do not need to write project applications to survive.’ (C)

In the adverbial clause of purpose, the predicate is usually in the conditional mood (3.5.188–3.5.190) but it can also be in the indicative (3.5.191).

(3.5.191) **Reiz, dusmu brīdī, virtuvē paņēmu olas un laidu tās pret sienu, lai šķist.**

CONJ fall_to_pieces.PRS.3

‘Once in a fit of anger I took eggs and smashed them against the kitchen wall.’ (V. Freimane)

The adverbial clause of purpose typically follows the main clause (3.5.188–3.5.191), but it can also be in front of it (3.5.192).
(3.5.192) **Lai dzīvotu, nepieciešams mājoklis un darbs.**
‘In order to live, one needs shelter and a job.’ (A. Eglītis)

**Adverbial clauses of cause** relate to the cause of the content expressed in the main clause and are introduced by the complex conjunctions *tāpēc ka*, *tādēl ka*, *tā kā* (Skujiņa 2007: 69):

(3.5.193) *Bet es ar tevi runāšu, tāpēc ka man nav vienalga.*
‘But I will talk to you, because I care.’ (C)

(3.5.194) **Tā kā tas viss man ir svešs, es lieliski atpūtos.**
‘Since all of this is unknown to me, I relaxed really well.’ (C)
The adverbs *tāpēc, tādēl* can perform the function of an anaphoric element in the main clause, in this case the subclause is introduced by the conjunction *ka*:

(3.5.195) *Brīvs cilvēks ir brīvs tāpēc, ka ir tāds.*
‘A free person is free because he is so.’ (V. Freimane)

A subclause introduced by *tā kā* can have an anaphoric element in the main clause, the adverb *tad* ‘then’:

(3.5.196) **Tā kā manas ciešanas bija neizmērojamas, tad neatlika nekas cits kā kļūt par ģēniju.**
‘As my suffering was so immense, I had no choice but to become a genius.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of cause introduced by *tāpēc ka, tādēl ka* always follows the main clause (3.5.193), but a subclause introduced by *tā kā* (3.5.194) always precedes the main clause.

**Adverbial clauses of reason** are introduced by the conjunction *jo* (Skujiņa 2007: 277). They are semantically very close to the adverbial clauses of cause, and in many cases *jo* is synonymous to *tāpēc ka, tādēl ka*:

(3.5.197) *Nolēmām pusdienas neēst, jo vakarā bijām ielūgti uz restorānu.*
‘We decided to skip lunch, because in the evening we were invited to a restaurant.’ (C)

However, the reason is not always the cause of a phenomenon but rather an explanation of the content of the main clause:

(3.5.198) *Mīlie vienmēr ir ap mums, jo ģimene ir viena no galvenajām vērtībām.*
‘We are always surrounded by loved ones, because family is one of the most important values.’ (C)

(3.5.199) **Rīts, kā parasti, izskatās vienreizējs, jo saule lec no okeāna.**
‘As usual, the morning looks amazing, because the sun rises from the ocean.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of reason always follows the main clause.
Adverbial clauses of result or consequence express the consequences of the content expressed in the main clause and are introduced by the complex conjunction tā ka (Skujiņa 2007: 345):

(3.5.200) Mūs krastā nelaida, tā ka no Islandes es redzēju tikai kalnus tālumā.
‘We were not allowed ashore, therefore, all I saw of Iceland were distant hills.’ (C)

An adverbial clause of result always follows the main clause.

Adverbial clauses of condition or conditional clauses express the conditions under which something may or may not occur and are introduced by the conjunction ja (Skujiņa 2007: 259–260):

(3.5.201) Ja padomā, cilvēka mūšs tāds sezonas laiks vien ir – paskrien tik ātri kā vasara.
‘If you think about it, a human life is like a season, [it] rushes past as fast as summer.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.202) Neviens filmu aktieris Savienotajās valstīs nespēj pastāvēt, ja neprot boksēt un slaidi zvelt partnerim pa žokli.
‘No film actor can survive in the States if he can’t box and skillfully hit his partner’s jaw.’ (A. Eglītis)

Conditional clauses can have an anaphoric element, the adverb of time tad ‘then’:

(3.5.203) Bet, ja ar viņiem kas gadās, tad lielu lielais troksnis.
‘But if something happens to them, [then] the fuss is incredible.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

(3.5.204) Ja tās lietas ir tādas, tad eju pats pirmais.
‘If things are like that, then I am the first to go.’ (V. Jākobsons)

Both the subclause and the main clause can have an irrealis modal meaning if the conditional is used:

(3.5.205) Tomēr, ja varētu pagriežt atpakaļ laika ratu, varbūt mums būtu vērts satikties.
‘Still, if it were possible to turn back the wheel of time perhaps it would be worth it for us to meet.’ (C)

The adverbial clauses of condition can be placed freely – after the main clause (3.5.202), in front of it (3.5.204), or, less often, in the middle of it (3.5.206).

(3.5.206) Šis kuteris, ja vien nodrošinātu attiecīgu gaisa un pārtikas daudzumu, mierīgi varēja doties celojumā uz Mēnesi.
‘If there was enough air and food on this motorboat, we could easily take a trip to the Moon.’ (C)
Adverbial clauses of concession or consecutive clauses indicate something that may affect the process or the action of the main clause but does not. Such subclauses are introduced by complex conjunctions *kaut gan, kaut āri, lai gan, lai āri, jebšu* (Skujiņa 2007: 299):

(3.5.207) *Soļi bija klusi, lai gan rudens lapas varētu sacelt iespaidīgāku troksni.*

‘The steps were quiet, although the autumn leaves could have made them quite a bit louder.’ (L. Stumbre)

(3.5.208) *Kāds īpatnējs, lēts un pretīgs glumums piemīt šim sikumtirgus mantām, kaut gan tās nākušas tieši no drēbnieka.*

‘These flea market things have a weird, cheap, sticky feel to them, even though they have come straight from the tailor’s.’ (A. Eglītis)

The predicate of consecutive clauses most often is in the conditional mood (3.5.207, 3.5.209, 3.5.210), but the indicative is possible, too (3.5.208). If the predicate is in the subjunctive mood, the subclause can also be introduced by the conjunction *lai*:

(3.5.209) *Lai kurp mēs dotos, nebija iespējams izvairīties no cigarešu dūmiem.*

‘Wherever we went, it was impossible to avoid the cigarette smoke.’ (C)

(3.5.210) *Lai ko es teiktu, vārdi būs par sīkiem.*

‘Whatever I say, the words will be too small.’ (C)

Consecutive clauses can have an anaphoric element in the main clause, for instance, the particle *tomēr*:

(3.5.211) *Tomēr katrai sievietēi vajag bišķīt mīļumu, tāpat kā istabas puķei ūdeni.*

‘Still, just like a house plant needs some water, every woman needs a bit of affection.’ (Ē. Kūlis)

A consecutive clause can be placed behind the main clause (3.5.207, 3.5.208) or in front of it (3.5.209–3.5.211). Less frequently, a consecutive clause, usually reduced, can be found in the middle of the main clause (3.5.212).

(3.5.212) *Bez tam, jēdzieni stereotips un aizspriedums, lai gan lidzās esoši, tomēr ir divi dažādi lielumi.*

‘Besides, notions such as stereotype and prejudice, although close, are still two different notions.’ (C)

Adverbial clauses of comparison or comparative clauses compare the process or action expressed in the main clause with some other process or action, and are introduced by the conjunctions *tāpat kā, it kā, itin kā* (Skujiņa 2007: 335–336):

(3.5.213) *Tomēr katrai sievietietai vajag bišķīt mīļumu, tāpat kā istabas puķei ūdeni.*

‘Still, just like a house plant needs some water, every woman needs a bit of affection.’ (Ē. Kūlis)
(3.5.214) Vecāmāte, it kā nekas nebūtu bijis, salika rokas apalīški klēpī un smaidīja.
‘As if nothing had happened, grandmother positioned her hands on her lap in a circle and smiled.’ (C)

(3.5.215) Sals palīdz pašam sevi apmānīt, itin kā varētu staigāt pa ūdens virsmu.
‘Frost helps one fool oneself [into thinking], it is possible to walk on water.’ (C)

Adverbial clauses of comparison usually follow the main clause (3.5.213, 3.5.215), less often they are placed in the middle of it (3.5.214), only subclauses introduced by tāpat kā can be placed in front of the main clause (3.5.216).

(3.5.216) Tāpat kā pilsētnieks pārzina savu pilsētu ..., tāpat Jāzeps pārzina mežu.
‘Just like a city dweller knows one’s city, Jāzeps knows the forest.’ (C)

A special sub-type of the comparative clause is a clause subordinated to the comparative (adjective (3.5.217) or adverb (3.5.218)) and introduced by the conjunction nekā:

(3.5.217) Mans noziegums ir lielāks, nekā to varētu piedot.
‘My crime is greater than can be forgiven.’ (C)

(3.5.218) Tālab agrāk, nekā būtu vajadzējis, Sīzifs sāka gausties par spēka izsīku mu.
‘Therefore, earlier than he should have, Sisyphus started complaining of exhaustion.’ (A. Heniņš)

These clauses always follow the word form to which they are subordinated.

**Comparative correlative clauses** indicate a proportional increase of two values and a correlation between them. A subclause can have the meaning of a condition or causativity. A comparative correlative clause is introduced by the first part of the reduplicative conjunction jo – jo, the second part introduces the main clause. Both parts of the complex sentence have the forms of an adverb or adjective in the comparative:

(3.5.219) Jo ilgāk laudis dzīvo šīni pilsētā, jo vairāk brīnās par tās neizsmeļamo dažādību.
‘The longer people live in this city, the more they are amazed by its endless diversity.’ (A. Eglītis)
Often there are more than two parts in a complex sentence, which are introduced by the reduplicative conjunction *jo* – *jo*. In this case, the number of subclauses and the number of main clauses can only be determined by the content. In example (3.5.220), there is one subclause and two main clauses, whereas in (3.5.221) – two subclauses and one main clause:

(3.5.220) **Jo vairāk par to domāju, jo lielāka ziņkāre pārņēma, jo nevaldāmāk rosijās fantāzija…**

‘The more I thought of it, the more curious I grew, the wilder my imagination became.’ (C)

(3.5.221) **Jo vairāk lēmumu atkal un atkal tiek pieņemts, jo vairāk klūdu pieļauts un no tām mācību gūts, jo veiksmīgākas izvēles cilvēks izdaris.**

‘The more decisions are made again and again, the more mistakes are made and lessons learned from them, the better the choices a person will make.’ (C)

Sentences with a comparative correlative subclause are characterized by a reduction in one or both parts:

(3.5.222) **Jo tālāk, jo trakāk.**

‘The deeper into the wood you go, the more timber seems to grow’

(lit. ‘The further, the crazier.’) (C)

Comparative correlative constructions can also be realized in a simple sentence:

(3.5.223) **Un Volža šķībais deguns jo tuvāk tēva mājai, jo spītīgāks.**

‘The closer [it was] to his father’s house, the more spiteful Voldis’s crooked nose [became].’ (C)

Additive clauses are considered a special case in Latvian syntax. In terms of semantic relations, they could also be main clauses but need to be qualified as subclauses, because they are introduced by subordinators, which anaphorically include the entire content of the main clause (Skujiņa 2007: 325):

(3.5.224) **Prieks gan iznāk diezgan padārgs, kā to pagājušajos Jānos pārliecinājās latviešu makšķernieki.**

‘This bit of fun turns out to be pretty expensive, as Latvian anglers learned on Midsummer’s last year.’ (A. Eglītis)

(3.5.225) **Jaunais virs piemetina, ka nu jau viņi atgriezušies ierastajā dzīvē, atsākuši filmēties, kas bijis loti grūti pēc medusmēneša.**

‘The newlywed husband adds that they have gotten back to their routine and resumed shooting the film, which had been very difficult after the honeymoon.’ (C)

Additive clauses always follow the main clause.
The modality of subclauses

Subclauses can have either a realis or irrealis modal meaning. Most often, the modality of a subclause depends on the same factors that determine the modality in a simple sentence. However, there are cases when the use of the irrealis mood depends on the structural features of a complex sentence.

For instance, the use of the conditional with subclauses of various semantic types is triggered by negation in the main clause:

(3.5.226) **Nav neviena,**
not_be.PRS.3 nobody.GEN.M
kas uzrakstītu spēcīgu dziesmu.
who.NOM writeCOND powerful.ACC.F song.ACC.F
‘There is nobody (around) who could compose a powerful song.’ (C)

(3.5.227) **Pasaulē nav tāda likuma,** kas kaut ko neaisliegtu.
‘There is no law in the world that would not forbid something.’ (C)

(3.5.228) .. pašlaik nereder nevienu citu kandidātu, kurš šim amatam būtu vairāk piemērots.
‘At the moment I see nobody who would suit this post better.’ (C)

The use of the conditional is common in subclauses of various semantic types introduced by the conjunction lai:

(3.5.229) **Lai kas tas nebūtu,**
CONJ what.NOM that.NOM.M not_be.COP.COND
labāk neienesiet to savā mājā. (C)
‘Whatever it is, better not to bring it home.’ (C)

(3.5.230) **Pats svarīgākais ir,** lai bērni varētu atgriezties skolās un turpināt mācības.
‘The most important thing is that children should be able to return to school and resume their education.’ (C)

In complement clauses involving a verbum dicendi in the main clause and which are introduced by the conjunction lai, a special oblique is possible – the so-called reported imperative (see also Section 2.5.4):

(3.5.231) [Veikalnieks] **Piesacīja,**
[shopkeeper.NOM] declare.PST.3
lai nu nākot mamma vai paps,
CONJ now come.OBL.PRS mom.NOM.F or dad.NOM.M
Bīlēvi viņš vairs nedošot.
‘[The shopkeeper] declared that next time mom or dad should come, he would no longer be serving Bille.’ (C)

In Latvian, subclauses – more often than simple sentences – have the infinitive as their predicate. Special mention should be made of infinitival relative clauses which express finality or suitability for something, so that they have an irrealis modal meaning. Such subclauses can be subordinated to a noun:
Vispirms vajadzēja aizsūtīt Viktoram first need.PST.3 send.INF Viktors.DAT.M ģimētnes, ko ielīmēt kādā photo.ACC.PL.F what.ACC attach.INF some.LOC.F ārzemju pasē. foreign_country.GEN.PL.F passport.LOC.F

‘First, Viktors needed to be sent photos that he could attach to a foreign passport.’ (A. Heniņš)

The word which binds the subclause refers to circumstances, a thing, means, and so on which are a necessary condition for the condition mentioned in the subclause to arise or for the the action mentioned in the subclause to take place (Holvoet 2000, 100).

Infinitival relative clauses can be subordinated to a pronoun, most often if the main clause contains a negation:

Dārzā nav nekā, garden.LOC.M not.be.PRS.3 nothing.GEN ko redzēt. what.ACC see.INF 'There is nothing to see in the garden.’ (C)

It is possible that there is no word in the main clause to which the subclause is subordinated. Such sentences are somewhere in between simple and complex sentences. If they are interpreted as complex sentences, then the main clause has an incomplete grammatical center and the function of the subject of the sentence is performed by the whole subclause:

Ir, par ko padomāt. be.PRS.3 PREP what.ACC think.INF 'There is something to think about.’ (C)

If such sentences are interpreted as simple sentences, they are considered to be lexicalized idiomatic structures expressing either necessity (3.5.235) or lack of necessity (3.5.236) (see also Holvoet 2000, 100).

Cik daudz man vēl how much I.DAT still bija ko mācīties. be.PST.3 what.ACC learn.INF 'How much there was still for me to learn.’ (C)

Skaidrs, ka par izvēli clear.NOM.M that PREP choice.ACC.F nav daudz ko prātot. not_be.PRS.3 much what.ACC ponder.INF 'No doubt, there is no need to mull over the choice.’ (A. Eglītis)
Sentences can also take on a meaning, which describes something that is worth or not worth doing:

(3.5.237) *Tur bija ko padomāt.*

‘There were things to think about.’ (C)

(3.5.238) *Bet uz to mūsu valstī laikam nav ko cerēt.*

‘Apparently, it is not worth hoping for that in our country.’ (C)

There are other types of infinitival subclauses in Latvian, but they do not differ formally or semantically from simple sentences with an infinitival predicate:

(3.5.239) *Tas ir lēts veids, kā paplašināt redzesloku.*

‘That is a cheap way for broadening one’s horizons.’ (C)

(3.5.240) *Diemžēl iemesls nav tāds, par kuru priečāties.*

‘Unfortunately, the reason is nothing to be happy about.’ (C)

(3.5.241) *.. skolnieku vislabāk var iedrošināt, sakot, ko vinam darīt, nevis ko nedarīt.*

‘...a student is best encouraged by saying what he should do rather than what he shouldn’t.’ (C)

Still, it should be noted, that an infinitival predicate is found more often in a subclause than in a main clause or simple sentence.
Final thoughts

The description of Latvian grammar given in this book is one possible way to view a language’s grammatical system. The process of writing this grammar gave the authors valuable experience and if this project were to be undertaken now, it is possible that the interpretation of certain language phenomena or the arrangement of certain systems would be different. While fully aware that the contents of this book could be further clarified or expanded, as well as contradicted, the authors feel content in the knowledge that another step has been taken in understanding the systems of the Latvian language. Each such step is the foundation for future studies while also a testament to the boundless nature of research into language, for just as an old Latvian legend states that Rīga can be built but never finished, the same is true for this work.
Sources

*Diena* (daily newspaper)
*Dienas Bizness* (newspaper)
Ieva (weekly magazine)
*Ievas Māja* (weekly magazine)
*Ievas Stāsti* (weekly magazine)
Ir (weekly magazine)
Jaunā Gaita (literature magazine)
Jurīša Vārds (weekly magazine)
Kas Jauns (weekly magazine)
Latviešu folkloras krātuves digitālais arhīvs. Available at: www.garamantas.lv
Latvijas Avīze (newspaper)
Līdzsvarotais mūsdienu latviešu valodas korpuuss 2018. Available at: http://www.korpuss.lv/id/LVK2018
Latvijas Neatkarīgā Televīzija (TV channel)
Lubānas Ziņas (newspaper)
Mans Mazais (monthly magazine)
maxima-library.org (online library)
National film award ceremony Lielais Kristaps (2019)
Neatkarīgā Rita Avīze (daily newspaper)
Privātā Dzīve (weekly magazine)
Santa (monthly magazine)


Sviesta Cība. Available at: www.klab.lv (online diary)


Available at: http://latviandainas.lib.virginia.edu


www.apollo.lv (news portal)
www.aprinkis.lv (online newspaper)
www.arterritory.com (art and culture portal)
www.barikades.lv (special interest website)
www.bdaugava.lv (online newspaper)
www.blogi.oho.lv (special interest website)
www.calis.delfi.lv (special interest website)
www.cetrassezonas.lv (special interest website)
www.copeslietas.lv (special interest website)
www.cosmo.lv (online magazine)
www.cv.k (Central Election Commission website)
www.db.lv (news portal)
www.delfi.lv (news portal)
www.draugiem.lv (social networking website)
www.dziesmas.lv (special interest website)
www.dzivei.lv (special interest website)
www.eDruva.lv (online newspaper)
www.epadomi.lv (special interest website)
www.epupa.valoda.lv (online encyclopedia)
www.ezerzeme.lv (online newspaper)
www.epupa.com (social networking website)
www.fenikssfun.com (special interest website)
www.info.riga.lv (municipal website)
www.ilukste.lv (municipal website)
www.jaunagaita.net (online magazine)
www.jaunjelgavasvidusskola.lv (school website)
www.jauns.lv (news portal)
www.kandava.lv (municipal website)
www.kroders.lv (theater criticism portal)
www.kurzemesvards.lv (online newspaper)
www.kurzemniekiem.lv (municipal website)
www.la.lv (news portal)
www.letonika.lv (online Latvian literature library)
www.lauksaimnieks.wordpress.com (blog)
www.lvportals.lv (official national information portal)
www.liepajniekiem.lv (municipal website)
www.likumi.lv (government website)
www.lm.gov.lv (government website)
www.lsm.lv (Latvian public media portal)
www.mammamuntetiem.lv (special interest website)
www.maminuklubs.lv (special interest website)
www.musturs.lv (special interest website)
www.nra.lv (online newspaper)
www.rsu.lv (university website)
www.parmuziku.com (special interest website)
www.pictame.com (special interest website)
www.pietiek.com (news portal)
www.prekos.lv (special interest website)
www.procesilatvija.lv (informational portal)
www.providus.lv (informational portal)
www.rezeknesbiblioteka.lv (library website)
www.sargs.lv (informational portal)
www.satori.lv (online magazine)
www.spoki.lv (special interest website)
www.sportacentrs.lv (sports news portal)
www.termorelax.com (special interest website)
www.travelnews.lv (special interest website)
www.tvnet.lv (news portal)
www.twitter.com (microblogging platform)
www.vaduguns.lv (online newspaper)
www.valoda.ailab.lv (educational portal)
www.ventspils.lv (municipal website)
www.vilandе.lv (special interest portal)
www.viss.lv (advertising portal)
www.workingday.lv (special interest portal)
References


Subject Index
(the corresponding term in Latvian is given in parentheses)

ablaut (ablauts, mantotā patskaņu mija) 50
adaptation of morphemes (morfēmu pielāgošā) 30–31
additive clause (relatīvais palīgteikums) 530
address (uzruna) 116, 121, 150–151, 439, 469
addressee (adresāts) 182, 183, 254, 256, 399, 439, 454, 465, 468, 470–472, 476
adjective (adjektīvs, īpašības vārds) 62, 73, 150–151, 156, 161, 163, 165, 169, 289, 325, 382, 413–414, 418, 422, 433, 436, 457, 482, 486, 499
definite (noteiktā) 149–150, 160, 164, 482
indefinite (nenoteikta) 149–150, 163
qualitative (kādības) 153–154, 156, 160, 322, 325
relational (attieksmes) 153–155, 323
adjunct (determinants vai situants) 398–390, 430, 448, 478
adverbal adjunct (situants) 451–454, 461, 481, 488, 496, 508, 521
dative-marked adjunct (determinants) 400, 448–452, 481, 488, 497, 508
adnominal (adnomināls) 114, 116, 119, 121, 124
adposition (apozicija) 330
adverb (adverbs, apstākļa vārds) 73, 142, 287–288, 301, 316, 322, 400, 406, 418, 422, 453, 472, 484, 515, 521, 524, 526
adverbal clause (apstākļa palīgteikums) 419, 511, 515, 516, 521, 523–527
adverbal modifier (apstāklis) 80, 283, 284, 287, 316, 398, 438
affix (afiks) 26, 32, 47, 60–61, 63, 67, 77, 78
agreement (saskaņojums) 150, 176, 388–399, 435, 462, 482–483,
allomorphism (alomorfisms) 31, 42
alternation (alternācija) 26, 28, 32–36, 44, 50, 66, 122, 124, 219, 222
analogy (analozgija) 47, 303, 387, 511
anaphora (anafora) 182, 197
animacy (dzīvums) 96, 97, 102, 125, 183, 185, 194, 229
apophony (apofonija, mantotā patskaņu mija) 26, 30, 48, 50–51, 63, 64, 66, 219, 223, 231, 302
qualitative (kvalitatīva) 50, 51, 53
quantitative (kvantitatīva) 50, 51, 53
apposition (pielikums) 83, 437–439, 454, 462–463
argument (arguments) 388, 398, 409, 412, 421, 454, 496, 521
aspect (aspekts, veids) 281–285, 288, 431
imperfective (imperfektivs, nepabeigts) 283, 285
iterative (iteratīvs, daudzkārtējs) 282, 285
perfective (perfekts, pabeigts) 282, 284, 285, 288
semelfactive (semelfaktīvs, vienkārtējs) 282, 285
aspectual verb / aspectual auxiliary (fāzes verbs, fāzes darbības vārds) 217, 409–410, 418–420, 431, 447
assimilation (asimilācija) 30, 32, 35, 37, 50, 54
progressive (progresīva) 32, 37, 54
regressive (regresīva) 32, 33, 37, 50, 54
autocausative (autokauzatīvs) 275, 278
auxiliary (palīgverbs, palīgdarbības vārds) 78, 219, 227, 234, 246, 260, 263, 268, 409–411, 431, 434, 458
back-formation (reversā vārddarināšana) 67
base (vārddarināšanas / formveidošanas ceļs) 66, 67, 74, 79, 219
base word (motivētājvārds) 54–55, 64, 74, 75
basic sentence type (teikuma pamattips) 402
beneficiary (beneficienss, ieguvējs) 273, 276, 399, 449, 454
biaspextual verb (divveidu darbības vārds) 283, 285
blending (teleskopēšana, apvienošana) 72
case alternation (locījumu sinonīmija / paralēlisms) 122–124
catabora (katafora) 182, 197
causative verb (kauzatīvs verbs / kauzatīvs darbības vārds) 47, 52
circumfix (cirkumfikss) 62, 281
main clause (virsteikums) 371, 467, 477, 500–502, 510–532
participial clause (divdabja teiciens) 300, 440–441
cause of clause (cēloņa palīgteikums) 526
cause of comparison / comparative clause (salīdzinājuma palīgteikums / salīdzinātāja daļa) 447, 528–529
cause of condition / conditional clause (nosacījuma palīgteikums) 527
cause of concession / consecutive clause (pieļāvuma palīgteikums) 528
cause of consequence / clause of result (seku palīgteikums) 527
cause of degree (mēra palīgteikums) 524–525
cause of manner (veida palīgteikums) 524
cause of place (vietas palīgteikums) 523–524
cause of purpose (nolūka palīgteikums) 525
cause of reason (pamatojuma palīgteikums) 526
cause of time (laika palīgteikums) 375, 521–522
clipping (strupināšana) 64, 67, 383
cluster (sablīvējums) 31, 46
vowel (patskaņu) 46
coronal (līdzskaņu) 33, 49
comparative correlative clause (korelatīvais salīdzinājuma palīgteikums) 529–530
comparative degree (komparatīvs, pārākā pakāpe) 62, 79, 156, 322, 457
corpus (salīdzinājums) 148, 153, 154, 156, 322, 353, 374, 528, 529
complement clause / object clause (papildinātāja palīgteikums) 270, 374, 467, 477, 511, 517–518, 531
composite sentence (salikts teikums) 385, 390, 453, 500–502, 504
compound (saliktens) 60, 61, 67, 68–72, 94–96, 137, 141–143, 170, 177–178, 183, 319, 328
copulative (kopulatīvs) 69, 70, 142, 170
determinative (determinatīvs) 69, 70–
doocentric (endoocentriks) 71, 72, 142
exocentric (eksoocentriks) 71, 72, 142, 170
compound sentence (salikts sakārtots teikums) 501, 502–504, 506–511
conjugation (konjugācija) 221–232
gender (dzimte) 84, 87, 93, 95–102, 125, 193, 293, 296,
feminine (sieviešu) 84–87, 90, 91, 96–101, 125, 149, 165, 176, 293–297
masculine (vīriešu) 84–87, 91, 96–100, 125, 149, 165, 176, 292–296
common (kopdzimte) 86, 97, 100–101
genitive (genitivs) 94–96, 106–110, 112, 122, 124, 137, 141, 174–175, 193, 194, 261, 270, 338, 389,
410, 416, 417, 420, 451, 456–458
imperative sentence (pavēles teikums) 257, 408, 430
impersonal (vienpersonas / bezpersonas) 263, 273, 280, 388, 411, 449, 450, 498
indeclinable (nelokāms) 73, 80, 82, 93–94, 99–100, 123, 152, 176, 221, 289, 316, 328, 441–443, 446
non-finite (infinīts) 218, 289, 518
infinitive (infinitīvs, nenoteiksme) 218–225, 231, 232, 245, 246, 256, 257, 295, 297, 387, 388, 394,
406–413, 419, 421–423, 443–446, 468, 469, 477, 487, 492, 495, 516, 531
inf (infikss) 31, 43, 50
inflection (formveidošana) 25, 28, 30, 31, 50, 53, 59, 60, 76–79, 194, 219, 297
inflectional (formveidošanas) 27, 44, 48, 61–63, 77, 80, 85, 176, 177, 219, 272, 281, 282, 289
base (celms) 79
sequence (kēde) 79
information structure (aktuālais dalījums) 449, 463, 478, 481, 484, 489–490, 493, 500, 502
instrumental (instrumentālis) 77, 78, 91, 117–119, 143, 151, 185, 416, 417, 436, 437, 455, 461
interference of morphs (morfu interference) 31, 36, 42–44, 50
interfixation (interfiksācija) 31, 45, 47, 50, 52, 78
interfix (interfikss) 31, 45, 47–49, 60, 78, 232, 302–303
interjection (interjekcija, izsauksmes vārds) 72, 73, 80–82, 302, 377–384, 463, 474
invariant (invariants) 25–27, 43
invariant morpheme (morfēmas invariants) 26, 27
interrogative sentence (jautājuma teikums) 203, 317, 407, 408, 470–472, 475, 478
lexeme (leksēma, vārds) 63, 103, 172, 272, 324, 400, 423, 431, 449, 484
locative (lokatīvs) 91, 120, 121, 151, 182, 412, 416, 430, 437, 452, 461
metaphony (metafonija) 26, 50, 54, 57
metatony (metatonija) 51
method (vārddarināšanas / formveidošanas paņēmiens) 63, 64, 75, 76, 78
morphological (morfoloģiskais) 64, 75, 78
syntactic (sintaktiskais) 64, 68, 78
semantic (semantiskais) 64, 78, 79
modal verb / modal auxiliary (modāls darbības vārds) 217, 393, 409–411, 413, 418–420, 431, 447
modality (modalitāte) 240, 241, 256, 276, 313, 381, 388–393, 403, 430–433, 444, 531
deontic (deontiskā) 256, 257
epistemic (epistēmiskā) 256, 257
realis (reāla) 240, 392, 531
irrealis (ireāla) 240, 392, 393, 407, 516, 527, 531
model (vārddarināšanas modelis, vārddarināšanas tips) 59, 63, 67, 76, 272, 302
monomorphemic (monomorfēmisks) 59
mood (izteiksme) 218, 227, 234, 239–259, 263–266, 392–394, 410, 431, 463
conditional (kondicionāls, vēlējuma izteiksme) 244, 472, 476, 510, 525, 528
imperative (imperatīvs, pavēles izteiksme) 240, 253, 256, 266, 430, 465, 469
indicative (indikatīvs, īstenības izteiksme) 232, 240, 256, 392, 393, 421, 430
oblique (atstāstījuma izteiksme) 240–244, 249–251, 258, 263, 421, 531
debitive (debītīvs, vajadzības izteiksme) 114, 122, 124, 239, 246–251, 256, 259, 265, 268, 410,
420, 421, 455, 456
morph (morfs) 27, 28, 31, 36, 37, 40–45, 50
morpheme (morēma) 25–28, 30–32, 36, 37, 43, 47, 54, 59
morpheme boundary (morēmas robeža) 36, 43, 44, 50
morpheme junction (morēma sadura) 31, 32, 44, 47
morphophoneme (morfonēma, morfonēma) 28–30, 54
morphophonology (morfonoloģija, morfonoloģija) 25, 28
morphophonological (morfonoloģisks) 25, 28–31, 35, 36, 38, 48–50, 54, 219, 230
motivation (motivācija) 141
nominal (nomens, nomināls) 72, 79, 83, 137, 148, 176, 261, 327, 401, 406, 407, 413, 422, 424, 428,
433, 436, 440, 445, 446, 492, 495, 520
nominative (nominatīvs) 105, 121, 124, 150, 151, 175, 247, 260, 278, 279, 382, 386, 388, 409–412, 418, 420, 430, 431, 436, 448–451, 455, 456, 485, 486


number (skaitlis) 84, 102, 103, 148, 172, 176, 182, 217, 265, 386

numeral (numerālis, skaitļa vārds) 59, 77, 80, 109, 123, 160, 172–179, 182, 413, 420, 436, 483


direct (tiešs) 113, 115, 123, 270, 398, 399, 454, 455, 477, 479, 490, 491

indirect (netiešs) 113, 399, 454, 455, 490, 491

optative sentence (vēlējuma teikums) 476–477

palatalization (palatalizācija, mīkstināšana) 26–29, 35, 36–42, 66, 84, 89, 219, 223–227

paradigm (paradigma) 43, 54, 59, 62, 73, 78, 84, 91, 93, 96, 102, 151, 181, 182, 225, 228, 285, 394, 416, 423, 429–431, 454

part of a sentence (teikuma loceklis) 80, 355, 366


active (aktīvs, darāmās kārtas) 289–296, 325

declinable (lokāms) 73, 160, 217, 219, 240, 289–291, 413, 414, 420

indelensible (kelēji lokāmais) 220, 289, 297, 301, 440

passive (pasīvs, ciešamās kārtas) 220, 253, 260, 261, 265, 290, 292–297, 325, 451, 458, 459

past (pagātnes) 219–221, 230–240, 285, 392, 408, 409

indefinite (vienkārša) 230, 235, 236

perfect (salikta) 230, 233, 234, 236, 238

patient (pacienss, cietējs) 91, 105, 265, 273–279, 281, 398, 441, 442, 454


personification (personifikācija) 121, 185, 186, 226, 275, 278

phoneme (fonēma) 26, 28, 30–32, 36, 44, 45, 50

phonological (fonoloģisks) 30


polyfunctionality (polifunkcionalitāte) 122, 124

polysemic (polimorfēmisko) 59

positive degree (pamata pakāpe) 79

possession (posesors, īpašnieks) 114, 448, 451, 455

postfix (postfikss) 60, 301, 313

postposition (postpozīcija) 331, 338


adjectival (adjektīvisks) 414, 495

adverbial (adverbiāls) 407, 418–420, 495

compound (sastata) 218, 408, 413, 418, 421, 434

nominal (nominais) 83, 93, 95, 105, 165, 172, 179, 413–421, 494, 519

simple (vienkāršs) 407, 421

verbal (verbāls) 407–409, 411, 413, 494, 519

predicate clause (izteicēja palīgteikums) 519–520

predicativity / predication (predikativitāte / predikācija) 388, 391, 394, 402, 403, 413, 430, 432, 438, 449, 453, 463, 470

primary (primārā) 432, 433


preposition (prepozīcija, prievārds) 71, 78–81, 117, 118, 141, 142, 330–354, 436, 455, 483, 511


indefinite (vienkāršā) 220, 224, 230, 234, 244, 246, 247, 250, 255, 256, 288

perfect (saliktā) 77, 230, 234–239, 243–246, 261

principal parts of the sentence (virslocekļi) 395


definite (noteiktais) 159, 181, 189, 212–215
demonstrative (norādāmais) 180, 181–182, 197–199, 201–203

indefinite (nenoteiktais) 180, 181, 202, 207, 211, 212, 413, 419

interrogative (jautājamais) 180, 183, 203, 207, 212

negative (noliegtais) 181, 182, 215–217, 410


possessive (piederības) 180, 183, 189, 191–196

reflexive (atgriezeniskais) 180–182, 189–192, 214, 247, 274

relative (attieksmes) 180, 205–207, 376, 511, 512, 515, 517

proposition (propozīcija) 431, 434, 453, 454

recipient (saņemējs, recipienss) 113

reciprocal verb (recipros darbības vārds) 275

reduced (reducēts) 45, 46, 327, 508, 528

reference (reference) 183, 257, 433

reflexive (refleksīvs, atgriezenisks) 44, 62, 180, 181, 183, 189, 192–196, 213, 221, 227–229, 289, 298, 302, 313

noun (lietvārds) 90–93

particle (divdabis) 289, 293, 296

verb (darbības vārds) 90, 91, 227, 229, 260, 262, 271–280, 302, 443, 446

reflexivity (atgriezeniskums) 214, 281, 302

relative clause / attributive clause (apzīmētāja palīgteikums) 515, 531, 532

rhemé (rēma) 481, 488, 489–490, 498


semantic relations / relationship (jēdzieniskās / semantiskās attieksmes) 71, 483, 484, 490, 501, 502, 511–513, 514, 530

sentence pattern (teikuma modelis) 393, 394, 402, 421, 423, 431, 432

minimal (minimālais) 395

expanded (paplašinātais) 395, 397

sequence (secība) 172, 353, 423, 481, 482, 485


unexpanded (nepaplašināts) 395, 396

expanded (paplašināts) 386, 396, 398, 432, 461

sound change / sound alternation (fonēmu pārmaiņa) 25, 66, 78, 219, 222, 230

source phrase (motivētājvārdkopa) 69, 70

source structure (motivētājstruktūra) 142, 143

speech act (runas akts) 433, 463–465, 468, 470, 472, 474–477

stem (celms) 42, 44–46, 48, 49, 57, 61, 63, 67, 68, 74, 219–221, 224, 313
Latviešu valodas gramatika
Kopsavilkums


Zinātniskas angļu valodā rakstītas latviešu gramatikas aktualitāti nosaka arī plašā latviešu diaspora ārzmēs, ippak angļiski runājošās valstīs, kur bērni un jaunieši izglitību apgūst savas mītnes zemes valodā, bet ne vairs latviešu valodā. Tādēļ dažāda informācija par Latviju, latviešu valodu, literatūru un kultūru visbiežāk tiek meklēta angļu vai kādā citā mītnes zemes valodā.

Latviešu gramatika angļu valodā būs noderīga arī tiem, kas apgūst latviešu valodu kā svešvalodu un, kad iepazīts valodas minimums, vēlas uzzināt vairāk par valodas gramatisko sistēmu un tās īpatnības, lai būtu iespējams valodu lietot arvien prasmīgāk un arī pareizāk. Tāpat “Latviešu valodas gramatika” būs labs izziņas un materiālu avots tiem, kas māca latviešu valodu – gan kā dzimto vai mantoto, gan kā svešvalodu.

Nozīmīgs ir arī fakts, ka ārzemju valodnieku vidū vērojams liels pieprasījums pēc sistēmiskiem un uzticamiem dzimtās valodas runātāju sagatavotiem latviešu valodas datiem, jo latviešu valodā ir ārkārtīgi interesants ļoti senīko un relativi jaunu valodas attīstības faktu savijums, kas interesē ārzemju pētniekus un ir vitāli svarīgs valodu tipoloģiskā, kognitīvā, pragmatiskā, funkcionālā un kontrastīvā analīzē. Te var pieminēt, piem., vajadzības izteiksmju un izteiksmju sistēmu vispār, verba veida nozīmju izteikšanu, dažādas konstrukcijas ar datīvu, ģenitīvu un nominatīvu, skaņu mījas vārddarināšanā un fomveidošanā.

Latviešu valoda pieder pie indoeiropiešu valodu saines baltu valodu grupas; šai grupā ietilpst arī lietuviešu valoda un jau mirusi senprūšu valoda. Rudzīte (1993: 4) norāda: “Tagadējā latviešu valoda .. ir radusies, saplānot kopā valodām, kādās runājājas no vēstures avotiem zināmās baltu ciltis – latgalī, jeb latvieši, sēli, zemgalī, kā
arī kurši, kam sava valoda bijusi vēl 16. gadsimtā.” Lidzīgi kā lietuviešu valoda, āri latviešu valoda saglabājusi dažadas seniskas, uz indoeiropiešu vai Baltu pirmvalodu laiku atvēdināmas leksiskas, fonētiskas un gramatiskas parādības. No valodas tipo-loģijas viedokļa latviešu valoda pārstāv klasisku indoeiropiešu valodu (baltu valodu) sistēmu ar daudzveidīgu gramatisko formu veidošanu un plašu vārdu darināšanu. Taču latviešu valodā atrodamas arī iezīmes, kas lidzinās Baltijas jūras somu valodu, piem., libīšu vai iigaņu valodas, parādībām. Tas galvenokārt skaidrojams ar seniem valodu kontaktiem un Baltijas jūras areāla valodu lidzīgām pazīmēm.


uzmanību pievērš latviešu valodas izkopšanas, normēšanas un ortogrāfijas jautājumiem. Šī tradīcija lielākajā daļā teksta žanru saglabājusies līdz mūsu dienām.


1) latviešu gramatikai angļu valodā ir atšķirīga mērķauditorija, kas nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

2) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).

Ja par kādu latviešu valodas gramatikas parādību lingvistiskajā literatūrā pausti atšķirīgi viedokļi, atsevišķos gadījumos uzskatāma, ka nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

3) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).

Ja par kādu latviešu valodas gramatikas parādību lingvistiskajā literatūrā pausti atšķirīgi viedokļi, atsevišķos gadījumos uzskatāma, ka nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

2) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).

Ja par kādu latviešu valodas gramatikas parādību lingvistiskajā literatūrā pausti atšķirīgi viedokļi, atsevišķos gadījumos uzskatāma, ka nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

3) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).

Ja par kādu latviešu valodas gramatikas parādību lingvistiskajā literatūrā pausti atšķirīgi viedokļi, atsevišķos gadījumos uzskatāma, ka nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

2) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).

Ja par kādu latviešu valodas gramatikas parādību lingvistiskajā literatūrā pausti atšķirīgi viedokļi, atsevišķos gadījumos uzskatāma, ka nosaka arī atšķirīgu valodas parādību aprakstu un akcentējumu, kā arī piemēru atlasīšanu (piemēri vairāk orientēti uz aprakstītām faktiem ilustrēšanu);

3) risināta arī latviešu valodas gramatiskās sistēmas apraksta tradiciju saskaņošana ar Rietumeiropas un Amerikas lingvistisko skolu atzinām un mūsdienīgā gramatikas terminoloģiju (sk. “Subject index”, kurā aiz angļu valodas termina iekavās norādīts arī atbilstošais latviešu gramatikas jēdziens).
nodaļā lietvārdu, adjektīvu, verbu u.c. vārdšķiru apraksta noslēgumā īpašā apakšnodalā. Morfoloģijas nodaļas ievaddalā blakus morfēmikas, formveidošanas principu un vārdšķiru iedalijuma aprakstam sniegti arī vispārīgi komentāri par latviešu valodas vārdu darināšanas paņēmiemieni, lidzekliem un tipiem. Sintakse galvenā uzmanība pievērsta struktūrām un dalēji arī funkcionalām vienkārša teikuma aprakstam, salikts teikums skatīts galvenokārt kā vairāku predikatīvu vienību apvienojums vienā komunikatīvā veselumā, tāpēc uzmanība pievērsta gan šo vienību jeb teikuma daļu strukturālajām ipatnībām, gan semantiskajām attieksmēm.


Pateicība

Pateicība izsakāma arī Hellei Metslangai (Helle Metslang), Bonifacam Stundžam (Bonifacas Stundžia) un Daiki Horiguči (Daiki Horiguchi), kuru lietpratīgie ieteikumi un precizējumi bijuši ipaši nozīmīgi grāmatas sagatavošanas beigu posmā. Paldies arī visiem Latvijas Universitātes kolēģiem, kuri atbalstījuši gramatikas publicēšanu!

Par rūpēm, sagatavojot publicēšanai “Latviešu valodas gramatikas” manuskriptu, paldies arī LU Akadēmiskajam apgādam un tā direktorei Aijai Rozenšteinei.

Tomēr visvairāk pateicības vārdu pienākas abu autoru ģimenēm, jo sevišķi dzīvesbiedriem, par atbalstu, izpratni un pacietību gramatikas pētniecībā un grāmatas rakstīšanas laikā.

Rīga – Garciems – Lubāna
2020. gada jūlijā